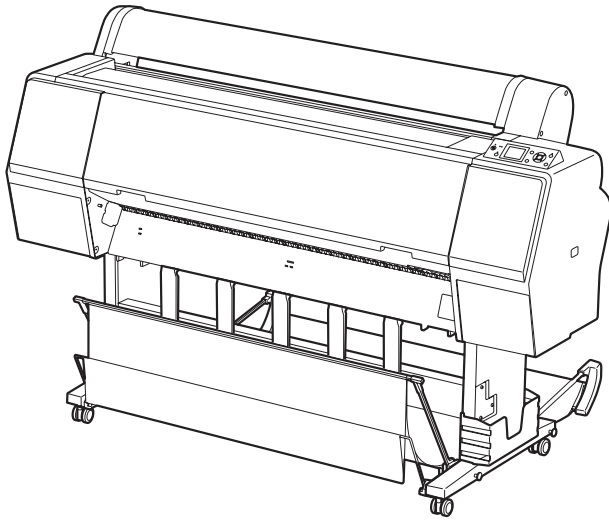


# SERVICE MANUAL



## *Large Format Color Inkjet Printer*

**Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710**  
**Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M**  
**Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910**  
**Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710**  
**Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910**  
**Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910**  
**Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908**  
**Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908**

## Notice:

- All rights reserved. No part of this manual may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of SEIKO EPSON CORPORATION.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without notice.
- All efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy of the contents of this manual. However, should any errors be detected, SEIKO EPSON would greatly appreciate being informed of them.
- The above notwithstanding SEIKO EPSON CORPORATION can assume no responsibility for any errors in this manual or the consequences thereof.

EPSON is a registered trademark of SEIKO EPSON CORPORATION.

General Notice: Other product names used herein are for identification purpose only and may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners. EPSON disclaims any and all rights in those marks.

Copyright © 2008 **SEIKO EPSON CORPORATION.**  
**LFP CS Quality Assurance Department**

# PRECAUTIONS

Precautionary notations throughout the text are categorized relative to 1) Personal injury and 2) Damage to equipment.

***DANGER*** Signals a precaution which, if ignored, could result in serious or fatal personal injury. Great caution should be exercised in performing procedures preceded by DANGER Headings.

***WARNING*** Signals a precaution which, if ignored, could result in damage to equipment.

The precautionary measures itemized below should always be observed when performing repair/maintenance procedures.

## ***DANGER***

1. ALWAYS DISCONNECT THE PRODUCT FROM THE POWER SOURCE AND PERIPHERAL DEVICES PERFORMING ANY MAINTENANCE OR REPAIR PROCEDURES.
2. NO WORK SHOULD BE PERFORMED ON THE UNIT BY PERSONS UNFAMILIAR WITH BASIC SAFETY MEASURES AS DICTATED FOR ALL ELECTRONICS TECHNICIANS IN THEIR LINE OF WORK.
3. WHEN PERFORMING TESTING AS DICTATED WITHIN THIS MANUAL, DO NOT CONNECT THE UNIT TO A POWER SOURCE UNTIL INSTRUCTED TO DO SO. WHEN THE POWER SUPPLY CABLE MUST BE CONNECTED, USE EXTREME CAUTION IN WORKING ON POWER SUPPLY AND OTHER ELECTRONIC COMPONENTS.
4. WHEN DISASSEMBLING OR ASSEMBLING A PRODUCT, MAKE SURE TO WEAR GLOVES TO AVOID INJURY FROM METAL PARTS WITH SHARP EDGES.

## ***WARNING***

1. REPAIRS ON EPSON PRODUCT SHOULD BE PERFORMED ONLY BY AN EPSON CERTIFIED REPAIR TECHNICIAN.
2. MAKE CERTAIN THAT THE SOURCE VOLTAGES IS THE SAME AS THE RATED VOLTAGE, LISTED ON THE SERIAL NUMBER/RATING PLATE. IF THE EPSON PRODUCT HAS A PRIMARY AC RATING DIFFERENT FROM AVAILABLE POWER SOURCE, DO NOT CONNECT IT TO THE POWER SOURCE.
3. ALWAYS VERIFY THAT THE EPSON PRODUCT HAS BEEN DISCONNECTED FROM THE POWER SOURCE BEFORE REMOVING OR REPLACING PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARDS AND/OR INDIVIDUAL CHIPS.
4. IN ORDER TO PROTECT SENSITIVE MICROPROCESSORS AND CIRCUITRY, USE STATIC DISCHARGE EQUIPMENT, SUCH AS ANTI-STATIC WRIST STRAPS, WHEN ACCESSING INTERNAL COMPONENTS.
5. REPLACE MALFUNCTIONING COMPONENTS ONLY WITH THOSE COMPONENTS BY THE MANUFACTURE; INTRODUCTION OF SECOND-SOURCE ICs OR OTHER NON-APPROVED COMPONENTS MAY DAMAGE THE PRODUCT AND VOID ANY APPLICABLE EPSON WARRANTY.
6. WHEN AIR DUSTER IS USED ON THE REPAIR AND THE MAINTENANCE WORK, THE USE OF THE AIR DUSTER PRODUCTS CONTAINING THE INFLAMMABLE GAS IS PROHIBITED.

# About This Manual

This manual describes basic functions, theory of electrical and mechanical operations, maintenance and repair procedures of the printer. The instructions and procedures included herein are intended for the experienced repair technicians, and attention should be given to the precautions on the preceding page.

## **Manual Configuration**

This manual consists of six chapters and Appendix.

### **CHAPTER 1.PRODUCT DESCRIPTIONS**

Provides a general overview and specifications of the product.

### **CHAPTER 2.OPERATING PRINCIPLES**

Describes the theory of electrical and mechanical operations of the product.

### **CHAPTER 3.TROUBLESHOOTING**

Describes the step-by-step procedures for the troubleshooting.

### **CHAPTER 4.DISASSEMBLY / ASSEMBLY**

Describes the step-by-step procedures for disassembling and assembling the product.

### **CHAPTER 5.ADJUSTMENT**

Provides Epson-approved methods for adjustment.

### **CHAPTER 6.MAINTENANCE**

Provides preventive maintenance procedures and the lists of Epson-approved lubricants and adhesives required for servicing the product.

### **CHAPTER 7.Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M (Copy Mode)**

Describes the copy mode features and basic specifications of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M

### **CHAPTER 8.APPENDIX**

Provides the following additional information for reference:

- Connectors
- Panel Menu Maps
- ASP List
- Exploded Diagrams



## **Symbols Used in this Manual**

Various symbols are used throughout this manual either to provide additional information on a specific topic or to warn of possible danger present during a procedure or an action. Be aware of all symbols when they are used, and always read NOTE, CAUTION, or WARNING messages.



Indicates an operating or maintenance procedure, practice or condition that is necessary to keep the product's quality.



Indicates an operating or maintenance procedure, practice, or condition that, if not strictly observed, could result in damage to, or destruction of, equipment.



May indicate an operating or maintenance procedure, practice or condition that is necessary to accomplish a task efficiently. It may also provide additional information that is related to a specific subject, or comment on the results achieved through a previous action.



Indicates an operating or maintenance procedure, practice or condition that, if not strictly observed, could result in injury or loss of life.



Indicates that a particular task must be carried out according to a certain standard after disassembly and before re-assembly, otherwise the quality of the components in question may be adversely affected.



Indicates that lubrication is needed for the parts after disassembly, when doing a maintenance or replacing a part with a new one.

# Revision Status

Revision	Date of Issue	Description
A	October 20, 2008	First release
B	November 25, 2008	Full-fledged revision
C	March 27, 2009	<p>Revised</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All chapters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Various cautions have been added and some wrong mentions have been corrected.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 1 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">"1.5.2 Maintenance Mode" (p.73)</a> : setting value for roll paper tension has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 3 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">"3.3 Remedies for Error Messages" (p.113)</a> : trouble shooting related to SpectroProofer has been added.</li> <li>• "Mechanical Adjustment" mentioned in the service calls descriptions has been deleted.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 4 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Some structure diagrams have been revised.</li> <li>• <a href="#">"4.4.4.9 Carriage Unit" (p.248)</a> : adjustments have been revised.</li> <li>• <a href="#">"4.4.6 Ink System Mechanism" (p.266)</a> : ink discharging method has been added.</li> <li>• <a href="#">"4.4.7 Auto Take-up Reel" (p.313)</a> : procedure has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 5 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">"5.4.5 Printhead Slant Adjustment (PF)" (p.381)</a> : adjustments have been revised.</li> <li>• <a href="#">"5.4.9 Absorber Position Check" (p.398)</a> : illustration has been added in the adjustment pattern.</li> <li>• <a href="#">"5.5.2 Skew Check" (p.406)</a> : caution has been added.</li> <li>• <a href="#">"5.7.2 Input CR/PF Motor Current" (p.419)</a> : picture of the label has been added.</li> <li>• <a href="#">"5.7.7 Cut Position Adjustment" (p.425)</a> : procedure has been revised.</li> <li>• <a href="#">"5.8 Clear Counters" (p.427)</a> : SpectroProofer counters have been added in the clear counter menu list.</li> <li>• Adjustment media types have been corrected.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 6 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">"6.2.2 Storing the Printer and Cleaning the Ink Path" (p.447)</a> : procedure has been added.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Revision	Date of Issue	Description
D	September 18, 2009	<p>Revised</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All chapters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Information of Epson Stylus Pro 7700/Epson Stylus Pro 7710/Epson Stylus Pro 9700/Epson Stylus Pro 9710 has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 1 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "1.2.6 Auto Take-up Reel Unit" (p.26) : added</li> <li>• "1.2.5 Reliability/Durability" (p.24) : revised</li> <li>• "1.3.2.2 Designated Paper" (p.29) : information about roll paper tension and take-up has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 3 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "3.3 Remedies for Error Messages" (p.113) : error has been added.</li> <li>• "3.5 Remedies for Maintenance Requests" (p.129) : "request no. 0010" and "4000" have been added.</li> <li>• "3.6 Remedies for Service Call Error" (p.131) : "error code Dxxx" has been added.</li> <li>• "3.7 Remedies for Print Quality Troubles" (p.149) : information has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 4 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "4.1.5 Differences of the parts/components between models" (p.172) : newly added.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.3 Printhead" (p.270) : adjustments have been added.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.5 Ink Cartridge Holder R" (p.277), "4.4.6.6 Ink Cartridge Holder L" (p.284) : adjustments have been revised.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.5 Ink Cartridge Holder R" (p.277), "4.4.6.6 Ink Cartridge Holder L" (p.284) : procedure has been revised.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.12 Ink Tube R" (p.306), "4.4.6.13 Ink Tube L" (p.310) : reassembly has been added.</li> <li>• "4.4.8.7 Main Board" (p.332) : adjustments have been revised.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 5 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "5.1.4 Tools for Adjustments" (p.357) : revised.</li> <li>• "5.1.5 Service Program Basic Operations" (p.358) : information has been added.</li> <li>• "5.4.1 Head Rank ID" (p.374) : caution has been added.</li> <li>• "5.6.1 AID Function check" (p.416) : caution has been added.</li> <li>• "5.7.4 Installing Firmware" (p.421) : caution has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 6 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "6.5 Lubrication" (p.452) : lubrication points list has been revised.</li> <li>• "6.5 Lubrication" (p.452) : information of lubrication amount has been added.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Revision	Date of Issue	Description
E	October 13, 2009	<p>Revised</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All chapters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Information of Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/Epson Stylus Pro WT7910 has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 1 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Information for Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/Epson Stylus Pro WT7910, ClearProof Film and basket for Epson Special Film have been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 3 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Errors for Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/Epson Stylus Pro WT7910 have been added.</li> <li>• <a href="#">"3.7 Remedies for Print Quality Troubles" (p.149)</a> : troubleshooting information of Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/Epson Stylus Pro WT7910 and related to ClearProof Film have been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 4 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">"4.1.5 Differences of the parts/components between models" (p.172)</a> : Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/Epson Stylus Pro WT7910 has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 5 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Information of Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/Epson Stylus Pro WT7910 has been added.</li> <li>• <a href="#">"5.4.1 Head Rank ID" (p.374)</a> : Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/Epson Stylus Pro WT7910 has been added in caution.</li> <li>• <a href="#">"5.4.2 Head Cleaning" (p.376)</a> : information about cleaning has been newly added for Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/Epson Stylus Pro WT7910.</li> <li>• Information about adjustment has been added (Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250) must be used for Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/Epson Stylus Pro WT7910 when adjustment).</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 7 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">"8.2 Panel Menu Map" (p.468)</a> : panel menu map of Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/Epson Stylus Pro WT7910 has been added.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Revision	Date of Issue	Description
F	February 12, 2009	<p>Revised</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Chapter 1 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "1.2.1 Basic Specifications" (p.20) : nozzle configuration has been revised.</li> <li>• "1.3.3 Printable Area" (p.41) : minimum for roll paper width has been revised.</li> <li>• "1.5.3 Serviceman Mode" (p.74) : "CL5" in "C/D" column in "Cleaning" menu of Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/Epson Stylus Pro WT7910 has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 3 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "3.6 Remedies for Service Call Error" (p.131) : error information for 1427 and 1428 has been revised, remedies for 1A51 to 1A53, 1A39 and 1A40 have been revised.</li> <li>• "3.7.2.2 Cautions for using white ink" (p.153) : newly added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 4 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "4.4.6.1 Ink System Unit" (p.266) : caution about Wiper Cleaner Assy when replacing the Ink System Unit has been added.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.5 Ink Cartridge Holder R" (p.277) etc. : part number for "SEAL RUBBER, JOINT, ASP" has been revised.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.5 Ink Cartridge Holder R" (p.277) etc. : FFC installation method in reassembly has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 5 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "5.1.5 Service Program Basic Operations" (p.358) : caution for saving destination for Service Program has been added.</li> <li>• "5.3.1 CR Timing Belt Tension Adjustment" (p.364) etc. : model number for sonic tension meter has been revised, input values have been revised.</li> <li>• "5.7.8 Ink Holder Adjustment" (p.426) : caution not to insert the ink cartridges before the adjustment has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 7 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "8.2 Panel Menu Map" (p.468) : added and revised for all models.</li> <li>• "8.5 Exploded Diagram" (p.490) : revised.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
G	May 20, 2010	<p>Revised</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All chapters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Information of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 1 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "1.2.2 Electric Specifications" (p.21) : correction of Electric Specifications</li> <li>• "1.2.5 Reliability/Durability" (p.24) : correction</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 3 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "3.2 List of Error Messages" (p.107) : messages in copy mode of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M have been added.</li> <li>• "3.3 Remedies for Error Messages" (p.113) : troubleshooting information related to the copy mode of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 7 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M (Copy Mode)" (p.459) : newly added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 8 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "APPENDIX" (p.465) : moved from Chapter 7.</li> <li>• "8.2 Panel Menu Map" (p.468) : panel menu map of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M has been added.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Revision	Date of Issue	Description
H	October 8, 2010	<p>Revised</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All chapters <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Information of Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908 has been added.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 4 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "4.4.6.7 Ink Holder Board Assy L" (p.290) : newly added.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.8 Ink Holder Board Assy R" (p.292) : newly added.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.9 AID Board" (p.294) : procedure has been added due to change in shape.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Chapter 5 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "5.5.4 T&amp;B&amp;S Adjustment" (p.409) : correction.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Revision	Date of Issue	Description
I	January 13, 2012	<p>Revised</p> <p>■ Chapter 1</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "1.2.1 Basic Specifications" (p.20) : Resolution of 7700/7710/770M/7710M/9700/9710 has been changed.</li> <li>• "1.2.5 Reliability/Durability" (p.24): Life of ink tube used for Pro7890/7908 has been revised. / Cutter life was revised.</li> </ul> <p>■ Chapter 3</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "3.2 List of Error Messages" (p.107): Some messages have been changed.</li> <li>• "3.3 Remedies for Error Messages" (p.113): Some messages have been changed.</li> <li>• "3.4 Remedies for Error Messages related to SpectroProofer/Auto Take-up Reel" (p.123): Error 80 was added.</li> <li>• "3.5 Remedies for Maintenance Requests" (p.129): Maintenance call 8000 was added.</li> <li>• "3.6 Remedies for Service Call Error" (p.131): Service call error 1488 was added. / Service call error D131 was revised.</li> </ul> <p>■ Chapter 4</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "4.1.1 Precautions" (p.167): Type of the lithium battery has been added. / Cautions have been added.</li> <li>• "4.1.5.2 Identification method for the parts/components between models" (p.182): Identification information for PUMP,CAP ASSY,ESL,ASP has been added.</li> <li>• "4.4.2.9 Front Cover (Middle)" (p.213): Figure (location of washers) in "Caution" has been changed.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.5 Ink Cartridge Holder R" (p.277): Some figures have been added, and some information has been deleted.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.6 Ink Cartridge Holder L" (p.284): Some figures have been added, and some information has been deleted.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.7 Ink Holder Board Assy L" (p.290): "Adjustment" was added.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.8 Ink Holder Board Assy R" (p.292): "Adjustment" was added.</li> <li>• "4.4.6.11 Ink Selector" (p.300): "Check point" was added.</li> </ul> <p>■ Chapter 5</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• "5.1.2 Adjustment Items and the Order by Repaired Part" (p.353): Ink Holder Board Assy was added.</li> <li>• "5.1.4 Tools for Adjustments" (p.357): Information has been added.</li> <li>• "5.3.3 Head PG Adjustment" (p.369): revised.</li> <li>• "Figure 5-31. Determination of Visual Check Pattern" (p.379): revised.</li> <li>• "5.4.8 Colorimetric Calibration (Color ID) with SpectroProofer" (p.385): revised.</li> <li>• "5.5.3 Band Feed" (p.407): revised.</li> <li>• "5.5.4 T&amp;B&amp;S Adjustment" (p.409): revised.</li> <li>• "5.7.2 Input CR/PF Motor Current" (p.419): revised.</li> <li>• "5.7.6 Input MAC Address" (p.424): revised.</li> <li>• "5.7.8 Ink Holder Adjustment" (p.426): revised.</li> </ul>

# Contents

## Chapter 1 PRODUCT DESCRIPTION

1.1 Product Description .....	16
1.2 Basic Specifications .....	20
1.2.1 Basic Specifications .....	20
1.2.2 Electric Specifications .....	21
1.2.3 Ink Specifications .....	22
1.2.4 General Specifications .....	23
1.2.5 Reliability/Durability .....	24
1.2.6 Auto Take-up Reel Unit .....	26
1.3 Printing Specifications .....	27
1.3.1 Paper Feed Specifications .....	27
1.3.2 Paper Specification .....	27
1.3.3 Printable Area .....	41
1.3.4 Borderless Printing Specification .....	42
1.3.5 Cutting of Roll Paper .....	43
1.4 Hardware Specifications .....	44
1.4.1 Dimensions and Weight .....	44
1.4.2 Part Names .....	46
1.4.3 Option Correspondence Table .....	47
1.5 Control Panel .....	48
1.5.1 Menu Mode Settings .....	58
1.5.2 Maintenance Mode .....	73
1.5.3 Serviceman Mode .....	74

## Chapter 2 OPERATING PRINCIPLES

2.1 Main Body .....	95
2.1.1 Housing .....	95
2.1.2 Electric Circuit Components .....	96
2.1.3 Carriage Mechanism .....	97
2.1.4 APG Mechanism .....	98
2.1.5 Paper Feed Mechanism .....	99
2.1.6 Ink System .....	100
2.2 Options .....	103

2.2.1 Auto Take-up Reel .....	103
2.2.2 SpectroProofer .....	104

## Chapter 3 TROUBLE SHOOTING

3.1 Overview .....	106
3.1.1 Preliminary Check .....	106
3.1.2 Troubleshooting Procedure .....	106
3.2 List of Error Messages .....	107
3.3 Remedies for Error Messages .....	113
3.4 Remedies for Error Messages related to SpectroProofer/Auto Take-up Reel ..	123
3.5 Remedies for Maintenance Requests .....	129
3.6 Remedies for Service Call Error .....	131
3.7 Remedies for Print Quality Troubles .....	149
3.7.1 Remedies for Print Quality Troubles .....	149
3.7.2 Remedies for Print Quality Troubles when Using Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/ WT7910 .....	152

## Chapter 4 DISASSEMBLY & ASSEMBLY

4.1 Overview .....	167
4.1.1 Precautions .....	167
4.1.2 Orientation Definition .....	169
4.1.3 Recommended Tools .....	170
4.1.4 Cautions when replacing the Main Board Assy/Power Supply Board Assy .. 171	
4.1.5 Differences of the parts/components between models .....	172
4.2 Parts Diagram .....	188
4.3 Disassembly Flowchart .....	195
4.4 Disassembly and Assembly Procedure .....	201
4.4.1 Special operation for servicing .....	201
4.4.2 Housing .....	203
4.4.3 Electric Circuit Components .....	228
4.4.4 Carriage Mechanism .....	236



4.4.5 Paper Feed Mechanism .....	250
4.4.6 Ink System Mechanism .....	266
4.4.7 Auto Take-up Reel .....	313
4.4.8 SpectroProofer .....	325

## Chapter 5 ADJUSTMENT

5.1 Overview .....	352
5.1.1 Precautions .....	352
5.1.2 Adjustment Items and the Order by Repaired Part .....	353
5.1.3 Description of Adjustments .....	355
5.1.4 Tools for Adjustments .....	357
5.1.5 Service Program Basic Operations .....	358
5.2 NV-RAM BACKUP UTILITY .....	363
5.3 CR Related Adjustment .....	364
5.3.1 CR Timing Belt Tension Adjustment .....	364
5.3.2 CR Encoder Sensor Adjustment .....	368
5.3.3 Head PG Adjustment .....	369
5.3.4 Cleaning PG Adjustment .....	372
5.4 Head Related Adjustments .....	374
5.4.1 Head Rank ID .....	374
5.4.2 Head Cleaning .....	376
5.4.3 Nozzle Check .....	377
5.4.4 Printhead Slant Adjustment (CR) .....	378
5.4.5 Printhead Slant Adjustment (PF) .....	381
5.4.6 Auto Uni-D Adjustment .....	383
5.4.7 Auto Bi-D Adjustment .....	384
5.4.8 Colorimetric Calibration (Color ID) with SpectroProofer .....	385
5.4.9 Absorber Position Check .....	398
5.4.10 Ink Mark Sensor Height Adjustment .....	399
5.4.11 Ink Mark Sensor Adjustment .....	400
5.4.12 Air Leak Check for Ink Supply System .....	401
5.4.13 Initial Ink Charge Flag ON/OFF .....	403
5.4.14 Initial Ink Charge .....	403
5.5 PF Related Adjustment .....	404
5.5.1 PF Timing Belt Tension Adjustment .....	404
5.5.2 Skew Check .....	406
5.5.3 Band Feed .....	407
5.5.4 T&B&S Adjustment .....	409

5.5.5 Paper Thickness Sensor Position Adjustment .....	411
5.5.6 PF Encoder Sensor Adjustment .....	414
5.5.7 Rear Sensor AD Adjustment .....	415
5.6 AID Related Adjustment .....	416
5.6.1 AID Function check .....	416
5.7 Other Adjustment .....	418
5.7.1 Setting Destination .....	418
5.7.2 Input CR/PF Motor Current .....	419
5.7.3 RTC and USB ID .....	420
5.7.4 Installing Firmware .....	421
5.7.5 Input Serial Number .....	423
5.7.6 Input MAC Address .....	424
5.7.7 Cut Position Adjustment .....	425
5.7.8 Ink Holder Adjustment .....	426
5.8 Clear Counters .....	427
5.9 Tests .....	428
5.9.1 Network Communication Check .....	428
5.9.2 Suction Fan Operation Check .....	428
5.9.3 Color LCD Display Check .....	429
5.9.4 Button Operation Check .....	429
5.9.5 Inspection of the SpectroProofer .....	430
5.10 Check Adjustments Results .....	443

## Chapter 6 MAINTENANCE

6.1 Overview .....	445
6.2 Setting Up/Storing the Printer .....	447
6.2.1 Setting Up .....	447
6.2.2 Storing the Printer and Cleaning the Ink Path .....	447
6.3 Transportation .....	449
6.4 Cleaning .....	450
6.5 Lubrication .....	452

## Chapter 7 Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M (Copy Mode)

7.1 Overview .....	460
7.2 Basic Specifications .....	461
7.2.1 Scanning Specifications .....	461

7.3 Printing Specifications .....	461
7.4 Copy Mode .....	462

## Chapter 8 APPENDIX

---

8.1 Block Wiring Diagram .....	466
8.1.1 Main Body .....	466
8.1.2 Auto Take-up Reel .....	467
8.1.3 SpectroProofer .....	467
8.2 Panel Menu Map .....	468
8.2.1 Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/7890/7908/9890/9908 .....	468
8.2.2 Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710 .....	471
8.2.3 Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 .....	474
8.2.4 Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M (Copy Mode) .....	477
8.3 Part names used in this manual .....	479
8.4 Parts List .....	481
8.5 Exploded Diagram .....	490

**CHAPTER**

**1**

# **PRODUCT DESCRIPTION**

## 1.1 Product Description

Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/9700/9710/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/9890/9908/7890/7908 is a wide-format color inkjet printer that supports up to 44 inch-wide (Super B0)/24 inch-wide (Super A1) paper. The main features are;

- Supports very large-sized paper

Maximum available paper width:

Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910

9890/9908: 1,118 mm (44 inch)

Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/

7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910

7890/7908: 610 mm (24 inch)

- Ink configuration

- Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910

Installs the following 11 ink cartridges including newly developed colors; orange and green. The ink selector function is equipped, and black ink can be switched between Photo Black and Matte Black depending on media type.

**Table 1-1. Ink Colors (Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910)**

Color	Abbreviation
Photo Black	PK
Matte Black	MK
Cyan	C
Vivid Magenta	VM
Yellow	Y
Orange	O
Green	G
Light Cyan	LC
Vivid Light Magenta	VLM
Light Black	LK
Light Light Black	LLK

- Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910

Consists of the following 5 colors. Switching between photo Black and Matte Black by the ink selector is not necessary, because ink is assigned in colors by nozzles.

**Table 1-2. Ink Colors (Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710)**

Color	Abbreviation
Photo Black	PK
Matte Black	MK
Cyan	C
Vivid Magenta	VM
Yellow	Y

- Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910

Consists of the following 9 colors including newly developed white. When the white ink is not necessary to use, it can be changed to cleaning liquid to protect the printhead.

**Table 1-3. Ink Colors (Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910)**

Color	Abbreviation
Photo Black	PK
White	WT
Cyan	C
Vivid Magenta	VM
Yellow	Y
Orange	O
Green	G
Light Cyan	LC
Vivid Light Magenta	VLM
Cleaning Liquid	CL

■ Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908

Consists of the following 9 colors. The ink selector function is equipped, and black ink can be switched between Photo Black and Matte Black depending on media type.

**Table 1-4. Ink Colors (Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908)**

Color	Abbreviation
Photo Black	PK
Matte Black	MK
Cyan	C
Vivid Magenta	VM
Yellow	Y
Light Cyan	LC
Vivid Light Magenta	VLM
Light Black	LK
Light Light Black	LLK

□ Super high print quality

Achieves high quality printing, resolution of up to 2880 x 1440 dpi, and variable dot sizes (minimal 3.5 picoliter)

□ Lower running cost

- Employs super high-capacity independent ink cartridges
- Equips the on-demand cleaning function without excessive suction of ink using the independent ink suction system for every two rows and the AID function

□ Media handling

- Supports a variety of media
- Spindle-less makes roll paper handling easier
- Paper basket comes as standard
- Stores roll paper usage history and updates it automatically by reading a barcode. This enables automatic detection of remaining amount of the paper.
- Equips high speed auto cutter for roll paper

■ Borderless print is supported

□ The latest-type RIP

Supports software RIP made by other companies

□ Copy function (Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M only)

Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M offers the following functions with the scanner (GT-2500) connected in addition to the functions of Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710.

- Enlarge copy  
Enlarges the image scanned by the scanner and prints the enlarged image.
- User interface  
Copying can be started with one touch of the [OK] button on Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M or the [Start] button on the scanner.
- Printing from a PC  
Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710 automatically switches to the print mode when it receives a print job from a host computer.

☐ Nozzle set configuration

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	C	VM	PK/MK	GY	O	G	LGY	Y	VLM	LC
Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	C	VM	Y	PK	MK	MK	PK	Y	VM	C
Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	C	VM	WT/CL	CL	O	G	PK	Y	VLM	LC
Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908	C	VM	PK/MK	GY	---	---	LGY	Y	VLM	LC

Note : 1-row starting from the left facing the front of the printer.

☐ Ink configuration

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	C	O	Y	LC	MK	PK	VM	GY	G	LGY	VLM
Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	VM	C	PK	Y	MK	---	---	---	---	---	---
Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	C	O	Y	LC	WT	CL	VM	CL	G	PK	VLM
Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908	C	---	Y	LC	MK	PK	VM	GY	---	LGY	VLM

Note : 1-row starting from the left facing the front of the printer.

☐ Options

The following options are available.

- Auto Take-up Reel (Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908 only)  
Winds the roll paper automatically
- SpectroProofer  
(Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/9890/9908/7890/7908 only)  
Enables color measurement after printing

□ SpectroProofer (Option)

- Mounting the SpectroProofer equipped with the drying function makes automatic color measurement after printing available.
- Full-fledged spectrophotometer realizes high precision color measurement.
- Selectable from specifications with/without the UV filter, which enables the users to configure colorimetric system adjusted with their workflow
- Cooling fans for drying ink stabilizes color in less than 2 minutes.
- Paper pressing function prevents degrading precision of colorimetry caused by floating of paper.
- Selectable from the white backing or the black backing

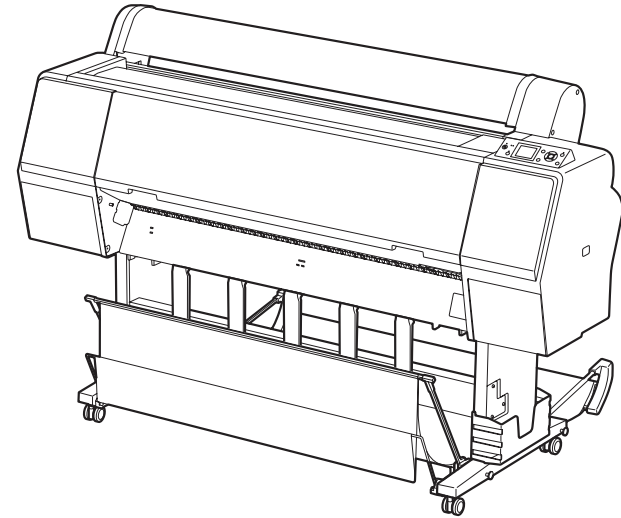


Figure 1-1. External View (Main body)

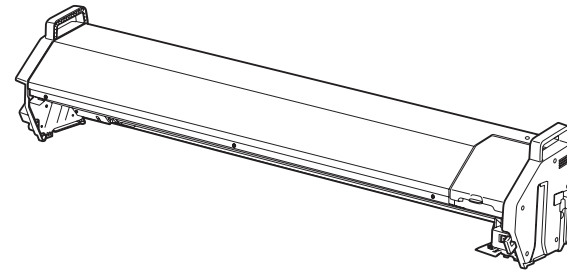


Figure 1-2. External View (SpectroProofer)

## 1.2 Basic Specifications

### 1.2.1 Basic Specifications

Item	Specification			
	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908
Print method	On-demand inkjet			
Nozzle configuration	Black system: 360 nozzles x three colors (Photo black/Matte black, Light black, Light light black)	Black system: 360 nozzles x two rows x two colors (Photo black, Matte black)	Black system: 360 nozzles x one row x one color (Photo black) White system: 360 nozzles x one row x one color	Black system: 360 nozzles x three colors (Photo black/Matte black, Light black, Light light black)
	Color system: 360 nozzles x seven colors (Cyan, Light Cyan, Vivid magenta, Vivid light magenta, Yellow, Orange, Green)	Color system: 360 nozzles x two rows x three colors (Cyan, Vivid magenta, Yellow)	Color system: 360 nozzles x seven colors (Cyan, Light Cyan, Vivid magenta, Vivid light magenta, Yellow, Orange, Green) Maintenance liquid: 360 nozzles x 1	Color system: 360 nozzles x five colors (Cyan, Light Cyan, Vivid magenta, Vivid light magenta, Yellow)
Printing direction	Bi-directional shortest-direction printing (high-speed return, high-speed skip)			
Maximum resolution	2,880dpi x 1,440dpi	1,440dpi x 1,440dpi		2,880dpi x 1,440dpi
Control code	ESC/P2, ESC/P3 (commands are nondisclosure)			
Paper feed method	Friction			
RAM	256 MB for Main, 64 MB for Network			
Interface	USB 2.0 High Speed Ethernet 10/100			



## 1.2.2 Electric Specifications

Item		Specification
Rated voltage		100 to 240 VAC
Input voltage range		90 to 264 VAC
Rated frequency		50 to 60 Hz
Input frequency range		49.5 to 60.5 Hz
Rated current		1.0 A to 0.5 A
Power consumption	Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910	Operating: Approx. 80 W Sleep mode: Approx. 16 W or less Standby: Approx. 1 W or less
	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910	Operating: Approx. 70 W Sleep mode: Approx. 16 W or less Standby: Approx. 1 W or less
	Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710	Operating: Approx. 85 W Sleep mode: Approx. 14 W or less Standby: Approx. 1 W or less
	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Operating: Approx. 60 W Sleep mode: Approx. 14 W or less Standby: Approx. 1 W or less
	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710	Operating: Approx. 80 W Sleep mode: Approx. 14 W or less Standby: Approx. 1 W or less
	Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M	Operating: Approx. 80 W Sleep mode: Approx. 16 W or less Standby: Approx. 1 W or less
	Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908	Operating: Approx. 80 W Sleep mode: Approx. 16 W or less Standby: Approx. 1 W or less
	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908	Operating: Approx. 70 W Sleep mode: Approx. 16 W or less Standby: Approx. 1 W or less
Insulation resistance		10MΩ or more (between AC line and chassis at 500 VDC)
Dielectric strength		1.0 kVrms AC for 1 min. or 1.2 kVrms AC for 1 sec. (between AC line and chassis)

Item	Specification
Leak current	0.25 mA or less
Compliance with regulations	Conforms to International Energy Star Program (Category: the harmonic restraint measure guideline) Conforms to VCCI Class B (with full options installed)

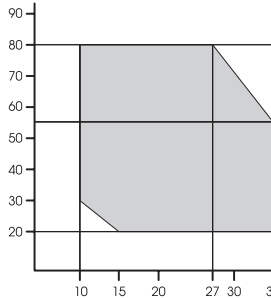
### 1.2.3 Ink Specifications

Item		Specification			
		Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908
Form		Exclusive ink cartridge			
Pigment Ink colors		Black system: Photo black, Matte black, Light black, Light light black	Black system: Photo black, Matte black	Black system: Photo black	Black system: Photo black, Matte black, Light black, Light light black
				White system: White	
		Color system: Cyan, Light Cyan, Vivid magenta, Vivid light magenta, Yellow, Orange, Green	Color system: Cyan, Vivid magenta, Yellow	Color system: Cyan, Light Cyan, Vivid magenta, Vivid light magenta, Yellow, Orange, Green	Color system: Cyan, Light Cyan, Vivid magenta, Vivid light magenta, Yellow
				Maintenance system: Cleaning Liquid	
Cartridge life		By the date written on the package or the cartridge (at normal temperature)			
Guaranteed life after installation		Within 6 months after mounted in the printer			
Storage	Uninstalled (packed)	-20 to 40 °C (within 1 month under 40 °C)			
	Installed	-20 to 40°C (within 1 month under 40 °C)			
	Transporting (packed)	-20 to 60 °C (within 72 hours under 60 °C, and within 1 month under 40 °C)			
Capacity		350 ml/700 ml	150 ml/350 ml/700 ml		
Dimensions	150 ml	N/A	40 (W) x 240 (L) x 107 (H)		
	350 ml	40 (W) x 240 (L) x 107 (H)			
	700ml	40 (W) x 320 (L) x 107 (H)			
Maintenance Tank		C12C890191 / C12C890193	C12C890501 / C12C890502	C12C890191 / C12C890193	C12C890191 / C12C890193

**CAUTION**


- Ink will be frozen if left under below -15°C circumstances for a long time. In such a case, leave it in the room temperature more than 4 hours to melt the frozen ink before using it. (no condensation)
- Never disassemble ink cartridges or refill ink in them.

1.2.4 General Specifications

Item	Specification																								
Temperature	Operating: 10 to 35 °C Storage (before unpacked): -20 to 60 °C (within 120 hours under 60 °C, and within 1 month under 40 °C) Storage (after unpacked): -20 to 40 °C (within 1 month under 40°C)																								
Humidity	Operating: 20 to 80% (no condensation) Storage (before unpacked): -20 to 85% (no condensation) Storage (after unpacked): 5 to 85% (no condensation)  <div><div>Humidity (%)</div><div>Temperature (°C)</div></div> <table><caption>Humidity vs Temperature Graph Data</caption><tr><th>Temperature (°C)</th><th>Operating Humidity Range (%)</th><th>Storage Humidity Range (%)</th></tr><tr><td>10</td><td>20 - 80</td><td>5 - 85</td></tr><tr><td>15</td><td>20 - 80</td><td>5 - 85</td></tr><tr><td>20</td><td>20 - 80</td><td>5 - 85</td></tr><tr><td>27</td><td>20 - 80</td><td>5 - 85</td></tr><tr><td>30</td><td>20 - 55</td><td>5 - 85</td></tr><tr><td>35</td><td>20 - 55</td><td>5 - 85</td></tr><tr><td>40</td><td>-</td><td>5 - 85</td></tr></table>	Temperature (°C)	Operating Humidity Range (%)	Storage Humidity Range (%)	10	20 - 80	5 - 85	15	20 - 80	5 - 85	20	20 - 80	5 - 85	27	20 - 80	5 - 85	30	20 - 55	5 - 85	35	20 - 55	5 - 85	40	-	5 - 85
Temperature (°C)	Operating Humidity Range (%)	Storage Humidity Range (%)																							
10	20 - 80	5 - 85																							
15	20 - 80	5 - 85																							
20	20 - 80	5 - 85																							
27	20 - 80	5 - 85																							
30	20 - 55	5 - 85																							
35	20 - 55	5 - 85																							
40	-	5 - 85																							

## 1.2.5 Reliability/Durability

### ☐ Main Body

Item		Specification						
		Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908
Operating life of the printer		Until any one of the following conditions is met. <input type="checkbox"/> 5 years <input type="checkbox"/> Carriage life: 5,000,000 paths <input type="checkbox"/> Approx. 16,000 pages (Super B0 size/Plain paper, Quality mode/ 720x720 dpi)	Until any one of the following conditions is met. <input type="checkbox"/> 5 years <input type="checkbox"/> Carriage life: 5,000,000 paths <input type="checkbox"/> Approx. 40,000 pages (Super B0 size/Plain paper, Quality mode/ 720x720 dpi)	Until any one of the following conditions is met. <input type="checkbox"/> 5 years <input type="checkbox"/> Carriage life: 2,900,000 paths <input type="checkbox"/> Approx. 16,000 pages (Super A1 size/Plain paper/Quality mode/ 720x720 dpi)	Until any one of the following conditions is met. <input type="checkbox"/> 5 years <input type="checkbox"/> Carriage life: 2,900,000 paths <input type="checkbox"/> Approx. 40,000 pages (Super A1 size/Plain paper/Quality mode/ 720x720 dpi)	Until any one of the following conditions is met. <input type="checkbox"/> 5 years <input type="checkbox"/> Carriage life: 2,900,000 paths <input type="checkbox"/> Approx. 7,700 pages (A2 size/ClearProof Film/720x1440 dpi) <input type="checkbox"/> Approx. 10,000 pages (A2 size/EPSON paper/720x720 dpi)	Until any one of the following conditions is met. <input type="checkbox"/> 5 years <input type="checkbox"/> Carriage life: 5,000,000 paths <input type="checkbox"/> Approx. 20,000 pages (Super B0 size/Plain paper, Quick mode/ 360x720 dpi)	Until any one of the following conditions is met. <input type="checkbox"/> 5 years <input type="checkbox"/> Carriage life: 2,900,000 paths <input type="checkbox"/> Approx. 20,000 pages (Super A1 size/Plain paper, Quick mode/ 360x720 dpi)
Cutter life (reference)		<input type="checkbox"/> Standard paper: approx. 20,000 cuts or more <input type="checkbox"/> Hard cut paper: approx. 5,000 cuts or more				<input type="checkbox"/> Standard paper: approx. 20,000 cuts or more <input type="checkbox"/> Hard cut paper: approx. 5,000 cuts or more <input type="checkbox"/> ClearProof Film: approx. 10,000 cuts or more	<input type="checkbox"/> Standard paper: approx. 20,000 cuts or more <input type="checkbox"/> Hard cut paper: approx. 5,000 cuts or more	
Parts life	RTC backup battery*	5 years or longer						
	Pump Cap motor	Approx. 20,000 pages (reference value) (Super B0 size /EPSON paper/Quality mode/ Continuous printing/720x720 dpi)		Approx. 20,000 pages (reference value) (Super A1 size /EPSON paper/Quality mode/ Continuous printing/720x720 dpi)		Approx. 20,000 pages (Super A1 size/EPSON paper/Continuous printing/720x720 dpi)	Approx. 20,000 pages (reference value) (Super B0 size /EPSON paper/Quality mode/ Continuous printing/720x720 dpi)	
	CR motor*, Drive pulley*, Carriage unit*, FFC*	Approx. 5,000,000 paths		Approx. 2,900,000 paths			Approx. 5,000,000 paths	
	Ink tube	10,000,000 paths		5,800,000 paths			10,000,000 paths	5,800,000 paths

Note \*: These values are provided only as a guide. Service call is not indicated for these parts.

☐ SpectroProofer

Item	Specified values
Mounter	Until any one of the following conditions is met. <input type="checkbox"/> 5 years <input type="checkbox"/> 200,000 paths for color measurement

## 1.2.6 Auto Take-up Reel Unit

Item	Specified values
Paper Width	406 to 1,118 mm
Paper length	2-inch core: 1.3 to 40 m 3-inch core: 1.6 to 30.5 m
Rotation speed	Max. 40 rpm
Weight	6.9 kg
Environment	Temperature: 10 to 35 °C Humidity: 20 to 80%
Rated voltage	AC 100 to 240 V
Input voltage range	AV 90 to 264 V
Rated frequency range	50 to 60 Hz
Input frequency range	49.5 to 60.5 Hz
Rated current	0.2 A
Power consumption	Approx. 9 W Approx. 3 W in Ready Mode

## 1.3 Printing Specifications

### 1.3.1 Paper Feed Specifications

Item	Specification
Paper feed method	Friction feed
Return pitch	2.2049 $\mu$ m (1/11,520 inch)
Paper feeder	<input type="checkbox"/> Roll paper manual feed <input type="checkbox"/> Cut sheet manual feed
Feed speed	300 ms/ (1/6 inch)

### 1.3.2 Paper Specification

#### 1.3.2.1 Supported Paper

The following explains the supported paper sizes and thickness.



- Do not use wrinkled, scuffed, torn, or soiled paper.
- Load paper just before printing. Do not leave paper loaded on the printer when not printing. Store paper properly following the instruction that comes with the paper.
- When large quantities of paper need to be prepared in advance, make a test print using the paper before purchase.

#### ROLL PAPER

Item	Specification
Paper type	Plain paper, recycled paper, others
Roll paper size	2-inch core: Outer diameter 103 mm or less x 1 roll 3-inch core: Outer diameter 150 mm or less x 1 roll
Paper size W x L (within roll paper size)	<input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908: 2-inch core: 254 to 1118 mm x 45 m 3-inch core: 254 to 1118 mm x 202 m <input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7700M/7710/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908: 2-inch core: 254 to 610 mm x 45 m 3-inch core: 254 to 610 mm x 202 m
Paper thickness	Plain paper, recycled paper: 0.08 to 0.11 mm (Weight: 64 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) Others: 0.08 to 0.50 mm
Available width for borderless printing	10 inches, 300 mm, 13 inches (Super A3), 16 inches, 17 inches, 515 mm (B2), 594 mm (A1), 24 inches (Super A1), 728 mm (B1), 36 inches (Super A0), 44 inches (Super B0)

Note : Borderless printing is not available for Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910.

## CUT SHEET

Item	Specification
Paper type	Plain paper, recycled paper, others
Paper type	<input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908: Width: 210 to 1118 mm Length: 279.4 to 1580 mm (A4 to Super B0)
	<input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7700M/7710/7900/7910/ WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908: Width: 210 to 610 mm Length: 279.4 to 914 mm (A4 to Super A1)
Paper thickness	Plain paper, recycled paper: 0.08 to 0.11 mm (Weight: 64 to 90 g/m <sup>2</sup> )
	Others <input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/ 7910/9700/9710/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910 ■ Length 279 to 728 mm: 0.08 to 1.50 mm ■ Length over 728 to 2032 mm: 0.08 to 0.50 mm <input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908 ■ Length 279 to 762 mm: 0.08 to 1.50 mm ■ Length over 762 to 1580 mm: 0.08 to 0.50 mm <input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908 ■ Length 279 to 762 mm: 0.08 to 1.50 mm ■ Length over 762 to 914 mm: 0.08 to 0.50 mm
Available width for borderless printing <sup>*1</sup>	10 inches, 300 mm, 13 inches (Super A3), 16 inches, 17 inches, 515 mm (B2), 594 mm (A1), 24 inches (Super A1), 728 mm (B1) <sup>*2</sup> , 36 inches (Super A0) <sup>*2</sup> , 44 inches (Super B0) <sup>*2</sup>

Note \*1: Borderless printing is not available for Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910.

\*2: Not supported for Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908.



### 1.3.2.2 Designated Paper

#### ROLL PAPER

Note \*1: OK!: Recommended for borderless printing

OK: Borderless printing is available

NA: Borderless printing is NOT available

Borderless printing on the borderless printing available paper (OK) may result in drop in print quality or fail to produce complete borderless (white margins may appear) due to expanding of the paper. Borderless printing can be made on commercially available paper, however, note that the availability is restricted by the paper size.

\*2: Not supported for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.

\*3: Auto Take-up Reel Unit is used. (only Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908)

\*4: When using the tensioner included in the Auto Take-up Reel Unit of Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910.

Table 1-5. Designated Roll Paper List

Name	Size		Borderless Print <sup>*1</sup>	Thickness	Core Diameter	Roll Paper Tension	ICC Profile Upper: Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908 Lower:Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Driver Setting		Take-up <sup>*3</sup>		Auto Cut	Black Ink	Applied model		
	mm	inch								Forward	Backward			Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	ProWT7900/WT7910
Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)	406mm	16"	OK!	0.27mm	3"	Standard	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 PremiumGlossyPhotoPaper250.icc • Matte Black: ---	Photo Paper	Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)	✓	✓	OK	PK	✓	✓	✓
	610mm	24"					• Photo Black: Epson Stylus Pro 7700_7710_9700_9710 PremiumGlossyPhotoPaper250.icc • Matte Black: ---									
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*3	44"*2														
Premium Semigloss Photo Paper (250)	406mm	16"	OK!	0.27mm	3"	Standard	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 PremiumGlossyPhotoPaper250.icc • Matte Black: ---	Photo Paper	Premium Semigloss Photo Paper (250)	✓	✓	OK	PK	✓	✓	
	610mm	24"					• Photo Black: Epson Stylus Pro 7700_7710_9700_9710 PremiumGlossyPhotoPaper250.icc • Matte Black: ---									
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*2	44"*2														

Table 1-5. Designated Roll Paper List

Name	Size		Borderless Print <sup>*1</sup>	Thickness	Core Diameter	Roll Paper Tension	ICC Profile Upper: Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908 Lower:Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Driver Setting		Take-up <sup>*3</sup>		Auto Cut	Black Ink	Applied model		
	mm	inch								Forward	Backward			Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	ProWT7900/WT7910
Premium Luster Photo Paper (260)	254mm	10"	OK!	0.27mm	3"	Standard	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 PremiumLusterPhotoPaper260.icc • Matte Black: ---	Photo Paper	Premium Luster Photo Paper (260)	NA	NA	OK	PK	✓	✓	
	300mm	12"														
	406mm	16"														
	508mm	20"	NA				• Photo Black: Epson Stylus Pro 7700_7710_9700_9710 PremiumLusterPhotoPaper260.icc • Matte Black: ---			✓	✓					
	610mm	24"	OK!													
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*2	44"*2														
Premium Semimatte Photo Paper (260)	406mm	16"	OK!	0.27mm	3"	Standard	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 PremiumSemimattePhotoPaper260.icc • Matte Black: ---	Photo Paper	Premium Semimatte Photo Paper (260)	✓	✓	OK	PK	✓	✓	
	610mm	24"														
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*2	44"*2														
Photo Paper Gloss 250	432mm	17"	OK!	0.25mm	3"	Normal	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 PhotoPaperGloss250.icc • Matte Black: ---	Photo Paper	Photo Paper Gloss 250	✓	✓	OK	PK	✓	✓	
	610mm	24"														
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*2	44"*2														
							• Photo Black:Epson Stylus Pro 7700_7710_9700_9710PhotoPaper Gloss 250.icc • Matte Black: ---									

Table 1-5. Designated Roll Paper List

Name	Size		Borderless Print <sup>*1</sup>	Thickness	Core Diameter	Roll Paper Tension	ICC Profile Upper: Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908 Lower:Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Driver Setting		Take-up <sup>*3</sup>		Auto Cut	Black Ink	Applied model		
	mm	inch								Forward	Backward			Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	ProWT7900/WT7910
Premium Glossy Photo Paper (170)	420mm (A2)		NA	0.18mm	2"	Standard	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 PremiumGlossyPhotoPaper170.icc • Matte Black: ---	Photo Paper	Premium Glossy Photo Paper (170)	✓	✓	OK	PK	✓	✓	
	610mm	24"	OK!													
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*2	44"*2														
Premium Semigloss Photo Paper (170)	420mm (A2)		NA	0.18mm	2"	Standard	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 PremiumSemiglossPhotoPaper170.icc • Matte Black: ---	Photo Paper	Premium Semigloss Photo Paper (170)	✓	✓	OK	PK	✓	✓	
	610mm	24"	OK!													
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*2	44"*2														
Epson Proofing Paper White Semimatte	330mm	13"	OK	0.25mm	3"	Standard	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 EpsonProofingPaperWhiteSemimatte.icc • Matte Black: ---	Proofing Paper	Epson Proofing Paper White Semimatte	---	---	OK	PK	✓		✓
	432mm	17"														
	610mm	24"														
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*2	44"*2														

Table 1-5. Designated Roll Paper List

Name	Size		Borderless Print*1	Thickness	Core Diameter	Roll Paper Tension	ICC Profile Upper: Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908 Lower: Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Driver Setting		Take-up*3		Auto Cut	Black Ink	Applied model		
	mm	inch								Forward	Backward			Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	ProWT7900/WT7910
Epson Proofing Paper Publication	330mm	13"	OK	0.20mm	3"	Standard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 EpsonProofingPaperPublication.icc</li> <li>Matte Black: ---</li> </ul>	Proofing Paper	Epson Proofing Paper Publication	---	---	OK	PK	✓		
	432mm	17"								✓	✓					
	610mm	24"								✓	✓					
	914mm*2	36"*2								---	---					
	1118mm*2	44"*2								✓	✓					
Epson Proofing Paper Commercial	330mm	13"	OK	0.20mm	3"	Standard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 EpsonProofingPaperCommercial.icc</li> <li>Matte Black: ---</li> </ul>	Proofing Paper	Epson Proofing Paper Commercial	---	---	OK	PK	✓		✓
	432mm	17"								✓	✓					
	610mm	24"								✓	✓					
	914mm*2	36"*2								---	---					
	1118mm*2	44"*2								✓	✓					
Enhanced Synthetic Paper	610mm	24"	OK	0.12mm	2"	Higher	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Photo Black: ---</li> <li>Matte Black: Pro9900_7900 EnhancedSyntheticPaper.icc</li> </ul>	Others	Enhanced Synthetic Paper	✓	✓	OK	MK	✓	✓	
	1118mm*2	44"*2								✓	✓					

Table 1-5. Designated Roll Paper List

Name	Size		Borderless Print*1	Thickness	Core Diameter	Roll Paper Tension	ICC Profile Upper: Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908 Lower:Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Driver Setting		Take-up*3		Auto Cut	Black Ink	Applied model		
	mm	inch								Forward	Backward			Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	ProWT7900/WT7910
Enhanced Adhesive Synthetic Paper	610mm	24"	OK	0.17mm	2"	High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Photo Black: ---</li><li>• Matte Black: Pro9900_7900 EnhancedAdhesiveSyntheticPaper.icc</li></ul>	Others	Enhanced Adhesive Synthetic Paper	✓	✓	OK	MK	✓	✓	
	1118mm*2	44"*2					<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Photo Black: ---</li><li>• Matte Black: Epson Stylus Pro7700_7710_9700_9710 EnhancedAdhesiveSyntheticPaper.icc</li></ul>									
Doubleweight Matte Paper	610mm	24"	OK!	0.21mm	2"	Standard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Photo Black: ---</li><li>• Matte Black: Pro9900_7900 DoubleweightMattePaper.icc</li></ul>	Matte Paper	Doubleweight Matte Paper	✓*4	NA	OK	MK	✓	✓	
	914mm*2	36"*2					<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Photo Black: ---</li><li>• Matte Black: Epson Stylus Pro7700_7710_9700_9710 DoubleweightMattePaper.icc</li></ul>									
	1118mm*2	44"*2														

Table 1-5. Designated Roll Paper List

Name	Size		Borderless Print*1	Thickness	Core Diameter	Roll Paper Tension	ICC Profile Upper: Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908 Lower: Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Driver Setting		Take-up*3		Auto Cut	Black Ink	Applied model		
	mm	inch								Forward	Backward			Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	ProWT7900/WT7910
Enhanced Matte Paper	432mm	17"	OK	0.25mm	3"	Standard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 EnhancedMattePaper_PK.icc</li> <li>Matte Black: Pro9900_7900 EnhancedMattePaper_MK.icc</li> </ul>	Matte Paper	Enhanced Matte Paper	✓	NA	OK	MK	✓	✓	
	610mm	24"														
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*2	44"*2														
Singleweight Matte Paper	432mm	17"	OK!	0.14mm	2"	Standard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Photo Black: ---</li> <li>Matte Black: Pro9900_7900SingleweightMattePaper.icc</li> </ul>	Matte Paper	Singleweight Matte Paper	✓*4	NA	OK	MK	✓	✓	
	610mm	24"														
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*2	44"*2														

Table 1-5. Designated Roll Paper List

Name	Size		Borderless Print*1	Thickness	Core Diameter	Roll Paper Tension	ICC Profile Upper: Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908 Lower: Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Driver Setting		Take-up*3		Auto Cut	Black Ink	Applied model		
	mm	inch								Forward	Backward			Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	ProWT7900/WT7910
Singleweight Matte Paper (Line Drawing)	432mm	17"	OK!	0.14mm	2"	Standard	---	Matte Paper	Singleweight Matte Paper (Line Drawing)	✓*4	NA	OK	MK	✓		
	610mm	24"														
	914mm*2	36"*2					• Photo Black: --- • Matte Black: Epson Stylus Pro7700_7710_9700_9710 SingleweightMattePaper.icc									
	1118mm*2	44"*2														
Watercolor Paper - Radiant White	610mm	24"	OK	0.29mm	3"	High	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 WatercolorPaper-RadiantWhite_PK.icc • Matte Black: Pro9900_7900 WatercolorPaper-RadiantWhite_MK.icc	Fine Art Paper	Watercolor Paper - Radiant White	✓	✓	OK	PK/MK	✓		
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*2	44"*2					---									
UltraSmooth Fine Art Paper	432mm	17"	OK	0.32mm	3"	High	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 UltraSmoothFineArtPaper_PK.icc • Matte Black: Pro9900_7900 UltraSmoothFineArtPaper_MK.icc	Fine Art Paper	UltraSmooth Fine Art Paper	✓	✓	OK	PK/MK	✓		
	610mm	24"														
	1118mm*2	44"*2					---									
Textured Fine Art Paper	432mm	17"	OK	0.37mm	3"	High	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 TexturedFineArtPaper_PK.icc • Matte Black: Pro9900_7900 TexturedFineArtPaper_MK.icc	Fine Art Paper	Textured Fine Art Paper	✓	✓	OK	PK/MK	✓		
	610mm	24"														
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*2	44"*2					---									

Table 1-5. Designated Roll Paper List

Name	Size		Borderless Print*1	Thickness	Core Diameter	Roll Paper Tension	ICC Profile Upper: Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/ 9908/7890/7908 Lower: Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/ 9700/9710	Driver Setting		Take-up*3		Auto Cut	Black Ink	Applied model		
	mm	inch								Forward	Backward			Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/ 9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	ProWT7900/WT7910
Canvas	610mm	24"	OK	0.46mm	2"	Standard	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900 Canvas_PK.icc</li> <li>• Matte Black: Pro9900_7900 Canvas_MK.icc</li> </ul>	Fine Art Paper	Canvas	✓	✓	OK	PK/MK	✓		
	914mm*2	36"*2														
	1118mm*2	44"*2					---									
Epson ClearProof Film	432mm	17"	NA	0.15mm	2"	Standard	---	---	---	---	---	OK	PK			✓
	610mm	24"														



## CUT SHEET

Note \*1: OK!: Recommended for borderless printing

OK: Borderless printing is available

NA: Borderless printing is NOT available

Borderless printing on the borderless printing available paper (OK) may result in drop in print quality or fail to produce complete borderless (white margins may appear) due to expanding of the paper. Borderless printing can be made on commercially available paper, however, note that the availability is restricted by the paper size.

\*2: Not supported for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710.

Table 1-6. Designated Cut Sheet List

Name	Size	Borderless Print*1	Thickness	ICC Profile Upper: Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/ 9890/9908/7890/7908 Lower: Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Driver Setting		Black Ink	Applied model		
								Pro7900/7910/9900/9910 9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/ 9700/9710	ProWT7900/WT7910
Premium Glossy Photo Paper	Super A3/B	OK	0.27mm	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900PremiumGlossyPhotoPaper.icc • Matte Black: ---	Photo Paper	Premium Glossy Photo Paper	PK	✓	✓	✓
	A2	NA		• Photo Black: Epson Stylus Pro 7700_7710_9700_9710PremiumGlossyPhotoPaper.icc • Matte Black: ---						
Premium Semigloss Photo Paper	Super A3/B	OK	0.27mm	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900PremiumSemiglossPhotoPaper.icc • Matte Black: ---	Photo Paper	Premium Semigloss Photo Paper	PK	✓	✓	
	A2	NA		• Photo Black: Epson Stylus Pro 7700_7710_9700_9710PremiumSemiglossPhotoPaper.icc • Matte Black: ---						
	US-C	OK						NA		

Table 1-6. Designated Cut Sheet List

Name	Size	Borderless Print <sup>*1</sup>	Thickness	ICC Profile Upper: Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/ 9890/9908/7890/7908 Lower: Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Driver Setting	Black Ink	Applied model		
							Pro7900/7910/9900/9910 9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/ 9700/9710	ProWT7900/WT7910
Premium Luster Photo Paper	Super A3/B	OK	0.27mm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900PremiumLusterPhotoPaper.icc</li> <li>• Matte Black: ---</li> </ul>	Photo Paper	Premium Luster Photo Paper	PK	✓	✓
	A2	NA		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Photo Black: Epson Stylus Pro 7700_7710_9700_9710PremiumLusterPhotoPaper.icc</li> <li>• Matte Black: ---</li> </ul>				NA	
	US-C	OK							
Archival Matte Paper/Enhanced Matte Paper	Super A3/B	OK	0.26mm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900ArchivalMattePaper_PK.icc</li> <li>• Matte Black: --- Pro9900_7900ArchivalMattePaper_MK.icc</li> </ul>	Matte Paper	Archival Matte Paper/Enhanced Matte Paper	PK/MK	✓	✓
	A2	NA		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Photo Black: ---</li> <li>• Matte Black: Epson Stylus Pro 7700_7710_9700_9710ArchivalMattePaper.icc Epson Stylus Pro 7700_7710_9700_9710EnhancedMattePaper.icc</li> </ul>				NA	
	US-C	OK							
Singleweight Matte Paper	Super A3/B	OK	0.14mm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Photo Black: ---</li> <li>• Matte Black: Pro9900_7900SingleweightMattePaper.icc</li> </ul>	Matte Paper	Singleweight Matte Paper	MK	✓	
	A2	NA		---					

Table 1-6. Designated Cut Sheet List

Name	Size	Borderless Print <sup>*1</sup>	Thickness	ICC Profile Upper: Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/ 9890/9908/7890/7908 Lower: Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Driver Setting		Black Ink	Applied model		
								Pro7900/7910/9900/9910 9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/ 9700/9710	ProWT7900/WT7910
Photo Quality Inkjet Paper	Super A3	OK	0.12mm	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900PhotoQualityInkJetPaper.icc • Matte Black: ---	Matte Paper	Photo Quality Inkjet Paper	MK	✓	✓	
	A2	NA		• Photo Black: --- • Matte Black: Epson Stylus Pro7700_7710_9700_9710PhotoQualityInk Paper.icc				NA		
	US-C	OK								
Epson Proofing Paper White Semimatte	Super A3/B	OK	0.25mm	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900EpsonProofingPaperWhiteSemimatte.icc • Matte Black: ---	Proofing Paper	Epson Proofing Paper White Semimatte	PK/MK	✓		
Watercolor Paper - Radiant White	Super A3/B	OK	0.29mm	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900WatercolorPaper-RadiantWhite_PK.icc • Matte Black: Pro9900_7900WatercolorPaper-RadiantWhite_MK.icc	Fine Art Paper	Watercolor Paper - Radiant White	PK/MK	✓		
UltraSmooth Fine Art Paper	Super A3	OK	0.46mm	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900UltraSmoothFineArtPaper_PK.icc • Matte Black: Pro9900_7900UltraSmoothFineArtPaper_MK.icc	Fine Art Paper	UltraSmooth Fine Art Paper	PK/MK	✓		
	A2	NA		---						
Velvet Fine Art Paper	Super A3/B	OK	0.48mm	• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900VelvetFineArtPaper_PK.icc • Matte Black: Pro9900_7900VelvetFineArtPaper_MK.icc	Fine Art Paper	Velvet Fine Art Paper	PK/MK	✓		
	A2	NA		---						

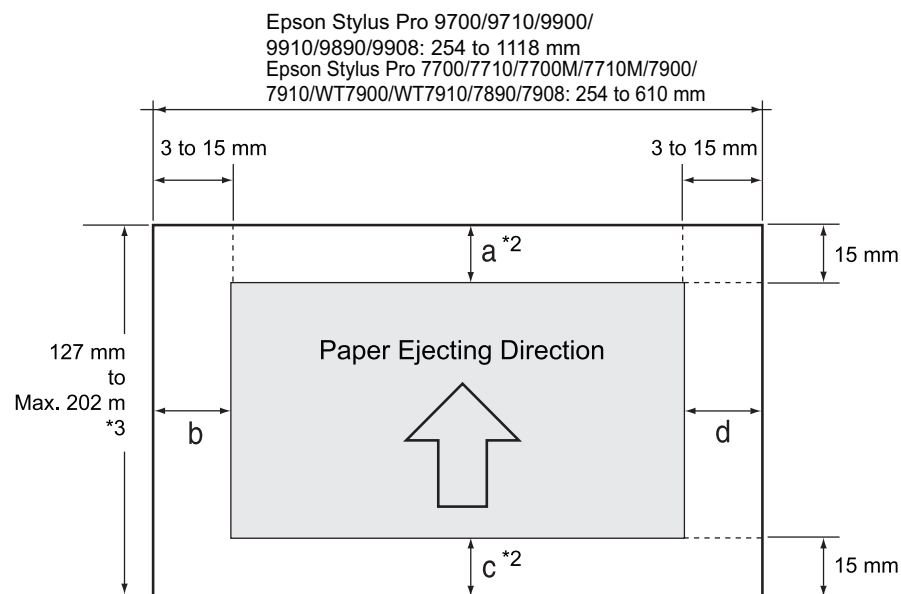
Table 1-6. Designated Cut Sheet List

Name	Size	Borderless Print <sup>*1</sup>	Thickness	ICC Profile Upper: Pro7900/7910/9900/9910/ 9890/9908/7890/7908 Lower: Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Driver Setting		Black Ink	Applied model		
								Pro7900/7910/9900/9910 9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro7700/7710/7700M/7710M/ 9700/9710	ProWT7900/WT7910
Textured Fine Art Paper	24" x 30"	OK	0.67mm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900TexturedFineArtPaper_PK.icc</li> <li>• Matte Black: Pro9900_7900TexturedFineArtPaper_MK.icc</li> </ul>	Fine Art Paper	Textured Fine Art Paper	PK/MK	✓		
	36" x 44"			---						
Enhanced Matte Posterboard	24" x 30"	OK	1.30mm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Photo Black: Pro9900_7900EnhancedMattePosterBoard_PK.icc</li> <li>• Matte Black: Pro9900_7900EnhancedMattePosterBoard_MK.icc</li> </ul>	Others	Enhanced Matte Poster Board	PK/MK	✓	✓	
	30" x 40"*2			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Photo Black: ---</li> <li>• Matte Black: Epson Stylus Pro 7700_7710_9700_9710EnhancedMattePosterBoard.icc</li> </ul>						

### 1.3.3 Printable Area

#### ROLL PAPER

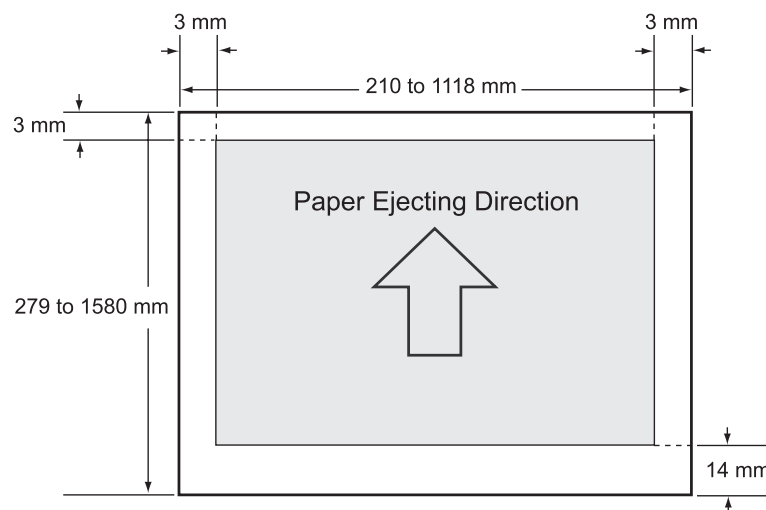
Margins for roll paper depends on the ROLL PAPER MARGIN settings in the PRINTER SETUP menu.



ROLL PAPER MARGIN settings	Explanation
Default	a = c = 15 mm *1 b = d = 3 mm
TOP/BOTTOM 15mm	a = c = 15 mm b = d = 3 mm
TOP 35/BOTTOM 15MM	a = 35 mm c = 15 mm b = d = 3 mm
3mm	a, b, c, d = 3 mm a, b, c, d = 15 mm

- Note \*\*1": When the Default is selected, "a" becomes 20mm and "c" becomes 15mm for the following paper types; Premium Glossy Photo Paper(250), Premium Semigloss Photo Paper(250), and Premium Luster Photo Paper(260).
- \*\*2": When the "Roll Paper (Banner)" is selected for the "Source" in the "Paper Settings" of the printer driver, the top and bottom margins become 0 mm.
- \*\*3": The maximum paper length satiable with the printer driver is as follows.  
Windows: 15,000 mm (590.6 inch)  
Mac OS X: 15,240 mm (600 inch)  
When paper length longer than the above is required, select the "Roll Paper (Banner)". The printer driver allows the setting if the application used for the data supports the length.

#### CUT SHEET



## 1.3.4 Borderless Printing Specification

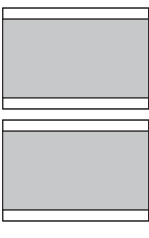

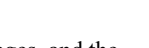
### AVAILABLE PAPER TYPE

For the paper types and sizes that support the borderless printing, see “1.3.2.2 Designated Paper” on page 29.



### BORDERLESS PRINTING MODE

The following types of borderless printing are available with the printer driver.

**Table 1-7. Borderless Printing Mode**

Driver Setting	Printer Operation	Remarks
Normal Cut*2	Prints an image bleeding it off the left and right edges of paper. The top and bottom margins are determined by ROLL PAPER MARGIN setting. 	Default
Single Cut*1*2	Prints an image bleeding it off the all edges of paper. The cutting methods is as follows. <input type="checkbox"/> The minimum width required for cutting is applied as the top margin of the first page, then the top margin is cut off during printing.  <input type="checkbox"/> No margin is provided between pages, and the cutting is made on the border between the pages.  <input type="checkbox"/> When the job is finished, the bottom side of the last page is cut off without margin.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Printing is interrupted for cutting off the top margin of the first page. This may cause color inconsistencies depending on the print data.</li> <li>• The cut line between pages may be slightly off the border.</li> </ul>

**Table 1-7. Borderless Printing Mode**

Driver Setting	Printer Operation	Remarks
Double Cut*1*2*3	Prints an image bleeding it off the all edges of paper. The cutting methods is as follows. <input type="checkbox"/> The auto refresh margin is applied as the top margin of the first page, then the top margin is cut off during printing.  <input type="checkbox"/> The bottom side of each page is cut off without margin.  <input type="checkbox"/> The minimum width required for cutting is applied as margins between pages.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Printing is interrupted for cutting off the top margin of the first page. This may cause color inconsistencies depending on the print data.</li> <li>• The top and bottom sides of each page are cut off at the position slightly inward the image edges so that no white margin appears on the edges of the cut pages. This causes the vertical length of the cut page about 2mm shorter than the specified length.</li> </ul>

Note : Borderless printing is not available for Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910.

Note "1": The cut pages vertical length becomes about 2mm shorter than the specified size.

Note "2": Color inconsistencies or ink smudges due to the interruption of printing for cutting off top margins are likely to occur on the following papers.

- Doubleweight Matte Paper
- Singleweight Matte Paper
- Enhanced Matte Paper
- Textured Fine Art Paper
- UltraSmooth Fine Art Paper

### 1.3.5 Cutting of Roll Paper

The printer offers two ways of cutting for roll paper.

Cut Method	Description
Auto cut	The printer automatically cuts paper with the built-in cutter.
Manual cut	The user can manually move the built-in cutter to cut paper, or use a commercially available cutter. Select this setting when using the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.



- Some types of roll paper cannot be cut with the built-in cutter. In such cases, cut it manually with a commercially available cutter or the like.
- When cutting Clear Film, please hold it by hands so that it does not fall on the floor in order to prevent scratches



It may take time for the cutting operation.

#### SETTING BEFORE PRINTING

The cut method setting can be made by the control panel or the printer driver.

- ☐ When setting with the control panel (for printing a status sheet or etc.)

Press ◀ button to select the cut method.

Icon	Description
	Roll Auto Cut On
	Roll Auto Cut Off

- ☐ When setting from a computer

Select “Auto Cut” in the “Paper Setting” window of the printer driver.


#### HOW TO CUT

- ☐ Auto cut

The printer automatically cuts paper with the built-in cutter each time a page is printed.

- ☐ Manual cut

Follow the procedure below to cut paper at the desired position.

1. After a page is printed, press the ▼ button to advance the paper to the cut position.
2. Press the  button. Select [Cut] from the selection screen on the display, and press [OK] button. The built-in cutter moves and cuts the paper.



**When the paper type is the one that the built-in cutter does not support, pressing the ▼ button advances the paper to the position for manual cutting using a commercially available cutter. Cut the paper manually with your cutter or a similar tool along the lower frame of the front cover.**



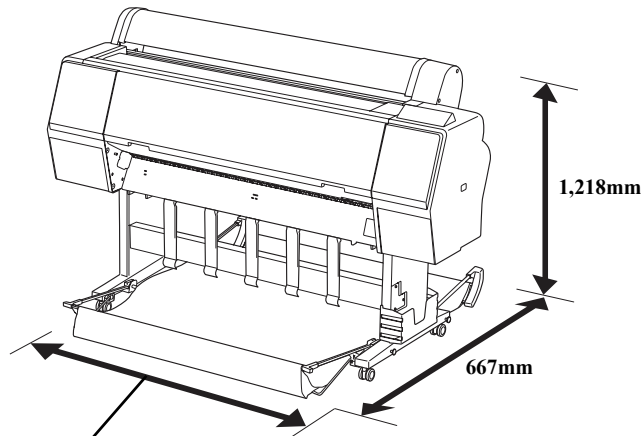
**When cutting the paper manually, make sure to confirm the Spectroproofer backing is not installed.**

## 1.4 Hardware Specifications

This section provides the printer dimensions and shows the main components.

### 1.4.1 Dimensions and Weight

#### MAIN UNIT



Pro 9700/Pro 9710/Pro 9900/Pro 9910/Pro 9890/Pro 9908: 1,864mm

Pro 7700/Pro 7710/Pro 7900/Pro 7910/Pro WT7900/WT7910/Pro 7890/Pro 7908: 1,356mm

Figure 1-3. Dimensions (standard)

Model	External Dimensions			Weight*
	Width	Depth	Height	
Pro 9900/Pro 9910/ Pro 9890/Pro 9908	1,864 mm	667 mm	1,218 mm	Approx. 135 kg
Pro 7900/Pro 7910 Pro 7890/Pro 7908	1,356 mm	667 mm	1,218 mm	Approx. 101 kg
Pro 9700/Pro 9710	1,864 mm	667 mm	1,218 mm	Approx. 134 kg
Pro 7700/Pro 7710/ Pro 7700M/Pro 7710M	1,356 mm	667 mm	1,218 mm	Approx. 100 kg
Pro WT7900/ Pro WT7910	1,356 mm	667 mm* <sup>1</sup>	1,218 mm	Approx. 100 kg

Note \*: Excluding the ink cartridges and paper

Note "1": The depth is 1442 mm when the Basket for Epson Special Film is installed.



OPTIONS

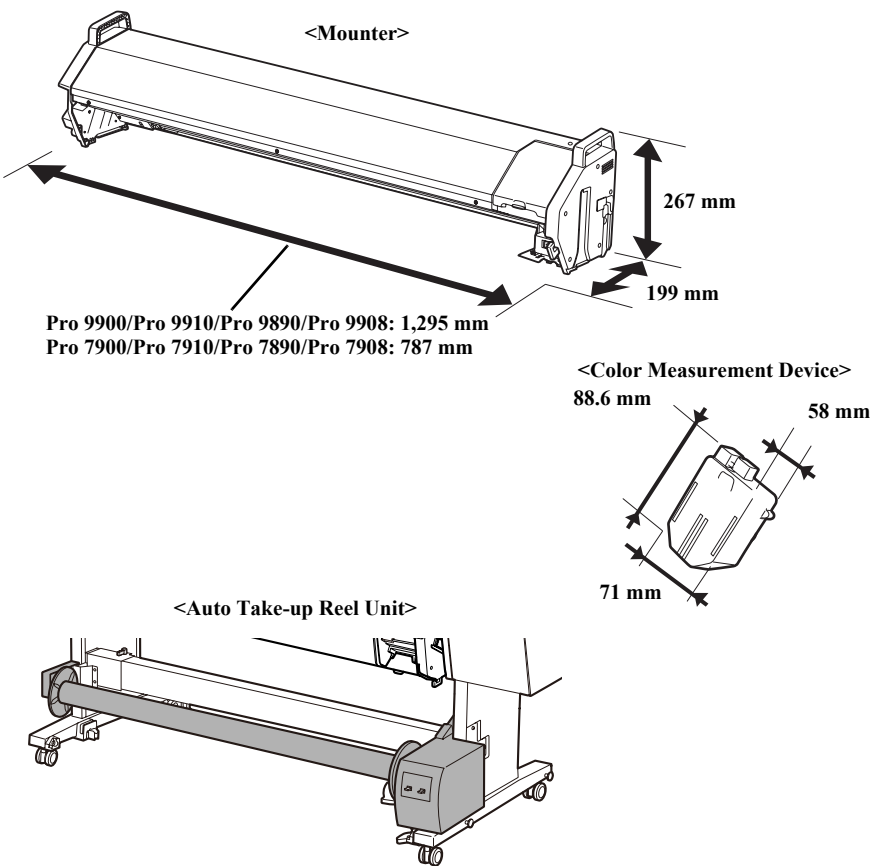


Figure 1-4. Dimensions

Model	External Dimensions			Weight
	Width	Depth	Height	
Mounter for Pro 9900/Pro 9910/Pro 9890/Pro 9908	1,295 mm	199 mm	267 mm	Approx. 13.4 kg
Mounter for Pro 7900/Pro 7910/Pro 7890/Pro 7908	787 mm	199 mm	267 mm	Approx. 9.2 kg
Color Measurement Device	71 mm	88.6 mm	58 mm	Approx. 0.13 kg
Auto Take-up Reel Unit	—	—	—	Approx. 6.9 kg

1.4.2 Part Names

MAIN UNIT

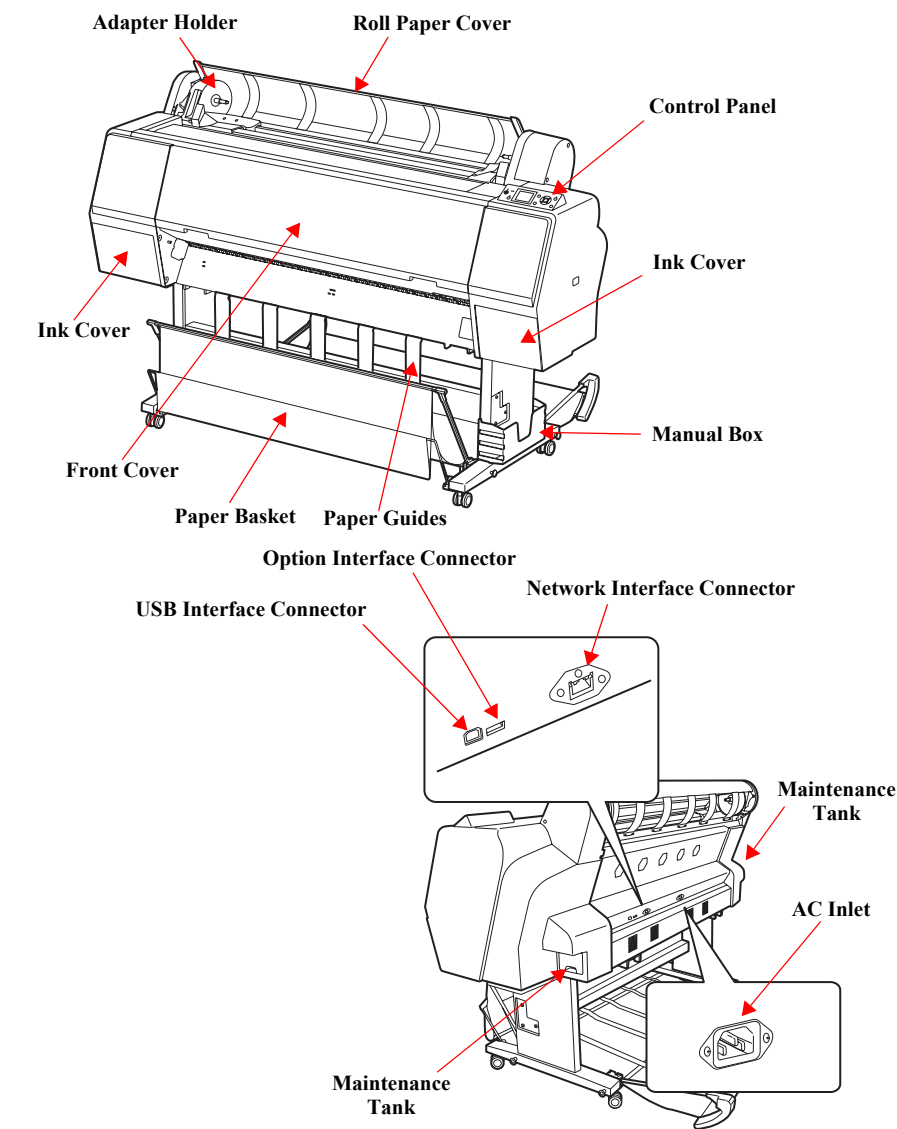


Figure 1-5. Part Names (Main Unit)

BASKET FOR EPSON SPECIAL FILM

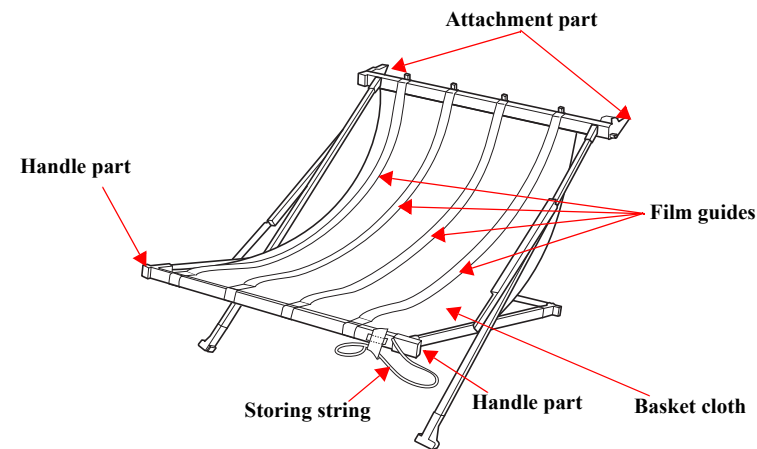


Figure 1-6. Part Names (Basket for Epson Special Film)

OPTIONS

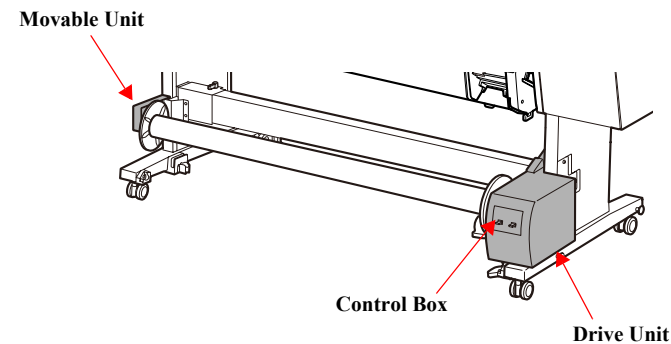


Figure 1-7. Part Names (Auto Take-up Reel Unit)

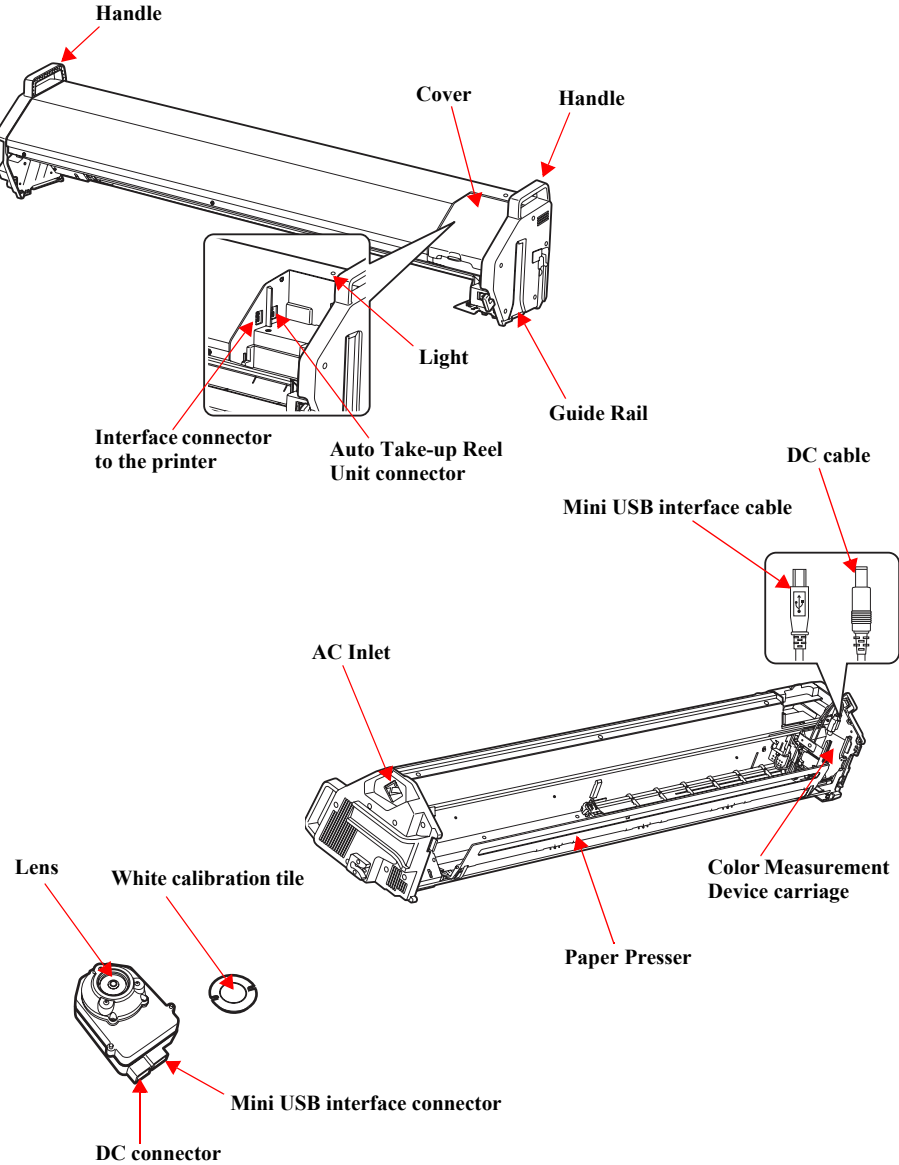


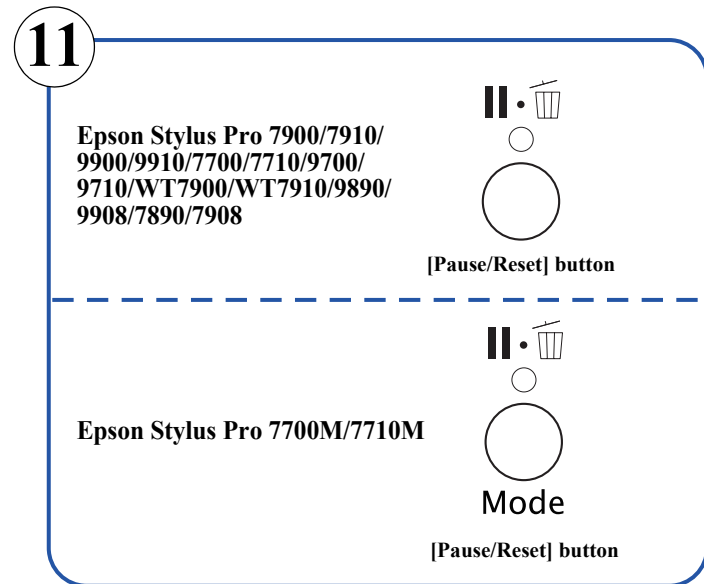
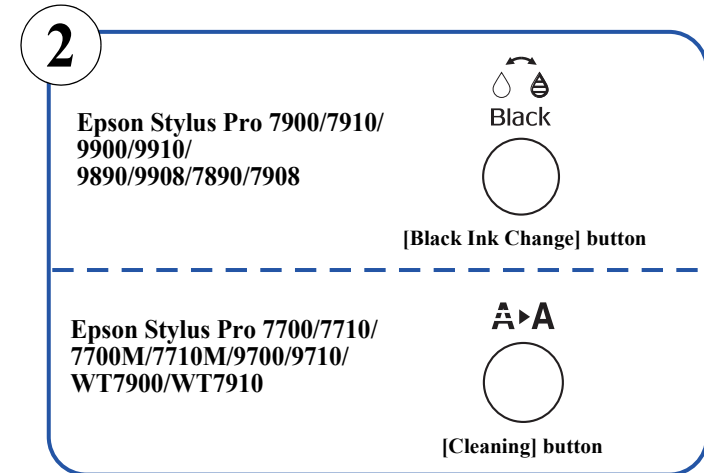
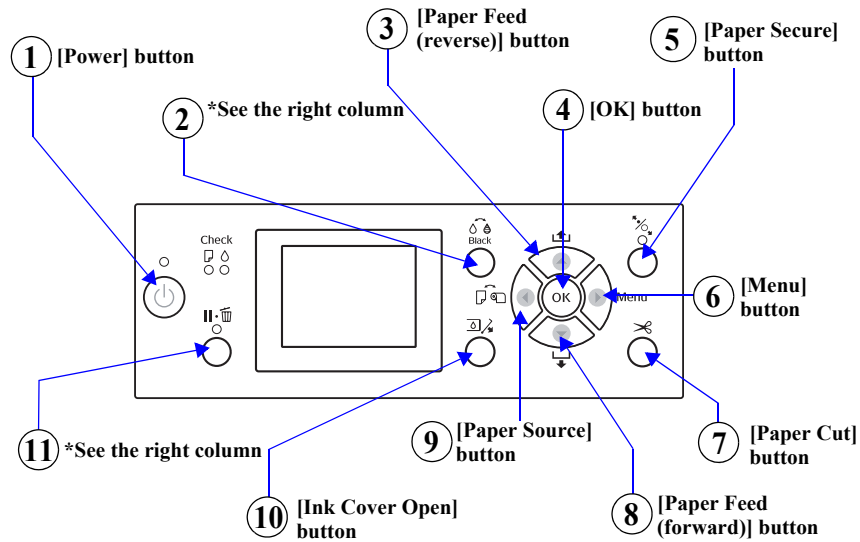
Figure 1-8. Part Names (SpectroProofer)

1.4.3 Option Correspondence Table

Model	Auto Take-up Reel Unit	SpectroProofer 24"	SpectroProofer 44"	Basket for Epson Special Film
Pro 9900/Pro 9910	Supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported
Pro 7900/Pro 7910	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Not supported
Pro 9700/Pro 9710	Supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
Pro 7700/Pro 7710	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
Pro WT7900/Pro WT7910	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Supported
Pro 7700M/Pro 7710M	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
Pro 9890/Pro 9908	Supported	Not supported	Supported	Not supported
Pro 7890/Pro 7908	Not supported	Supported	Not supported	Not supported

## 1.5 Control Panel

### BUTTONS



## BUTTONS

**NOTE \*1:** Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908 only.

**\*2:** Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710/WT9700/WT9710 only.

**\*3:** Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M only.

Button Name		Function		
		When pressed normally	When pressed down for 3 sec.	For panel setting
1	[Power]	Turns the printer On or Off.	---	Power-off
2	[Black Ink Change] *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Displays the black ink change screen when BK ink error occurs or during idling.</li> <li>Other than above: Does not function.</li> </ul>	---	---
	[Cleaning] *2	Goes to the cleaning menu.	---	---
3	[Paper Feed (reverse)]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When roll paper is loaded: Feeds the paper backward.</li> <li>When roll paper is not loaded: Does not function.</li> <li>While the Paper Presser is released: Increases the power of the suction fan.</li> <li>Other than above: Does not function.</li> </ul>	When roll paper is not loaded: Does not function.	Increases the set value.
4	[OK]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After printing: Ejects the cut sheet.</li> <li>Sets the selected parameter in the selected item in the Menu mode. Executes the item if the selected item is for execution only.</li> <li>During ink drying or color chart drying: Stops the operation.</li> <li>While there is no paper in the printer: Displays the paper feeding procedures on the LCD panel.</li> <li>Other than above: Does not function.</li> </ul>	---	Accepts the change, Executes the operation, Stores the settings
5	[Paper Secure]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Locks/unlocks the paper presser when idling, waiting for the feeding trigger or such errors occurred as: paper released error, front cover open error, paper cut error, paper skew error, paper error (not detected), take-up error (sensor error), borderless error, paper out error (roll paper), paper eject error, paper size error, paper setting error.</li> <li>Other than above: Does not function.</li> </ul>	---	---
6	[Menu]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During printing: Goes to the PRINTER STATUS menu.</li> <li>Goes to the panel setting mode when ink drying, color chart drying, measuring colors or when paper out error (roll paper) occurred.</li> </ul>	---	Goes to the next item.
7	[Paper Cut]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When waiting for the feeding trigger or idling: Cuts the roll paper.</li> <li>Other than above: Does not function.</li> </ul>	---	---

Button Name		Function		
		When pressed normally	When pressed down for 3 sec.	For panel setting
8	[Paper Feed (forward)]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When roll paper is loaded: Feeds the paper forward.</li> <li>When roll paper is not loaded: Does not function.</li> <li>While the Paper Presser is released: Decreases the power of the suction fan.</li> <li>When cut sheet is selected and a cut sheet is loaded on the printer: Feeds the cut sheet to the print start position.</li> <li>When a cut sheet has been fed: Ejects the cut sheet.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When roll paper is loaded: Feeds the roll paper forward at high speed.</li> <li>When roll paper is not loaded: Does not function.</li> </ul>	Decreases the set value.
9	[Paper Source]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Changes the paper type when idling, waiting for the feeding trigger or when such errors occurred as: paper released error, front cover open error, paper cut error, paper skew error, paper error (not detected), take-up error (sensor error), borderless error, paper out error (roll paper), paper eject error, paper size error, paper setting error.</li> <li>Other than above: Does not function.</li> </ul>	---	Goes back to the previous item.
10	[Ink Cover Open]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During printing/cleaning/charging initially/changing ink: Does not function.</li> <li>Other than above: Opens the ink cover.</li> </ul>	---	---
11	[Pause/Reset]	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When printing, idling, in the error status: Pauses the operation</li> <li>When displaying the menu screen: return to the previous screen from the menu</li> <li>When displaying such screens as pausing, selection for opening IC Cover, changing black ink, or cutting paper: return to the previous screen from the sub menu</li> <li>When displaying the roll paper setting screen: return to the previous screen from the roll paper setting screen</li> <li>Makes the printer recover from such errors as paper sensor error (barcode detection failed), paper sensor error (wrong platen gap), cleaning error (not enough ink), clogged nozzle error (not enough ink), cleaning error (auto head cleaning failed).</li> <li>While the printer is in the idle state, switches between the copy mode and print mode. *3</li> </ul>	---	Stops the panel settings.

LIGHTS (LED)

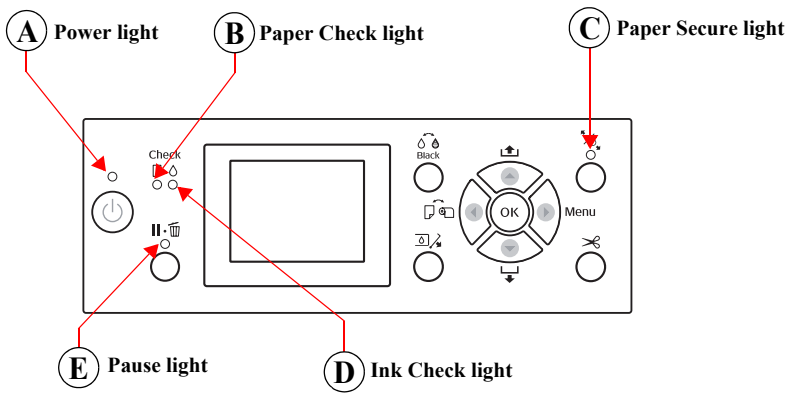


Figure 1-9. LED

**NOTE:** The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910.

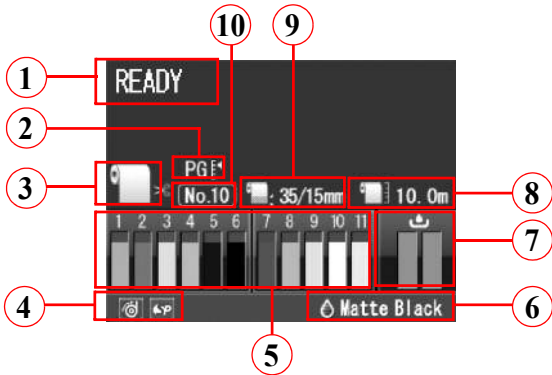
Name		Color	Status	Description
A	Power	Green	ON	The printer power is on.
			Flashing*1	The printer is receiving a data or performing the power-off sequence.
			OFF	The printer power is off.
B	Paper Check	Orange	ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>No paper is loaded in the paper source.</li><li>The paper setting is not correct.</li></ul>
			Flashing*1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Paper is jammed.</li><li>Paper is not loaded straight.</li></ul>
			OFF	The printer is ready to print data.
C	Paper Secure	Orange	ON	The paper presser is released.
			OFF	The printer is ready to print data.
D	Ink Check	Orange	ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The installed ink cartridge is expended.</li><li>The ink cartridge is not installed.</li><li>The wrong ink cartridge is installed.</li></ul>
			Flashing*1	The installed ink cartridge is nearly expended.
			OFF	The printer is ready to print data.
E	Pause	Green	ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The printer is in the Menu mode or pause mode.</li><li>The printer has an error.</li></ul>
			OFF	The printer is ready to print data.

Note   "\*1":   Repeats turning On and Off every 500 ms. When a maintenance error is occurring, the LED repeats ON for 100 ms and OFF for 5 seconds.

          "\*2":   The all LEDs flash when a service call error is occurring.

LCD

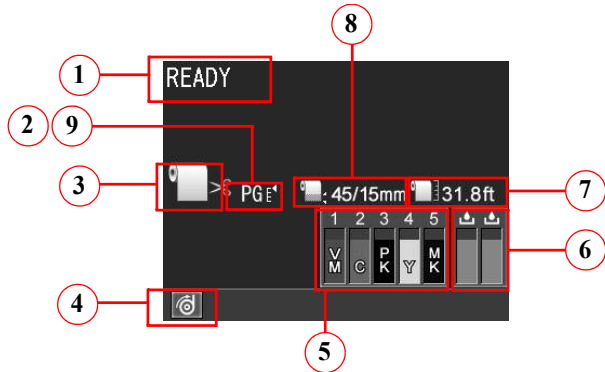
- Normal indication
  - Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908



No.	Item	Description
1	Message	Printer status, operating status, or an error message is displayed.
2	Platen Gap	Displays the setting of "Platen Gap". PG: "NARROW" is selected. PG: "WIDE" is selected. PG: "WIDER" is selected. PG: "WIDEST" is selected. When the selected registered number in "Paper Number" is displayed, "Platen Gap" is not displayed.
3	Paper Source	Selected paper type and roll paper cut settings is displayed.
4	Option Usage	The options available to use are displayed as icons.
5	Ink cartridge status	The current ink level in each of the nine cartridges is indicated.
6	Black Ink level	The selected black ink level is indicated.
7	Waste ink level in the maintenance tanks	The free space of the maintenance tanks is indicated.
8	Roll Paper Counter	The remaining amount of the roll paper is displayed.
9	Roll Paper Margin	The setting made by the ROLL PAPER MARGIN menu is indicated beside the [ ]. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>15mm: "TOP/BOTTOM 15 mm" is selected.</li><li>35/15mm: "TOP 35/BOTTOM 15 mm" is selected.</li><li>3mm: "3mm" is selected.</li><li>15mm: "15mm" is selected.</li><li>Auto: "DEFAULT" is selected</li></ul>
10	Paper Number	When you select paper number (1 to 10) for CUSTOM PAPER, the number you selected appears.

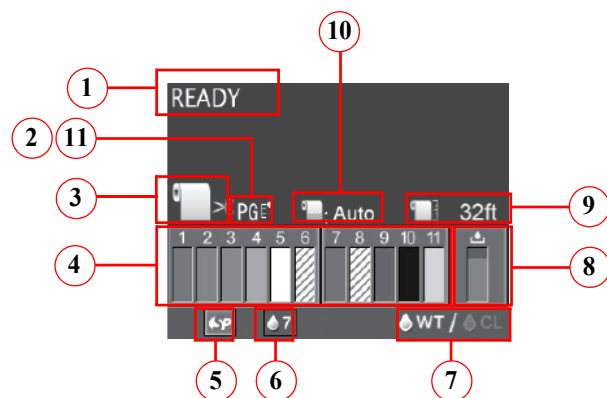







■ Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710



No.	Item	Description
1	Message	Printer status, operating status, or an error message is displayed.
2	Platen Gap	Displays the setting of "Platen Gap". : "NARROW" is selected. : "WIDE" is selected. : "WIDER" is selected. : "WIDEST" is selected Selected registered number in "Paper Number" in No 9 below is displayed.
3	Paper Source	Selected paper type and roll paper cut settings is displayed.
4	Option Usage	The options available to use are displayed as icons.
5	Ink cartridge status	The current ink level in each of the nine cartridges is indicated.
6	Waste ink level in the maintenance tanks	The free space of the maintenance tanks is indicated.
7	Roll Paper Counter	The remaining amount of the roll paper is displayed.
8	Roll Paper Margin	The setting made by the ROLL PAPER MARGIN menu is indicated beside the . • 15mm: "TOP/BOTTOM 15 mm" is selected. • 35/15mm: "TOP 35/BOTTOM 15 mm" is selected. • 3mm: "3mm" is selected. • 15mm: "15mm" is selected. • Auto: "DEFAULT" is selected
9	Paper Number	When you select paper number (1 to 10) for CUSTOM PAPER, the number you selected appears.

## ■ Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910



No.	Item	Description
1	Message	Printer status, operating status, or an error message is displayed.
2	Platen Gap	Displays the setting of "Platen Gap".  : "NARROW" is selected.  : "WIDE" is selected.  : "WIDER" is selected.  : "WIDEST" is selected. Selected registered number in "Paper Number" in No 11 below is displayed.
3	Paper Source	Selected paper type and roll paper cut settings is displayed.
4	Ink cartridge status	The current ink level in each of the nine cartridges is indicated.
5	Option Usage	The options available to use are displayed as icons.
6	White ink maintenance display	Displays the date when the next white ink maintenance is required.
7	Ink selection	Displays the type of ink set in the white ink nozzle.
8	Waste ink level in the maintenance tanks	The free space of the maintenance tanks is indicated.
9	Roll Paper Counter	The remaining amount of the roll paper is displayed.
10	Roll Paper Margin	The setting made by the ROLL PAPER MARGIN menu is indicated beside the  . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>15mm: "TOP/BOTTOM 15 mm" is selected.</li> <li>35/15mm: "TOP 35/BOTTOM 15 mm" is selected.</li> <li>3mm: "3mm" is selected.</li> <li>15mm: "15mm" is selected.</li> <li>Auto: "DEFAULT" is selected</li> </ul>
11	Paper Number	When you select paper number (1 to 10) for CUSTOM PAPER, the number you selected appears.

❑ Error indication

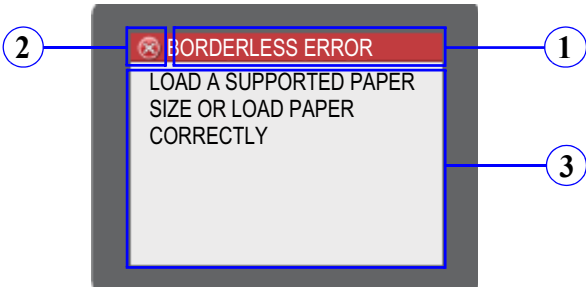


Figure 1-10. LCD (Error indication)

No.	Item	Description
1	Error name	An error name is displayed inverted.
2	Error icon	An error icon is displayed.
3	Remedy	An explanation about the error or an instruction to recover from the error is displayed.

Note : When multiple errors are occurring simultaneously, the errors are indicated in the order of preset priority. After recovering one of the errors, the next error is displayed.

❑ LCD (Error indication with an image)

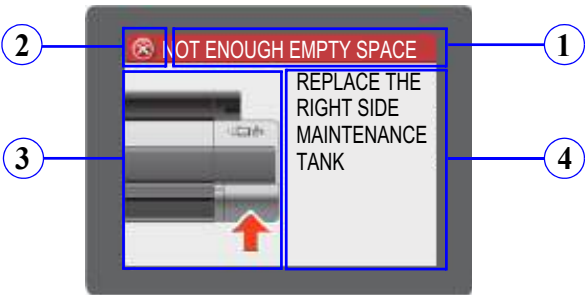


Figure 1-11. LCD (Error indication with an image)

No.	Item	Description
1	Error name	An error name is displayed inverted.
2	Error icon	An error icon is displayed.
3	Image	An illustration that demonstrates the explanation or instruction for the error is displayed.
4	Remedy	An explanation about the error or an instruction to recover from the error is displayed.

Note : When multiple errors are occurring simultaneously, the errors are indicated in the order of preset priority. After recovering one of the errors, the next error is displayed.

□ Copy mode screen (Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M only)

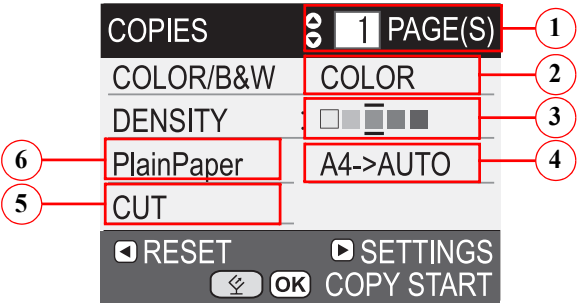


Figure 1-12. Copy Mode Screen

No.	Item	Description
1	Number of copies	Indicates the number of copies (selectable from 1 through 10).
2	Color / B&W	Indicates whether the copy is made in color or B&W.
3	Copy density	Indicates the copy density level. The default is +/- 0.
4	Size	Indicates copy size (enlarge) setting.
5	Auto cut	Indicates whether the auto cut is enabled or disabled.
6	Paper type	Indicates copy paper type.

## ICONS ON THE LCD

### ☐ Remaining ink level of each color

#### ☒ Ink cartridge

No.	Ink Color		
	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/ 9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/ 7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/ WT7910
1	Cyan (C)	Vivid Magenta (VM)	Cyan (C)
2	Orange (O)	Cyan (C)	Orange (O)
3	Yellow (Y)	Photo Black (PK)	Yellow (Y)
4	Light Cyan (LC)	Yellow (Y)	Light Cyan (LC)
5	Matte Black (MK)	Matte Black (MK)	White (WT)
6	Photo Black (PK)	---	Cleaning Liquid (CL1)
7	Vivid Magenta (VM)	---	Vivid Magenta (VM)
8	Light Black (LK)	---	Cleaning Liquid (CL2)
9	Green (G)	---	Green (G)
10	Light Light Black (LLK)	---	Photo Black (BK)
11	Vivid Light Magenta (VLM)	---	Vivid Light Magenta (VLM)

Note : “1” on the above table is the left end, and “5” or “11” is the right end.

### ☒ Ink remaining

Icon			Ink Cartridge
			There is enough ink remaining.
			Prepare a new ink cartridge. (flashing)
			The ink is expended so you cannot print. Replace the ink cartridge with a new one. (flashing)
			Cartridge error or no cartridge has occurred. (flashing)

Note: The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910.

### ☐ Free space of the maintenance tank

Icon			Free space of maintenance tank
			There is enough free space in the maintenance tank.
			Prepare a new maintenance tank. (flashing)
			The maintenance tank becomes full. Replace the tank with a new one. (flashing)

## 1.5.1 Menu Mode Settings

Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
PRINTER SETUP	PLATEN GAP	NARROW	Sets the platen gap (gap between the printhead and the platen). When the “Others” is selected in the PAPER TYPE of the CUSTOM PAPER menu, the platen gap designated at the CUSTOM PAPER menu has a priority over the setting made here. Refer to <a href="#">"PG Settings List" on page 71</a> .	√	√	√
		<b>STANDARD</b>				
		WIDE				
		WIDER				
		WIDEST				
	PAGE LINE	<b>ON</b>	Sets whether to print a page line (line for manual cutting) on roll paper or not. The page line is printed when ON is selected. The vertical line may be printed when the roll paper width that is set in the printer driver is smaller than the width of the roll paper that is loaded in the printer. This setting is available for roll paper only.	√	√	√
		OFF				

Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
PRINTER SETUP	ROLL PAPER MARGIN	DEFAULT	<b>Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908</b>	√		
		TOP/BOTTOM 15mm	Sets the margins for roll paper.			
		TOP 35/BOTTOM 15mm	When the Default is selected, the top margin becomes 20mm and the bottom margin becomes 15mm for the following paper types; Premium Glossy Photo Paper(250), Premium Semigloss Photo Paper(250), and Premium Luster Photo Paper(260).			
		15 mm				
		3 mm				
		DEFAULT	<b>Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710</b>	√	√	
		TOP/BOTTOM 15mm	Sets the margins for roll paper.			
		TOP 35/BOTTOM 15mm	When the Default is selected, the top margin becomes 20mm and the bottom margin becomes 15mm for the following paper types; Premium Glossy Photo Paper(250), Premium Semigloss Photo Paper(250), and Premium Luster Photo Paper(260).			
		TOP 45/BOTTOM 15mm				
		3 mm				
		15 mm				
	ROLL PAPER MARGIN	DEFAULT	<b>Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910</b>			√
		TOP 15/BOTTOM 35mm	Sets the margins for roll paper.			
		TOP 35/BOTTOM 15mm	When the Default is selected, the top margin of Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250) is 20 mm and the bottom margin is 15 mm. The top and bottom margin of other paper is 15 mm.			
		3 mm				
	PAPER SIZE CHECK	ON	Sets whether to detect the paper width or not.	√	√	
		OFF	Setting to OFF deactivates the sensor that detects the paper width when paper is loaded on the printer. This allows the user to use paper whose width is out of the sensor's detectable range. It means that the user can print an image larger than the paper size. The user should know that doing so soils the platen and may cause a print quality or any other trouble.			

Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
PRINTER SETUP	PAPER SKEW CHECK	ON	Sets whether to detect the paper skew or not.			
		OFF	Setting to OFF does not carry out the detection and printing is continued even if the paper is skewed. When this setting is set to OFF, the user should have known the risk. This setting is not available for cut sheet because the skew detection function after printing is not provided for cut sheet.	√	√	
	REFRESH MARGIN	ON	When this is set to ON, the top edge area of paper soiled by the previous borderless printing is automatically cut off.	√	√	
		OFF				
	AUTO NOZZLE CHECK	ON: PERIODICALLY	Sets the execution timing for the auto nozzle check. When the nozzle clogging is detected, the cleaning starts automatically. You can set the number of executions for cleaning from “1.5.2 Maintenance Mode (p73)”.	√	√	
		ON: EVERY JOB				
		OFF				
	PRINT NOZZLE PATTERN	OFF	The printer prints a nozzle check pattern automatically at the specified timing. This setting is available only when roll paper is used.	√	√	
		ON: EVERY PAGE	When the set number of pages is reached, the nozzle check pattern is printed on the top of the page. The counter for counting the pages is not reset even by power-off. When this setting is changed, the counter is cleared.			
		ON: EVERY 10 PAGES	Printing patterns preset in the printer is not counted except the network status sheet.			
	INITIALIZE SETTING	EXECUTE	All the settings made using the control panel are returned to their default.	√	√	



Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
TEST PRINT	NOZZLE CHECK	PRINT	<b>Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/7900/7910/7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9890/9908/7890/7908</b> Prints a nozzle check pattern, the firmware version, paper/ink consumption, and waste ink level in the maintenance tanks. Visually check the printout patterns for any missing lines or segments. If missing lines or segments are observed, run a manual cleaning as necessary.	√	√	
		PRINT WITH WHITE INK	<b>Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910</b> Prints a nozzle check pattern, the firmware version, paper/ink consumption, and waste ink level in the maintenance tanks. Visually check the printout patterns for any missing lines or segments. If missing lines or segments are observed, run a manual cleaning as necessary.			√
		PRINT	Selects whether to print a nozzle check pattern in all colors including the white ink, or to print the colors selected when executing printing.			
	STATUS SHEET	PRINT	Prints information on the printer status.	√	√	√
	NETWORK STATUS SHEET	PRINT	Prints information on the network status.	√	√	√
	JOB INFORMATION	PRINT	Prints a print job history report (up to 10 jobs) that is stored in the printer.	√	√	√
	CUSTOM PAPER	PRINT	Prints the settings made in the CUSTOM PAPER menu.	√	√	√

Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
MAINTENANCE	CHANGE INK	CL->WT	Changes ink in the nozzle.			
		WT->CL	<input type="checkbox"/> CL->WT: Changes cleaning liquid with the white Ink <input type="checkbox"/> WT->CL: Changes the white ink with cleaning liquid.			√
	CUTTER ADJUSTMENT	EXECUTE	<b>Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910</b> Adjusts the built-in cutter position. A cutter position adjustment pattern is printed. Examine the printout patterns and select the number for the best pattern.	√		
		-0.3mm to +3.0mm	<b>Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710/WT7900/WT7910</b> Fine-adjusts the cutter position. You can adjust the cutter position by 0.2 mm.		√	√
	CUTTER REPLACEMENT	EXECUTE	Runs a cutter replacement sequence.	√	√	√
	POWER CLEANING	EXECUTE	Runs a power cleaning that is stronger than the normal cleaning.	√	√	√

Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
MAINTENANCE	CLEAN EACH COLOR	C/VM	<b>Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908</b> Runs a cleaning for the specified nozzle columns. *Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910 only.	√		
		PK(MK)/LK				
		O/G*				
		LLK/Y				
		VLM/LC				
		C/VM	<b>Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710</b> Runs a cleaning for the specified nozzle columns.		√	
		Y/BK				
		MK				
		C/VM	<b>Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910</b> Runs a cleaning for the specified nozzle columns.			√
		WT				
		CL/CL				
		O/G				
		BK/Y				
		VLM/LC				
	WHITE INK REFRESH	EXECUTE	You can change the white ink inside the ink tube to dissolve the white ink sediment.			√
	CLOCK SETTING	MM/DD/YY HH:MM	Sets the date and time for the internal clock.	√	√	√

Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
PRINTER STATUS	VERSION	HW0xxxx-xx.xx.IBCC or HN0xxxx-xx.xx.IBCC	Displays the firmware version. Refer to <a href="#">"Firmware version information" on page 72.</a>	√	√	
	PRINTABLE PAGES	(ink color) nnnnnnnn PAGES	Displays the number of pages printable with the installed ink cartridges.	√	√	
	INK LEVEL	(ink color) nn%	Displays the ink level in the installed ink cartridges.	√	√	
	MAINTENANCE TANK	LEFT nn%	Displays the waste ink level in the installed maintenance tanks.	√	√	
		RIGHT nn%				
	JOB HISTORY	No.0 to No.9	<input type="checkbox"/> Job No. Displays the job number that is stored in the printer. The latest job number is 0 (zero).	√	√	
		Ink xxxxx.xml	<input type="checkbox"/> The amount of ink consumed Displays the amount of ink consumed for each job.	√	√	
		Paper xxx.x cm2	<input type="checkbox"/> The amount of paper consumed Displays the total area of paper used for each job.	√	√	
PRINTER STATUS	TOTAL PRINTS	nnnnnnn PAGES	Displays the total printed pages using 6-digit decimal number.	√	√	
	EDM STATUS	NOT STARTED, ENABLED, DISABLED	Displays the EDM status.	√	√	
		LAST UPLOADED MM/DD/YY HH:MM GMT (NOT UPLOADED)				

Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
PAPER SETUP	ROLL PAPER REMAINING	REMAINING PPR SETUP	Make settings for the remaining roll paper. OFF: Disables the roll paper remaining amount count function. ON: Displays the roll paper remaining amount on the LCD. Each time a print job is finished, a barcode that includes information on PAPER TYPE, PAPER LENGTH, and ROLL_LENGTH_ALERT settings is printed. When roll paper is replaced with a new one, the printer reads the barcode and automatically applies the read settings for the new roll paper.	√	√	
		ROLL PAPER LENGTH	You can make these settings only when REMAINING PPR SETUP above is set to ON. The printer Sets roll paper length, and the remaining length of roll paper to be alerted when the set amount is reached.	√	√	
		ROLL LENGTH ALERT	The printer displays the roll paper remaining amount and the alert for shortage of the remaining on the LCD.	√	√	

Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
PAPER SETUP	PAPER TYPE	Photo Paper	<b>Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908</b> Sets the paper type loaded on the printer.	√		
		Proofing Paper				
		Fine Art Paper				
		Matte Paper				
		<b>Plain paper</b>				
		Others				
		CUSTOM PAPER				
		NO PAPER SELECTED				
		Photo Paper	<b>Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710</b> Sets the paper type loaded on the printer.		√	
		Matte Paper				
		<b>Plain paper</b>				
		Others				
		CUSTOM PAPER				
		NO PAPER SELECTED				
		ClearProof Film	<b>Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910</b> Sets the paper type loaded on the printer.			√
		Premium Glossy 250				
		Premium Glossy Sheet				
		Proofing Paper W Sm				
		CUSTOM PAPER				
		NO PAPER SELECTED				
		Bundle Roll Paper				

Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
PAPER SETUP	CUSTOM PAPER	PAPER NO.1 - 10	You can select a number (between 1 to 10) to register the settings (such as Paper Type, Platen Gap, Thickness Pattern, Paper Feed Adjust, Drying Time, Paper Suction) or to recall these settings you have made. The number you select here is displayed on the LCD panel.	√	√	
	PLATEN GAP	NARROW	Adjusts the platen gap (gap between the printhead and paper surface) according to the paper thickness. STANDARD: use this setting under normal conditions NARROW: select this when using thin paper. WIDE, WIDER: select this when smudges or blurring appear due to an excess pressure on the paper. WIDEST: select this when using heavy paper.	√	√	√
		STANDARD				
		WIDE				
		WIDER				
		WIDEST				
	THICKNESS PATTERN	PRINT	Prints a pattern for checking the thickness of the loaded paper.	√	√	√
	PAPER FEED ADJUST	0.00%	Adjusts the paper feed line pitch. The larger the value is, the more the possibility to cause white bands on printout image. The smaller the value is, the more the possibility to cause black bands on printout image.	√	√	√
		-0.70% to +0.70%				
	DRYING TIME	0.0 SEC	Sets a time period to pause the carriage movement for drying the printed surface. Depending on paper type and density, drying ink may take longer. Check the result and set longer time period in such case.	√	√	√
		0.0 SEC to 10.0 SEC				
	PAPER SUCTION	STANDARD	Sets the power level of the suction fan.	√	√	√
		-1 to -4				
	SET ROLL PAPER TENSION	NORMAL	When using a cloth or thin paper or when wrinkles appear in the paper during printing, select “HIGH” or “HIGHER”.	√		√
		HIGH				
		HIGHER				
	REMOVE SKEW	ON	Sets whether to perform this operation to reduce the paper skew or not.	√	√	√
		OFF				

Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
PAPER SETUP	FRONT EDGE STAND BY	STANDARD POSITION	Selects the paper top stand by position for pre printing (paper is loaded) and post printing (after auto-cut) depending on the paper type. <input type="checkbox"/> STANDAD POSITION Normally use this option. <input type="checkbox"/> BACK POSITION Loads the paper with less paper loading length. Use this option when printing on media such as transparent film to avoid the tracks of the paper.			
		BACK POSITION				√
HEAD ALIGNMENT	PAPER THICKNESS	SELECT PAPER TYPE	Sets thickness of paper to be used. • When Epson paper is used, select the paper type. • When not Epson paper is selected, enter the thickness of the selected paper.	√	√	√
		SELECT THICKNESS				
	ALIGNMENT	AUTO	Sets whether to carry out the head alignment adjustment automatically or manually. AUTO: The adjustment is carried out automatically after the adjustment pattern is printed. MANUAL: Select this to carry out the adjustment manually (visually check the patterns and enter selected values) after printing the adjustment pattern.			
		MANUAL		√	√	√



Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
NETWORK SETUP	NETWORK SETUP	<b>DISABLE</b>	Enables or disables the network settings.	√	√	√
		ENABLE	The NETWORK SETUP menu items appear on the LCD only when this is set to ENABLE.			
	IP ADDRESS SETTING	<b>AUTO</b>	Sets whether to set the IP address automatically or manually.	√	√	√
		PANEL	When the PANEL is selected, the IP, SM, DG SETTING menu is enabled to enter the address manually.			
	IP, SM, DG SETTING	IP ADDRESS	000.000.000.000 -			
			<b>172.024.011.031</b>	√	√	√
			- 255.255.255.255			
		SUBNET MASK	000.000.000.000 -			
			<b>255.255.192.168</b>	√	√	√
			- 255.255.255.255			
		DEFAULT GATEWAY	000.000.000.000 -			
			<b>172.024.011.001</b>	√	√	√
			- 255.255.255.255			
	BONJOUR	<b>ON</b>	Enables or disables the BONJOUR.	√	√	√
		OFF				
	INIT NETWORK SETTING	EXECUTE	Returns the network settings to their default.	√	√	√

Table 1-8. Menu Mode Settings List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation	Applied model		
				Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
OPTIONS SETUP	SpectroProofer	STATUS INFORMATION	Displays the status of each item of SpectroProofer, such as the version of SpectroProofer, the product numbers of the white calibration tiles, the temperature of Color Measurement Device (ILS20EP), ambient air temperature, and the color of the backing.	√		
			Displays the status of each item of SpectroProofer, such as the version of SpectroProofer, the product numbers of the white calibration tiles, the temperature of Color Measurement Device (ILS20EP), ambient air temperature, and the color of the backing, and ILS Calibration Status.			√
		DEVICE ALIGNMENT	Performs the setup for SpectroProofer installed.	√		√
	TAKE UP REEL	TAKE UP REEL VERSION	Displays the version of Auto Take-up Reel Unit.	√	√	

□ PG Settings List

The table below shows the actual platen gap amount specified by the printer driver or the control panel.

**Table 1-9. PG Settings List**

Paper Thickness Sensor	Paper Thickness Setting by Driver	Menu Setting	Media Table or Printer Driver PG Setting	PG Values (mm)
0.4 mm or lower	No setting 0.0 to 0.8mm	NARROW	Narrow	0.8
			Standard	0.8
			Wide	1.2
			Wider	1.6
		STANDARD	Narrow	0.8
			Standard	1.2
			Wide	1.6
			Wider	2.1
		WIDE	Narrow	1.2
			Standard	1.6
			Wide	2.1
			Wider	2.6
		WIDER	Narrow	1.6
			Standard	2.1
			Wide	2.6
			Wider	2.6
		WIDEST	Narrow	2.1
			Standard	2.6
			Wide	2.6
			Wider	2.6
	0.9mm to 1.5mm	--	--	2.6

**Table 1-9. PG Settings List**

Paper Thickness Sensor	Paper Thickness Setting by Driver	Menu Setting	Media Table or Printer Driver PG Setting	PG Values (mm)
0.5mm to 0.8mm	No setting 0.0 to 0.8mm	NARROW	Narrow	0.8
			Standard	0.8
			Wide	1.2
			Wider	1.6
		STANDARD	Narrow	0.8
			Standard	1.2
			Wide	1.6
			Wider	2.1
		WIDE	Narrow	1.2
			Standard	1.6
			Wide	2.1
			Wider	2.6
		WIDER	Narrow	1.6
			Standard	2.1
			Wide	2.6
			Wider	2.6
		WIDEST	Narrow	2.1
			Standard	2.6
			Wide	2.6
			Wider	2.6
	0.9mm to 1.5mm	--	--	2.6
0.9mm to 2.1mm	--	--	--	2.6

□ Firmware version information

The table below explains the firmware version information printed by selecting the VERSION in the PRINTER STATUS menu.

<Format>

- Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910: HW0XXXX-xx.xx.IBCC
- Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910: HN0XXXX-xx.xx.IBCC
- Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710: KW0XXXX-xx.xx.IBCC
- Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710: KN0XXXX-xx.xx.IBCC (until 2010 April)  
KNDXXXX,xx.xx.IBCC (after 2010 April)
- Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910: AN0XXXX-xx.xx.IBCC
- Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M: KNDXXXX,xx.xx.IBCC
- Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908: JW0XXXX-xx.xx.IBCC
- Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908: JN0XXXX-xx.xx.IBCC

**Table 1-10. Firmware Version Information**

Item	Explanation
**0	The code assigned to this printer. <input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910: HW <input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910: HN <input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710: KW <input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710: KN (until 2010 April) <input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910: AN <input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908: JW <input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908: JN “0” (zero) is assigned to a special version of printer.
**D	<input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710: KND <input type="checkbox"/> Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M: KND After 2010 April, the same firmware will be used for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710 and Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M. “D” will be assigned to custom versions.
XXXX	Indicates the firmware version installed on the printer.
xx.xx	Indicates the network firmware version.
I	“A” is indicated for this product.
B	“0” is indicated for this product.
C	A hexadecimal number (00H-FFH) appears to indicate the specified custom number that registers special operation setting. When no custom operation is specified, “00” appears.

## 1.5.2 Maintenance Mode

The maintenance mode allows you to change the environmental settings such as language and unit settings to be displayed, or to return the all settings to their default. The user can also access this mode.

### HOW TO START & QUIT

1. While holding down the [Pause/Reset] button, turn the printer on.
2. Turn the printer off to quit the maintenance mode.

### MAINTENANCE MODE MENU LIST

Menu Item	Settings (shaded one is the default)	Explanation
LANGUAGE	JAPANESE	Selects the language used for the control panel display.
	ENGLISH	
	FRENCH	
	GERMAN	
	ITALIAN	
	PORTUGUE	
	SPANISH	
	DUTCH	
	KOREAN	
	CHINESE	
LENGTH UNIT	<b>METRIC</b>	Selects the unit of length to be used for various length information.
	FEET/INCH	
TEMPERATURE UNIT	<b>°C</b>	Selects the unit of temperature displayed on the LCD panel.
	F	
ROLL PAPER TENSION	1	Specifies the maximum value of Roll Paper Tension. 1: Low tension 5: High tension
	2	
	<b>3</b>	
	4	
	5	
SS CLEANING	EXECUTE	Runs a supersonic head cleaning.
DEFAULT PANEL	EXECUTE	Returns the all settings made by the control panel to their default.
AUTO CLEANING TIMES *	<b>1</b>	Sets the number of cleanings when nozzle clogging is detected at auto nozzle check.
	2	
	3	
CUSTOM	0 - 255	Stores custom settings.

Note : If this menu is not displayed in Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910, update the firmware to the latest. This menu is added and the setting becomes available after updating.

## 1.5.3 Serviceman Mode

The Serviceman Mode is intended to be used by a service personnel for servicing the printer.

### HOW TO START & QUIT

1. Turn the printer on by pressing the [OK], [Paper Feed/Down], and [Menu/Right] buttons.
2. Turn the printer off to quit the Serviceman Mode.

### SERVICEMAN MODE MENU LIST

□ Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/7890/7908/9890/9908

Menu			Explanation
Test	Version	F/W	Displays the F/W version.
	FAN	Paper (Duty)	Checks the operation of each fan.
		Paper 1	
		Paper 2	
		Paper 3	
	Error History	...	Displays the history of errors in the reverse chronological order.
Mecha Adjustment	Paper		Adjusts the Paper Thickness Sensor.
	Rear AD		Adjusts the AD value of the Rear Sensor (PE Sensor).
	Selector Check		Checks the operation of the ink selector.
	APG Check		Checks the operation of the APG.
	PF Ageing	Variable Mode	Runs the PF Ageing.
		Ageing 400	
		Ageing 12	
	CR Ageing		Runs the CR Ageing.
	Cleaning PG	Adjustment	Runs the cleaning PG adjustment.
		Check	Runs the cleaning PG check.
	Decomp		Decompress the Pressurizing Pump.
	Mk Nozzle/Alignment	Output Pattern	Runs the check function of nozzle and alignment. From pattern printing to cleaning can be executed from this menu.
		Output Alignment	
		Cleaning CL1	

Menu			Explanation	
Mecha Adjustment	Mk Nozzle/Alignment	Cleaning CL2		Runs the check function of nozzle and alignment. From pattern printing to cleaning can be executed from this menu. *Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910 only.
		Cleaning CL3		
		Init.Fill		
		SSCL		
		A/B (C/M)	CL1	
			CL2	
			CL3	
			CL4	
		C/D (Bk/Lk)	CL1	
			CL2	
			CL3	
			CL4	
		E/F (Or/Gr)*	CL1	
			CL2	
			CL3	
			CL4	
		G/H (LLk/Y)	CL1	
			CL2	
			CL3	
			CL4	
		I/J (Lm/Lc)	CL1	
	CL2			
	CL3			
	CL4			
	Pk Nozzle/Alignment	Output Pattern		
		Output Alignment		
		Cleaning CL1		
Cleaning CL2				

Menu		Explanation
Mecha Adjustment	Pk Nozzle/Alignment	Cleaning CL3
		Init.Fill
		SSCL
		A/B (C/M)
		CL1
		CL2
		CL3
		CL4
		C/D (Bk/Lk)
		CL1
		CL2
		CL3
		CL4
		E/F (Or/Gr)*
		CL1
		CL2
		CL3
		CL4
		G/H (LLk/Y)
		CL1
		CL2
		CL3
		CL4
		I/J (Lm/Lc)
		CL1
		CL2
		CL3
		CL4
	IM Sensor Gap	
	Adjusts the gap of the Ink Mark Sensor.	
	FAN	
	Operates the Suction Fan.	
	Temporary PG	
	Unlocks the carriage lock and caps the Printhead.	
	PF Head Slant	
	Adjusts the slant of the Printhead to the PF.	
	CR Head Slant	
	Adjusts the slant of the Printhead to the CR.	



Menu		Explanation
Mecha Adjustment	PG Adj.	Adjusts the platen gap.
	CR Scale	Moves the carriage unit by 10 pass, and displays the measured value.
	CR Active Damper	Executes the CR active dumper adjustment.
	AID Check	Runs the AID check.
	IM Sensor	Adjusts the sensitivity of the Ink Mark Sensor.
	Gap Adj.	Runs the gap adjustment.
	Feed Adj	Runs the band feed adjustment.
	Cutter	Checks the cutter operation.
	TBS Pos	Runs the TBS adjustment.
	Pad Position	Adjusts the pad position.
	Measurement	Executes a measurement of the mechanism.
		Executes a measurement of the ink system.
	Print Adj. Variable	Prints the adjustment variables.
	Board Paper Check	Executes a Board Paper feeding check.
	LCD RGB Check	Checks the operation of the LCD.
	Panel Check	Checks the operation of the Buttons and the LEDs.
	Counter Check	Checks various counters.
	Counter Clear	Resets various counters.

Menu			Explanation
Maintenance	Tube Exchange		Exchanges an ink tube.
	Wiper Exchange		Exchanges the wiper.
	Pump Exchange		Exchanges the pump.
	Press Pump Exchange		Exchanges the pressurizing pump.
	Selector Exchange		Exchanges the ink selector.
	I/H Exchange		Exchanges the ink holder.
	Head Exchange		Exchanges the Printhead.
Cleaning	Std. CL1		Runs CL1.
	Std. CL2		Runs CL2.
	Std. CL3		Runs CL3.
	Init.Fill		Executes the initial ink charge.
	SSCL		Runs SSCL
	A/B (C/M)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row A/B.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	C/D (Bk/Lk)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row C/D.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	E/F (Or/Gr)*	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row E/F. *Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910 only.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	G/H (LLk/Y)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row G/H.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	

Menu			Explanation
Cleaning	I/J (Lm/Lc)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row I/J.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	ServicemanCL		Discharges the ink and runs cleaning of the ink path. (p447)
Parameter	Update	InkParateter	Sets/resets the ink initial charge flag.
		RTC	Configures the initializing date for the RTC.
	Display		Displays the NVRAM value of the specified address.
Life	CR	PG	Configures the durability settings of the mechanism and the printhead.
		H to F Speed	
		F to H Speed	
		Page Size	
		Fan	
		Life Count	
	PF	Feed Amount 1	
		Feed Speed 1	
		Feed Amount 2	
		Feed Speed 2	
		Wait	
		DD Nip	
		Fan	
		Life Count	

		Menu	Explanation
Life	RR	Rotation (mm)	Configures the durability settings of the mechanism and the printhead.
		Speed	
		Release planet	
		Waiting period (sec.)	
		Life Count	
	Tension	Switching 1	
		Switching 2	
		Waiting period (sec.)	
		Life Count	
	Driven roller	Switching	
		Waiting period 1 (sec.)	
		Waiting period 2 (sec.)	
		Life Count	
	APG	PG	
		Wait	
		Life Count	
	Cutter	Length	
		Return Length	
		Speed	
		Return Speed	
		Wait1	
		Wait2	
		Fan1	
		Fan2	
		Life Count	

		Menu	Explanation
Life	Take up	Take up Reel Rotation (mm)	Configures the durability settings of the mechanism and the printhead.
		Winding Speed	
		Waiting period (sec.)	
		Duration times	
	Colorimetric Carrier	CW Speed	
		CCW Speed	
		Movement Distance (mm)	
		Waiting period (sec.)	
		Duration times	
	Paper Pressing Plate	Waiting period (sec.)	
		Duration times	
	Carrir + Plate	CW Speed	
		CCW Speed	
		Movement Distance (mm)	
		Waiting period (sec.)	
		Duration times	
	Display Count	Display Count	

□ Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710

Menu			Explanation
Test	Version	F/W	Displays the F/W version.
	FAN	Paper (Duty)	Checks the operation of each fan.
		Paper 1	
		Paper 2	
		Paper 3	
	Error History	...	Displays the history of errors in the reverse chronological order.
Mecha Adjustment	Paper		Adjusts the Paper Thickness Sensor.
	Rear AD		Adjusts the AD value of the Rear Sensor (PE Sensor).
	Selector Check		Checks the operation of the ink selector.
	APG Check		Checks the operation of the APG.
	PF Ageing	Variable Mode	Runs the PF Ageing.
		Ageing 400	
		Ageing 12	
	CR Ageing		Runs the CR Ageing.
	Cleaning PG	Adjustment	Runs the cleaning PG adjustment.
		Check	Runs the cleaning PG check.
	Decomp		Decompress the Pressurizing Pump.

Menu		Explanation
Mecha Adjustment	Nozzle/Alignment	Runs the check function of nozzle and alignment. From pattern printing to cleaning can be executed from this menu.
	IM Sensor Gap	Adjusts the gap of the Ink Mark Sensor.
	FAN	Operates the Suction Fan.
	Temporary PG	Unlocks the carriage lock and caps the Printhead.
	PF Head Slant	Adjusts the slant of the Printhead to the PF.
	CR Head Slant	Adjusts the slant of the Printhead to the CR.
	PG Adj.	Adjusts the platen gap.
	CR Scale	Moves the carriage unit by 10 pass, and displays the measured value.

Menu			Explanation
Mecha Adjustment	CR Active Damper	ALL	Executes the CR active damper adjustment.
		240 cps	
		300 cps	
		Hybrid	
	AID Check		Runs the AID check.
	IM Sensor		Adjusts the sensitivity of the Ink Mark Sensor.
	Gap Adj.	Auto Uni-D	Runs the gap adjustment.
		Auto Bi-D	
	Feed Adj		Runs the band feed adjustment.
	Cutter		Checks the cutter operation.
	TBS Pos		Runs the TBS adjustment.
	Pad Position		Adjusts the pad position.
	Measurement	Mecha	Executes a measurement of the mechanism.
		Ink System	Executes a measurement of the ink system.
	Print Adj. Variable		Prints the adjustment variables.
	Board Paper Check		Executes a Board Paper feeding check.
	LCD RGB Check	Red	Checks the operation of the LCD.
		Green	
		Blue	
	Panel Check	Button	Checks the operation of the Buttons and the LEDs.
		LED	
	Counter Check		Checks various counters.
	Counter Clear		Resets various counters.



Menu			Explanation
Maintenance	Tube Exchange		Exchanges an ink tube.
	Wiper Exchange		Exchanges the wiper.
	Pump Exchange		Exchanges the pump.
	Press Pump Exchange		Exchanges the pressurizing pump.
	I/H Exchange		Exchanges the ink holder.
	Head Exchange		Exchanges the Printhead.
Cleaning	Std. CL1		Runs CL1.
	Std. CL2		Runs CL2.
	Std. CL3		Runs CL3.
	Init.Fill		Executes the initial ink charge.
	SSCL		Runs SSCL
	A/B/I/J (C/M/M/C)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row A/B/I/J.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	C/D/G/H (Y/Pk/Pk/Y)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row C/D/G/H.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	E/F (Mk/Mk)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row E/F.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	I/J (Lm/Lc)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row I/J.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	ServicemanCL		Discharges the ink and runs cleaning of the ink path. (p447)

Menu			Explanation
Parameter	Update	InkParateter	Sets/resets the ink initial charge flag.
		RTC	Configures the initializing date for the RTC.
	Display		Displays the NVRAM value of the specified address.
Life	CR	PG	Configures the durability settings of the mechanism and the printhead.
		H to F Speed	
		F to H Speed	
		Page Size	
		Fan	
		Life Count	
	PF	Feed Amount 1	
		Feed Speed 1	
		Feed Amount 2	
		Feed Speed 2	
		Wait	
		DD Nip	
		Fan	
		Life Count	
	RR	Rotation (mm)	
		Speed	
		Release planet	
		Waiting period (sec.)	
		Life Count	
	Driven roller	Switching	
		Waiting period 1 (sec.)	
		Waiting period 2 (sec.)	
		Life Count	
	APG	PG	
		Wait	
		Life Count	

		Menu	Explanation
Life	Cutter	Length	Configures the durability settings of the mechanism and the printhead.
		Return Length	
		Speed	
		Return Speed	
		Wait1	
		Wait2	
		Fan1	
		Fan2	
		Life Count	
	Take up	Take up Reel Rotation (mm)	
		Winding Speed	
		Waiting period (sec.)	
		Duration times	
	Display Count	Display Count	

## □ Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910

Menu			Explanation
Test	Version	F/W	Displays the F/W version.
	FAN	Paper (Duty)	Checks the operation of each fan.
		Paper 1	
		Paper 2	
	Error History	...	Displays the history of errors in the reverse chronological order.
Mecha Adjustment	Paper		Adjusts the Paper Thickness Sensor.
	Rear AD		Adjusts the AD value of the Rear Sensor (PE Sensor).
	Selector Check		Checks the operation of the ink selector.
	APG Check		Checks the operation of the APG.
	PF Ageing	Variable Mode	Runs the PF Ageing.
		Ageing 400	
		Ageing 12	
	CR Ageing		Runs the CR Ageing.
	Cleaning PG	Adjustment	Runs the cleaning PG adjustment.
		Check	Runs the cleaning PG check.
	Decomp		Decompresses the Pressurizing Pump.
	Nozzle/Alignment	Output Pattern	Runs the check function of nozzle and alignment. From pattern printing to cleaning can be executed from this menu.
		Output Alignment	
		Cleaning CL1	
		Cleaning CL2	
		Cleaning CL3	
		Init.Fill	
		SSCL	
		A/B (C/M)	CL1
			CL2
			CL3
			CL4

Menu				Explanation
Mecha Adjustment	Nozzle/Alignment	C/D(W/CL)	CL1	Runs the check function of nozzle and alignment. From pattern printing to cleaning can be executed from this menu.
			CL2	
			CL3	
			CL4	
			CL5	
		E/F (Or/Gr)	CL1	
			CL2	
			CL3	
			CL4	
		G/H (Pk/Y)	CL1	
			CL2	
			CL3	
			CL4	
		I/J (Lm/Lc)	CL1	
			CL2	
			CL3	
			CL4	
	IM Sensor Gap		Adjusts the gap of the Ink Mark Sensor.	
	FAN		Operates the Suction Fan.	
	Temporary PG		Unlocks the carriage lock and caps the Printhead.	
	PF Head Slant		Adjusts the slant of the Printhead to the PF.	
	CR Head Slant		Adjusts the slant of the Printhead to the CR.	
	PG Adj.		Adjusts the platen gap.	
	CR Scale		Moves the carriage unit by 10 pass, and displays the measured value.	
	CR Active Damper	ALL		Executes the CR active dumper adjustment.
		240 cps		
		300 cps		
Hybrid				
AID Check		Runs the AID check.		
IM Sensor		Adjusts the sensitivity of the Ink Mark Sensor.		

Menu			Explanation
Mecha Adjustment	Gap Adj.	Auto Uni-D	Runs the gap adjustment.
		Auto Bi-D	
	Feed Adj		Runs the band feed adjustment.
	Cutter		Checks the cutter operation.
	TBS Pos		Runs the TBS adjustment.
	Measurement	Mecha	Executes a measurement of the mechanism.
		Ink System	Executes a measurement of the ink system.
	Print Adj. Variable		Prints the adjustment variables.
	Board Paper Check		Executes a Board Paper feeding check.
	LCD RGB Check	Red	Checks the operation of the LCD.
		Green	
		Blue	
	Panel Check	Button	Checks the operation of the Buttons and the LEDs.
		LED	
Maintenance	Counter Check		Checks various counters.
	Counter Clear		Resets various counters.
	Tube Exchange		Exchanges an ink tube.
	Wiper Exchange		Exchanges the wiper.
	Pump Exchange		Exchanges the pump.
	Press Pump Exchange		Exchanges the pressurizing pump.
	Selector Exchange		Exchange the Selector.
	I/H Exchange		Exchanges the ink holder.
	Head Exchange		Exchanges the Printhead.

Menu			Explanation
Cleaning	Std. CL1		Runs CL1.
	Std. CL2		Runs CL2.
	Std. CL3		Runs CL3.
	Init.Fill		Executes the initial ink charge.
	SSCL		Runs SSCL
	A/B (C/M)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row A/B.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	C/D (W/CL)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row C/D.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	E/F (Or/Gr)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row E/F.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	G/H (Pk/Y)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row G/H.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	I/J (Lm/Lc)	CL1	Runs various cleanings for the nozzle row I/J.
		CL2	
		CL3	
		CL4	
	ServicemanCL		Discharges the ink and runs cleaning of the ink path. <a href="#">(p447)</a>
	WT Maint. CL		Executes the white ink sediment measure.

Menu			Explanation
Parameter	Update	InkParateter	Sets/resets the ink initial charge flag.
		RTC	Configures the initializing date for the RTC.
	Display		Displays the NVRAM value of the specified address.
Life	CR	PG	Configures the durability settings of the mechanism and the printhead.
		H to F Speed	
		F to H Speed	
		Page Size	
		Fan	
		Life Count	
	PF	Feed Amount 1	
		Feed Speed 1	
		Feed Amount 2	
		Feed Speed 2	
		Wait	
		DD Nip	
		Fan	
		Life Count	
	RR	Rotation (mm)	
		Speed	
		Release planet	
		Waiting period (sec.)	
		Life Count	
	Tension	Switching 1	
		Switching 2	
		Waiting period (sec.)	
		Life Count	
	Driven roller	Switching	
		Waiting period 1 (sec.)	
		Waiting period 2 (sec.)	
		Life Count	



Menu			Explanation
Life	APG	PG	Configures the durability settings of the mechanism and the printhead.
		Wait	
		Life Count	
	Cutter	Length	
		Return Length	
		Speed	
		Return Speed	
		Wait1	
		Wait2	
		Fan1	
		Fan2	
		Life Count	
	Colorimetric Carrier	CW Speed	
		CCW Speed	
		Movement Distance (mm)	
		Waiting period (sec.)	
		Duration times	
	Paper Pressing Plate	Waiting period (sec.)	
		Duration times	
	Carrir + Plate	CW Speed	
		CCW Speed	
		Movement Distance (mm)	
		Waiting period (sec.)	
		Duration times	
	Display Count	Display Count	

CHAPTER

2

## OPERATING PRINCIPLES

## 2.1 Main Body

### 2.1.1 Housing

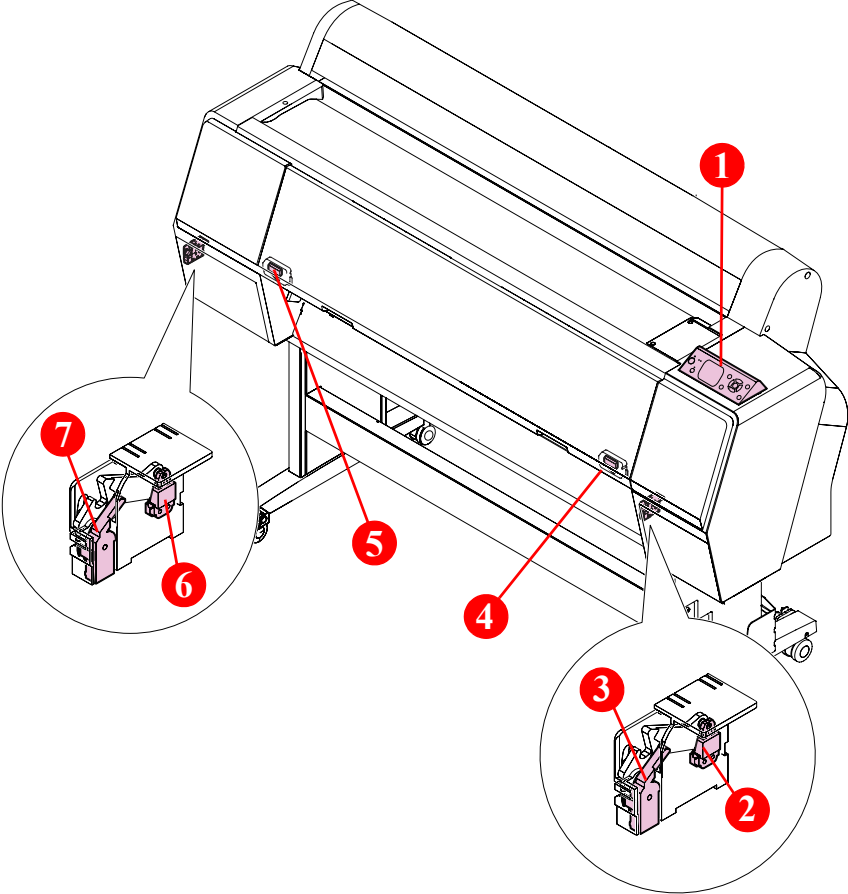


Figure 2-1. Housing

Diagram	Name	Description
1	Control Panel	<div><input type="checkbox"/> Operations and configurations of the printer</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/> Displays the printer's status, and each value for the settings on LCD display.</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/> Indicates the printer's (error) statuses with LEDs.</div>
2	IC Cover Unlock Solenoid R	Unlocks the IC Cover R.
3	IC Cover Sensor Assy R	Detects the Open/Closed status of the IC Cover R.
4	Front Cover Sensor R	Detects the Open/Closed status of the Front Cover.
5	Front Cover Sensor L	Detects the Open/Closed status of the Front Cover.
6	IC Cover Unlock Solenoid L *	Unlocks the IC Cover L.
7	IC Cover Sensor Assy L *	Detects the Open/Closed status of the IC Cover L.

Note : Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910 only.

## 2.1.2 Electric Circuit Components

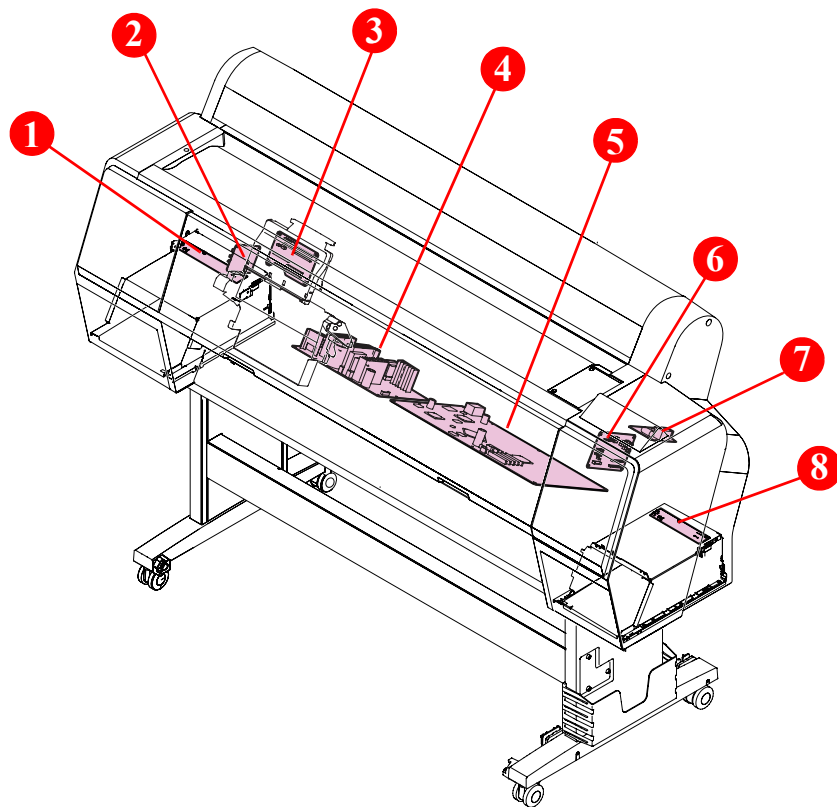


Figure 2-2. Electric Circuit Components

Diagram	Name	Description
1	Ink Holder Board Assy L	Relays the connection between the Main Board Assy and electric parts/components of every kind. See <a href="#">"Block Wiring Diagram"</a> (p. 466) for specific connections to the concerning parts/components.
2	Sub Board Assy; C	Relays the connection between the Main Board Assy and electric parts/components of every kind. See <a href="#">"Block Wiring Diagram"</a> (p. 466) for specific connections to the concerning parts/components.
3	Sub Board Assy	Relays the connection between the Main Board Assy and electric parts/components of every kind. See <a href="#">"Block Wiring Diagram"</a> (p. 466) for specific connections to the concerning parts/components.
4	Power Supply Board Assy	Generates the DC voltage for this printer from the AC power supply.
5	Main Board Assy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Communicates with the computer.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Processes received data.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Controls the printer mechanism.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Stores the correction values and various counters.</li> <li><input type="checkbox"/> Generates the voltages for the logic system from the voltage of 42V supplied from the Power Supply Board Assy.</li> </ul>
6	Sub Board Assy; B	Relays the connection between the Main Board Assy and electric parts/components of every kind. See <a href="#">"Block Wiring Diagram"</a> (p. 466) for specific connections to the concerning parts/components.
7	AID Board	The board to perform the AID function which detects dot missing automatically.
8	Ink Holder Board Assy R	Relays the connection between the Main Board Assy and electric parts/components of every kind. See <a href="#">"Block Wiring Diagram"</a> (p. 466) for specific connections to the concerning parts/components.

2.1.3 Carriage Mechanism

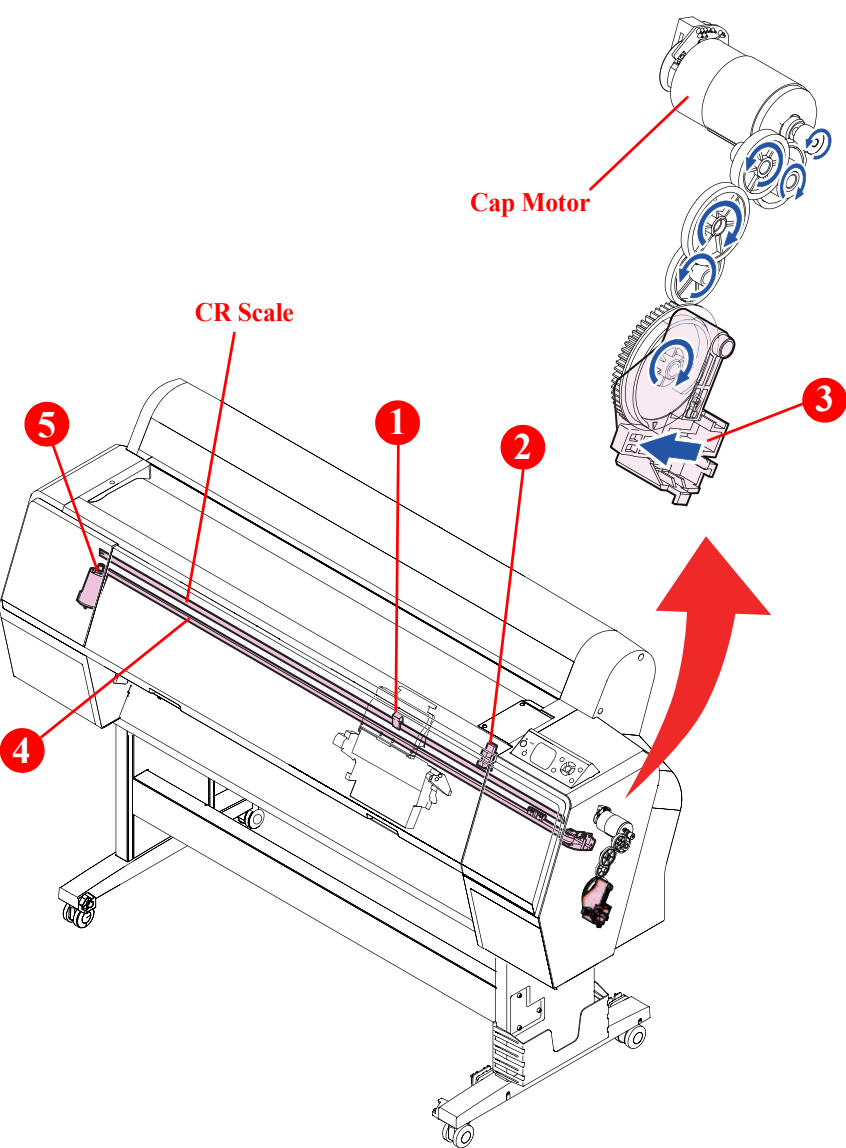


Figure 2-3. Carriage Mechanism

Diagram	Name	Description
1	CR Encoder	Detects the scale patterns to control the position of the Carriage Unit.
2	CR HP Sensor	Detects the home position of the Carriage Unit.
3	CR Lock	Locks the Carriage Unit. It is driven by the Cap Motor. (See p. 101.)
4	CR Belt	Conveys the drive force of the CR Motor to the Carriage Unit.
5	CR Motor	The motor to drive the Carriage Unit.

2.1.4 APG Mechanism

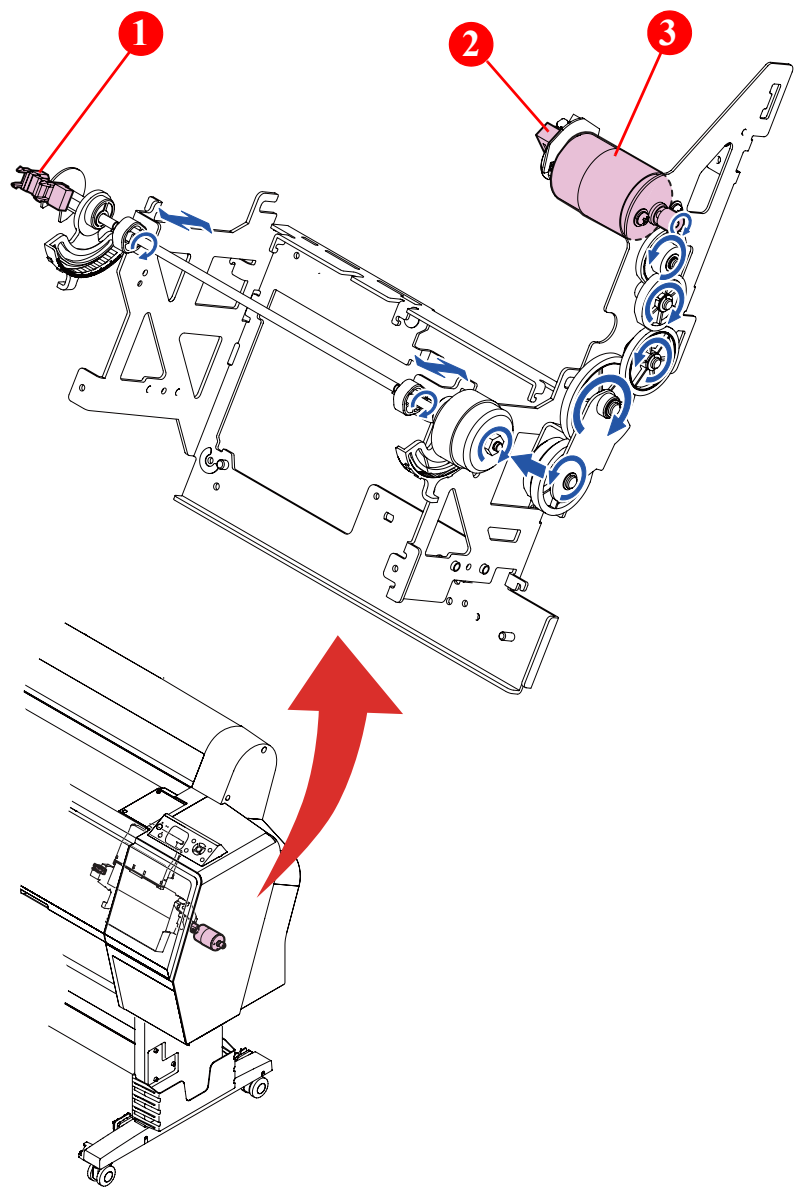


Diagram	Name	Description
1	PG HP Sensor	Detects the origin position of the platen gap.
2	APG Encoder Sensor	Detects patterns of the scale attached on the motor to control the rotation of the APG Motor.
3	APG Motor	The motor to move the Carriage Unit automatically so as to change the platen gap.

Figure 2-4. Paper Feed Mechanism

## 2.1.5 Paper Feed Mechanism

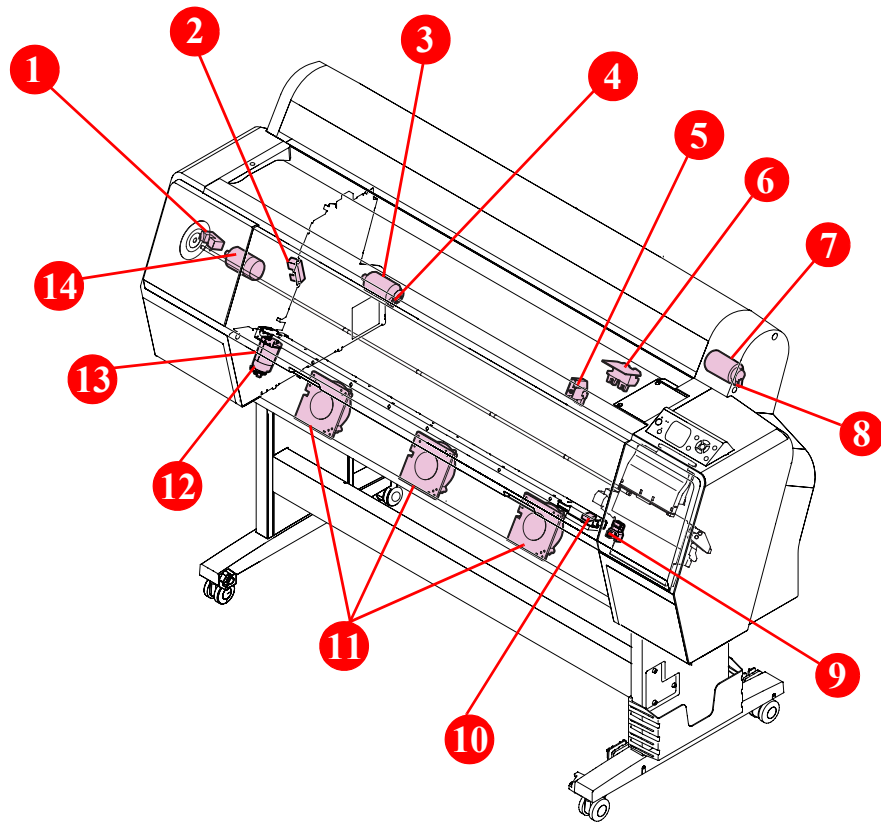


Figure 2-5. Paper Feed Mechanism

Diagram	Name	Description
1	PF Encoder	Detects the PF Scale patterns to control the paper feeding (operation of the PF Motor).
2	Roller Release HP Sensor	Detects the position (Contact/Separate status) of the driven roller.
3	Driven Roller Release Motor Assy	Drives the driven roller. A DC motor with an encoder scale mounted on it is employed.
4	Driven Roller Release Motor Encoder	Detects patterns of the scale attached on the motor to control the rotation of the Driven Roller Release Motor Assy.
5	PE Sensor	A reflective photo interrupter to detect the presence of paper.
6	Paper Thickness Sensor	Detects the thickness of paper being inserted into the printer.
7	Rewind Motor	Takes up the slack of the roll paper when the motor rotates normally, and rewinds the roll paper when it rotates reversely. A DC motor with an encoder scale mounted on it is employed.
8	Rewind Motor Encoder	Detects patterns of the scale attached on the motor to control the rotation of the Rewind Motor.
9	PW Sensor	Detects the width of paper on the platen. It is a reflective photo interrupter and detects the difference of the amount of reflection between paper (white) and the platen (black).
10	Cutter Sensor	Detects the origin position of the cutter.
11	Suction Fans	Suck paper to the platen so as to stabilize the position of paper when printing. Three fans are mounted for Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908, and two fans for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.
12	Cutter Encoder	Detects patterns of the scale attached on the motor to control the rotation of the Cutter Motor.
13	Cutter Motor	Drives the cutter. A DC motor with an encoder scale mounted on it is employed.
14	PF Motor	The motor to drive the Feed Roller.

## 2.1.6 Ink System

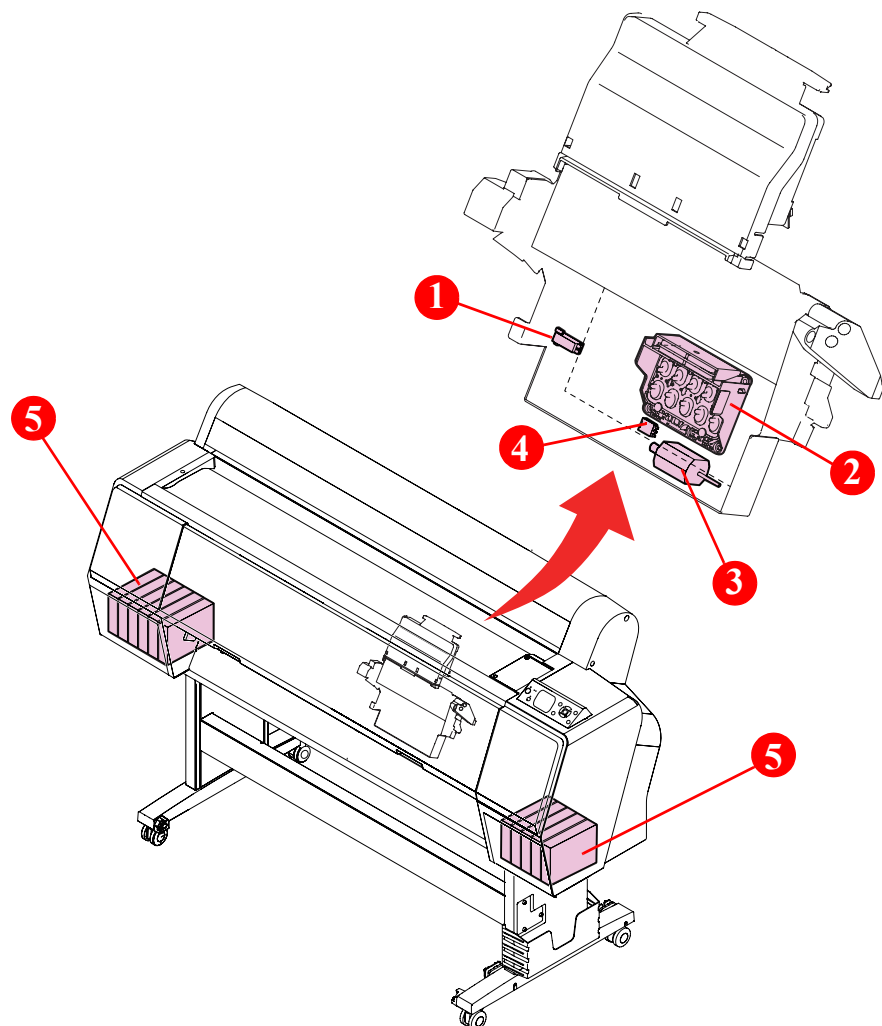


Figure 2-6. Ink System

Diagram	Name	Description
1	Ink Mark Sensor	The sensor to execute the functions below. <input type="checkbox"/> Auto Bi-D adjustment (pattern reading) <input type="checkbox"/> Auto Uni-D adjustment (pattern reading) <input type="checkbox"/> Remaining roll paper detection (remaining block pattern reading)
2	Printhead	<input type="checkbox"/> Nozzle per row: 360 nozzles <input type="checkbox"/> Rows: 10 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/7890/7908/9890/9908: Photo Black and Matte Black use one row in common.</li> <li>Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710: Photo Black and Matte Black use their own rows.</li> <li>Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910: White ink and Cleaning liquid use one row in common.</li> </ul>
3	Ink Selector Motor *1	Drives the Ink Selector.
4	Ink Selector Sensor *1	Detects the position of the Ink Selector (selected ink color)
5	Ink Cartridges *2	The cartridges storing ink. They mount CSIC.

Note \*1: Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908 only.

\*2: Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7700M/7710M/7710/9700/9710: Only the ink cartridges on the right are used.



## INK SYSTEM UNIT

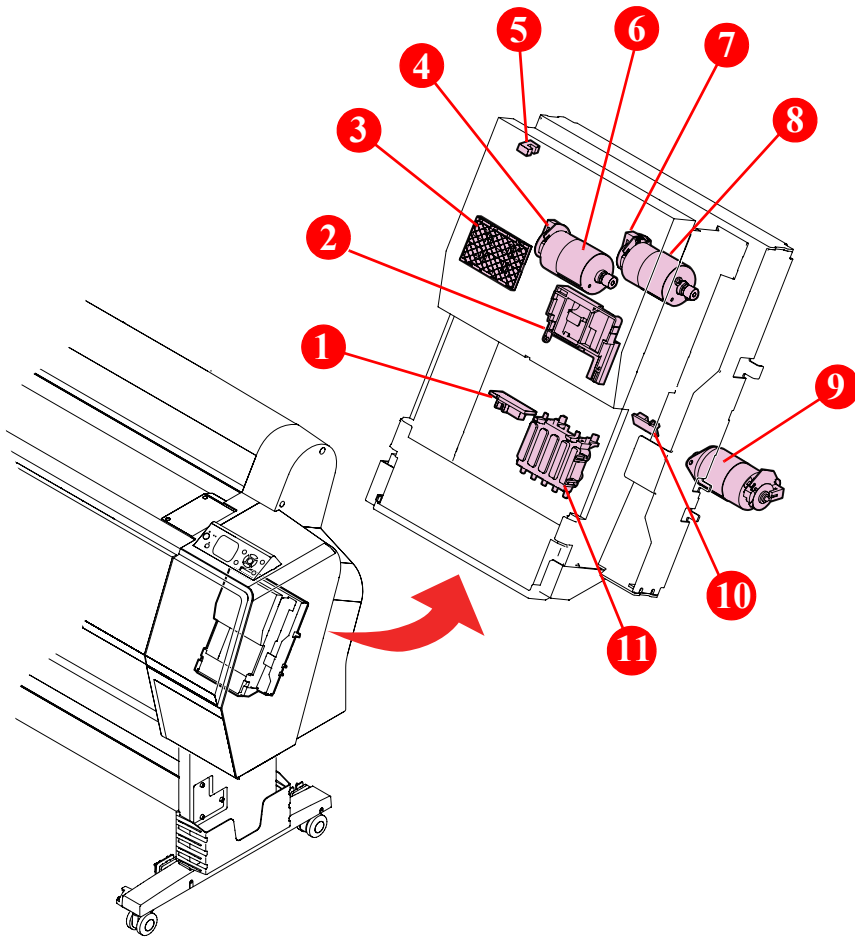


Figure 2-7. Ink System Unit

Diagram	Name	Description
1	Cap HP Sensor	Detects the origin position of the Cap.
2	Wiper	Cleans the nozzle surface of the Printhead. It is driven by the Wiper Motor.
3	Flushing Box	The box to receive the flushed ink. It is driven by the Wiper Motor.
4	Wiper Motor Encoder	Detects patterns of the scale attached on the motor to control the rotation of the Wiper Motor.
5	Wiper HP Sensor	Detects the origin position of the Wiper.
6	Wiper Motor	Slides the Wiper and the Flushing Box. A DC motor with an encoder scale mounted on it is employed.
7	Cap Motor Encoder	Detects patterns of the scale attached on the motor to control the rotation of the Cap Motor.
8	Cap Motor	Drives the Cap and the CR Lock.
9	Pump Motor	Drives the pump to suck ink. A DC motor with an encoder scale mounted on it is employed.
10	Valve HP Selector	Detects the origin position of the valve.
11	Cap	Caps the Printhead to protect the nozzle surface. It is driven by the Cap Motor.

PRESSURIZING UNIT

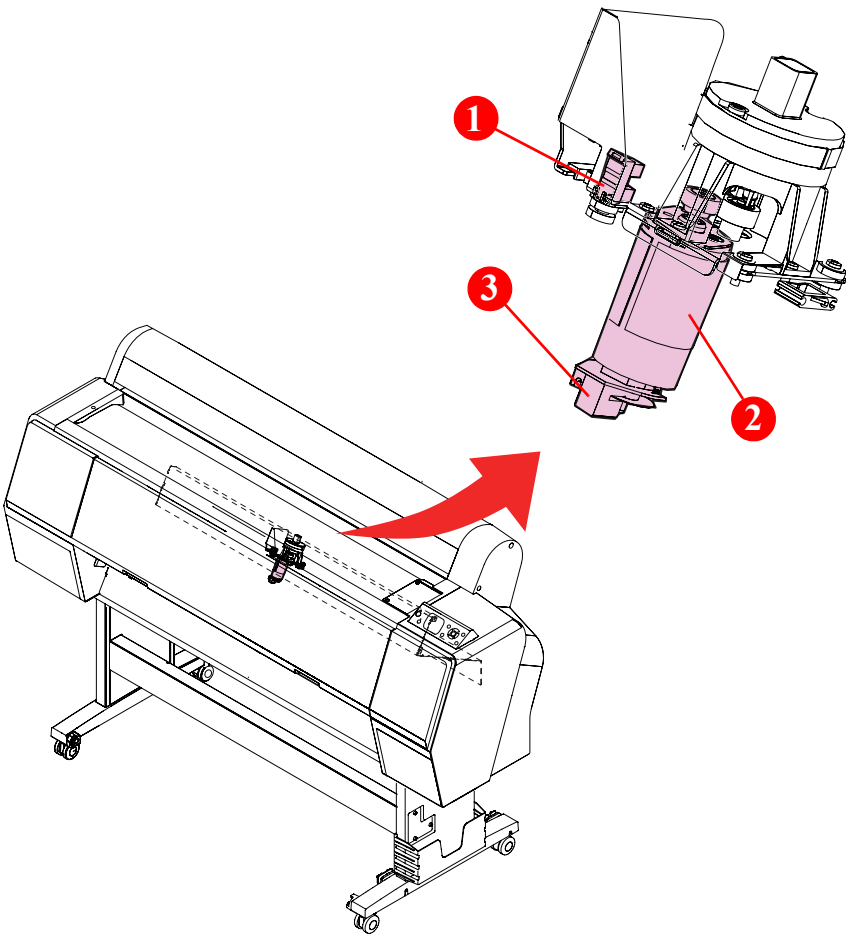


Figure 2-8. Pressurizing Unit

Diagram	Name	Description
1	Pressure Sensor	A transmissive photo interrupter to detect the pressurizing status. It detects the status of the actuator which operates when the pressure reaches up to the specified amount.
2	Pressurizing Pump Motor	Supplies air to pressurize the ink pack. A DC motor with an encoder scale mounted on it is employed.
3	Pressurizing Pump Motor Encoder	Detects patterns of the scale attached on the motor to control the rotation of the Pressurizing Pump Motor.

2.2 Options

2.2.1 Auto Take-up Reel

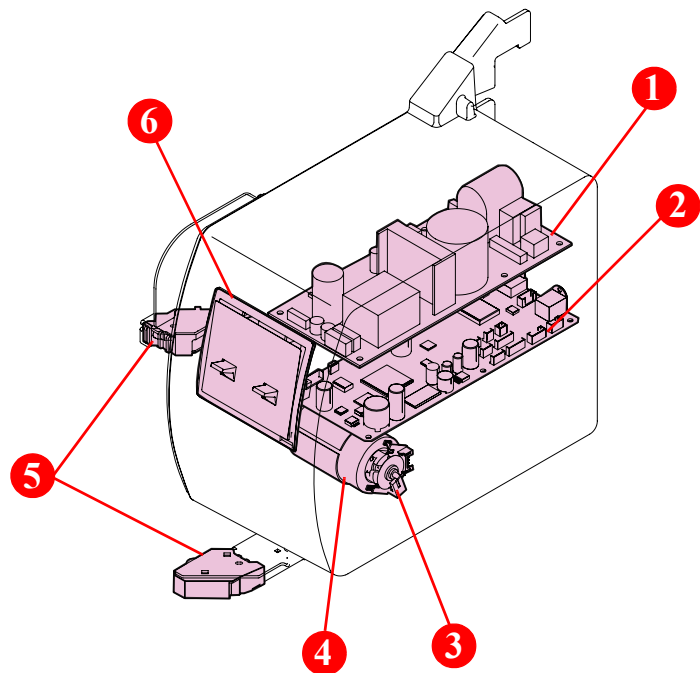


Figure 2-9. Auto Take-up Reel

Diagram	Name	Description
1	Power Supply Board	Generates the DC voltage for the Auto Take-up Reel from the AC power supply.
2	Main Board	Controls the Auto Take-up Reel.
3	Auto Take-up Encoder	Detects patterns of the scale attached on the motor to control the rotation of the Auto Take-up Motor.
4	Auto Take-up Motor	A motor to wind paper. A DC motor with an encoder scale mounted on it is employed.
5	Slack Sensor	Detects the slack of paper. When detecting the slack, the Auto Take-up Motor rotates and winds the paper.
6	Control Panel	Consists of various switches and LEDs to indicate the status of the Auto Take-up Reel.

## 2.2.2 SpectroProofer

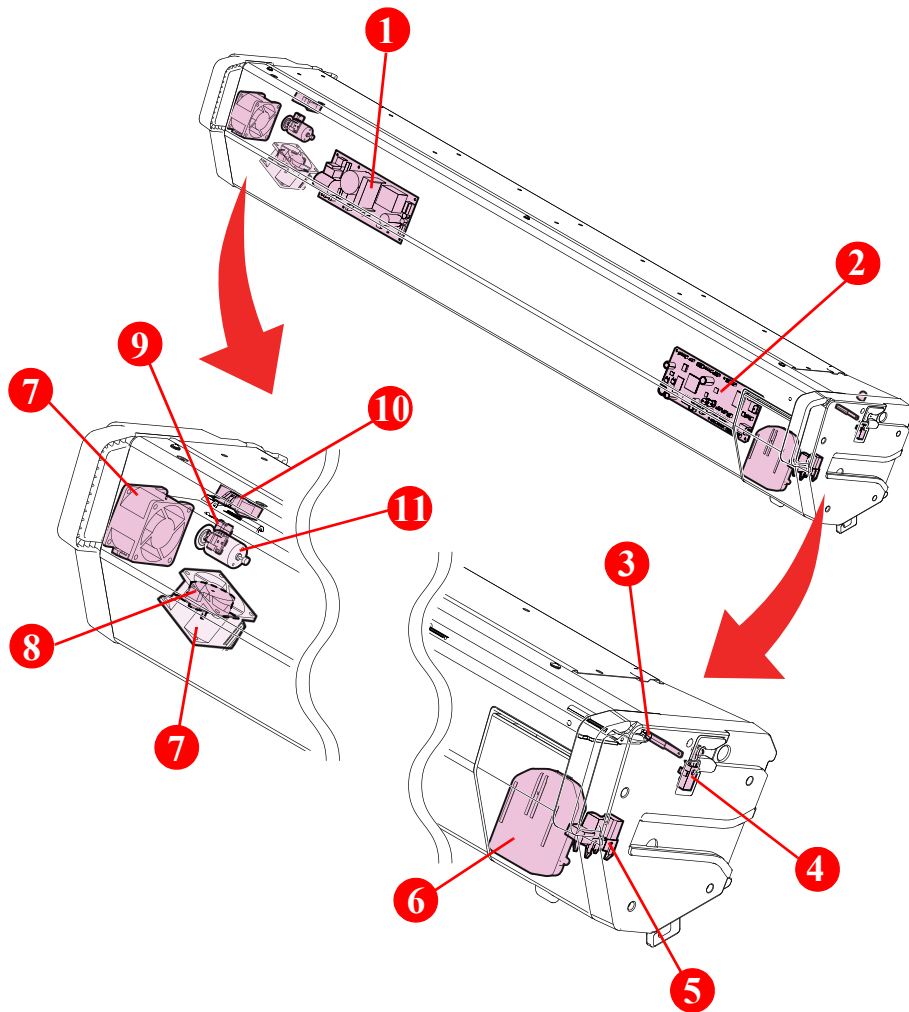


Figure 2-10. SpectroProofer

Diagram	Name	Description
1	Power Supply Board	Generates the DC voltage for the SpectroProofer from the AC power supply.
2	Main Board	Controls the SpectroProofer.
3	Thermistor	Detects the temperature and feeds it back to the dry control section. The drying time is changed according to the detected temperature.
4	Mount Sensor	Detects the presence of the Mounter.
5	CR HP Sensor	Detects the origin position of the carriage mounting the Auto Colorimeter.
6	Auto Colorimeter	The device to measure the color of printed result automatically.
7	Cooling Fan	Dries the printed paper.
8	Carriage Motor	Drives the carriage mounting the Auto Colorimeter.
9	Paper Pressing Encoder	Detects patterns of the scale attached on the motor to control the rotation of the Paper Pressing Motor.
10	Paper Pressing Plate Sensor	Detects the position of the Paper Pressing Plate.
11	Paper Pressing Motor	Drives the Paper Pressing Plate.

CHAPTER

3

## TROUBLESHOOTING

## 3.1 Overview

This section explains the basic procedure for troubleshooting problems on the printer quickly and efficiently.

### 3.1.1 Preliminary Check

Make sure to verify or perform the following basic items whenever servicing the printer.

1. There is no foreign material which interferes with the proper operation of the printer.
2. Print the status sheet, and check the information printed on the sheet to find out possible causes of the error; if the main units have reached their end of life, or if there is something wrong with the user-defined panel settings.
3. Both outside and inside of the printer are free from significant dirt. Clean it if significant dirt is observed.
4. None of the parts or components of the printer are missing, chipped or damaged.
5. All of the harnesses are free from damages and connected properly (vertically and correctly) to their connectors.
6. The cams and gears in the printer mechanism are engaged correctly showing no signs of wear.
7. When smudges appear on printed pages, clean the rubber rollers in the printer mechanism if it solves the problem.
8. The rubber rollers in the printer mechanism are engaged correctly showing no signs of wear.



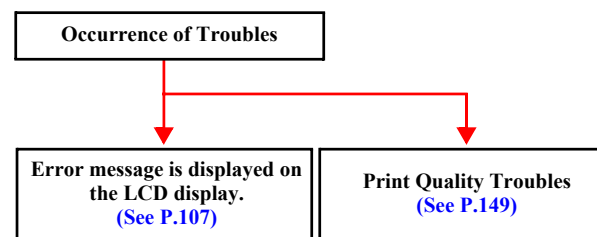
When handling the lithium battery used for backup of the RTC on the main board, strictly follow the safety instructions given in "4.1.1 Precautions" (See P 167).



- Before disassembling/reassembling the printer, be sure to turn the power OFF, confirm the panel display disappears, and unplug the power cord.
- Be sure to use the specified tools for maintenance/repair.
- To maintain the product's quality, be sure to use the specified lubricant and adhesive.
- Be sure to perform the adjustments as required.

### 3.1.2 Troubleshooting Procedure

Follow the flowchart given below to troubleshoot problems efficiently.



## 3.2 List of Error Messages

The printer runs the self-testing function on itself according to various conditions detected by the mounted sensors. If an error condition is detected as a result of the self-testing, the printer displays the corresponding error message on the LCD panel. The error messages are shown on the following list.

Table 3-1. List of Error Messages

Message on LCD	Trouble Shooting No.	Applied model			
		Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910	Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908
PAPER OUT LOAD PAPER	1 (See P.113)	✓	✓	✓	✓
PAPER RELEASED LOAD PAPER	2 (See P.113)	✓	✓	✓	✓
PAPER SKEW LOAD PAPER PROPERLY	3 (See P.113)	✓	✓	✓	✓
PAPER SETTING ERROR CHECK PAPER SOURCE IN THE DRIVER SETTINGS AND LOAD PAPER CORRECTLY	4 (See P.113)	✓	✓	✓	✓
PAPER CUT ERROR REMOVE UNCUT PAPER	5 (See P.113)	✓	✓	✓	✓
CUTTER UNIT NEARING END OF SERVICE LIFE. RECOMMEND REPLACING THE CUTTER UNIT	6 (See P.113)	✓	✓	✓	✓
PAPER ERROR LOAD PAPER CORRECTLY REFER TO THE MANUAL	7 (See P.113)	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 3-1. List of Error Messages


Message on LCD	Trouble Shooting No.	Applied model			
		Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910	Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908
PAPER SENSOR ERROR PRESS THE  BUTTON LOAD DIFFERENT PAPER	8 (See P.114)	✓	✓	✓	✓
PAPER LOW	9 (See P.114)	✓	✓	✓	✓
BORDERLESS ERROR LOAD A SUPPORTED PAPER SIZE OR LOAD PAPER CORRECTLY	10 (See P.114)	✓	✓		✓
PAPER EJECT ERROR REMOVE PAPER FROM PRINTER	11 (See P.114)	✓	✓	✓	✓
PAPER SIZE ERROR LOAD CORRECT SIZE PAPER	12 (See P.114)	✓	✓	✓	✓
PAPER JAM REMOVE PAPER	13 (See P.114)	✓	✓	✓	✓
FRONT COVER OPEN CLOSE FRONT COVER	14 (See P.114)	✓	✓	✓	✓
INK COVER OPEN CLOSE RIGHT AND LEFT INK COVERS	15 (See P.115)	✓		✓	✓
INK COVER OPEN CLOSE RIGHT INK COVER	15 (See P.115)	✓	✓	✓	✓
INK COVER OPEN CLOSE LEFT INK COVER	15 (See P.115)	✓		✓	✓
CANNOT OPEN INK COVER IS ANYTHING OBSTRUCTING THE RIGHT INK COVER? PRESS INK COVER OPEN BUTTON	16 (See P.115)	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 3-1. List of Error Messages


Message on LCD	Trouble Shooting No.	Applied model			
		Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910	Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908
CANNOT OPEN INK COVER IS ANYTHING OBSTRUCTING THE LEFT INK COVER? PRESS INK COVER OPEN BUTTON	16 (See P.115)	√		√	√
F/W INSTALL ERROR UPDATE FAILED RESTART THE PRINTER	17 (See P.115)	√	√	√	√
PRINTER ERROR RESTART THE PRINTER	18 (See P.115)	√	√	√	√
COMMAND ERROR CHECK DRIVER SETTINGS	19 (See P.115)	√	√	√	√
REMOVE AND SHAKE WHITE INK CARTRIDGE ONCE A WEEK	20 (See P.115)			√	
WT INK MAINT. REQUIRED REMOVE AND SHAKE WHITE INK CARTRIDGE	21 (See P.115)			√	
PAPER SENSOR ERROR PRESS THE  BUTTON LOAD THE CORRECT PAPER REFER TO THE MANUAL	22 (See P.116)	√	√	√	√
CLEANING ERROR AUTOMATIC HEAD CLEANING FAILED RETRY? YES NO	23 (See P.116)	√	√	√	√

Table 3-1. List of Error Messages

Message on LCD	Trouble Shooting No.	Applied model			
		Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910	Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908
CLOGGED NOZZLES DETECTED CLEANING RECOMMENDED	24 (See P.116)		√	√	
CLEANING ERROR NOT ENOUGH INK OR SPACE IN MAINT TANK CONTINUE CLEANING? YES (RECOMMENDED) NO	25 (See P.116)	√			√
CLEANING ERROR NOT ENOUGH INK CONTINUE CLEANING? YES (RECOMMENDED) NO	26 (See P.116)		√	√	
CLEANING ERROR NOT ENOUGH EMPTY SPACE IN MAINT TANK CONTINUE CLEANING? YES (RECOMMENDED) NO	27 (See P.116)		√	√	
INK TOO LOW TO CLEAN REPLACE INK CARTRIDGE	28 (See P.116)	√	√	√	√
INK TOO LOW TO CLEAN THE CARTRIDGE BEING USED CAN BE INSTALLED AGAIN FOR PRINTING	29 (See P.116)	√	√	√	√
NO CARTRIDGE INSTALL INK CARTRIDGE	30 (See P.116)	√	√	√	√



Table 3-1. List of Error Messages

Message on LCD	Trouble Shooting No.	Applied model			
		Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910	Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908
INK CARTRIDGE INK LOW REPLACE INK CARTRIDGE	31 (See P.117)	✓	✓	✓	✓
BLACK INK MISMATCH THE TYPE OF BLACK INK IS DIFFERENT TO CANCEL PRINTING CANCEL THE PRINT JOB TO CONTINUE PRINTING CHANGE THE BLACK INK	32 (See P.117)	✓			✓
INK LOW	33 (See P.117)	✓	✓	✓	✓
INK CARTRIDGE ERROR REPLACE CARTRIDGE	34 (See P.117)	✓	✓	✓	✓
NO MAINTENANCE TANK INSTALL THE LEFT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK	35 (See P.117)	✓	✓		✓
NO MAINTENANCE TANK INSTALL THE RIGHT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK	35 (See P.117)	✓	✓	✓	✓
NOT ENOUGH EMPTY SPACE REPLACE THE RIGHT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK	36 (See P.117)	✓	✓	✓	✓
REPLACE MAINTENANCE TANK SOON	36 (See P.117)	✓	✓	✓	✓
MAINTENANCE TANK ERROR REPLACE THE LEFT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK	37 (See P.117)	✓	✓		✓
MAINTENANCE TANK ERROR REPLACE THE RIGHT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK	37 (See P.117)	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 3-1. List of Error Messages

Message on LCD	Trouble Shooting No.	Applied model			
		Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910	Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908
MAINTENANCE TANK REPLACE THE LEFT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK	38 (See P.118)	✓	✓		✓
MAINTENANCE TANK REPLACE THE RIGHT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK	38 (See P.118)	✓	✓	✓	✓
WRONG MAINT. TANK RIGHT SIDE MAINT. TANK WRONG TYPE INSERT CORRECT TANK	39 (See P.118)		✓		
WRONG MAINT. TANK LEFT SIDE MAINT. TANK WRONG TYPE INSERT CORRECT TANK			✓	✓	
INK CARTRIDGE PLEASE USE GENUINE EPSON INK CARTRIDGES	40 (See P.118)	✓	✓	✓	✓
INK CARTRIDGE NON-GENUINE CARTRIDGE! QUALITY OF NON- GENUINE INK MAY VARY	40 (See P.118)				
NON-GENUINE CARTRIDGE MAY NOT PERFORM AT OPTIMUM. CONTINUE?		✓	✓	✓	✓
DECLINE ACCEPT					
INK CARTRIDGE ERROR PLEASE INSTALL THE CORRECT CARTRIDGE	41 (See P.118)	✓	✓	✓	✓

Table 3-1. List of Error Messages


Message on LCD	Trouble Shooting No.	Applied model			
		Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910	Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908
NOZZLE CHECK ERROR PRESS THE  BUTTON	42 (See P.118)	√	√		
NOZZLE CLOG DETECTED NOT ENOUGH INK OR SPACE IN MAINT TANK CONTINUE CLEANING? YES (RECOMMENDED) NO	43 (See P.118)	√			
NOZZLE CLOG DETECTED NOT ENOUGH INK CONTINUE CLEANING? YES (RECOMMENDED) NO	44 (See P.119)		√	√	√
NOZZLE CLOG DETECTED NOT ENOUGH EMPTY SPACE IN MAINT TANK CONTINUE CLEANING? YES (RECOMMENDED) NO	45 (See P.119)		√	√	√
TAKE-UP DISCONNECTED SET AUTO TAKE-UP REEL SYSTEM IN PRINTER AND RESTART THE PRINTER	46 (See P.119)	√	√		√
TAKE-UP DISCONNECTED AUTO TAKE-UP REEL UNIT IS DISCONNECTED DO YOU CONTINUE? NO YES	47 (See P.119)	√	√		√

Table 3-1. List of Error Messages

Message on LCD	Trouble Shooting No.	Applied model			
		Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910	Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908
TAKE-UP ERROR CHECK THE STATUS OF AUTO TAKE-UP REEL UNIT AND RESTART THE PRINTER	48 (See P.119)	√	√		√
TAKE-UP ERROR IS ANYTHING OBSTRUCTING THE TAKE-UP REEL SENSOR SYSTEM? LOAD PAPER AGAIN	49 (See P.119)	√	√		√
SProofer DISCONNECTED CONNECT SpectroProofer TO THE PRINTER AND RESTART THE PRINTER	50 (See P.119)	√		√	√
ILS20EP DISCONNECTED REFER TO THE MANUAL AND CONNECT ILS20EP TO SpectroProofer RESTART THE PRINTER	51 (See P.119)	√		√	√
SpectroProofer ERROR REFER TO THE MANUAL TO FIND OUT HOW TO SOLVE THE PROBLEM NN *NN is the error number.	52 (See P.120)	√		√	√
SProofer DISCONNECTED SpectroProofer IS DISCONNECTED DO YOU CONTINUE? NO YES	53 (See P.120)	√		√	√
DEVICE ALIGNMENT ADJUSTMENT NOT COMPLETE	54 (See P.120)	√		√	√

Table 3-1. List of Error Messages

Message on LCD	Trouble Shooting No.	Applied model			
		Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910	Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908
ILS20EP DISCONNECTED ILS20EP IS DISCONNECTED DO YOU CONTINUE? NO YES	55 (See P.120)	√		√	√
MAINTENANCE REQUEST NNNN  *NNNN is the error number.	56 (See P.120)	√			√
MAINTENANCE REQUEST CODE NNNN REFER TO THE MANUAL  *NNNN is the error number.			√	√	

Table 3-1. List of Error Messages

Message on LCD	Trouble Shooting No.	Applied model			
		Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910	Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908
CALL FOR SERVICE NNNN CONTACT THE REPAIR CENTER  *NNNN is the error number.	57 (See P.121)	√			
CALL FOR SERVICE CODE NNNN POWER OFF AND THEN ON. IF THIS DOESN'T WORK, NOTE THE CODE AND CALL FOR SERVICE  *NNNN is the error number.			√	√	√








The table below lists the error messages that Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M displays in the copy mode.






**Table 3-2. List of Error Messages (Copy Mode)**



Message on LCD	Troubleshooting
SCANNER ERROR REFER TO MANUAL FOR DETAILS. ERROR CODE: 01	1 (See P.122)
SCANNER ERROR REFER TO MANUAL FOR DETAILS. ERROR CODE: 02	2 (See P.122)
SCANNER ERROR REFER TO MANUAL FOR DETAILS. ERROR CODE: 03	3 (See P.122)
SCANNER NOT CONNECTED CONNECT SCANNER TO PRINTER THEN TURN ON SCANNER.	4 (See P.122) 5 (See P.122)
CANNOT COPY	
COPY ERROR CAN NOT START COPY WITH THIS PRINTER SETTING. REFER TO MANUAL FOR DETAILS.	6 (See P.122)
COPY ERROR CAN NOT USE AUTO DOCUMENT FEEDER WITH THIS COPY SETTING. USE DOCUMENT TABLE.	7 (See P.122)


### 3.3 Hata iletileri için çareler

The Error messages and their corresponding remedies are explained below.


No.	Message on LCD	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
1	PAPER OUT LOAD PAPER	No paper is loaded in the printer.	Load paper correctly.
		The  button has been pressed without paper set in the printer.	Press the  button to release the paper presser, and then set the paper.
		The paper runs out while printing is in progress.	Press the  button to release the paper presser, and then remove the paper. Then, load a new paper.
		The PE sensor is broken.	Check if there is any foreign material such as paper dust stuck on the sensor.
			Check the connection between the PE Sensor and the Main Board Assy. Replace the PE Sensor.
2	PAPER RELEASED LOAD PAPER	The paper presser is released.	Set the paper, and then press the  button.
3	PAPER SKEW LOAD PAPER PROPERLY	The paper is not loaded straight.	Press the  button to release the paper presser, and then load the paper straight.
4	PAPER SETTING ERROR CHECK PAPER SOURCE IN THE DRIVER SETTINGS AND LOAD PAPER CORRECTLY	The paper source selected in the printer driver and the printer's control panel do not match.	Check the source setting in the printer driver and printer's control panel, and load the paper correctly.
5	PAPER CUT ERROR REMOVE UNCUT PAPER	Paper is not cut correctly.	Press the  button to release the paper presser, and open the front cover. Then remove the uncut paper.
			Paper cutter may be dull. Replace the paper cutter.
		There is something wrong with the cutter mechanism, and the cutter is not operating normally.	Check the installation and the connection of the Cutter Sensor, Cutter Encoder, and Cutter Motor. Replace the Cutter Unit. (See P.257)
6	CUTTER UNIT NEARING END OF SERVICE LIFE. RECOMMEND REPLACING THE CUTTER UNIT	Paper cutter may be dull.	Replace the cutter.
		The Cutter Motor is overloaded abnormally.	Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load to the rotation of Cutter Motor.
			Replace the Cutter Unit. (See P.257)
7	PAPER ERROR LOAD PAPER PROPERLY REFER TO THE MANUAL	The paper is not set correctly.	Press the  button to release the paper presser, and remove the paper. Then, set the paper correctly.
			Set the paper that meets the specifications.
		The paper that is out of the detection range of paper thickness sensor is detected.	Execute the Paper Thickness Sensor Position Adjustment. (See P.411)
			Replace the Paper Thickness Sensor. (See P.257)



No.	Message on LCD	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
8	PAPER SENSOR ERROR PRESS THE  BUTTON LOAD DIFFERENT PAPER	The barcode has not been read correctly.	Press the  button to clear the error, or press the  button to release the paper presser to set a different paper.
		The barcode has not been read because there is something wrong with the Ink Mark Sensor.	Check if there is any foreign material such as paper dust stuck on the sensor.
			Check the connection between the Ink Mark Sensor and the Main Board Assy.
			Replace the Ink Mark Sensor. (See P.298)
9	PAPER LOW	The roll paper is close to running out.	Replace the roll paper with a new one.
10	BORDERLESS ERROR LOAD A SUPPORTED PAPER SIZE OR LOAD PAPER CORRECTLY	The paper installed is not supported for borderless printing.	Press the  button to cancel jobs, and then eject the paper. Then load a different size of paper.
		The size of the cut sheet paper is not recognized correctly.	If the paper is wavy or slack, the printer cannot recognize the paper size correctly. In this case, flatten the paper before loading it in the printer.
		The paper is not set correctly.	Set the paper correctly in the printer.
		The paper width cannot be detected correctly because there is something wrong with the PW Sensor.	Check if there is any foreign material such as paper dust stuck on the sensor.
			Check the connection between the PW Sensor and the Main Board Assy.
			Replace the PW Sensor. (See P.251)
11	PAPER EJECT ERROR REMOVE PAPER FROM PRINTER	The roll paper is not ejected correctly.	Press the  button to release the paper presser, and then remove the paper.
12	PAPER SIZE ERROR LOAD CORRECT SIZE PAPER	The loaded paper size does not match the data size.	Match the loaded paper size to the data size.
13	PAPER JAM REMOVE PAPER	The paper is jammed.	Remove the jammed paper.
		The PE Sensor is malfunctioning due to some foreign material.	Remove the foreign material.
14	FRONT COVER OPEN CLOSE FRONT COVER	The Front Cover is open.	Close the Front Cover.
		The Front Cover (Middle) or the Front Cover Sensor (L/R) is/are broken.	Check the installation status of the Front Cover (Middle).
			Confirm that the actuator of the Front Cover (Middle) presses the Front Cover Sensor (L/R).
			Check the connection between the Front Cover Sensor (L/R) and the Main Board Assy.
			Replace the Front Cover Sensor (L/R) with new ones. (See P.221, P.223)


No.	Message on LCD	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
15	INK COVER OPEN CLOSE RIGHT AND LEFT INK COVERS	The IC Cover (L/R) is/are open.	Close the IC Cover (L/R).
	INK COVER OPEN CLOSE RIGHT INK COVER	The IC Cover (L/R) or the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R) is broken.	Check the installation status of the IC Cover (L/R).
	INK COVER OPEN CLOSE LEFT INK COVER		Confirm that the actuator of the IC Cover (L/R) presses the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R).
			Check the connection between the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R) and the Main Board.
16	CANNOT OPEN INK COVER IS ANYTHING OBSTRUCTING THE RIGHT INK COVER? PRESS INK COVER OPEN BUTTON	The IC Cover (L/R) cannot be opened.	Remove any object if it is obstructing the ink cover(s). Then, press the  button again.
	CANNOT OPEN INK COVER IS ANYTHING OBSTRUCTING THE LEFT INK COVER? PRESS INK COVER OPEN BUTTON	There is something wrong with the solenoid for unlocking the IC Cover (L/R) or the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R).	Check the installation status of the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R).
			Confirm that the actuator of the IC Cover (L/R) presses the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R).
			Check the connection between the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R) and the Main Board Assy.
17	F/W INSTALL ERROR UPDATE FAILED RESTART THE PRINTER	The printer fails to update the firmware.	Replace the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R) with new ones. (See P.225, P.226)
18	PRINTER ERROR RESTART THE PRINTER	It is caused by a bug of the firmware or some elements on the Main Board have been broken.	Remove any object if it is obstructing the ink cover(s). Then, press the  button again.
			Check the installation status of the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R).
			Confirm that the actuator of the IC Cover (L/R) presses the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R).
19	COMMAND ERROR CHECK DRIVER SETTINGS	The printer receives data that is unsupported by the printer.	Check the connection between the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R) and the Main Board Assy.
		The printer receives data with a wrong command.	Replace the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R) with new ones. (See P.225, P.226)
		The installed printer driver is not correct for the printer.	Replace the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R) with new ones. (See P.225, P.226)
20	REMOVE AND SHAKE WHITE INK CARTRIDGE ONCE A WEEK	The printer fails to update the firmware.	Turn the printer off, and then restart the printer. If this restarting does not improve the error, update the firmware.
21	WT INK MAINT. REQUIRED REMOVE AND SHAKE WHITE INK CARTRIDGE	The white ink cartridge must be shaken to prevent quality issues.	Turn the power off, and after a while turn the power on again.
			Install the latest firmware.
			Replace the Main Board Assy with a new one. (See P.228)

No.	Message on LCD	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
22	PAPER SENSOR ERROR PRESS THE  BUTTON LOAD DIFFERENT PAPER	The loaded paper is not proper for the Print Head Alignment.	Load roll paper or a cut sheet of A4 or larger; excluding plain paper, then set the paper type or the paper thickness.
23	CLEANING ERROR AUTOMATIC HEAD CLEANING FAILED RETRY? YES NO	The automatic head cleaning has been performed, but the nozzles are still clogged.	Execute the cleaning again.
24	CLOGGED NOZZLES DETECTED CLEANING RECOMMENDED	Even though the auto cleaning in printing start time is carried out one or two times, some nozzles are still clogged. This message continues to be displayed until the nozzle clogging is solved; however, printing is available then.	Check if missing patterns occur in the nozzle check patterns by the nozzle check. If any, perform the cleaning again.
25	CLEANING ERROR NOT ENOUGH INK OR SPACE IN MAINT TANK CONTINUE CLEANING? YES (RECOMMENDED) NO	There is not enough ink or space in the maintenance tank to perform cleaning.	By clicking YES, the message to replace the ink cartridge or maintenance tank appears. Replace the ink cartridge or maintenance tank with a new one to continue cleaning. (See P.208)
26	CLEANING ERROR NOT ENOUGH INK CONTINUE CLEANING? YES (RECOMMENDED) NO	There is not enough ink to perform cleaning.	By clicking YES, the message to replace the ink cartridge appears. Replace the ink cartridge with a new one to continue cleaning.
27	CLEANING ERROR NOT ENOUGH EMPTY SPACE IN MAINT TANK CONTINUE CLEANING? YES (RECOMMENDED) NO	There is not enough space in the maintenance tank to perform cleaning.	By clicking YES, the message to replace the maintenance tank appears. Replace the maintenance tank with a new one to continue cleaning. (See P.208)
28	INK TOO LOW TO CLEAN REPLACE INK CARTRIDGE	There is not enough ink to perform cleaning.	Replace the ink cartridge with a new one.
29	INK TOO LOW TO CLEAN THE CARTRIDGE BEING USED CAN BE INSTALLED AGAIN FOR PRINTING	There is not enough ink to perform cleaning.	Replace the ink cartridge with a new one.
30	NO CARTRIDGE INSTALL INK CARTRIDGE	No ink cartridge is installed.	Install the Ink Cartridge.
		The Ink Cartridge is not recognized.	Remove the Ink Cartridge once, and install it again correctly.
			Check the connection between the Ink Cartridge and the Main Board Assy.
			Replace the Ink Cartridge with a new one.



No.	Message on LCD	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
31	INK CARTRIDGE INK LOW REPLACE INK CARTRIDGE	The ink cartridge is expended.	Replace the Ink Cartridge with a new one.
32	BLACK INK MISMATCH THE TYPE OF BLACK INK IS DIFFERENT TO CANCEL PRINTING CANCEL THE PRINT JOB TO CONTINUE PRINTING CHANGE THE BLACK INK	The setting of the black ink cartridge differs from the printer and printer driver.	To continue printing, press the  button to change the black ink.
33	INK LOW	The ink cartridge is nearly expended.	Replacement of the ink cartridge is nearly needed.
34	INK CARTRIDGE ERROR REPLACE CARTRIDGE	The connection failure between the CSIC and the connection terminals of the printer.	Remove the Ink Cartridge once, and install it again correctly.
		The CSIC has a defect.	Replace the Ink Cartridge with a new one.
		The dew condensation occurs to the Ink Cartridge.	Leave the Ink Cartridge at the room temperature for more than four hours and install it again.
35	NO MAINTENANCE TANK INSTALL THE LEFT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK  NO MAINTENANCE TANK INSTALL THE RIGHT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK	The Maintenance Tank (L or R) is not set in the printer.	Install the Maintenance Tank (L or R) correctly.
		The maintenance tank (L or R) is not recognized.	Remove the Maintenance Tank (L or R) once, and install it again correctly.
			Check the connection between the Maintenance Tank (L or R) and the Main Board Assy.
			Replace the Maintenance Tank (L or R) with a new one. (See P.208)
36	NOT ENOUGH EMPTY SPACE REPLACE THE LEFT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK	The maintenance tank is almost full so the cleaning cannot be performed.	Replace the Maintenance Tank with a new one.
	NOT ENOUGH EMPTY SPACE REPLACE THE RIGHT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK		
	REPLACE MAINTENANCE TANK SOON		
37	MAINTENANCE TANK ERROR REPLACE THE LEFT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK	The maintenance tank is not correctly set in the printer.	Remove the Maintenance Tank (L or R) once, and install it again correctly.
		The maintenance tank (L or R) is not recognized.	Remove the Maintenance Tank (L or R) once, and install it again correctly.
	MAINT TANK ERROR REPLACE THE RIGHT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK		Check the connection between the Maintenance Tank (L or R) and the Main Board Assy.
			Replace the Maintenance Tank (L or R) with a new one. (See P.208)

No.	Message on LCD	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
38	MAINT TANK REPLACE THE LEFT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK  MAINT TANK REPLACE THE RIGHT SIDE MAINTENANCE TANK	The maintenance tank is full.	Replace the maintenance tank with a new one.
39	WRONG MAINT. TANK RIGHT SIDE MAINT. TANK WRONG TYPE INSERT CORRECT TANK  WRONG MAINT. TANK LEFT SIDE MAINT. TANK WRONG TYPE INSERT CORRECT TANK	The maintenance tank (C12C890191 / C12C890193) for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910 is installed on Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710.	Replace the tank with the correct type tank (C12C890501 / C12C890502).
40	INK CARTRIDGE PLEASE USE GENUINE EPSON INK CARTRIDGES  INK CARTRIDGE NON-GENUINE CARTRIDGE! QUALITY OF NON-GENUINE INK MAY VARY  NON-GENUINE CARTRIDGE MAY NOT PERFORM AT OPTIMUM. CONTINUE?  DECLINE ACCEPT	A non-genuine Ink Cartridge is installed.	Replace it with a genuine Ink Cartridge. Selecting ACCEPT may void EPSON's warranty.
41	INK CARTRIDGE ERROR PLEASE INSTALL THE CORRECT CARTRIDGE	An ink cartridge that cannot be used with this printer is installed.	Remove the ink cartridge, and install an ink cartridge that can be used with this printer.
42	NOZZLE CHECK ERROR PRESS THE  BUTTON	Auto cleaning cannot be executed.	Press the  button to clear the error, and try the cleaning again.
43	NOZZLE CLOG DETECTED NOT ENOUGH INK OR SPACE IN MAINT TANK CONTINUE CLEANING? YES (RECOMMENDED) NO	There is not enough ink or space in the maintenance tank to perform cleaning.	By clicking YES, the message to replace the ink cartridge or maintenance tank appears. Replace the ink cartridge or maintenance tank with a new one to continue cleaning.

No.	Message on LCD	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
44	NOZZLE CLOG DETECTED NOT ENOUGH INK CONTINUE CLEANING? YES (RECOMMENDED) NO	There is not enough ink to perform cleaning.	By clicking YES, the message to replace the ink cartridge appears. Replace the ink cartridge with a new one to continue cleaning.
45	NOZZLE CLOG DETECTED NOT ENOUGH EMPTY SPACE IN MAINT TANK CONTINUE CLEANING? YES (RECOMMENDED) NO	There is not enough space in the maintenance tank to perform cleaning.	By clicking YES, the message to replace the maintenance tank appears. Replace the maintenance tank with a new one to continue cleaning. (See P.208)
46	TAKE-UP DISCONNECTED SET AUTO TAKE-UP REEL SYSTEM IN PRINTER AND RESTART THE PRINTER	Auto Take-up Reel Unit is not correctly installed in the printer. Auto Take-up Unit is disconnected when the printer is turned on.	Turn the printer off, and then install the Auto Take-up Reel Unit properly.
		Auto Take-up Reel Unit is not recognized.	Replace the USB cable. Replace the Main Board Assy or the Auto Take-up Reel Unit. (See P.228, P.313)
47	TAKE-UP DISCONNECTED AUTO TAKE-UP REEL UNIT IS DISCONNECTED DO YOU CONTINUE? NO YES	Auto Take-up Reel Unit is not correctly installed in the printer. This occurs at power-on, the Auto Take-up Reel Unit was connected the last time the printer was on.	Select NO, and turn the printer off, and then install the Auto Take-up Reel Unit properly. If you select YES, the paper is ejected without using the Auto Take-up Reel Unit.
		Auto Take-up Reel Unit is not recognized.	Replace the USB cable. Replace the Main Board Assy or the Auto Take-up Reel Unit. (See P.228, P.313)
48	TAKE-UP ERROR CHECK THE STATUS OF AUTO TAKE-UP REEL UNIT AND RESTART THE PRINTER	The roll paper is not set to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit properly.	Press the  button to release the paper presser, and then set the roll paper to the Auto Take-up Reel Unit properly.
49	TAKE-UP ERROR IS ANYTHING OBSTRUCTING THE TAKE-UP REEL SENSOR SYSTEM? LOAD PAPER AGAIN	The Auto Take-up Reel Unit does not wind the paper.	Check if there is some foreign material stuck on the sensor or the reflector plate of the Auto Take-up Reel Unit, or some interruption of the light by an obstacle.
50	SProofer DISCONNECTED CONNECT SpectroProofer TO THE PRINTER AND RESTART THE PRINTER	The SpectroProofer is not connected to the printer properly.	Turn the printer off, and then connect the SpectroProofer to the printer properly.
51	ILS20EP DISCONNECTED REFER TO THE MANUAL AND CONNECT ILS20EP TO SpectroProofer RESTART THE PRINTER	The color measurement device (ILS20EP) is not connected properly.	Turn the printer off, and then connect the color measurement device (ILS20EP) to the SpectroProofer properly.

No.	Message on LCD	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
52	SpectroProofer ERROR REFER TO THE MANUAL TO FIND OUT HOW TO SOLVE THE PROBLEM NN *NN is the error number.	See 3.4 “Remedies for Error Messages related to SpectroProofer/Auto Take-up Reel” ( <a href="#">See P.123</a> ).	
53	SProofer DISCONNECTED SpectroProofer IS DISCONNECTED DO YOU CONTINUE? NO YES	The SpectroProofer is not connected to the printer properly.	Select NO, and then turn the printer off, and then connect the SpectroProofer to the printer properly. If you select YES, the printer continues printing.
		The SpectroProofer is not recognized.	Check the connection between the Mount Sensor and the Main Board Assy.
			Replace the Mount Sensor with a new one. ( <a href="#">See P.338</a> )
54	DEVICE ALIGNMENT ADJUSTMENT NOT COMPLETE	The initial settings have not been made for the SpectroProofer.	Refer to the user’s guide to make initial settings to the SpectroProofer.
55	ILS20EP DISCONNECTED ILS20EP IS DISCONNECTED DO YOU CONTINUE? NO YES	The color measurement device (ILS20EP) is not connected properly.	Select NO, and turn the printer off. Then re-connect the color measurement device (ILS20EP) properly. If you select YES, the printer continues printing.
56	MAINTENANCE REQUEST NNNN *NNNN is the error number.	See 3.4 “Remedies for Maintenance Requests” ( <a href="#">See P.129</a> ).	
	MAINTENANCE REQUEST CODE NNNN REFER TO THE MANUAL *NNNN is the error number.		

No.	Message on LCD	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
57	CALL FOR SERVICE NNNN CONTACT THE REPAIR CENTER  *NNNN is the error number.	See 3.5 “Remedies for Service Call Error” ( <a href="#">See P.131</a> ).	
	CALL FOR SERVICE CODE NNNN POWER OFF AND THEN ON. IF THIS DOES'T WORK, NOTE THE CODE AND CALL FOR SERVICE  *NNNN is the error number.		

The following explains how to troubleshoot errors occurred in the copy mode of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M.

No.	Message on LCD	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
1	SCANNER ERROR REFER TO MANUAL FOR DETAILS. ERROR CODE: 01	The scanner carriage is locked.	Unlock the carriage and restart the printer and the scanner.
		The carriage home seek operation cannot be properly performed. <b>Possible causes</b> 1. Motor connection failure 2. Home position sensor failure or connection failure	1. Check if the scanner motor is properly connected. 2. Replace the Scanner Carriage Assy. For more details, see the GT-2500 service manual.
		• An error occurred while checking the scanner lamp. • Abnormal CCD output level is detected. <b>Possible causes</b> 1. Lamp failure or the carriage is not properly adjusted. 2. Connection failure of the lamp and CCD.	Replace the Scanner Carriage Assy. For more details, see the GT-2500 service manual.
2	SCANNER ERROR REFER TO MANUAL FOR DETAILS. ERROR CODE: 02	The ADF cover was opened while scanning the original, or loading/ejecting paper.	Close the ADF cover and restart copying.
3	SCANNER ERROR REFER TO MANUAL FOR DETAILS. ERROR CODE: 03	The document has jammed inside the ADF.	Remove the jammed paper and restart copying. If the paper jam occurs frequently, troubleshoot the error with reference to GT-2500 service manual.
4	SCANNER NOT CONNECTED CONNECT SCANNER TO PRINTER THEN TURN ON SCANNER.	The communication between the printer and the scanner is interrupted while scanning is in progress.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn off and back on the scanner.</li> <li>Turn off the printer. Properly connect the printer and the scanner, and back on the printer.</li> </ul>
5	CANNOT COPY (Displayed on the bottom of the screen)	The printer and the scanner are not properly connected to each other, or the power is off.	
6	COPY ERROR CAN NOT START COPY WITH THIS PRINTER SETTING. REFER TO MANUAL FOR DETAILS.	With the paper width detection disabled, the “AUTO” size (enlargement) setting is specified in the copy setting.	Enable the paper width detection in the print mode when using the “AUTO” enlargement copy setting.
7	COPY ERROR CAN NOT USE AUTO DOCUMENT FEEDER WITH THIS COPY SETTING. USE DOCUMENT TABLE.	The ADF cannot be used with the current copy settings.	The ADF cannot be used for the following settings. Change the settings to use the ADF. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>SIZE “XX-&gt;A0”, “4x6-&gt;XX”, or “XX-&gt;AUTO(BANNER)”</li> <li>Copy paper type Premium Glossy 170</li> </ul>

### 3.4 Remedies for Error Messages related to SpectroProofer/Auto Take-up Reel

The Error messages and their corresponding remedies are explained below.

*NOTE: SpectroProofer-related errors do not occur on Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710 because it does not support the SpectroProofer.*

*Auto Take-up Reel-related errors do not occur on Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908 because it does not support the Auto Take-up Reel.*

*Errors related to the SpectroProofer and Auto Take-up Reel do not occur on Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M.*

Error No.	Section	Error Name	Status	Cause	Remedy/Check Point	Program Check
D3	Motor	Driving auto take-up system error	A fatal error of controlling Auto Take-up Motor occurs.	One of the errors (Error No.40 to 45) might be occurring.	Refer to Error No.40 to 45.	---
D6	Motor	Driving paper pressing system error	A fatal error of controlling Paper Pressing Motor occurs.	One of the errors (Error No.30 to 35) might be occurring.	Refer to Error No.30 to 35.	---
65	Motor	Cooling Fan lock detection error	Cooling Fan does not work.	There might be some foreign material stuck to the fan.	Check manually if the fan rotates.	---
				A connection failure might occur.	Check the connection between the Cooling Fans and the Main Board Assy.	
				Cooling Fan is broken.	Replace the Cooling Fan. (See P.342, P. 343)	
12	Sequence	Paper Pressing Plate Sensor no detection error	Detection status of the Paper Pressing Plate Sensor does not change.	A connection failure might occur.	Check the connection between the Paper Pressing Plate Sensor and the Main Board Assy.	---
				Detection flag for the Paper Pressing Plate is damaged.	Replace the Paper Pressing Unit. (See P.349)	
				Paper Pressing Plate Sensor is broken.	Replace the Paper Pressing Plate Sensor. (See P.340)	

Error No.	Section	Error Name	Status	Cause	Remedy/Check Point	Program Check
13	Sequence	Foreign material detection error in paper pressing	Due to one of the reasons listed on the right, the Paper Pressing Plate does not work correctly.	Backing is not installed correctly.	Install the backing correctly.	Yes
				There is some foreign material between the Paper Pressing Plate and the backing.	Remove the Auto Colorimeter once, and remove the foreign material around the backing (if any).	
				Paper that does not meet the specifications is used. The printer is used out of the specified usage environment.	Check if the paper type and usage environment are correct.	
			There is something wrong with the Paper Pressing Motor.		Check the connection between the Paper Pressing Motor and the Main Board Assy.	
					Replace the Paper Pressing Motor. (See P.346)	
14	Sequence	Paper pressing origin position detection failure error	Origin position detection was not successfully made.	Drive gear(s) of the Paper Pressing Plate is/are broken.	Replace the drive gear(s).	---
				Paper Pressing Unit is broken.	Replace the Paper Pressing Unit. (See P.349)	
				Paper Pressing Plate is not installed to the printer correctly.	Synchronize the phases on the left and on the right of the Paper Pressing Plate. (See P.349)	



Error No.	Section	Error Name	Status	Cause	Remedy/Check Point	Program Check
15	Sequence	CR HP Sensor no detection error	Due to one of the reasons listed on the right, the Paper Pressing Plate does not work correctly.	There is some foreign material within the carriage movement range.	Remove the Auto Colorimeter once, and remove the foreign material around the backing (if any).	---
				Backing is not installed correctly.	Install the backing correctly.	
				White calibration tile holder is not installed correctly.	Install the white calibration tile holder correctly.	
				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Paper that does not meet the specifications is used.</li> <li>The printer is used out of the specified usage environment.</li> </ul>	Check if the paper type and usage environment are correct.	
				Because the phases on the left and on the right of the Paper Pressing Plate are misaligned, and the plate is distorted, it is blocking the carriage.	Synchronize the phases on the left and on the right of the Paper Pressing Plate. (See P.349)	
				There is something wrong with the carriage mechanism.	Check the following and correct the status or replace the corresponding part(s) if any abnormality is found. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Origin detection flag for the carriage</li> <li>Slipped-off or damaged carriage belt</li> <li>Unhooked driven spring</li> <li>Damaged main shaft/sub shaft of carriage</li> </ul>	
16	Sequence	Paper pressing system abnormal measurement value error	Detects a load over the specified range when measuring it.	There is something wrong with the Paper Pressing Motor.	Replace the Paper Pressing Motor. (See P.346)	---
				Paper Pressing Unit is not installed correctly.	Dowels and positioning holes on the right and left plates that secure the Paper Pressing Unit are misaligned, or the screws that secure the plate are loose.	
				A gear or a shaft making up the Paper Pressing Unit is broken.	Replace the Paper Pressing Unit. (See P.349)	
				The phases on the left and on the right of the Paper Pressing Plate are misaligned.	Synchronize the phases on the left and on the right of the Paper Pressing Plate. (See P.349)	

Error No.	Section	Error Name	Status	Cause	Remedy/Check Point	Program Check
17	Sequence	Take-up system abnormal measurement value error	Detects a load over the assumed range when measuring.	Auto Take-up Reel Unit is not installed correctly.	Install the Auto Take-up Reel Unit correctly.	---
				Paper core is not installed correctly.	Install the paper core correctly.	
				Extremely heavy paper core or media is used.	Use paper satisfying the specifications.	
				There is something wrong with the Auto Take-up Motor	Replace the Auto Take-up Motor. (See P.320)	
				There is something wrong with the drive transmission path.	Check the following and correct the status or replace the corresponding part(s) if any abnormality is found. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Damaged or worn drive gears</li> <li>Bent drive shaft</li> <li>Damaged or worn bearings</li> </ul>	
20	Sequence	Slack Sensor no detection error	Detection status of the Slack Sensor does not change even after rotating the Auto Take-up Motor by the specified number of revolutions.	When the auto take-up is set by the Auto switch, there might be an obstacle such as a foot or the like at the sensor.	Remove the thing blocking the detection.	---
				Slack Sensor is broken.	Replace the Slack Sensor. (See P.314)	
01	Sequence	Mechanism is not installed (Mount Sensor is OFF)	Because the Auto Colorimeter is not installed correctly, the printer does not work properly.	Auto Colorimeter is not installed correctly.	Turn off the power, then install the Auto Colorimeter correctly.	Yes
				Mount Sensor is broken.	Replace the Mount Sensor. (See P.338)	
30	Paper pressing	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long.	Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.332)	Yes
31	Paper pressing	Overload error	The electric current flowing when driving the Paper Pressing Motor is irregularly large.	Encoder cable is damaged.	Replace the cable.	Yes
				Motor cable is damaged.	Replace the Paper Pressing Motor. (See P.346)	
				Paper Pressing Encoder is broken.	Replace the Paper Pressing Encoder. (See P.340)	
				Paper Pressing Motor is broken.	Replace the Paper Pressing Motor. (See P.346)	
32	Paper pressing	Over speed error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value just before stopping.	Paper Pressing Encoder is broken.	Replace the Paper Pressing Encoder. (See P.340)	Yes

Error No.	Section	Error Name	Status	Cause	Remedy/Check Point	Program Check
33	Paper pressing	Reversing error	Detects that it is being driven in the opposite direction to the specified driving direction.	The polarity of the encoder cable is opposite.	Check the connection.	Yes
				The polarity of the motor cable is opposite.		
				Paper Pressing Encoder is broken.	Replace the Paper Pressing Encoder. (See P.340)	
34	Paper pressing	Velocity deviation error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value.	Paper Pressing Encoder is broken.	Replace the Paper Pressing Encoder. (See P.340)	Yes
				Motor driver is broken.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.332)	
				Paper Pressing Motor is broken.	Replace the Paper Pressing Motor. (See P.346)	
35	Paper pressing	Lock error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly slower speed than the specified value.	Encoder cable is damaged.	Replace the cable.	Yes
				Motor cable is damaged.		
				Paper Pressing Encoder is broken.	Replace the Paper Pressing Motor. (See P.346)	
				Paper Pressing Motor is broken.		
40	Take-up system	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long.	Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.332)	Yes
41	Take-up system	Overload error	The electric current flowing when driving the motor is irregularly large.	Encoder cable is damaged.	Replace the cable.	Yes
				Motor cable is damaged.		
				Slack Sensor is broken.	Replace the Auto Take-up Motor. (See P.320)	
				Auto Take-up Motor is broken.		
42	Take-up system	Over speed error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value just before stopping.	Slack Sensor is broken.	Replace the Auto Take-up Motor. (See P.320)	Yes
43	Take-up system	Reversing error	Detects that it is being driven in the opposite direction to the specified driving direction.	The polarity of the encoder cable is opposite.	Check the connections.	Yes
				The polarity of the motor cable is opposite.		
				Slack Sensor is broken.	Replace the Auto Take-up Motor. (See P.320)	
44	Take-up system	Velocity deviation error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value.	Slack Sensor is broken.	Replace the Auto Take-up Motor. (See P.320)	Yes
				Motor driver is broken.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.332)	
				Auto Take-up Motor is broken.	Replace the Auto Take-up Motor. (See P.320)	

Error No.	Section	Error Name	Status	Cause	Remedy/Check Point	Program Check
45	Take-up system	Lock error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly slower speed than the specified value.	Encoder cable is damaged.	Replace the cable.	Yes
				Motor cable is damaged.	Replace the Auto Take-up Motor. (See P.320)	
				Slack Sensor is broken.		
				Auto Take-up Motor is broken.		
20	CR	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long.	Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.332)	Yes
80	---	ILS Calibration error	Color measurement was not performed correctly.	<input type="checkbox"/> Abnormality of White Plate holder <input type="checkbox"/> Abnormality of il Calibrator	Check if the White Plate holder is attached, and the plate is dirty or not. If it is dirty, clean it.	Yes
					Check if there is dust or dirt attached on the lens on the calibrator. If there is any, clean it.	
					Check if the lamp of the calibrator burned out or not.	
					Replace the calibrator and the White Plate.	

## 3.5 Remedies for Maintenance Requests

This section describes the remedies for maintenance requests. Maintenance requests do not effect the printer's operation; therefore, you can continue the current printing. When a maintenance request error occurs, the printer displays on the LCD a hexadecimal code of "NNNN" which correspond to the bit numbers assigned to error statuses as shown in the table below.

**Table 3-3. About the Maintenance Request NNNN**

Bit assignment (Binary)																NNNN (Hexa- decimal)	Cause	Remedy
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15			
0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0002	The CR scan pass counter has come near the specified life. (ink supply tube has come near its end of life.)	Replace the Ink Tube (L & R) with a new one, and clear the counter using the Service Program.
0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0008	The RTC backup battery becomes exhausted.	Replace the battery with a new one, and execute RTC initialization using the Service Program.
0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0010	Refer to <a href="#">Page 130</a> .	
0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0040	The pump counter has come near the specified life.	Replace the Ink System Unit and clear the life counter using the Service Program.
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0080	The date has not been set.	Execute RTC initialization using the Service Program to set date and time.
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0800	The number of replacement counter of the ink cartridges has come near the specified life. (the life of the waste ink pad attached to the ink cartridge holder)	Check if the waste ink pads attached to the ink cartridge holders are contaminated. If it has already absorbed a considerable amount of ink, exchange the ink cartridge holder (L and R), and clear the counter using the Service Program.
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	1000 *1	The number of operation counter of the Ink Selector has come near the specified life.	Replace the Ink Selector, and clear the counter using the Service Program.
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	0	4000	Refer to <a href="#">Page 130</a> .	
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	8000	Refer to <a href="#">Page 130</a> .	
Ex.	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0088	The RTC backup battery becomes exhausted and the date has not been set.	Install a battery, and execute RTC initialization using the Service Program to set date and time.
Description	Unsigned	CR life	Unsigned	RTC backup battery exhaustion	AID error	Unsigned	Pump unit life	Date not set	Unsigned	Unsigned	Unsigned	Holder ink pad life	Ink selector life	Unsigned	AID error	AID error		

Note : Ex): When "Maintenance Request 0088" is displayed.

As "0088" in hexadecimal means "1000 1000" in binary, you can find out the code is assigned to Bit-3 and Bit-7 referring to the above table. In this case, two errors are occurring simultaneously. (Bit-3: battery exhaustion/ Bit-7: the date and time has not been set.)

Note \*1: This call occurs only to Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/9890/9908/7890/7908.

**REMEDY FOR NO. 0010/4000/8000**

If the Maintenance Request No. 0010/4000/8000 occurs, take the following measure according to the procedure below.

**NOTE** : There is a priority for occurrence of No. 0010/4000/8000. Because No. 0010 has the priority, when both No. 0010 and No. 4000 (or No. 8000) occur at the same time, No. 4000 (or No. 8000) is not displayed, but No. 0010 is displayed only. When the cause of No. 0010 is removed, No. 4000 (No. 8000) is displayed then.

**Table 3-4. Remedy for Maintenance Request No. 0010/4000**

Request No.	Description	Cause	Remedy/Check Point	
0010	Communication with the AID Board is not established.	Connection failure of FFC or FFC is broken.	1	Check the connection to the AID Board, and correct it if any failure found.
	The voltage applied to the Flushing Box does not reach the specified level.	Due to accumulated ink and such around the Flushing Box, the electric current is leaking.	2	Check around the Flushing Box, and remove accumulated ink or dust if any. (Through accumulated ink or dust, the electric current may leak.)
			3	Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
		High voltage power module in the AID Board is broken.	4	Replace the AID Board. (See P.294)
4000	It detects twice in a row that all the nozzles are clogging.	Printhead is broken.	1	Print the nozzle check pattern to check this. If all the colors have nozzle clogging, replace the Printhead. (See P.270)
		Connection failure of AID cable or AID cable is broken.	2	Check the connection to the AID Board, and correct it if any failure found.
			3	Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
8000	Detects Noises during AID operation.	There is a noise source near the printer.	1	Turn the printer off once, then turn it on again.
			2	Move the noise source away from the printer.

## 3.6 Remedies for Service Call Error

The following tables explain the Service Call error messages and remedies.



**Make sure to check the related connectors and cables for poor connection or any abnormality before replacing any electrical part as instructed in the Remedy column. If the replacement does not solve the problem, replace the main board.**

### □ List of Service Call Error

Error Code	Error Name	Page
1101	CR life error	p133
1125	CR HP detection error	p145
1138	Over current error	p133
113A	Overload error	p133
113B	Over speed error	p133
113C	Reversing error	p133
113D	Driving time-out error	p133
113E	Velocity deviation error	p134
113F	Lock error	p134
122A	Overload error	p134
122B	Over speed error	p134
122C	Reversing error	p134
122D	Driving time-out error	p134
122E	Velocity deviation error	p135
122F	Lock error	p135
131B	Head driver (transmission gate) overheat error	p145
13F0	ICL operation error	p139
1411	Select error	p139
1412	Pump life error	p139
1419	Pump release error	p140
141A	Overload error	p140
141B	Over speed error	p140
141C	Reversing error	p140

Error Code	Error Name	Page
141D	Driving time-out error	p140
141E	Velocity deviation error	p140
141F	Lock error	p140
1427	CSIC destination setting error	p146
1428	Ink holder Board Assy	p146
1430	Holder ink pad error	p141
1431	Ink selector life error	p141
1434	IC cover unlock error	p141
1438	Maintenance tank error	p141
1439	Cap error	p141
143A	Overload error	p141
143B	Over speed error	p141
143C	Reversing error	p141
143D	Driving time-out error	p141
143E	Velocity deviation error	p142
143F	Lock error	p142
144A	Overload error	p142
144B	Over speed error	p142
144C	Reversing error	p142
144D	Driving time-out error	p142
144E	Velocity deviation error	p143
144F	Lock error	p143
1488	Flushing box position error	p143
1489	Wiper error	p143
148A	Overload error	p143
148B	Over speed error	p143
148C	Reversing error	p144
148D	Driving time-out error	p144
148E	Velocity deviation error	p144
148F	Lock error	p144
1494	Ink selector error	p144
1496	Ink selector sensor error detection	p144
1497	Switching time-out error	p144

Error Code	Error Name	Page
149D	Driving time-out error	<a href="#">p144</a>
1501	Release motor phase detection error	<a href="#">p145</a>
150C	PG phase detection error	<a href="#">p145</a>
151A	Overload error	<a href="#">p135</a>
151B	Over speed error	<a href="#">p135</a>
151C	Reversing error	<a href="#">p135</a>
151D	Driving time-out error	<a href="#">p135</a>
151E	Velocity deviation error	<a href="#">p136</a>
151F	Lock error	<a href="#">p136</a>
152A	Overload error	<a href="#">p136</a>
152B	Over speed error	<a href="#">p136</a>
152C	Reversing error	<a href="#">p136</a>
152D	Driving time-out error	<a href="#">p136</a>
152E	Velocity deviation error	<a href="#">p137</a>
152F	Lock error	<a href="#">p137</a>
1530	Driven roller HP detection error	<a href="#">p137</a>
1536	Pressurizing reset error	<a href="#">p143</a>
1537	Pressurizing error	<a href="#">p143</a>
153A	Overload error	<a href="#">p137</a>
153B	Over speed error	<a href="#">p137</a>
153C	Reversing error	<a href="#">p137</a>
153D	Driving time-out error	<a href="#">p138</a>
153E	Velocity deviation error	<a href="#">p138</a>
153F	Lock error	<a href="#">p138</a>
1540	Cutter HP detection error	<a href="#">p138</a>
1541	Cutter return error	<a href="#">p145</a>
1549	Motor disconnection error	<a href="#">p138</a>
154A	Overload error	<a href="#">p138</a>
154B	Over speed error	<a href="#">p138</a>
154C	Reversing error	<a href="#">p139</a>
154D	Driving time-out error	<a href="#">p139</a>
154E	Velocity deviation error	<a href="#">p139</a>
154F	Lock error	<a href="#">p139</a>

Error Code	Error Name	Page
1551	Paper thickness determining error	<a href="#">p145</a>
1561	Paper thickness at power-on error	<a href="#">p145</a>
1800	AID voltage error	<a href="#">p145</a>
1A23	Incorrect RTC data error	<a href="#">p146</a>
1A26	RTC Access T/O error	<a href="#">p146</a>
1A37	Thermistor error	<a href="#">p146</a>
1A38	Transistor environmental temperature error	<a href="#">p146</a>
1A39	Head error	<a href="#">p146</a>
1A40	IC22 error	<a href="#">p146</a>
1A41	Head rank ID input error	<a href="#">p146</a>
1A50	I2C communication error (Between elements on ASIC and MAIN)	<a href="#">p147</a>
1A51	I2C communication error (Between elements on SUB and MAIN)	<a href="#">p147</a>
1A52	I2C communication error (Between elements on SUB-B and MAIN)	<a href="#">p147</a>
1A53	I2C communication error (Between elements on SUB-C and MAIN)	<a href="#">p147</a>
2000	NVRAM error	<a href="#">p147</a>
2002	SDRAM error	<a href="#">p147</a>
2003	FLASH BOOT SUM CHECK error	<a href="#">p147</a>
200A	F/W load error	<a href="#">p147</a>
200D	System interrupt watchdog time-out error	<a href="#">p147</a>
200E	Unknown NMI	<a href="#">p147</a>
2010	UART communication error	<a href="#">p147</a>
3000	AC shut-off	<a href="#">p147</a>
D131	AID error	<a href="#">p145</a>
Fxxx	CPU-related error	<a href="#">p148</a>
Dxxx	Debug error	<a href="#">p148</a>



❑ Remedies for Service Call Error

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
1101	CR	CR life error	The number of Carriage movement cycles reached the specified upper limit. (Ink tube's life)	Replace the ink tube (L & R), and clear the counter using the Service Program. In addition, check the statuses of the CR Motor, the driven pulley, the Carriage Unit, and the Head FFC, if any abnormal noise or wear is found, replace the corresponding part(s) along with the ink tube.
1138	CR	Over current error	The electric current flowing when driving the motor is irregularly large. (To protect the motor driver) ❑ Encoder cable is damaged. ❑ Motor cable is damaged. ❑ Irregular load ❑ Encoder failure ❑ Motor failure	Check the connection between the CR Encoder and the Main Board Assy.
				Check the connection between the CR Motor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the CR Encoder Sensor. (See P.238)
				Replace the CR Motor. (See P.242)
113A	CR	Overload error	The electric current flowing when driving the motor is irregularly large. ❑ Encoder cable is damaged. ❑ Motor cable is damaged. ❑ Irregular load ❑ Encoder failure ❑ Motor failure	Check if the Carriage Unit is correctly installed.
				Check if there is some foreign material on the driving section of the Carriage Unit.
				Check the connection between the CR Encoder and the Main Board Assy.
				Check the connection between the CR Motor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the CR Encoder Sensor. (See P.238)
				Replace the CR Motor. (See P.242)
113B	CR	Over speed error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value just before stopping. ❑ Irregular load ❑ Encoder failure	Replace the CR Encoder Sensor. (See P.238)
113C	CR	Reversing error	Detects that it is being driven in the opposite direction to the specified driving direction. ❑ The polarity of encoder cable is opposite. ❑ The polarity of motor cable is opposite. ❑ Encoder failure ❑ Irregular load	Check the connection between the CR Encoder and the Main Board Assy.
				Check the connection between the CR Motor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the CR Encoder Sensor. (See P.238)
113D	CR	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long. ❑ Irregular load ❑ Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
113E	CR	Velocity deviation error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor driver failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Replace the CR Encoder Sensor. (See P.238)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
				Replace the CR Motor. (See P.242)
113F	CR	Lock error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly slower speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check if the Carriage Unit is correctly installed.
				Check if there is some foreign material on the driving section of the Carriage Unit.
				Check the connection between the CR Encoder and the Main Board Assy.
				Check the connection between the CR Motor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the CR Encoder Sensor. (See P.238)
				Replace the CR Motor. (See P.242)
122A	PF	Overload error	The electric current flowing when driving the motor is irregularly large. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load between the PF Motor and the PF roller.
				Check the connection between the PF Encoder Sensor and the Main Board Assy.
				Check the connection between the PF Motor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the PF Encoder Sensor. (See P.263)
				Replace the PF Motor. (See P.264)
122B	PF	Over speed error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value just before stopping. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure	Replace the PF Encoder Sensor. (See P.263)
122C	PF	Reversing error	Detects that it is being driven in the opposite direction to the specified driving direction. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of encoder cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of motor cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load	Check the connection between the PF Encoder Sensor and the Main Board Assy.
				Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load between the PF Motor and the PF roller.
				Replace the PF Encoder Sensor. (See P.263)
122D	PF	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
122E	PF	Velocity deviation error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor driver failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Replace the PF Encoder Sensor. (See P.263)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
				Replace the PF Motor. (See P.264)
122F	PF	Lock error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly slower speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load between the PF Motor and the PF roller.
				Check the connection between the PF Encoder Sensor and the Main Board Assy.
				Check the connection between the PF Motor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the PF Encoder Sensor. (See P.263)
				Replace the PF Motor. (See P.264)
151A	APG	Overload error	The electric current flowing when driving the motor is irregularly large. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load between the APG Motor and the carriage unit.
				Check the connection between the APG Motor Sensor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the APG Motor. (See P.243)
151B	APG	Over speed error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value just before stopping. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure	Replace the APG Motor. (See P.243)
151C	APG	Reversing error	Detects that it is being driven in the opposite direction to the specified driving direction. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of encoder cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of motor cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load	Check the connection between the APG Motor Sensor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the APG Motor. (See P.243)
151D	APG	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
151E	APG	Velocity deviation error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor driver failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Replace the APG Motor. (See P.243)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
151F	APG	Lock error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly slower speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load between the APG Motor and the carriage unit.
				Check the connection between the APG Motor Sensor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the APG Motor. (See P.243)
152A	Rewind	Overload error	The electric current flowing when driving the motor is irregularly large. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load on the Rewind Unit.
				Check the connection between the Rewind Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Rewind Motor. (See P.255)
152B	Rewind	Over speed error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value just before stopping. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure	Replace the Rewind Motor. (See P.255)
152C	Rewind	Reversing error	Detects that it is being driven in the opposite direction to the specified driving direction. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of encoder cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of motor cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load	Check the connection between the Rewind Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Rewind Motor. (See P.255)
152D	Rewind	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
152E	Rewind	Velocity deviation error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor driver failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Replace the Rewind Motor. (See P.255)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
152F	Rewind	Lock error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly slower speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load on the Rewind Unit.
				Check the connection between the Rewind Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Rewind Motor. (See P.255)
1530	Driven Roller	Driven roller HP detection error	The home position of the Driven Pulley is not detected.	Check the connection of the Roller Release HP Sensor.
				Check if the Driven Pulley rotates smoothly without any overload.
				Replace the Roller Release HP Sensor. (See P.254)
				Replace the Driven Roller Release Motor. (See P.253)
153A	Driven Roller	Overload error	The electric current flowing when driving the motor is irregularly large. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load on the driven roller release system.
				Check the connection between the Driven Roller Release Motor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Driven Roller Release Motor. (See P.253)
153B	Driven Roller	Over speed error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value just before stopping. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure	Replace the Driven Roller Release Motor. (See P.253)
153C	Driven Roller	Reversing error	Detects that it is being driven in the opposite direction to the specified driving direction. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of encoder cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of motor cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load	Check the connection between the Driven Roller Release Motor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Driven Roller Release Motor. (See P.253)

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
153D	Driven Roller	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
153E	Driven Roller	Velocity deviation error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor driver failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Replace the Driven Roller Release Motor. (See P.253)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
153F	Driven Roller	Lock error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly slower speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load on the driven roller release system.
				Check the connection between the Driven Roller Release Motor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Driven Roller Release Motor. (See P.253)
1540	Cutter	Cutter HP detection error	The home position of the Cutter is not detected.	Check the connection of the Cutter Sensor.
				Replace the Cutter Unit. (See P.257)
1549	Cutter	Motor disconnection error	The Cutter Unit operation is not detected even the electric current flows when the printer is turned on. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load	Check the connection between the Cutter Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Cutter Unit. (See P.257)
154A	Cutter	Overload error	The electric current flowing when driving the motor is irregularly large. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load on the Cutter Unit.
				Check the connection between the Cutter Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Cutter Unit. (See P.257)
154B	Cutter	Over speed error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value just before stopping. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure	Replace the Cutter Unit. (See P.257)

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
154C	Cutter	Reversing error	Detects that it is being driven in the opposite direction to the specified driving direction. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of encoder cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of motor cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load	Check the connection between the Cutter Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Cutter Unit. (See P.257)
154D	Cutter	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
154E	Cutter	Velocity deviation error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor driver failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Replace the Cutter Unit. (See P.257)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
154F	Cutter	Lock error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly slower speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load on the Cutter Unit.
				Check the connection between the Cutter Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Cutter Unit. (See P.257)
13F0	Ink Cartridge Cover	ICL operation error	IC Cover Unlock Solenoid is not operating normally.	Check the connection between the Cartridge Cover Sensor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R) with new ones. (See P.225, P.226)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
1411	Valve HP Selector	Select error	Valve select operating failed.	Check the connection between the Ink System Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
1412	Pump	Pump life error	The number of pump counter reached the specified upper limit. (Pump Motor's life (Ink System Unit's life))	Replace the Ink System Unit (See P.266), and clear the counter using the Service Program.

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
1419	Pump	Pump release error	Pump release operation failed.	Check the connection between the Ink System Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
141A	Pump	Overload error	The electric current flowing when driving the motor is irregularly large. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check the connection between the Ink System Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
141B	Pump	Over speed error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value just before stopping. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure	Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
141C	Pump	Reversing error	Detects that it is being driven in the opposite direction to the specified driving direction. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of encoder cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of motor cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load	Check the connection between the Ink System Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
141D	Pump	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
141E	Pump	Velocity deviation error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor driver failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
141F	Pump	Lock error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly slower speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check the connection between the Ink System Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)



Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
1430	Holder Ink Pad	Holder ink pad error	The number of replacement counter of the ink cartridges has reached the specified life. (the life of the waste ink pad attached to the ink cartridge holder)	Check if the waste ink pads attached to the ink cartridge holder are contaminated. If it has already absorbed a considerable amount of ink, exchange the ink cartridge holder (L and R), and clear the counter using the Service Program.
1431	Ink Selector	Ink selector life error	The number of operation counter of the Ink Selector has reached the specified life.	Replace the Ink Selector, and clear the counter using the Service Program.
1434	IC Cover	IC cover unlock error	The IC Cover can not be opened.	Check if the IC Cover is correctly installed.
				Check if the sensor which detects the open/closed status of the cover, and the solenoid which locks the cover have any defects.
				Replace the Cartridge Cover Sensor (L/R) with new ones. (See P.225, P.226)
1438	Waste ink related	Maintenance tank error	A Maintenance Tank for a wrong destination has been installed.	Replace the Maintenance Tank with a correct one for this printer.
1439	Cap	Cap error	The home position of the Cap is not detected.	Check the connection of the Cap HP Sensor.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
143A	Cap	Overload error	The electric current flowing when driving the motor is irregularly large. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check the connection between the Ink System Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
143B	Cap	Over speed error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value just before stopping. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure	Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
143C	Cap	Reversing error	Detects that it is being driven in the opposite direction to the specified driving direction. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of encoder cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of motor cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load	Check the connection between the Ink System Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
143D	Cap	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
143E	Cap	Velocity deviation error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor driver failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
143F	Cap	Lock error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly slower speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check the connection between the Ink System Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
144A	Pressurizing Pump	Overload error	The electric current flowing when driving the motor is irregularly large. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check the connection between the Pressurizing Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Pressurizing Unit. (See P.275)
144B	Pressurizing Pump	Over speed error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value just before stopping. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure	Replace the Pressurizing Unit. (See P.275)
144C	Pressurizing Pump	Reversing error	Detects that it is being driven in the opposite direction to the specified driving direction. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of encoder cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of motor cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load	Check the connection between the Pressurizing Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Pressurizing Unit. (See P.275)
144D	Pressurizing Pump	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
144E	Pressurizing Pump	Velocity deviation error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor driver failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Replace the Pressurizing Unit. (See P.275)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
144F	Pressurizing Pump	Lock error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly slower speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check the connection between the Pressurizing Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Pressurizing Unit. (See P.275)
1536	Pressurizing Pump	Pressurizing reset error	The pressurizing cannot be reset. The Pressure Sensor remains on, even after the pressurizing has been reset.	Replace the Pressurizing Unit. (See P.275)
1537	Pressurizing Pump	Pressurizing error	The motor driving does not end even after the specified period of time has passed.	Check the connection of the Pressurizing Unit.
				Check the connection of the Pressure tubes.
				Replace the Pressurizing Unit. (See P.275)
1488	Flushing Box	Flushing box position error	Detects that the Flushing Box is not set in the correct position.	Turn the printer off once, then turn it on again.
				Install the latest firmware.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
1489	Wiper	Wiper error	The home position of the Wiper is not detected.	Check the connection of the Wiper HP Sensor.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
148A	Wiper	Overload error	The electric current flowing when driving the motor is irregularly large. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check if there is some foreign material causing extra load on the Wiper system.
				Check the connection between the Ink System Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
148B	Wiper	Over speed error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value just before stopping. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure	Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
148C	Wiper	Reversing error	Detects that it is being driven in the opposite direction to the specified driving direction. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of encoder cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> The polarity of motor cable is opposite. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load	Check the connection between the Ink System Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
148D	Wiper	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
148E	Wiper	Velocity deviation error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly faster speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor driver failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
148F	Wiper	Lock error	Detects that it is being driven at an irregularly slower speed than the specified value. <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Motor cable is damaged. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Encoder failure <input type="checkbox"/> Motor failure	Check the connection between the Ink System Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
1494	Ink Selector	Ink selector error	Ink select operation failed. <input type="checkbox"/> Ink Selector Motor is broken. <input type="checkbox"/> Ink Selector Sensor is broken. <input type="checkbox"/> Ink Selector is overloaded.	Check the connection between the Ink Selector and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink Selector. (See P.300)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
1496	Ink Selector	Ink selector sensor error detection	Ink select operation failed. <input type="checkbox"/> Ink Selector Sensor is broken.	Check the connection between the Ink Selector and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Ink Selector. (See P.300)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
1497	Ink Selector	Switching time-out error	The ink selecting operation does not end even after the specified period of time has passed because the Ink Selector (the sensor or motor) is broken.	Replace the Ink Selector. (See P.300)
149D	Ink Selector	Driving time-out error	Detects that the driving period is irregularly long. <input type="checkbox"/> Irregular load <input type="checkbox"/> Firmware becomes out of control.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
1125	CR	CR HP detection error	The home position of the carriage unit is not detected.	Check the connection of the CR HP Sensor.
				Replace the CR HP Sensor. (See P.239)
				Check if the carriage lock is operating.
1501	Driven Roller Release	Release motor phase detection error	When releasing the driven roller, the Roller Release HP Sensor cannot detect the change of status.	Check the installation status of the Roller Release HP Sensor. (See P.254)
				Check the connection between the Roller Release HP Sensor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Roller Release HP Sensor. (See P.254)
150C	PG	PG phase detection error	During PG operation, the PG HP Sensor cannot detect the change of status.	Check the installation status of the PG HP Sensor. (See P.246)
				Check the connection between the PG HP Sensor and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the PG HP Sensor. (See P.246)
1541	Cutter	Cutter return error	Abnormal Cutter operation is detected. <input type="checkbox"/> Slipping of the teeth of the timing belt. <input type="checkbox"/> Slack of the timing belt. <input type="checkbox"/> Abnormality of the cutter sensor.	Check the connection between the Cutter Unit and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Cutter Unit. (See P.257)
1551	Sensor	Paper thickness determining error	During detection of paper thickness, the thickness cannot be determined because chattering occurs.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
1561	Mechanism system	Paper thickness at power-on error	At power-on, the paper thickness sensor detects more than 2.2 mm paper thickness.	Execute the Paper Thickness Sensor Position Adjustment. (See P.411)
				Replace the Paper Thickness Sensor. (See P.250)
1800	AID	AID voltage error	Due to the leak of AID current, the specified voltage cannot be achieved.	Check the flushing box and around it, and remove ink and dust if attached on it. (Electric current may leak through the accumulated ink or dust.)
				Replace the AID Board. (See P.294)
				Replace the Ink System Unit. (See P.266)
D131	AID	AID error	Firmware supporting the current version AID board is not installed.	Perform maintenance/cleaning of the Flushing Box. Remove ink smear, dirt, fluff, paper dust and such.
				Install the latest firmware.
				Replace the AID Board. (See P.294)
131B	Printhead	Head driver (transmission gate) overheat error	The temperature of the Head Driver rises, and reaches the specified level.	Check the connection of the Head FFC, and if there is abnormality (slant connection or the like), correct it.
				Replace the Printhead. (See P.270)

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
1A37	Printhead	Thermistor error	The Head FFC is not connected correctly.	Check the connection of the Head FFC, and if there is abnormality (slant connection or the like), correct it.
			The thermistor detects a temperature out of the specification.	Replace the Printhead. (See P.270)
			The thermistor is broken.	
1A41	Printhead	Head rank ID input error	The information of the Head rank ID is wrong.	Configure the Head rank ID again. (See P.374)
1427	CSIC	CSIC destination setting error	An Ink Cartridge for a wrong destination has been installed.	Replace the Ink Cartridge with a correct one for this printer.
			The Ink Holder is not adjusted correctly.	Start the printer in the Serviceman Mode without setting the ink cartridge, and then execute “Ink Holder Adjustment” from the Service Program. (See P.426)
1428	CSIC	Ink Holder adjustment error	The adjustment statuses of the Ink Holder on the left and on the right are not the same. *This service call error does not occur for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710 /9700/9710.	1. While opening the cover of the Ink Holder (to avoid a service call error from occurring), start the printer in the Serviceman Mode. 2. Execute “Ink Holder Adjustment” from the Service Program. (See P.426)
1A23	RTC	Incorrect RTC data error	The value information on various absolute time stored on NVRAM is abnormal.	Check if the RTC backup battery is installed properly.
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
1A26	RTC	RTC Access T/O error	The RTC circuit on the Main Board Assy malfunctions.	1. Turn the power off and remove the RTC backup battery. 2. After several seconds, re-attach the battery and turn the power back on. 3. If the printer recovers from the error, set the date and time using the Service Program.
1A38	Hardware	Transistor environmental temperature error	The transistor has a defect.	Replace the Printhead. (See P.270)
			The thermistor detects a temperature out of the specification.	
1A39	Hardware	Head error	The drive circuit in the Printhead is damaged due to a slant connection of the Head FFC, etc., or the fuse of the Main Board Assy may have blown because of such a wrong connection.	1. Check the connection of the Head FFC to the Sub Board Assy, and correct it if there is a slant connection or the cable is disconnected. If any connection terminal of the Head FFC is damaged, replace it with a new one. 2. Replace the Printhead. (See P.270) 3. If the printer does not recover from the error after trying 1 and 2., replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228) (The fuse of the Main Board Assy may have blown due to a slant connection of the Head FFC.)
1A40	Hardware	IC22 error	The destination is wrong.	Configure the destination again.

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
1A50	Hardware	I2C communication error (Between elements on ASIC and MAIN)	Communication error.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
1A51	Hardware	I2C communication error (Between elements on ASIC and SUB)	Communication error.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Check the connection between the Sub Board Assy and the Main Board Assy if the FFC is connected correctly (no slant connection exists). Correct it if any abnormality exists.</li> <li>2. If the printer does not recover from the error after trying 1, replace the FFC between the Sub Board Assy and the Main Board Assy.</li> <li>3. If the printer does not recover from the error even after trying 2, replace the Sub Board Assy. (See P.231)</li> </ol>
1A52	Hardware	I2C communication error (Between elements on ASIC and SUB-B)	Communication error.	
1A53	Hardware	I2C communication error (Between elements on ASIC and SUB-C)	Communication error.	
2000	Memory	NVRAM error	NVRAM erase or write error has occurred.	
2002	Memory	SDRAM error	SDRAM read/write error has occurred.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
2003	Memory	FLASH BOOT SUM CHECK error	Installation of the firmware has been failed.	Re-install the firmware.
			The Flash ROM has a defect.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
200A	Memory	F/W load error	Reading/decompressing the firmware has been failed.	Re-install the firmware.
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
200D	System	System interrupt watchdog time-out error	A system failure such as CPU failure, defective cash or the like has occurred.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
200E	System	Unknown NMI	The CPU has detected an unknown NMI.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
2010	System	UART communication error	Connection between the HEAD_B Board Assy and the Main Board Assy has an abnormality.	Check the connection between the HEAD_B Board Assy and the Main Board Assy.
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
				Replace the Ink holder Board Assy (Ink Cartridge Holder L/R). (See P.277, P.284)
3000	Shut down	AC shut-off	The AC power has been shut off due to a power failure, unplugged, power supply board failure, or main board failure or the like.	Check the connection of the AC cable, and if there is abnormality, correct it.
				Replace the Power Supply Board Assy. (See P.230)
				Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)

Error Code	Error Details		Description	Remedy
	Failed Part	Error Name		
Fxxx *xxx represents error number	CPU	CPU-related error	The firmware has a defect.	Install the correct firmware.
			The Main Board Assy is broken.	Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)
Dxxx *xxx represents error number	—	Debug error	This is a debug error that occurs at product development. In principle, it does not occur for mass-produced products; however, it might occur due to unexpected causes such as external noises.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restart the printer. If the error does not occur, observe the printer for recurrence.</li> <li>2. Re-install the firmware.</li> <li>3. Replace the Main Board Assy. (See P.228)</li> </ol>



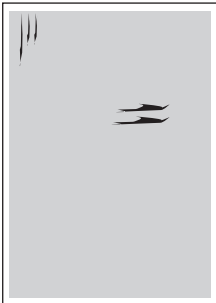
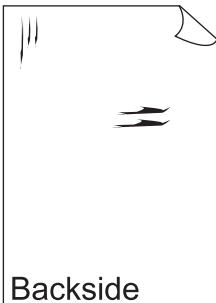
## 3.7 Remedies for Print Quality Troubles


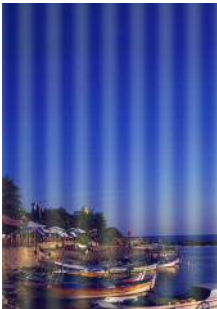
### 3.7.1 Remedies for Print Quality Troubles

This section provides troubleshooting of print quality troubles classifying them by observed symptom.

Before performing troubleshooting, refer to “[PRINT IMAGE \(p360\)](#)” and print the test pattern. Confirm the printed result of the test pattern, and if any maladjustment is found, perform the adjustment.

Symptom	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
Dot missing	Ink stuck inside/on the surface of the nozzles.	Perform a cleaning (normal cleaning, clean each color, power cleaning).
	The pump is not operating normally.	Check the connection of the pump tube.
		Check if there is any broken or pressed part on the pump tube.
		Check the connection of the Pump Motor.
		Replace the Ink System Unit. ( <a href="#">See P.266</a> )
	The Wiper is not operating normally.	Check the Wiper for any damage.
		Check the connection of the Wiper Motor.
		Replace the Ink System Unit. ( <a href="#">See P.266</a> )
	There is something wrong in the ink path.	Check the connections between Ink Cartridge, Ink Cartridge Holders, Ink tubes, Damper, and the Printhead for abnormality.
	The Head FFC is not connected correctly.	Check the connection of the Head FFC, and if there is abnormality (slant connection or the like), correct it.
	The case those remedies above do not improve the symptom.	Replace the following parts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ink System Unit (<a href="#">See P.266</a>)</li> <li>• Printhead (<a href="#">See P.270</a>)</li> <li>• Main Board Assy (<a href="#">See P.228</a>)</li> </ul>

Symptom	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
Ink smear (printed area) 	Paper is curled or creased.	Change the paper with a new one.
	The printed area of paper is contaminated by ink smear in the paper feed path.	Check the PF roller for ink smudges, and clean it if any dirt is observed.
	Paper is rubbed against the printhead.	Widen the platen gap.
	There is a foreign material or dirt absorbing ink around the Printhead.	Check around the Printhead for a dirt or foreign material, and remove it if any.
	Paper is floating from the platen.	Change the setting of [PAPER SUCTION] to a higher level from the Control Panel.
		Check the operation of the Suction Fan, and replace it with a new one if there is abnormality. (See P.261)
	This smear occurs because the paper on which ink dries slowly is used.	Change the setting of [DRYING TIME] from the Control Panel.
Ink smear (backside)  Backside	If the smear occurs the leading/posterior edge, the paper may touch the Printhead due to the deformation resulted from the high duty printing.	Try printing the current job again with the top and bottom margins widened.
	Paper is curled or creased.	Change the paper with a new one.
	The backside of paper is contaminated by ink smear in the paper feed path.	Check the platen and PF roller for ink smudges, and clean them if any dirt is observed.
	Printing is made on the platen, and it is contaminated.	If the [PAPER SIZE CHECK] in the [PRINTER SETUP] menu is set to OFF, the printer will print on the platen. It results in the ink smear. Therefore, set the [PAPER SIZE CHECK] ON or configure the correct paper size. Carry out the Platen Position Adjustment.
	The waste ink pads for borderless printing are not securely attached and contaminating paper.	Check the waste ink pads for borderless printing and reattach them correctly if there is abnormality.

Symptom	Description	Remedy/Points to be checked
Horizontal banding 	Paper setting made in the printer driver is wrong.	Correct the paper setting of the printer driver.
	There is something wrong with paper feeding.	Check the PF Scale for scratch, contamination, and correct it if any.
		Check the PF Encoder for contamination, and clean it if needed.
		Carry out the T&B&S Adjustment. (See P.409)
		Carry out the PF Timing Belt Tension Adjustment. (See P.404)
		Replace the PF Encoder Sensor. (See P.263)
		Replace the PF Motor. (See P.264)
	The printhead has not been adjusted properly.	Carry out the Printhead Slant Adjustment (CR). (See P.378) Carry out the Printhead Slant Adjustment (PF). (See P.381)
Vertical banding 	If the banding occurs soon after replacing the Main Board Assy, the parameter settings of the NVRAM may be incorrect.	Import the NVRAM parameters from the former Main Board Assy.
	The Printhead has a defect.	Replace the Printhead. (See P.270)
	Adjustments have not been carried out properly.	Carry out the Auto Uni-D Adjustment. (See P.383)
		Carry out the Auto Bi-D Adjustment. (See P.384)
	The carriage unit cannot move smoothly.	Check the CR Timing Belt and the Drive Pulley for a defect.
		Check the CR motor is correctly installed and correct it if there is abnormality.
		Carry out the CR Timing Belt Tension Adjustment. (See P.364)

## 3.7.2 Remedies for Print Quality Troubles when Using Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910

This section provides troubleshooting of print quality troubles classified according to observed symptoms when using Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910.

### 3.7.2.1 Usage Environment for ClearProof Film

The usage environment for the Clear Proof Film (CPF) is specified to maintain print quality. If print quality trouble occurs, check the transportation, storage and usage environment first, and then move to the troubleshooting procedure.

#### □ Transportation and storage environment

Due to the characteristics of the ClearProof Film, the quality problem such as deterioration of repelling and blocking track occur when the environment exceeds the following temperature and humidity or the time the printer is left unused.

Condition: 55 °C, 30%RH (Time limit: 55 °C x 12 hours)/

-20 to 40 °C, 5 to 95%RH (Time limit: 40 °C x one month)

#### □ Usage Environment

Due to the characteristics of the ClearProof Film, the guaranteed usage environment is limited compare with other media such as PGPP. If printed in a temperature below 20 °C, the absorbability of the ClearProof Film becomes lower, and ink sedimentation or oozing may occur easily.

■ Temperature: 20 to 25 °C

■ Humidity: 40 to 60%RH

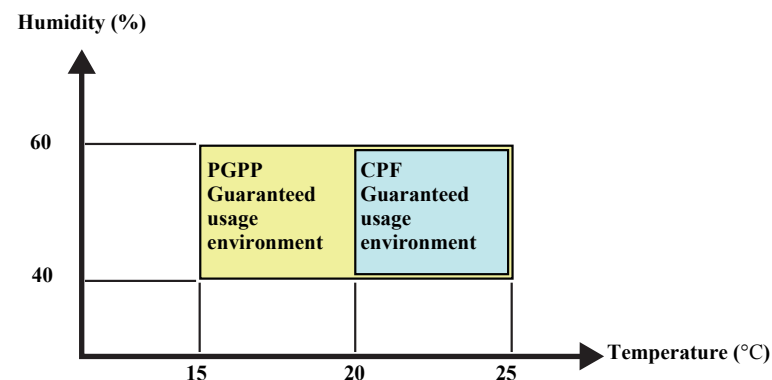


Figure 3-1. CPF Guaranteed usage environment

#### CAUTION

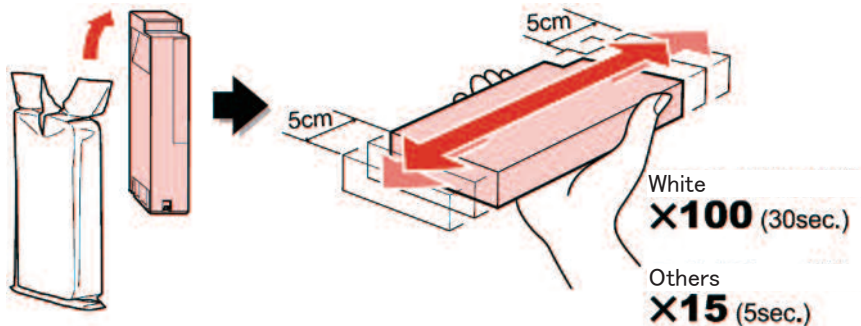


- When storing printed paper, make sure to follow the usage environment to maintain the print quality.
- Always keep the paper away from heat, moisture and direct sunlight to prevent discoloration or uneven color.

### 3.7.2.2 Cautions for using white ink

To maintain good print quality, shake the cartridge quickly about 5 cm width to both sides approximately 100 times (30 seconds) to agitate the white ink inside the cartridge before installing the cartridge to the printer.

Even after installing the cartridge in the printer, remove the cartridge and shake it more than ten times once a week.



When any dot missing occurs, run a cleaning according to the following table.

#### ☐ User Menu

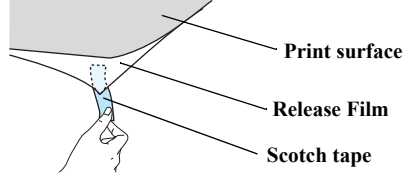
No.	Menu Name	
1	2 Lines Normal CL	Weak
2	2 Lines Power CL	↓
3	All lines Normal CL	↓
4	WT INK REFRESH	↓
5	All Lines Power CL	↓
6	SS CLEANING	Strong

#### ☐ Serviceman Menu

No.	Menu Name	
1	2 Lines CL1	Weak
2	2 Lines CL2	↓
3	2 Lines CL3	↓
4	2 Lines CL4	↓
5	WT Maint CL	↓
6	2 Lines CL5	Strong

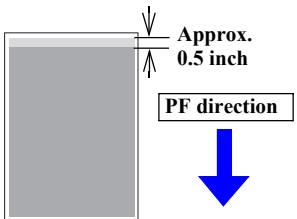
### 3.7.2.3 Troubleshooting when using Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910

□ Troubleshooting specific to Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910

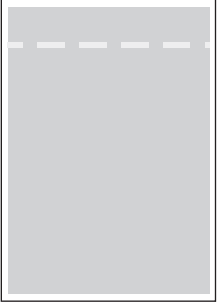

Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
Auto cut cannot be made.	When cutting it shorter than 420 mm	Minimum cutting length of the CPF by [Auto cut] is 420 mm. When [Auto cut] is set for a medium with strong curl other than CPF, after ejected the medium may be curled up and damage the print surface.	Cut the media manually when cutting 420 mm or shorter.
A cut is not made immediately.	When [Manual cut] for the CPF is selected	When [Manual cut] is set, the cut function pauses for two seconds after the Paper Cut button is pressed so that the user can hold the cut paper by hand after the paper is fed. (This is to protect the print surface of the CPF/CCF from scratches caused in the paper basket when the CPF/CCF curls up after being cut.)	Select [Auto cut] when making an immediate cut after printing.
Release Film is hard to peel.	When the Release Film sticks strongly to the CPF and is hard to peel	The Release Film is strongly attached to the CPF so as to prevent rubbing or a jam from occurring if the film is peeled off during the CPF feed.	<p>If the Release Film is hard to peel, attach some scotch tape and such to the edge of the Release Film to make peeling easier and hold it when peeling the film.</p>  <p>Print surface</p> <p>Release Film</p> <p>Scotch tape</p>
	When the media is laminated		Remove the Release Film before laminating the media.

Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
Static electricity is generated.	When the Release Film is peeled off from the CPF	Static electricity is generated when peeling the Release Film (polypropylene) from the clear film material (PET). Static electricity may be charged and then discharged when multiple Release Films are peeled off at a time.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not peel the Release Film near electronic devices.</li> <li>After peeling off the Release Film from large formatted paper or multiple sheets, make sure to touch metal and such to remove the static electricity completely.</li> </ul>
White ink is not ejected.	When the white ink cartridge has been stored with the supply hole down for a long time after the purchase	Resin of white ink accumulates at the dimples of the supply hole and blocks the hole.	<p>When the white ink is not ejected, run a white Ink Refresh twice. In addition, take care of the following when storing the white ink cartridge for a long time or when not used soon after the purchase.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After the purchase, shake the box with the cartridge inside for approximately 30 seconds (100 times) before storing it.</li> <li>Store it horizontally. (Otherwise, sedimentation may not be solved even after maintenance is performed.)</li> <li>Shake the box with the cartridge inside once in every six months when storing it.</li> </ul>
	When the printer is left with white ink filled in the head and the nozzles of the head are clogged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The printer was not turned off normally by pressing the Power button. (Shut down by unplugging the power cord or by breaker.)</li> <li>Because the remaining amount of cleaning liquid (CL1) becomes low, ink change was not executed and the printer was turned off even the white ink remains filled.</li> <li>The power was turned off when an error was occurring.</li> </ul>	<p>When the white ink is not ejected, run a white Ink Refresh twice. In addition, take care of the following when storing the white ink cartridge for a long time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the power off with the Power button.</li> <li>Because error indications are not made when turning the power off, if the printer will not be used for a long time, first check the remaining amount of cleaning liquid (CL1) before turning the printer off to make sure that the ink change can be executed.</li> <li>Solve any error before turning the power off.</li> </ul>



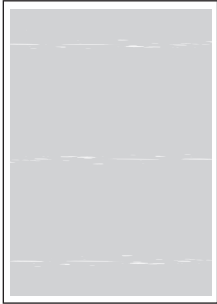
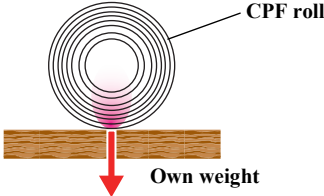
□ Troubleshooting when using cut sheets for Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910



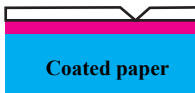
Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
<p>Uneven Color at the bottom</p> 	When printing on PGPP cut sheets, color differs between the regular print area and the print area processed for the bottom.	When printing on PGPP cut sheets, the top and the regular print area are printed with the lower nozzles (#1-#180) of the printhead, and the area processed for the bottom is printed with the upper nozzles (#181-#360). Color may differ due to the differences of the head alignment and the ink weight. (Upper nozzles or lower nozzles cannot be selected by users.)	Print using roll paper.

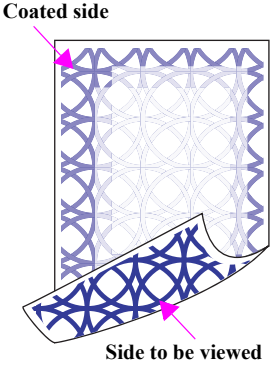

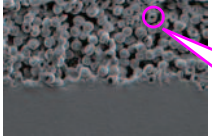

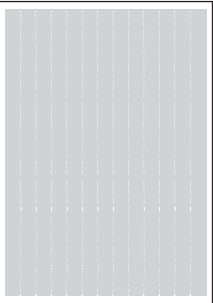
□ Troubleshooting for unexpected prints when printing on ClearProof Film (CPF)

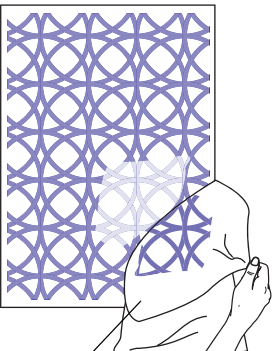
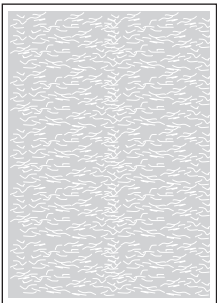
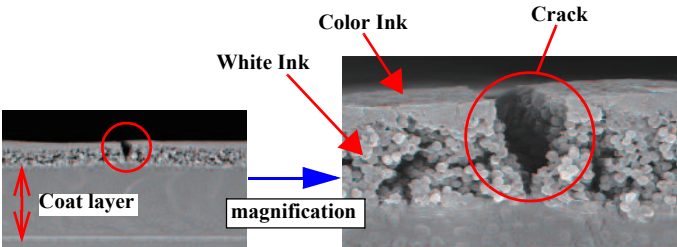
Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
<p>The track of the roller appears on the print area.</p> 	When the CPF is set to the printer for a long time without selecting [ClearProof film] for the paper settings	A pressure mark is left due to the pressure of the roller because the CPF absorbs moisture from the print surface and become soft in a high-humidity environment.	If the CPF is not used for a while, remove the roll from the printer, wrap it in its individual bag and then store it in its individual box.
	In the case of nipping transparent film for a long time without selecting [BACK POSITION] for [FRONT EDGE STAND BY] when using the film in the CUSTOM PAPER setting		Select [BACK POSITION] for [FRONT EDGE STAND BY] when using transparent film. (The nipping position is set 5 mm from the edge of paper so as not to affect the print area.)
	In the case the printer is left unused after the paper is fed using panel feeding when the CPF is set		After panel feeding, the front edge stand by position is set normally if a panel cut is made.
<p>Fingerprint</p> 	When touching the CPF with bare hands	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Moisture or oil of your skin will stick on the non-print area of the CPF and make its coat swell and cause scattering. Fingerprints can be seen in such a case.</li> <li>Moisture or oil of your skin attached on the print area of white ink lowers the ink's scattering performance and the area becomes translucent. Fingerprints can be seen in such a case.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When handling the CPF, hold it by the edges.</li> <li>Because the oil and moisture of hands affect print quality, handle the CPF wearing cotton gloves.</li> <li>The fingerprints attached on the non-print area can become difficult to see if wiped off with a cotton cloth and such.</li> </ul>

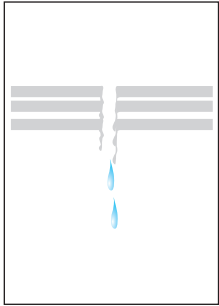
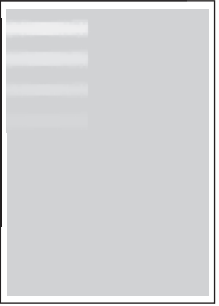
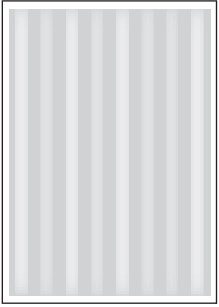


Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
Uneven color appears around the core of the CPF roll paper. 	Blurry uneven color appears at the end of the CPF wrapped to the core.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The CPF's coat layer gets softer and easily deformed if it becomes hotter or more humid.</li> <li>Because the roll core's surface is uneven, pressure is partially high in some places. If the CPF is left at a high temperature, the coated side sticks to the backside of the CPF (Release Film side) at the area with higher pressure. In such a case, an uneven surface is formed on the coat layer surface and the light is diffused there, ending up in blurry uneven color. (blocking bands)</li> </ul> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blocking bands may occur at points with high pressure such as around the roll core even if the transportation conditions (See P.152) are satisfied. For such reasons, additional length is included.</li> <li>Around the roll core, uneven color or the trace of the core may appear on the media. If they appear, replace it with a new roll.</li> <li>When printing on a blocking band, the band becomes hard to see, but it will be still visible on the area not printed.</li> </ul>
Uneven color appears approximately every 40 cm. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uneven color or horizontal bandings (in the CR movement direction) can be seen.</li> <li>The lines appear approximately every 40 cm (circumference of roll).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If stored horizontally without the flange attached to the CPF, the coat layer becomes soft due to the weight of the roll paper. The coat layer and the Release Film stick together (blocking bands occur).</li> <li>Uneven color bands appear approximately every 40 cm (circumference of roll) because the blocking bands turn white.</li> </ul> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the CPF is stored horizontally, make sure to attach the flange. Otherwise, discoloration or uneven color may occur. When the CPF is stored horizontally; even if the container box is used, make sure to attach the flange for packing.</li> <li>When printing on a blocking band, the band becomes hard to see, but it will be still visible on the area not printed.</li> </ul>

Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
Sticking and ink transfer during storing  	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the printed CPF is stored in a pile, the print sides stick to the others.</li> <li>When the printed CPF is stored in a pile, ink is transferred and the print side is scratched.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Because the ink is undried and soft soon after printing on the CPF, scratches or ink transfer occurs if the prints are piled immediately.</li> <li>Even if dried after printing, the coat layer absorbs moisture and becomes soft if the medium is stored in high humidity. In such a case, printed areas stick if they are left in a pile.</li> <li>Especially in the Surface Print mode, scratches easily become conspicuous on the area where color ink is printed on white ink. (See the figure below.)</li> </ul> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>&lt;Surface Print&gt; Scratches may be conspicuous.</p>  </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>&lt;Reverse Print&gt; Scratches are not so visible.</p>  </div> </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>After printing, take the film out from the basket for Epson Special Film and place it with the printed side up on a flat place such as a desktop to dry it well. The average drying time is approximately 30 minutes.</li> <li>Do not touch the print surface during printing or drying. Otherwise, ink may come off, or scratches, discoloration or uneven color may occur.</li> <li>Dry the prints completely before peeling the Release Film. (Be careful not to fold or bend the print surface when peeling the Release Film.)</li> <li>When storing the prints in a pile, put sheets with water absorbability (such as plain paper) between the prints. If paper with no water absorbability such as the backside of the CPF or the Release Film is piled, it may stick to the print surface.</li> <li>To protect the prints from scratches, avoid holding the printed area even with the paper for protection.</li> <li>When storing printed media, make sure to keep the usage environment (<a href="#">See P.152</a>) in order to maintain the print quality.</li> </ul>

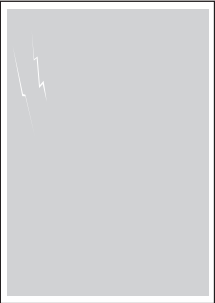

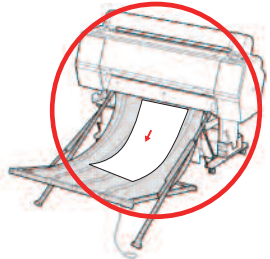
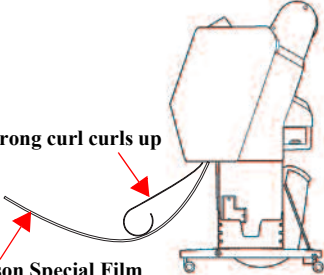
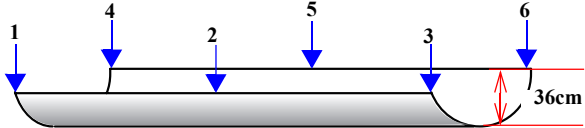
Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
<p>Uneven white color</p>  <p>Coated side</p> <p>Side to be viewed</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Uneven white color occurs when storing the CPF with plain paper sheets in between.</li> <li>In the Reverse Print mode, it occurs to the layered paper sheet area in color and white ink.</li> <li>Uneven color can be seen if seen from the printed side (coated side) in the Reverse Print mode, but hard to see if seen from the side to be viewed (clear film side).</li> </ul> <p>&lt;Reverse Print mode&gt;</p> <p>Side to be viewed ↓ Uneven color is hard to see</p>  <p>↑ : Uneven color can be seen.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Different from the white ink used for solvent containing oxidized titanium, the ingredients of the white ink for Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 are not actually white. As shown below, it is made of hollow balls that can diffuse the light into white.</li> </ul> <p>Cross-section view of the white ink</p>  <p>magnified image</p> <p>Image of diffusion</p>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Immediately after printing, the white ink is transparent because it does not diffuse the light due to the water contained. The ink starts to look white once the water is absorbed by the CPF.</li> <li>When placed between sheets of plain paper before it is dried well or stored in a high humidity environment in the sandwich structure mentioned earlier or in a similar case, if plain paper cockles, white ink may become shaded at the area where plain paper does not touch the printed side because water in white ink cannot be removed well.</li> </ul>	<p>Make sure of the following when storing the CPFs in a pile.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Avoid storing it in a high-humidity environment.</li> <li>After drying the CPF sufficiently for a while, put paper with high water absorbability such as plain paper with the CPFs when storing them.</li> <li>Put plain paper larger than the CPFs. (If plain paper is not large enough, white ink becomes thin on the area where plain paper cannot cover.)</li> </ul> <p>Uneven white color is conspicuous if seen from the printed side, but hard to see if seen from the side to be viewed in the Reverse Print mode.</p>
<p>Scratches on the backside of the CPF</p> 	<p>The backside of the CPF is scratched during feeding because it is fed after the Release Film is peeled.</p>	<p>Scratches occur if the medium is fed after the Release Film is peeled. (The Release Film protects the backside because CPF is very transparent and scratches caused during feeding become conspicuous easily.)</p>	<p>Do not peel the Release Film before printing and drying are complete.</p>

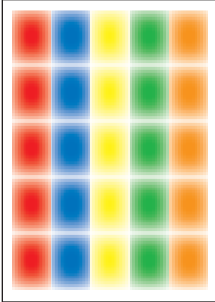
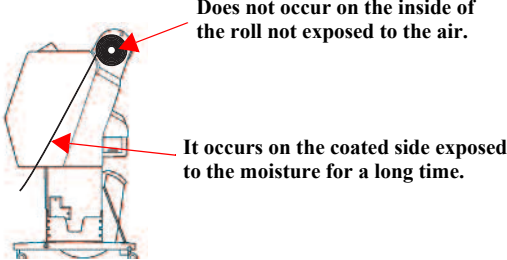
Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
<p>Low print quality or stains</p>  <p>Release Film</p>	<p>Before or after printing, when the adhesive material of the Release Film touches the coated side of the CPF and causes uneven color or scratches</p>	<p>The CPF is made of clear film on which a Release Film is attached with adhesive. The adhesive is kept on the Release Film side, but if it touches the print surface of the CPF, the print quality is lowered because the ink absorption characteristics changes.</p>	<p>Be careful to not let the adhesive side of the Release Film touch the print surface.</p>
<p>Crack</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the Surface Print mode, cracks are caused in the area, where color ink is printed on the white ink.</li> <li>When printing with high duty in the Surface Print mode, cracks are caused on the Print Surface. (Even when printing in the Reverse Print mode, cracks may be caused when printing with unexpectedly high duty or in a usage environment out of the specifications.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Immediately after printing, ink is attached on the coat layer of the CPF. The coat layer absorbs ink water, and swells. Cracks of pigment on the surface of the coat layer are caused by this swelling.</li> <li>Conditions where this symptom easily occurs             <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1.Surface Print (Color ink is printed on the white ink.)</li> <li>2.Printing in the 720 x 1440 dpi mode</li> <li>3.Printing with high duty</li> <li>4.High-humidity environment</li> </ol> </li> </ul> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use the printer under the following environment: Temperature: 20 to 25 °C Humidity: 40 to 60%RH</li> <li>Print in the 1440 x 1440 dpi mode. (Crack occurrence decreases because the amount of ink droplets in a path becomes smaller when the number of scanings increases.)</li> <li>Lower the white ink duty on the RIP setup or on the image data.</li> </ul>

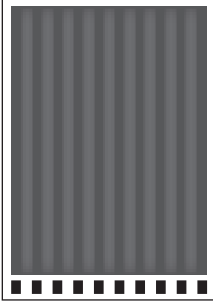
Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
<p>Water resistance of the CPF</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Water drops are attached on the coated side of the CPF, and the tracks of the water appear.</li> <li>If the medium is touched when wet with water, the print surface is peeled.</li> </ul>	<p>If water drops are attached on the printed side of the CPF, the coat layer absorbs water and becomes soft again. If touched in this condition, the coat surface will be removed. (The CPF is less durable against water than PGPP, but more durable than commercially available clear films from other suppliers against water.)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not let water drops attached on the media.</li> <li>Do not display the prints outdoor.</li> </ul>
<p>Paper dust is attached to the CPF.</p> 	<p>Roller traces appear slightly at the area pressed by the driven roller. (Roller traces may occur within the area approximately 50 cm from the leading edge after the CPF is loaded.)</p>	<p>Because the CPF is fed after paper with much paper dust such as plain paper is used, the traces of the driven roller appear on the printed side due to the transferred paper dust attached on the roller.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The paper dust on the driven roller can be removed by feeding the CPF approximately 50 cm.</li> <li>When printing on the area with the paper dust attached, the dust traces become hard to see.</li> <li>Wipe the paper dust on the non-print area with a soft cotton cloth and such.</li> </ul>
<p>White lines appear in the paper feed direction.*</p> 	<p>After a few days from printing, white lines like dirt appear in the paper feed direction.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The coated surface becomes uneven by the coating material leaked from the cracks because tiny cracks are caused on the CPF coated surface by the pressure of the driven roller.</li> <li>It becomes whiter because the light is diffused on the uneven surface.</li> </ul>	<p>Comply with the usage environment of the CPF (<a href="#">See P.152</a>); otherwise, required print quality may not be achieved.</p>

Note "\*": Does not occur if used within the specified duty in the specified usage environment (may; however, occur if too much duty is applied).

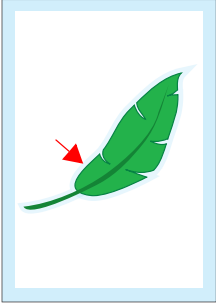
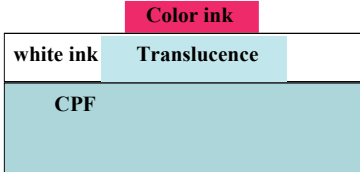

□ Troubleshooting for abnormal colors of ClearProof Film (CPF)

Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
Scratches, ink transfer when piled  	Scratches or traces occur and ink is transferred to the part in contact with the media because the print surface is touched immediately after printing.	Scratches or traces may easily occur and ink may be transferred to the part in contact with the media because ink on the print surface is not dry immediately after printing. Especially at the end of the printed side, ink is very easily transferred because the printed side is wet, for ink there has just been printed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Always use the basket for Epson Special Film when printing on CPF. (If the basket for normal paper is used, scratches are caused when the print surface touches the basket cloth.)</li> </ul> <div> <div> <b>Basket for normal paper</b>   </div> <div> <b>Basket for Epson Special Film</b>   </div> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remove the printed sheet every time it is printed and make sure not to let them stack up.</li> <li>The guaranteed media length that can be stacked on the basket for Epson Special Film is from 420 to 914.4 mm.</li> </ul>
	When printing using the basket for Epson Special Film, roll paper (CPF) with a strong curl curls up when stacked, and scratches are caused because the printed side touches the paper eject section.	The basket for Epson Special Film is designed so that the CPF can stack it without curling up; however, when printing on media from other suppliers with a strong curl, scratches may be caused because the media curls up.  <div> <b>Paper with a strong curl curls up</b>   </div>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the case of roll paper with a strong curl, do not use the basket, but print in the setting [Roll Auto Cut Off], and carry out [Manual cut]. See "Cutting of Roll Paper" on page -43.</li> <li>The CPF's curl is reduced by the adoption of roll cores with wide diameter. The maximum curl value guideline is an average of 36 mm in height (at the 6 points given below) for a 15 cm cut length placed with the concave side up.</li> </ul> <div>  </div>

Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
Print is blurred. Print is thin. 	When printing under the following conditions, print becomes blurred or thin. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Media transported in a high temperature and humidity environment.</li> <li>The CPF was left on the printer for some time.</li> </ul>	If the CPF is left in a high temperature environment and then exposed to a high humidity environment, spotted ink may not spread enough but become small dot diameters. In such a case, print may be blurred or thin. (It occurs conspicuously in yellow.) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the CPF is not used for a while, remove the roll from the printer, wrap it in its individual bag, and then store it in its individual box.</li> <li>Comply with the usage/storage environment.</li> </ul>
The printed part in the white ink becomes transparent.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When water is attached on the part printed in the white ink</li> <li>When scotch tape is attached on the part printed in the white ink</li> <li>When the printed part in the white ink is laminated</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Due to the characteristics of the white ink. (See above "Uneven white color" cause.)</li> <li>Due to the reaction of the white ink to the lamination type or method.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not let the printed film get wet.</li> <li>Do not attach scotch tape on the printed film.</li> <li>Sufficient prior evaluations should be performed in order to select the most appropriate lamination type and method.</li> </ul>
The white density changes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The ink cartridge is not shaken once a week.</li> <li>When not printing more than one month</li> <li>When [WHITE INK REFRESH] is set to OFF</li> <li>When the printed part in the white ink is laminated</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sedimentation of the white ink in the ink cartridge.</li> <li>Sedimentation of the white ink in the nozzle.</li> <li>Reaction of the white ink to the lamination type or method.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the power on once a week, stir the white ink cartridge and execute the [PRINT WITH WHITE INK] in [NOZZLE CHECK].</li> <li>After the purchase, shake the cartridge box with the cartridge inside for approximately five seconds before storing it.</li> <li>Store it horizontally.</li> <li>When storing the white ink for a long time, shake the cartridge box with the cartridge inside for approximately 30 seconds (100 times) once in every six months.</li> <li>Execute [WHITE INK REFRESH].</li> <li>Sufficient prior evaluations should be performed in order to select the most appropriate lamination type and method.</li> </ul>
Ink sedimentation, oozing	In the case of High duty and Bi-D	Because the drying time is not long enough, the media cannot absorb ink anymore. (This easily occurs under a low-humidity environment.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lower the white ink duty on the RIP setup or on the image data.</li> <li>Print using Uni-D printing.</li> </ul>

Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
Scratches on the bottom edge	<p>Scratches occur on the bottom of the print under the following conditions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Printed with [ROLL PAPER MARGIN] for CPF set to the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Default]</li> <li>[TOP 35/BOTTOM 15 mm]</li> <li>[15 mm]</li> <li>[3 mm]</li> </ul> </li> <li>Printed on the bottom 35 mm with high duty</li> <li>Cut set on [Auto cut]</li> </ul>	The CPF pops to the left side when cut automatically, and the area around the bottom 25 mm touches the eject roller. (Scratches there become more conspicuous when printing with high duty.)	Set [ROLL PAPER MARGIN] to [TOP 35/BOTTOM 15 mm].
Missing white spots	Missing white error occurs to the print.	Missing white appears if paper dust or the like attached on the cutter blade is transferred to the print surface and repels ink, or the paper dust with ink is detached after printing.	Clean the dust or paper dust attached on the cutter blade of the cutter unit such as by blowing it off.
Vertical bands 	When printing in thick color with high duty in the Surface Print mode, vertical bands appear.	Vertical bands as ink drying variation appear because the temperature of the CPF surface differs between the area touching the platen ribs and the area not touching them.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Print in the Reverse Print mode.</li> <li>Lower the white ink duty on the RIP setup or on the image data.</li> </ul>
	When both color print and white ink print are solid prints, vertical bands are visible when seen from the white ink side.	In solid prints, vertical bands are caused by the carriage vibration and become visible because the difference of spotted ink locations can be recognizable as the variation of dot density.	Vertical bands on the white ink are hard to see from the colored print side (the side to be viewed from).



Symptom	Occurrence condition	Cause	Remedy/Points to be checked
<p>The outline becomes translucent.*</p> 	<p>The outline of the white ink in color print becomes translucent.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If there is more water than the capacity of absorption of the CPF, excess water remains in the white ink and the ink becomes translucent.</li> <li>If the color ink is printed on the white ink, the moisturizer (glycerin) in the color ink spreads from the color print area to the white ink surroundings.</li> </ul> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Print in the guaranteed usage environment (<a href="#">See P.152</a>).</li> <li>Lower the white ink duty on the RIP setup or on the image data.</li> </ul>
<p>Color print becomes transparent and mottled.</p> 	<p>In the Surface Print mode, color print becomes transparent or partially transparent and mottled. Does not occur in the Reverse Print mode.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This symptom occurs when the CPF's absorbability becomes low due to a low temperature or high duty printing.</li> <li>When printing with duty even higher than this symptom, oozing or uneven sedimentation occurs.</li> </ul>	

Note "\*": Does not occur if used within the specified duty in the specified usage environment (may; however, occur if too much duty is applied).

CHAPTER

4

# DISASSEMBLY & ASSEMBLY

## 4.1 Overview

This chapter describes procedures for disassembling the main components of Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/9700/9710/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/9890/9908/7890/7908. Unless otherwise specified, disassembled units or components can be reassembled by reversing the disassembly procedure.

### □ WARNING

Procedures which, if not strictly observed, could result in personal injury are described under the heading “WARNING”.

### □ CAUTION

“CAUTION” signals a precaution which, if ignored, could result in damage to equipment.

### □ CHECK POINT

Important tips for procedures are described under the heading “CHECK POINT”.

### □ REASSEMBLY

If the assembly procedure is different from the reversed disassembly procedure, the correct procedure is described under the heading “REASSEMBLY”.

### □ ADJUSTMENT

Any adjustments required after reassembly of components or parts are described under the heading “ADJUSTMENT REQUIRED”. Be sure to perform the specified adjustments with reference to Chapter 5 “ADJUSTMENT”.

When you have to remove any parts or components that are not described in this chapter, refer to “8.4 Parts List” (p481) in the Appendix.

### CHECK POINT



The disassembly/assembly procedures are provided based on Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910. The procedures for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/9700/9710/WT7900/WT7910/9890/9908/7890/7908 are basically the same unless otherwise specified. However, the quantity of some screws and hooks, or the size of some parts may differ in Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.

## 4.1.1 Precautions

Before starting the disassembly or reassembly of the product, read the following precautions given under the headings “WARNING” and “CAUTION”.



- **When the Front Cover is opened, a safety-interlock mechanism causes the CR motor and the PF motor to stop. Never disable the interlock function for operator protection.**
- **This printer is equipped with a lithium battery. When handling the lithium battery, the following precautions should be followed.**
  - **When replacing the battery, replace only with a specified type of battery. Using a different type of battery may cause excess heat or explosion.**  
Recommended battery: CR2032 (Sony/Panasonic/Maxell)
  - **Dispose of used batteries according to manufacture’s instructions and local regulations. Contact your local government agency for information about battery disposal and recycling.**
  - **When disposing of the battery, be sure to securely cover its (+) end with tape to prevent combustion or explosion.**
  - **Do not recharge the battery.**
  - **Do not use the battery if it is discolored or damaged, or if any leakage of electrolyte is observed.**
  - **Do not dismantle, solder or heat the battery. Doing so could result in leakage of electrolyte, heat generation, or explosion.**
  - **Do not heat the battery or dispose of it in fire.**
  - **If the electrolyte leaked from the battery contacts with your skin or gets into your eyes, rinse it off with clean water and see a doctor immediately.**



- The power switch for this printer is installed on the secondary side of the power circuit; therefore, the power is always supplied unless the AC Cable is unplugged. To prevent electric shock and circuit damage during servicing, make sure to follow the instructions below.
  - Before removing a circuit board, make sure to unplug the AC Cable from the AC outlet and confirm the LEDs are turned off by pressing the Power button on the Operating Panel. This operation discharges the residual charge in the printer.
  - Make sure not to place the removed circuit boards on the metal and such directly.
- Always wear gloves for disassembly and reassembly to avoid injury from sharp metal edges.
- Never touch the ink or wasted ink with bare hands. If ink comes into contact with your skin, wash it off with soap and water immediately. If irritation occurs, contact a physician.
- If ink gets in your eye, flush the eye with fresh water and see a doctor immediately.
- When powering this product, high-voltage current may be applied on the following parts/components. To prevent ELECTRIC SHOCK, do not touch the parts/components when the power is ON. If the shock should happen, the flowing current is very tiny, about a few hundreds  $\mu\text{A}$ , therefore it will not do any harm on the human body.
  - Ink System Unit (Flushing Box)
  - Power Supply Board Assy
  - AID Board
- When replacing the Main Board, Power Supply Board, or Power harnesses and such, make sure to check visually if any harness is caught in between or any wrong connection exists.



- Make sufficient work space for servicing.
- Locate the printer on a stable and flat surface.
- The ink-path-related components or parts should be firmly and securely reinstalled on the printer to prevent the ink from leakage.
- Use only recommended tools for disassembly, assembly or adjustment of the printer.
- When using compressed air products; such as air duster, for cleaning during repair and maintenance, the use of such products containing flammable gas is prohibited.
- Apply lubricants and adhesives as specified.
- Be careful not to soil the printer or the floor with the leaked ink when removing the ink-path-related components or parts. Spread a sheet of paper or cloth on the floor in advance.
- Do not touch electrical circuit boards with bare hands as the elements on the board are so sensitive that they can be easily damaged by static electricity. If you have to handle the boards with bare hands, use static electricity discharge equipment such as anti-static wrist straps.
- When reassembling the printer, make sure to connect the connectors of the electric components or parts correctly and securely. Use extreme care when connecting FFCs (flexible flat cables). Improper connection of the FFCs, such as inserting them diagonally into the connectors, could cause short-circuiting and lead to breakdown of the electric elements on the boards.
- When reassembling the printer, make sure to route the FFCs and other cables as specified in this chapter. Failure to do so may cause an unexpected contact of the cables with sharp metal edges, or lead to lower the noise immunity.
- When the printer has to be operated with the covers removed, take extra care not to get your fingers or clothes caught in moving parts.
- When you have to remove any parts or components that are provided as after-service-parts but are not described in this chapter, carefully observe how they are installed and make sure to remember it before removing them.

**CAUTION**

- The cutter blade is razor-sharp. Be especially careful when handling the cutter.
- Carbide blade employed for the cutter blade is hard but brittle. Be careful not to hit it against metal parts of the printer as it can be easily damaged.
- When you removed any parts (especially cables) that are secured with acetate tape or two-sided tape, be sure to reinstall and secure them with the tape as exactly the same as they were.
- Disassembling the frame and some components of the printer is prohibited because they are assembled with precise measurements in 1/100 mm unit at the factory.
- When moving the Carriage Unit manually, make sure to remove paper.

## 4.1.2 Orientation Definition

The terms used for indicating the orientation/direction throughout this chapter are as follows.

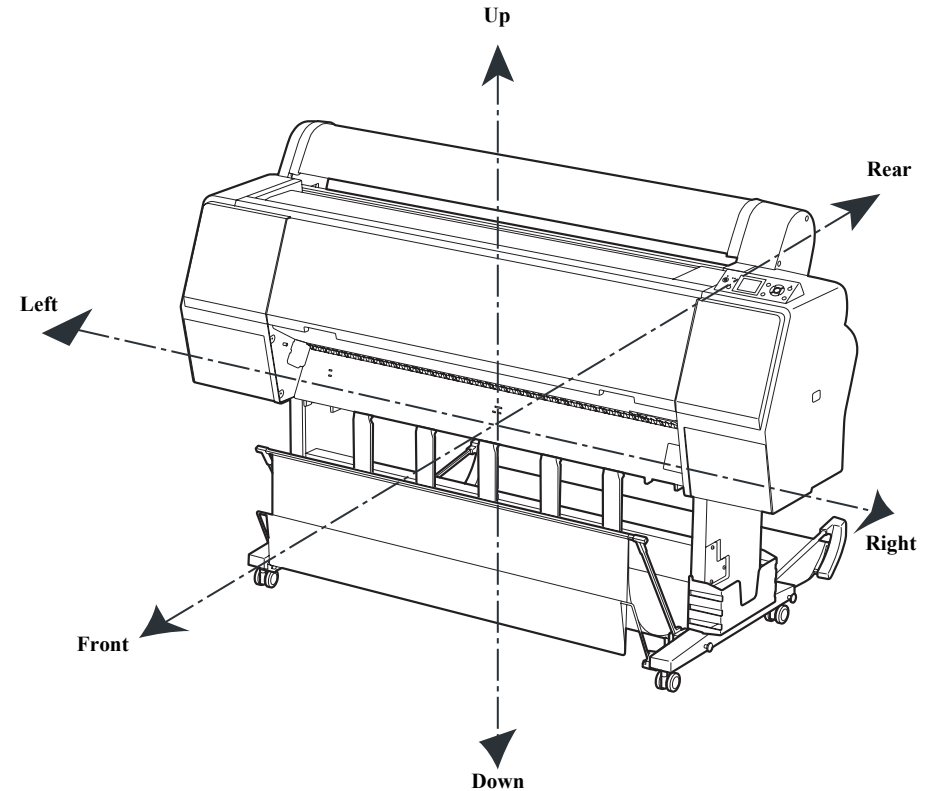


Figure 4-1. Orientation Definition

### 4.1.3 Recommended Tools

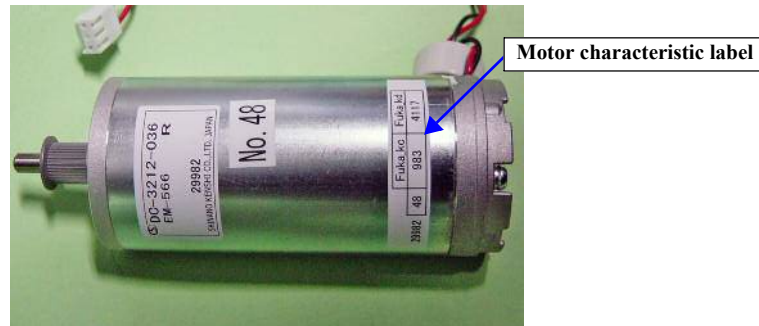
To protect this product from damage, use the tools indicated in the following table.

**Table 4-1. Tools**

Name	Epson Part Number	Note
Phillips screwdriver, No. 1	Commercially available	---
Phillips screwdriver, No. 2	Commercially available	Prepare the drivers in the following length. <input type="checkbox"/> Approx. 30 cm <input type="checkbox"/> Approx. 20 cm <input type="checkbox"/> Stubby driver
Hexagonal Box driver	Commercially available	5 mm
Hexagonal wrench	Commercially available	3 mm
Long-nose pliers	Commercially available	---
Tweezers	Commercially available	---
Nipper	Commercially available	---
Torque driver	Commercially available	---

#### 4.1.4 Cautions when replacing the Main Board Assy/Power Supply Board Assy

For this printer, so as to drive the CR Motor and PF Motor properly, the characteristics of them are stored in the Main Board Assy, and used to optimize the performance in accordance with the Power Supply Board Assy. Therefore, when replacing the parts mentioned below, check if the motor characteristics label is attached on the motor, and make sure to perform an appropriate measure for the concerning replacement.



Parts to replace	Presence of motor characteristics label		Measure
	CR Motor	PF Motor	
Power Supply Board Assy	Yes	Yes	Replace the Power Supply Board Assy only.
	No	No	Replace the CR Motor and the PF Motor along with the Power Supply Board Assy. After replacement, perform "CR/PF Motor Characteristics Writing".
	Yes	No	Replace the PF Motor along with the Power Supply Board Assy. After replacement, perform "PF Motor Characteristics Writing".
	No	Yes	Replace the CR Motor along with the Power Supply Board Assy. After replacement, perform "CR Motor Characteristics Writing".
Main Board Assy (When parameter (NVRAM) backup is failed.)	Yes	Yes	Replace the Main Board Assy only. After replacement, perform "CR/PF Motor Characteristics Writing".
	No	No	Replace the CR Motor and the PF Motor along with the Main Board Assy. After replacement, perform "CR/PF Motor Characteristics Writing".
	Yes	No	Replace the PF Motor along with the Main Board Assy. After replacement, perform "CR/PF Motor Characteristics Writing".
	No	Yes	Replace the CR Motor along with the Power Supply Board Assy. After replacement, perform "CR/PF Motor Characteristics Writing".

### 4.1.5 Differences of the parts/components between models

The following explains the differences in parts/components (major items with differences in appearance only) among Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910, Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710, Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M, Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 and Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908. Make sure to order/install the parts confirming the part codes because the parts are basically different from each model.

**CAUTION**

Some of the parts can be attached even in a wrong combination. Even if a wrong part is attached, abnormality may not occur or not be noticed immediately. Therefore, make sure to confirm that your parts to use are correct before ordering and/or installing them.



### 4.1.5.1 Compatibility of the parts/components between models

This section describes symptoms when the parts combination is different for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910, Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710, Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M, Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 and Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908 from as described in the compatibility of the parts/components between models.

*NOTE: The parts code may change. Please check the latest information on the SPI system.*

**Figure 4-2. Compatibility of the parts/components between models**

Part name	Description	Installation location			Epson Stylus Pro 7900/ 7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/ 7710/7700M/7710M/9700/ 9710	Epson Stylus Pro WT900/ WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/ 7908/9890/9908
		Installing part						
PUMP,CAP,ASSY,ESL,ASP	The Select Cams differ because the number and type of inks.	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	ASP Name	PUMP,CAP, ASSY, <b>B</b> ,ESL,ASP	OK	NG: The sucking operation cannot be performed normally and the nozzle clogging occurs when printing. (The nozzle clogging does not occur soon after printing.)	NG: Mixed color occurs in the CAP. Or mechanical noises may be heard from the contact points when using the printer.	NG: The sucking operation cannot be performed normally and the nozzle clogging occurs when printing. (The nozzle clogging does not occur soon after printing.)
			Part Code	1510382				
		Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	ASP Name	PUMP,CAP, ASSY, <b>K</b> ,ESL,ASP	NG: The cleaning by nozzle row cannot be performed normally. As a result, even though you perform the cleaning, the nozzle clogging is not solved. (The nozzle clogging does not occur soon after printing.)	OK	NG: The cleaning by nozzle row cannot be performed normally. As a result, even though you perform the cleaning, the nozzle clogging is not solved. (The nozzle clogging does not occur soon after printing.)	NG: The cleaning by nozzle row cannot be performed normally. As a result, even though you perform the cleaning, the nozzle clogging is not solved. (The nozzle clogging does not occur soon after printing.)
			Part Code	1520218				
		Epson Stylus Pro WT900/WT7910	ASP Name	PUMP,CAP, ASSY, <b>A</b> ,ESL,ASP	OK	NG: The sucking operation cannot be performed normally and the nozzle clogging occurs when printing. (The nozzle clogging does not occur soon after printing.)	OK	NG: The sucking operation cannot be performed normally and the nozzle clogging occurs when printing. (The nozzle clogging does not occur soon after printing.)
			Part Code	1523796				

Figure 4-2. Compatibility of the parts/components between models

Part name	Description	Installation location			Epson Stylus Pro 7900/ 7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/ 7710/7700M/7710M/9700/ 9710	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/ WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/ 7908/9890/9908
		Installing part						
PUMP,CAP,ASSY,ESL,AS	The Select Cams differ because the number and type of inks.	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908	ASP Name	PUMP,CAP, ASSY. <b>A,B</b> ,ESL,ASP	NG: The cleaning by nozzle row cannot be performed normally. As a result, even though you perform the cleaning, the nozzle clogging is not solved.	NG: The cleaning by nozzle row cannot be performed normally. As a result, even though you perform the cleaning, the nozzle clogging is not solved.	NG: The cleaning by nozzle row cannot be performed normally. As a result, even though you perform the cleaning, the nozzle clogging is not solved.	OK
			Part Code	1546054				
SELECTOR, UNIT, ESL, ASP	The ink selector system does not exist in Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710, because these products use different nozzles for Photo Black and Matte Black.	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908	ASP Name	SELECTOR, UNIT, <b>B</b> ,ESL,ASP	OK	NG: Because the connected tubes and the nozzle configuration do not match, print quality troubles occur. (This occurs soon when printing.)	OK	OK
			Part Code	1523885				
		Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	ASP Name	SELECTOR, UNIT, <b>K</b> ,ESL,ASP	NG: This can be clarified at installation because the connecting destinations of tubes on the right do not exist.	OK	NG: This can be clarified at installation because the connecting destinations of tubes on the right do not exist.	NG: This can be clarified at installation because the connecting destinations of tubes on the right do not exist.
			Part Code	1520217				

Figure 4-2. Compatibility of the parts/components between models

Part name	Description	Installation location			Epson Stylus Pro 7900/ 7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/ 7710/7700M/7710M/9700/ 9710	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/ WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/ 7908/9890/9908
		Installing part						
HOLDER, ASSY., IC, RIGHT, ESL, ASP	The type of ink cartridges to install differs.	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/ 9900/9910	ASP Name	HOLDER,A SSY.,IC,RIG HT,ESL,ASP	OK	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.
			Part Code	1504196				
		Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/ 7700M/ 7710M/ 9700/9710	ASP Name	HOLDER,A SSY.,IC,RIG HT, <b>K</b> ,ESL,A SP	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	OK	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.
			Part Code	1520215				
		Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/ WT7910	ASP Name	HOLDER,A SSY.,IC,RIG HT, <b>B</b> ,ESL,A SP	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	OK	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.
			Part Code	1523800				
		Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/ 9890/9908	ASP Name	HOLDER,A SSY.,IC,RIG HT, <b>8C</b> ,ESL ASP	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	OK
			Part Code	1541859				
HOLDER, ASSY., IC, LEFT, ESL, ASP	The type of ink cartridges to install differs.	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/ 9900/9910	ASP Name	HOLDER,A SSY.,IC,LEF T,ESL,ASP	OK	---	OK	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.
			Part Code	1504197				
		Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/ WT7910	ASP Name	HOLDER,A SSY.,IC,LEF T, <b>B</b> ,ESL,AS P	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	---	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.
			Part Code	1523799				
		Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/ 9890/9908	ASP Name	HOLDER,A SSY.,IC,LEF T, <b>8C</b> ,ESL ASP	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	NG: Ink cartridges cannot be installed.	OK
			Part Code	1541860				

Figure 4-2. Compatibility of the parts/components between models

Part name	Description	Installation location			Epson Stylus Pro 7900/ 7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/ 7710/7700M/7710M/9700/ 9710	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/ WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/ 7908/9890/9908
		Installing part						
IC Cover R	The type of ink cartridges to install differs.	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/ 9900/9910	ASP Name	COVER,IC, RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP	OK	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.
			Part Code	1504200				
		Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/ 7700M/7710M/ 9700/9710	ASP Name	COVER,IC, RIGHT,UNIT, <b>K</b> ,ESL,ASP	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	OK	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.
			Part Code	1520213				
		Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/ WT7910	ASP Name	COVER,IC, RIGHT,UNIT, <b>A</b> ,,ESL,ASP	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	OK	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.
			Part Code	1523798				
		Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/ 9890/9908	ASP Name	COVER,IC, RIGHT,UNIT, <b>8C</b> ,ESL,ASP	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	OK
			Part Code	1541857				
IC Cover L	The type of ink cartridges to install differs.	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/ 9900/9910	ASP Name	COVER,IC,LEFT,UNIT,ESL,ASP	OK	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.
			Part Code	1504205				
		Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/ WT7910	ASP Name	COVER,IC,LEFT,UNIT, <b>A</b> ,,ESL,ASP	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	OK	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.
			Part Code	1523797				
		Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/ 9890/9908	ASP Name	COVER,IC,LEFT,UNIT, <b>8C</b> ,ESL,ASP	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	NG: The ink cartridge arrangement and those indicated on the label on the IC cover does not match.	OK
			Part Code	1541858				

Figure 4-2. Compatibility of the parts/components between models

Part name	Description	Installation location			Epson Stylus Pro 7900/ 7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/ 7710/7700M/7710M/9700/ 9710	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/ WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/ 7908/9890/9908
		Installing part						
Front Cover R	The label is attached on the Front Cover R of Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910.	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710/7890/7908/9890/9908	ASP Name	COVER,FRONT,RIGHT,ASP	OK	OK	NG: Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 exclusive use.	OK
		Part Code	1507312					
		Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	ASP Name	COVER,FRONT,RIGHT, A,ASP	NG: Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 exclusive use.	NG: Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 exclusive use.	OK	NG: Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 exclusive use.
		Part Code	1523804					
Front Cover L	The label is attached on the Front Cover L of Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910.	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710/7890/7908/9890/9908	ASP Name	COVER,FRONT,LEFT,ASP	OK	OK	NG: Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 exclusive use.	OK
		Part Code	1507313					
		Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	ASP Name	COVER,FRONT,LEFT, A,ASP	NG: Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 exclusive use.	NG: Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 exclusive use.	OK	OK
		Part Code	1523805					

Figure 4-2. Compatibility of the parts/components between models

Part name	Description	Installation location			Epson Stylus Pro 7900/ 7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/ 7710/7700M/7710M/9700/ 9710	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/ WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/ 7908/9890/9908
Printhead	The printhead is used individually adjusted for the characteristics of the product. (The shape and component are the same; as the part itself, but the head rank ID differs.)	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908	ASP Name	PRINT HEAD	OK	NG: Print quality might be degraded, but it is difficult to distinguish the wrong usage from the printed result.	OK	OK
			Part Code	F191010				
		Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710	ASP Name	PRINT HEAD	OK*	OK	OK*	OK
			Part Code	F191010				

Note \*: The printhead for each model is installed in the manufacturing process; however, only the printhead for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710 is established as a service part. Therefore, the printhead for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710 is also used for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910.

Figure 4-3. Compatibility of the parts/components between models (Control Panel)

Part name	Description	Installation location			Epson Stylus Pro 7900/ 7910/9900/9910/7890/ 7908/9890/9908	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/ 7710/9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M
		Installing part						
Control Panel	<input type="checkbox"/> The Black Ink Change button of Epson Stylus Pro7900/7910/9900/9910 is identical to the Cleaning button.	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/7890/7908/9890/9908	ASP Name	PANEL,UNIT,ESL,ASP	OK	NG: The printed operation on the control panel and the actual operation when the button is pressed does not match.	NG: The printed operation on the control panel and the actual operation when the button is pressed does not match.	NG: The printed operation on the control panel and the actual operation when the button is pressed does not match.
			Part Code	1504178				
	<input type="checkbox"/> Mode switch function is added to the [Pause] button only for Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M. For Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/7700/7710/9700/9710/WT7900/WT7910, the button function is not changed.	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710/WT7900/WT7910	ASP Name	PANEL,UNIT, <b>K</b> ,ESL,ASP	NG: The printed operation on the control panel and the actual operation when the button is pressed does not match.	OK	OK	NG: The printed operation on the control panel and the actual operation when the button is pressed does not match.
			Part Code	1520214				
		Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M	ASP Name	PANEL,UNIT, <b>D</b> ,ESL,ASP	NG: The printed operation on the control panel and the actual operation when the button is pressed does not match.	NG: The printed operation on the control panel and the actual operation when the button is pressed does not match.	NG: The printed operation on the control panel and the actual operation when the button is pressed does not match.	OK
			Part Code	1533199				

Figure 4-4. Compatibility of the parts/components between models (BOARD ASSY.,MAIN)

Part name	Installation location			Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910	Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M	Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908
	Installing part										
BOARD ASSY.,MAIN	Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910	ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (STANDARD)	OK	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.
		Part Code	2124159								
		ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (CHINA)								
		Part Code	2124182								
	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910	ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (STANDARD)	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	OK	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.
		Part Code	2124160								
		ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (CHINA)								
		Part Code	2124183								
	Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710	ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	OK	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.
		Part Code	2129173								
		ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (CHINA)								
		Part Code	2129174								
	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710	ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (STANDARD)	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	OK	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.
		Part Code	2129175								
		ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (CHINA)								
		Part Code	2129176								
	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (STANDARD)	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	OK	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.
		Part Code	2130490								
		ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (CHINA)								
		Part Code	2130491								



Figure 4-4. Compatibility of the parts/components between models (BOARD ASSY.,MAIN)

Part name	Installation location			Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910	Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M	Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908
	Installing part										
BOARD ASSY.,MAIN	Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M	ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (STANDARD)	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	OK	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.
		Part Code	2131695								
		ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (CHINA)								
		Part Code	2131696								
	Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908	ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (STANDARD)	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	OK	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.
		Part Code	2135466								
		ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (CHINA)								
		Part Code	2135484								
	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908	ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (STANDARD)	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	NG: The printer is recognized as a wrong model.	OK
		Part Code	2135466								
		ASP Name	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN (CHINA)								
		Part Code	2135484								

### 4.1.5.2 Identification method for the parts/components between models

This section describes differences of components between Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910, Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710, Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M, Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 and Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908 (only for main parts in different shapes).

**Table 4-2. Differences**

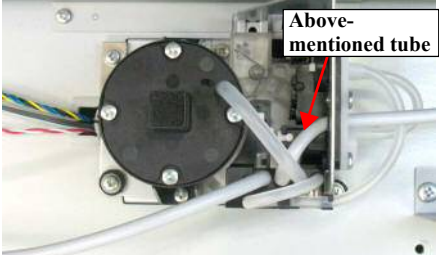
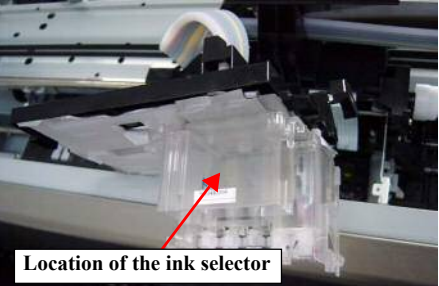
Part name	Identification	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908	Illustration
<input type="checkbox"/> PRESSURIZING PUMP ASSY <input type="checkbox"/> TUBE, PRESSURIZING, RIGHT, ASP	The number of tubes differs. As seen from the rear, the following differences exist.	There is a tube to the ink cartridge holder on the right.	There is no tube to the ink cartridge holder on the right.	There is no tube to the ink cartridge holder on the right.	There is a tube to the ink cartridge holder on the right.	There is a tube to the ink cartridge holder on the right.	 <p>* The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910.</p>
SELECTOR, UNIT, ESL, ASP	Identify your model by checking if the ink selector system exists.	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	 <p>* The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710.</p>

Table 4-2. Differences

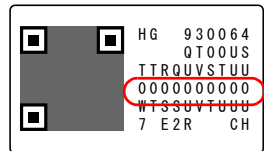
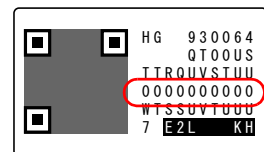
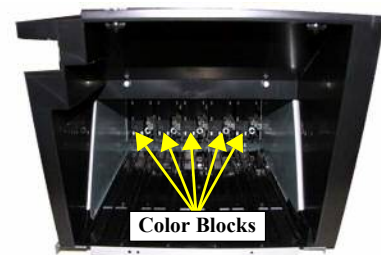





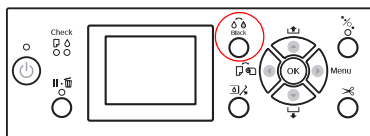





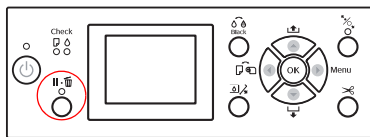
Part name	Identification	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908	Illustration
Printhead	Identify your model with the last character string of the head rank ID label.	Black letters on the white background	White letters on the black background	White letters on the black background	Black letters on the white background	Black letters on the white background	<p>Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/ Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910/ Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908</p>  <p>Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710</p> 
HOLDER, ASSY., IC, RIGHT, ESL, ASP	Identify your model with the colors of the color blocks.	Black	Gray	Gray	Creamy white	Black	 <p>* The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910.</p>
HOLDER, ASSY., IC, LEFT, ESL, ASP		Black	---	---	Creamy white	Black	
Control Panel	The button on the upper right of the LCD panel	 Black Black Ink Change	 Cleaning	 Cleaning	 Cleaning	 Black Black Ink Change	 <p>* The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910.</p>
	The button on the bottom left of the LCD panel	 Mode	 Mode	 Mode	 Mode	 Mode	 <p>* The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910.</p>

Table 4-2. Differences

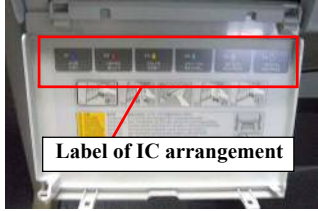
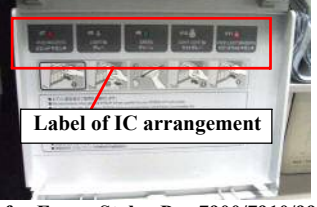
Part name	Identification	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908	Illustration
IC Cover L	The button on the upper right of the LCD panel	C, O, Y, Lc, Mk, Pk	---	---	C, Or, Y, Lc, WT, CL	C, Y, Lc, Mk, Pk	 <p>* The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910.</p>
IC Cover R	The arrangement of IC labels	VM, Lk, G, Llk, VLm	VM, C, PK, Y, VM	VM, C, PK, Y, VM	VM, CL, G, Pk, VLm	VM, Lk, Llk, VLm	 <p>* The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910.</p>

Table 4-2. Differences

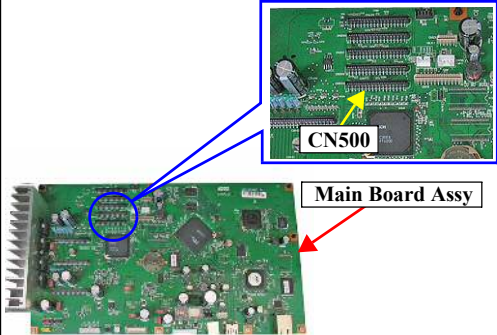
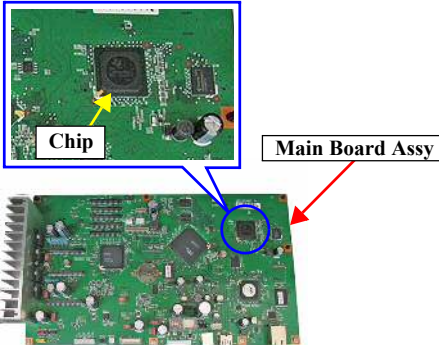
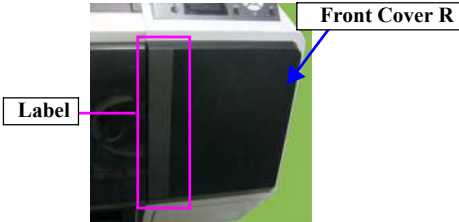
Part name	Identification	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908	Illustration
Main Board Assy	CN500: Yes / No	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	 <p>* The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910.</p>
	Chip on the upper right of the board: Yes / No	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes	 <p>* The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910.</p>
Front Cover R	Label: Yes / No	No	No	No	Yes	No	 <p>* The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910.</p>

Table 4-2. Differences

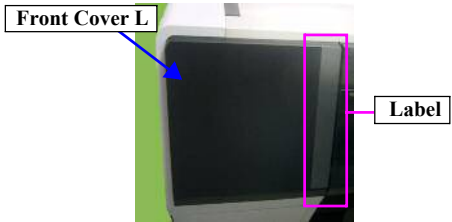
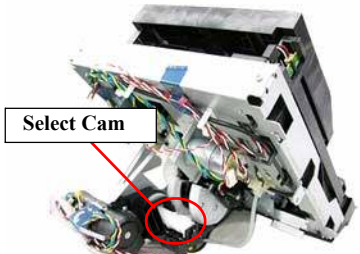
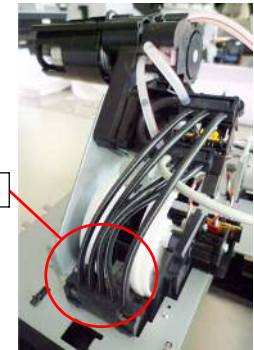
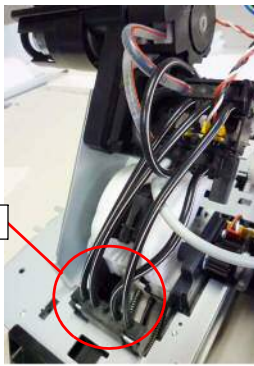
Part name	Identification	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908	Illustration
Front Cover L	Label: Yes / No	No	No	No	Yes	No	 <p>* The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910.</p>

Table 4-2. Differences

Part name	Identification	Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710	Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M	Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910	Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908	Illustration
PUMP, CAP, ASSY, B, ESL, ASP	Identify your model with the select cam color.	Creamy white*	Black	Black	Creamy white*	Creamy white*	 <p>* The figure is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910.</p>
	Number of tubes	Five	Five	Five	Five	Four	 

Note " "\*: PUMP, CAP, ASSY, B, ESL, ASP is common to Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910 and Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 as of Dec. '09 production.

## 4.2 Parts Diagram

See the pages written under brackets for the disassembly/assembly procedure.

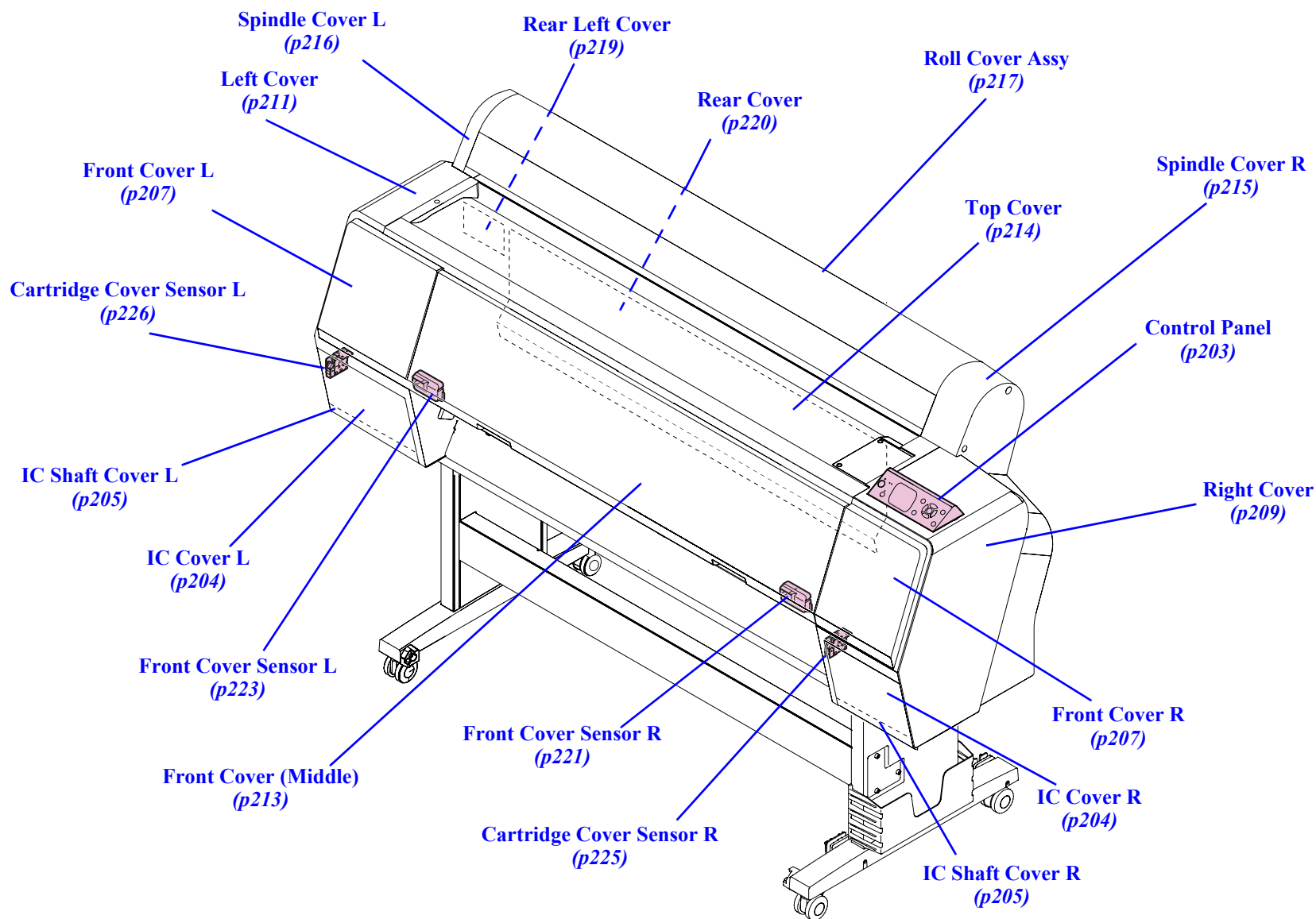


Figure 4-5. Housing



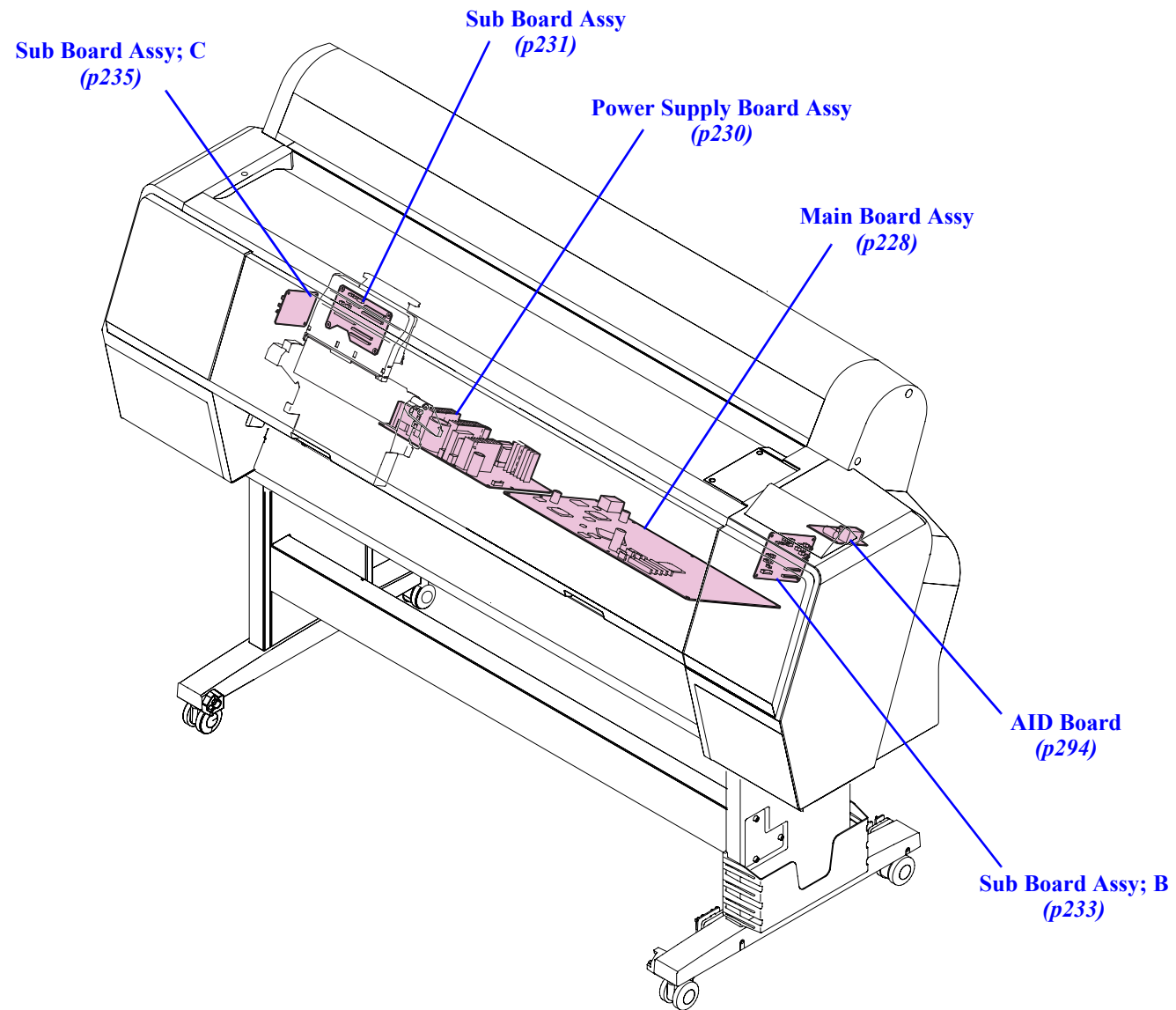


Figure 4-6. Electric Circuit Components

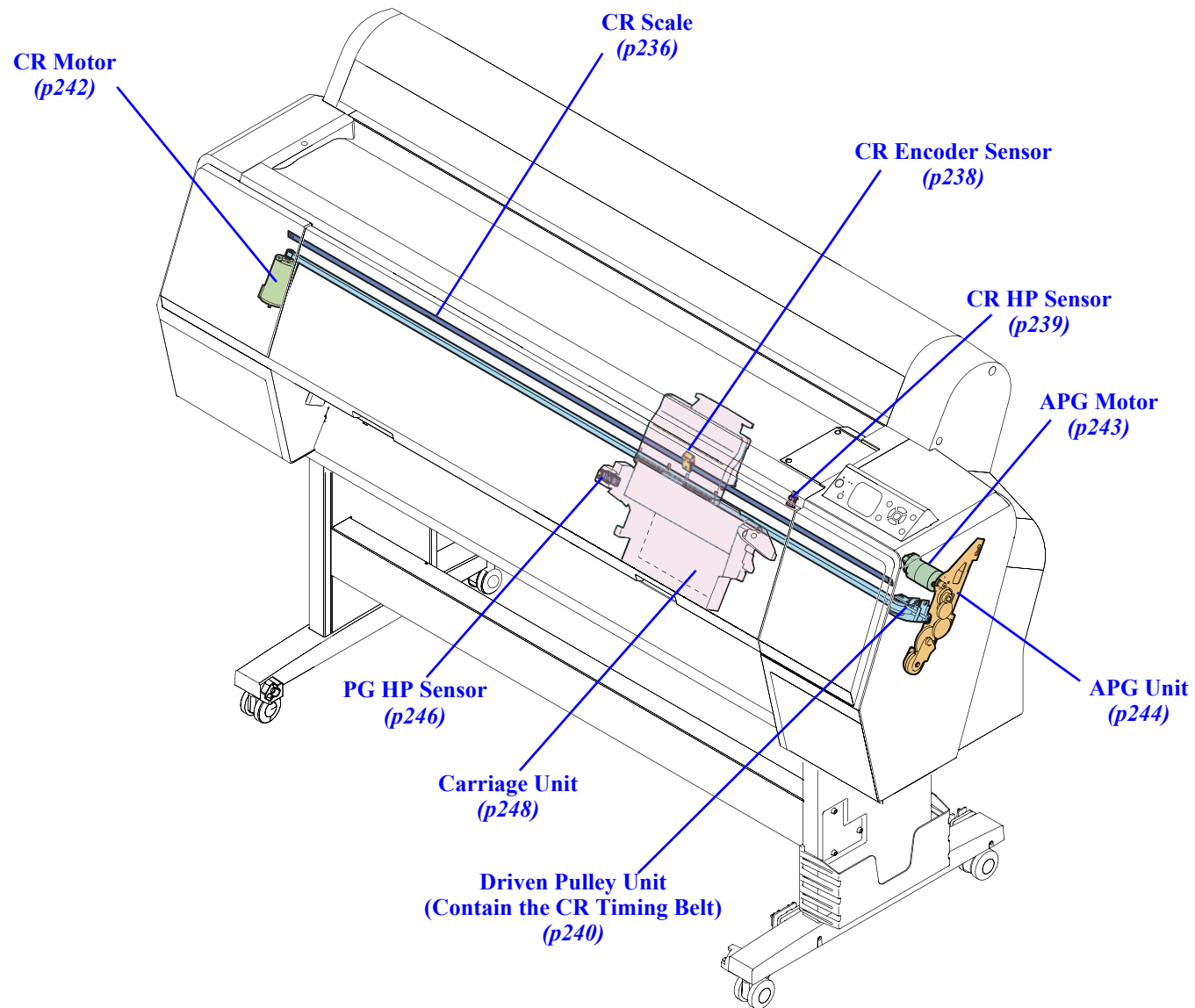


Figure 4-7. Carriage Mechanism

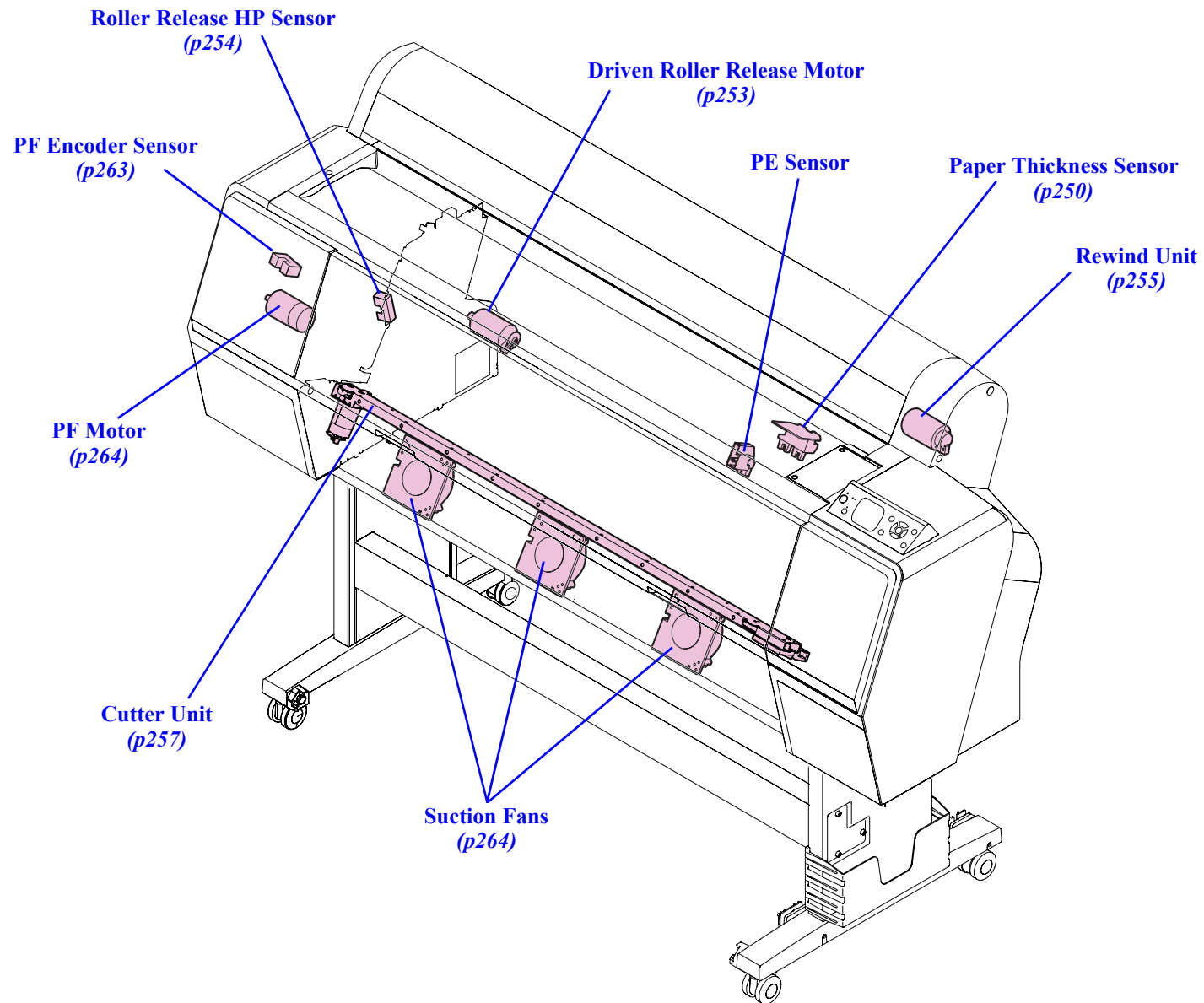


Figure 4-8. Paper Feed Mechanism

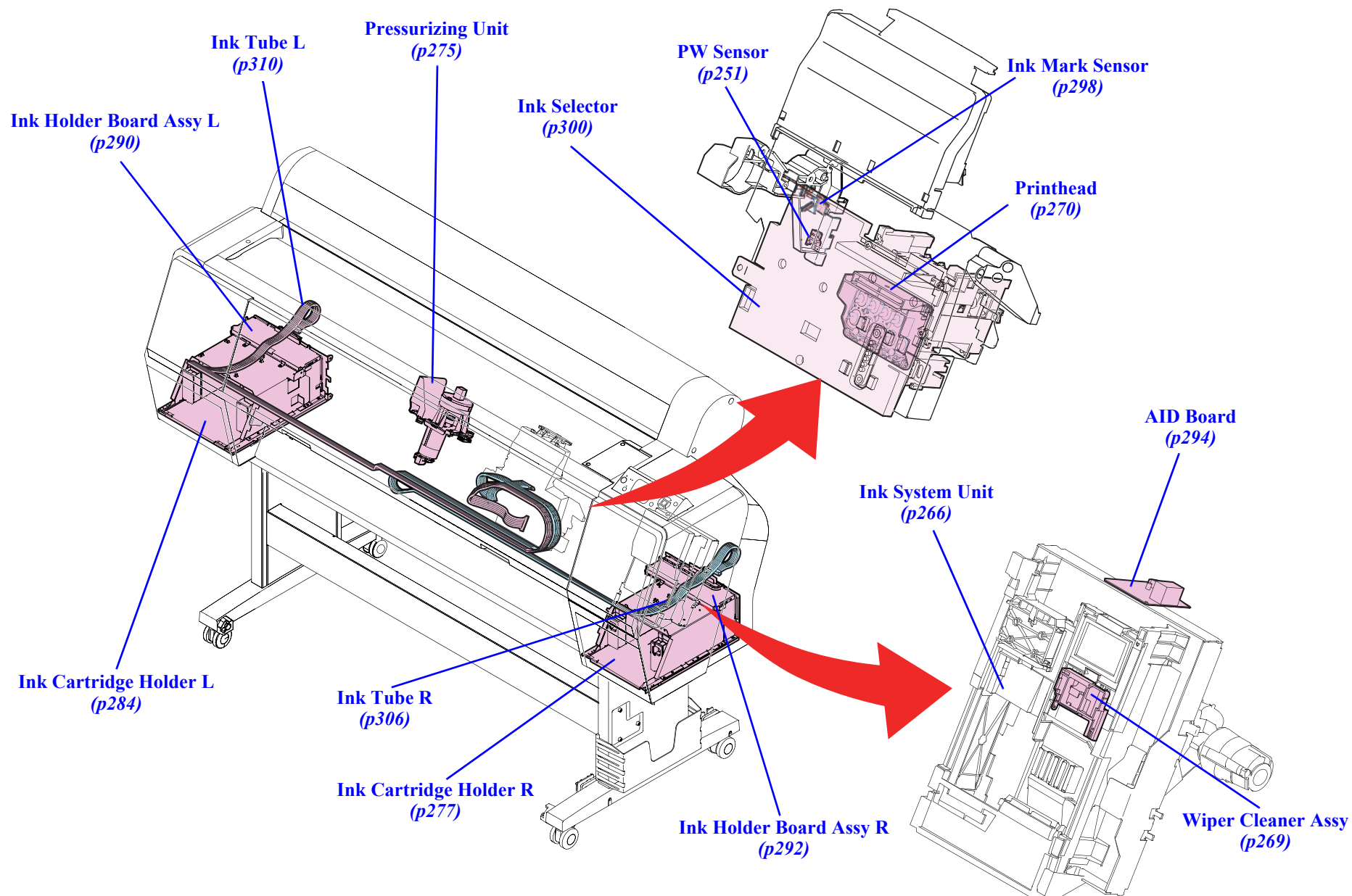


Figure 4-9. Ink System Mechanism

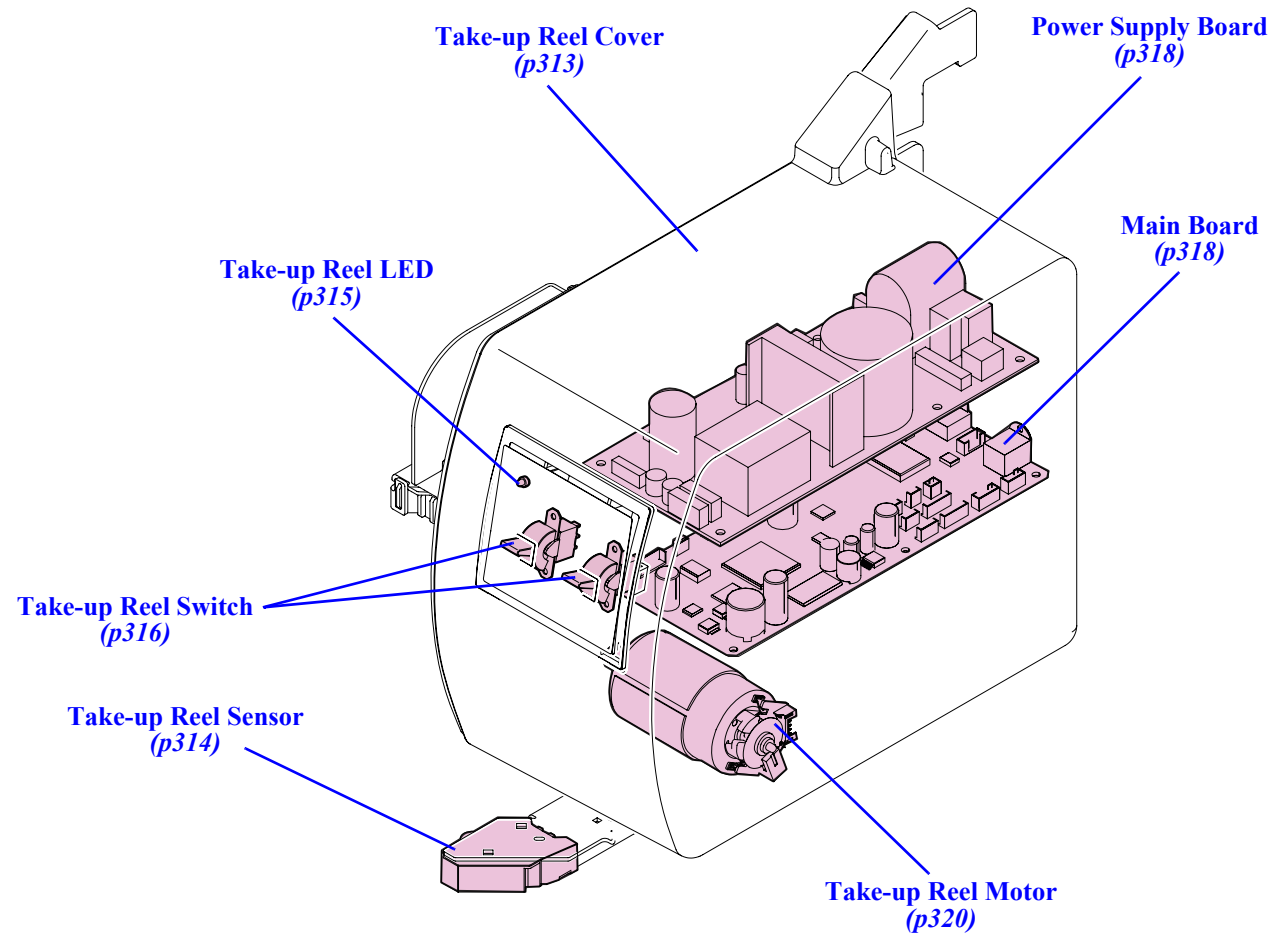


Figure 4-10. Auto Take-up Reel

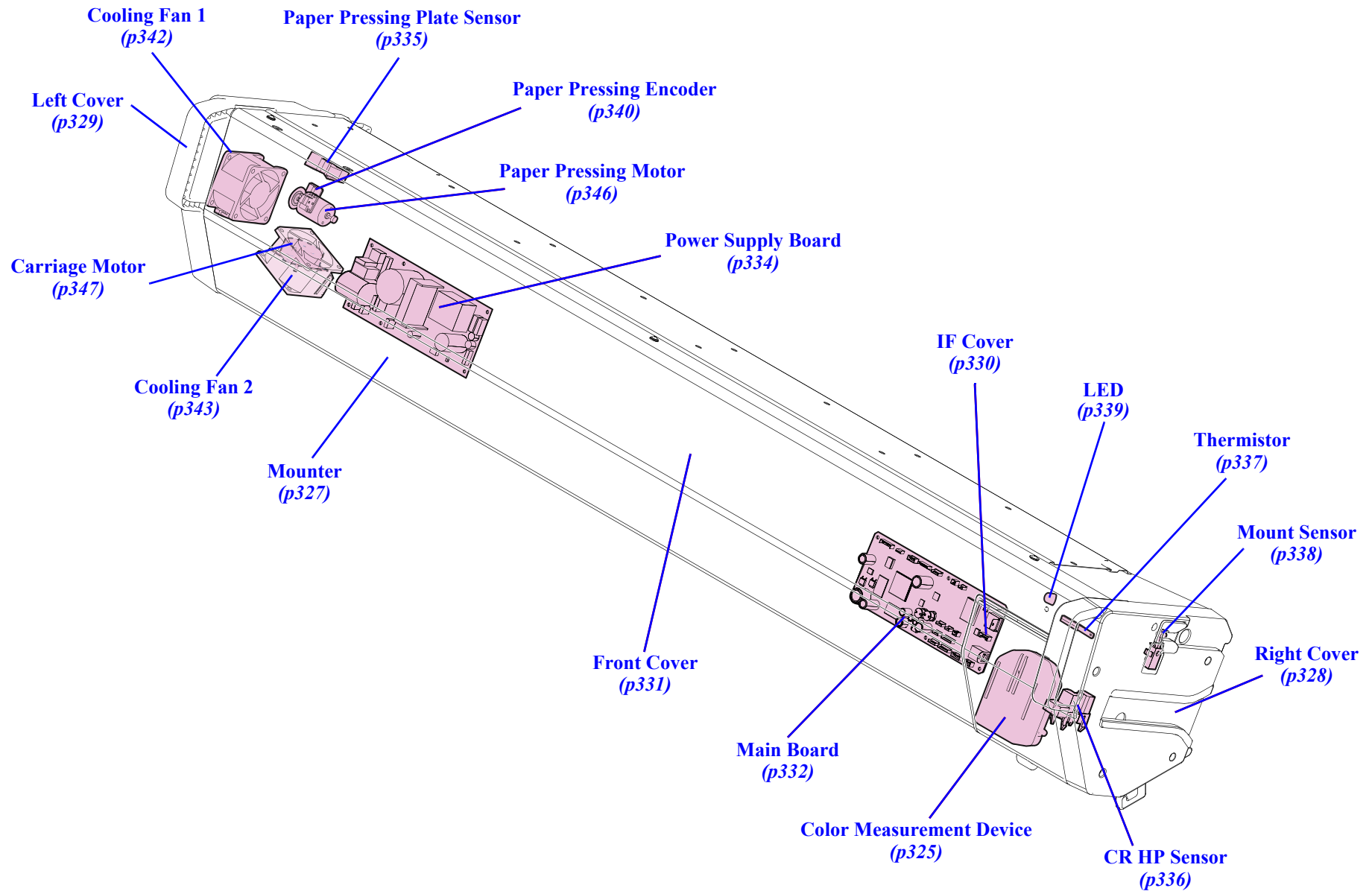
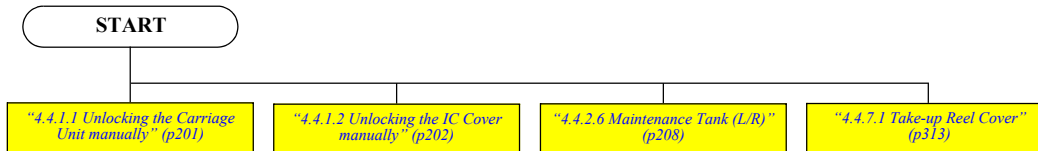


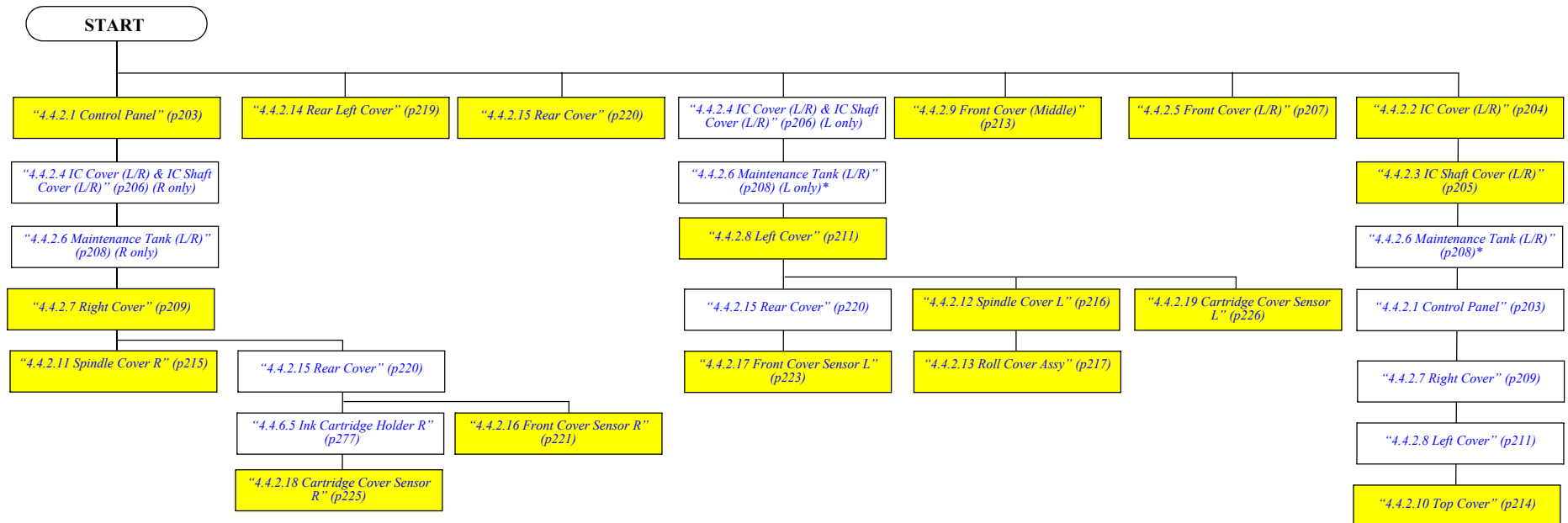
Figure 4-11. SpectroProofer

## 4.3 Disassembly Flowchart

### CONSUMABLES/ACCESSORIES

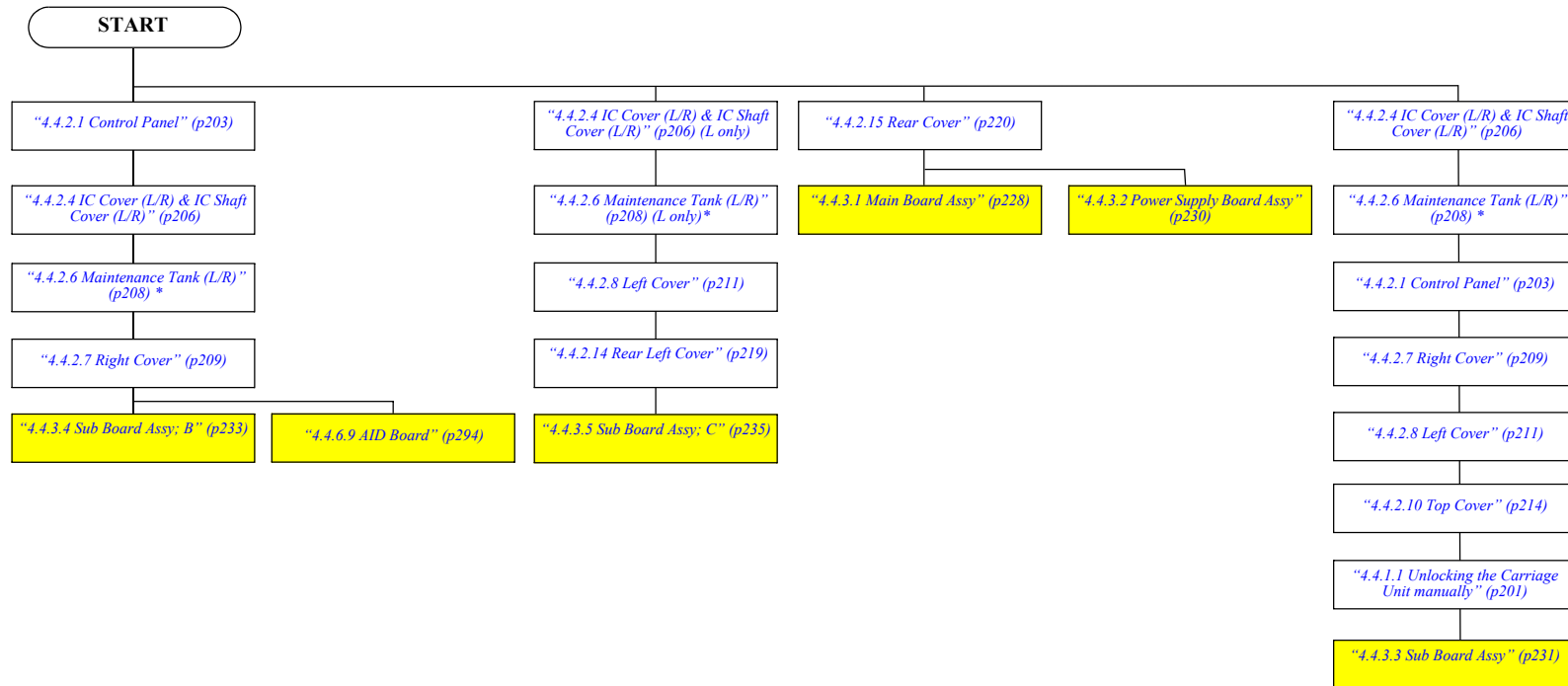


### HOUSING



NOTE \* : Maintenance Tank L is only for Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908.

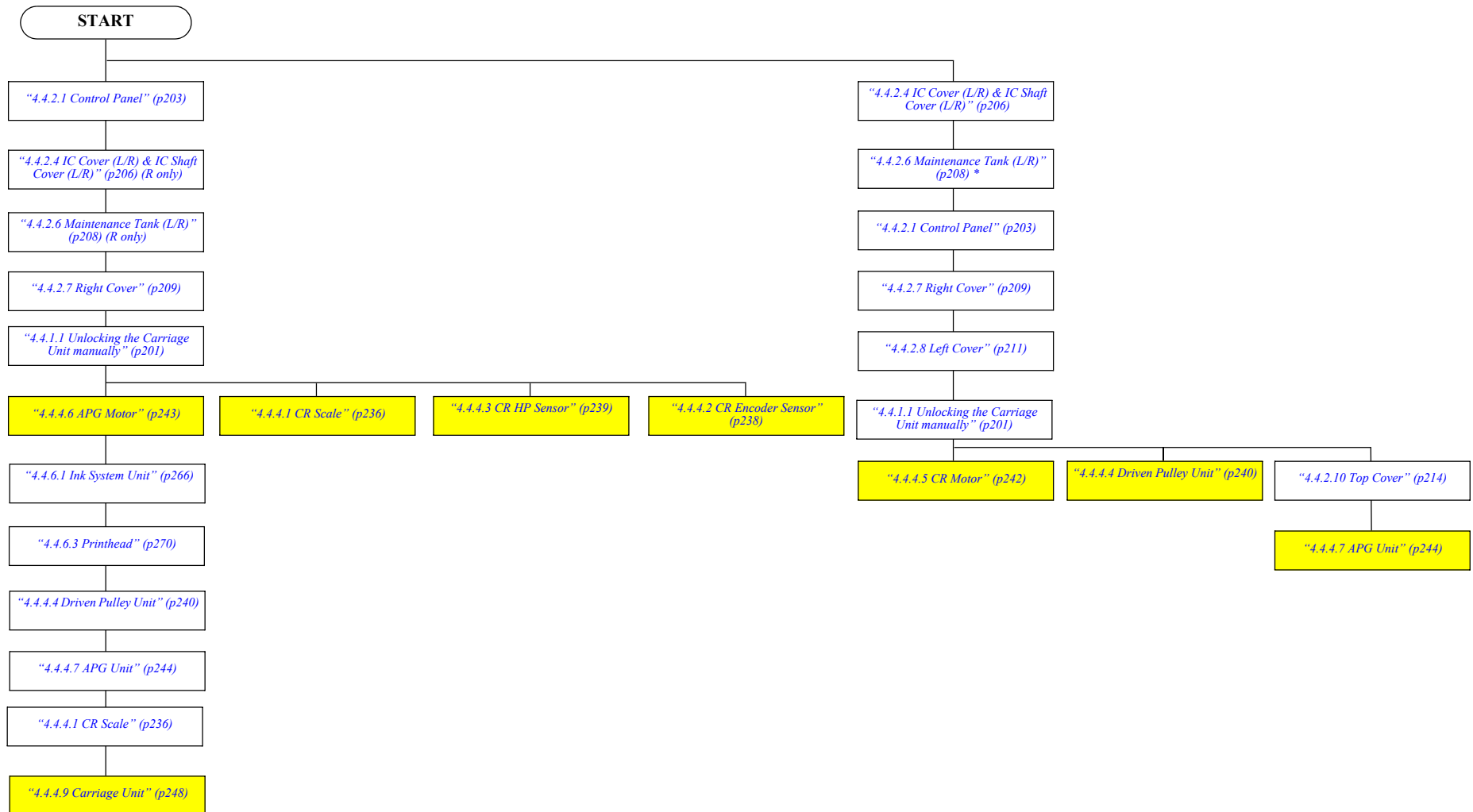
## ELECTRIC CIRCUIT COMPONENTS



NOTE \* : Maintenance Tank L is only for Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908.

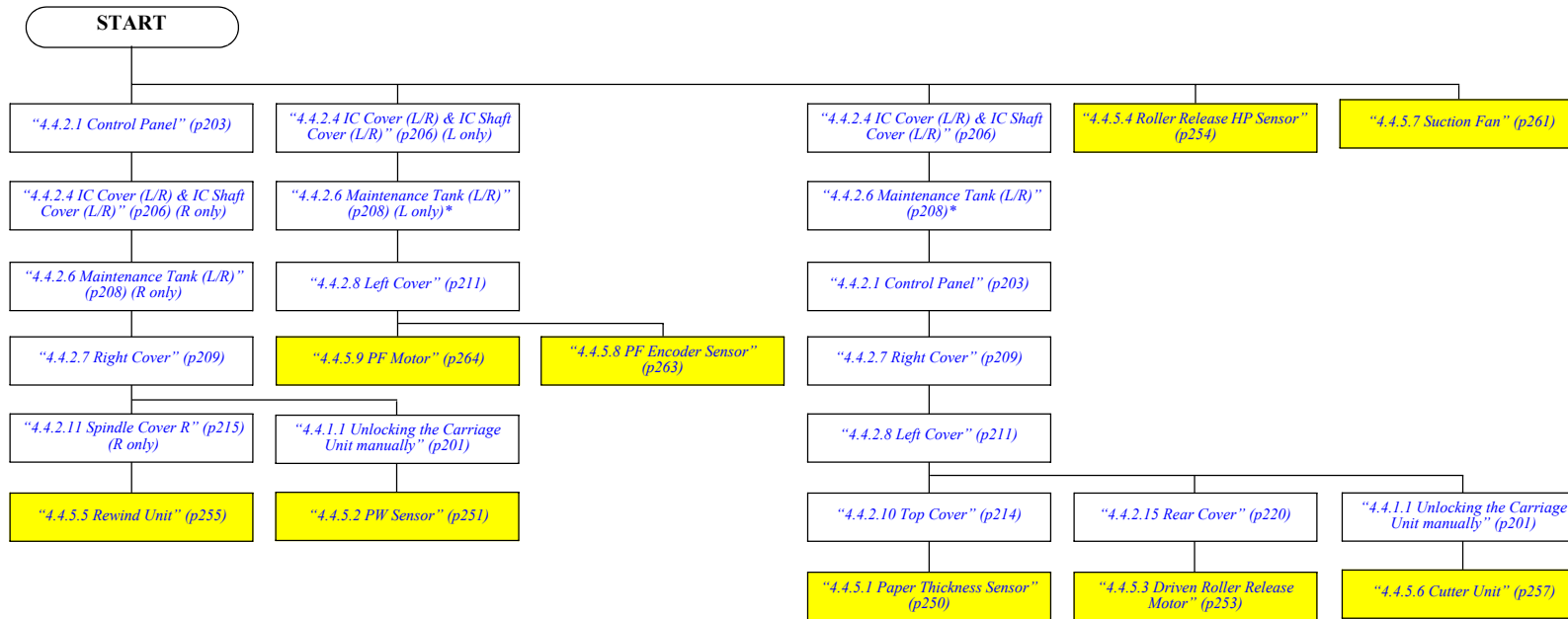


## CARRIAGE MECHANISM



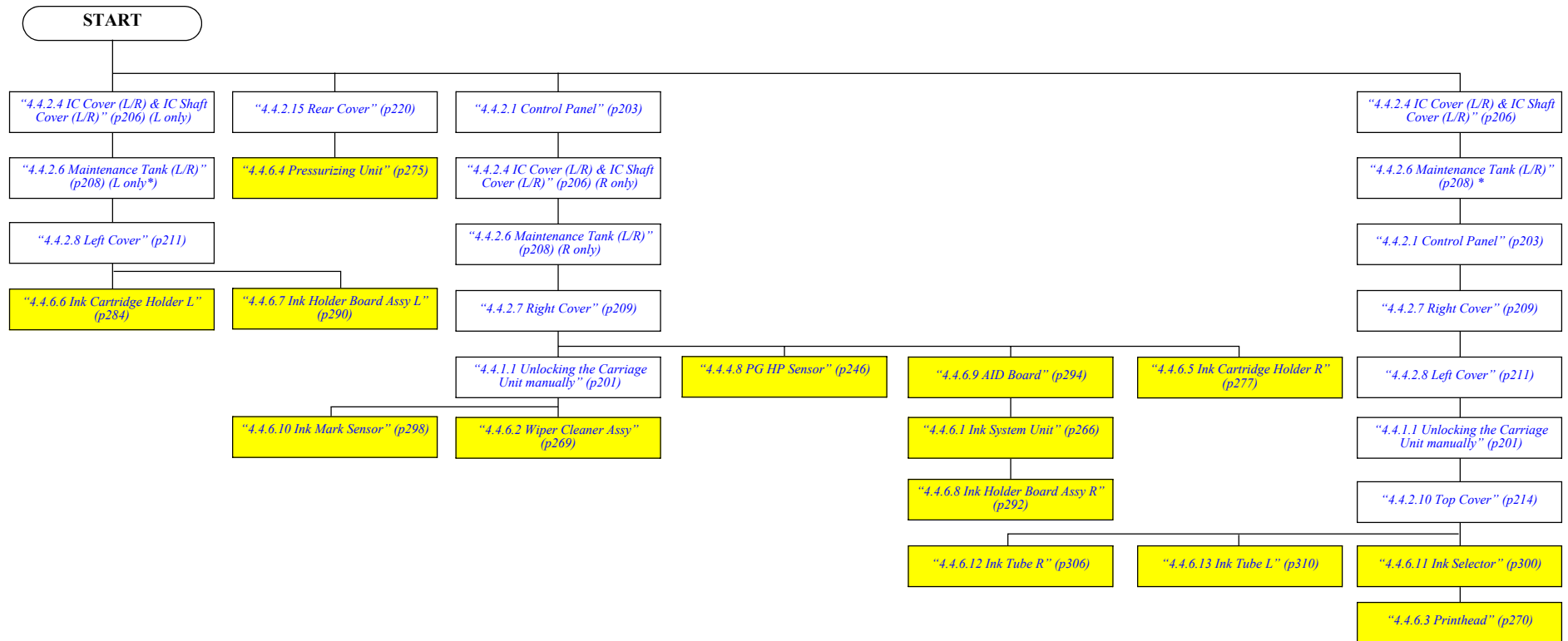
NOTE \* : Maintenance Tank L is only for Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908.

## PAPER FEED MECHANISM



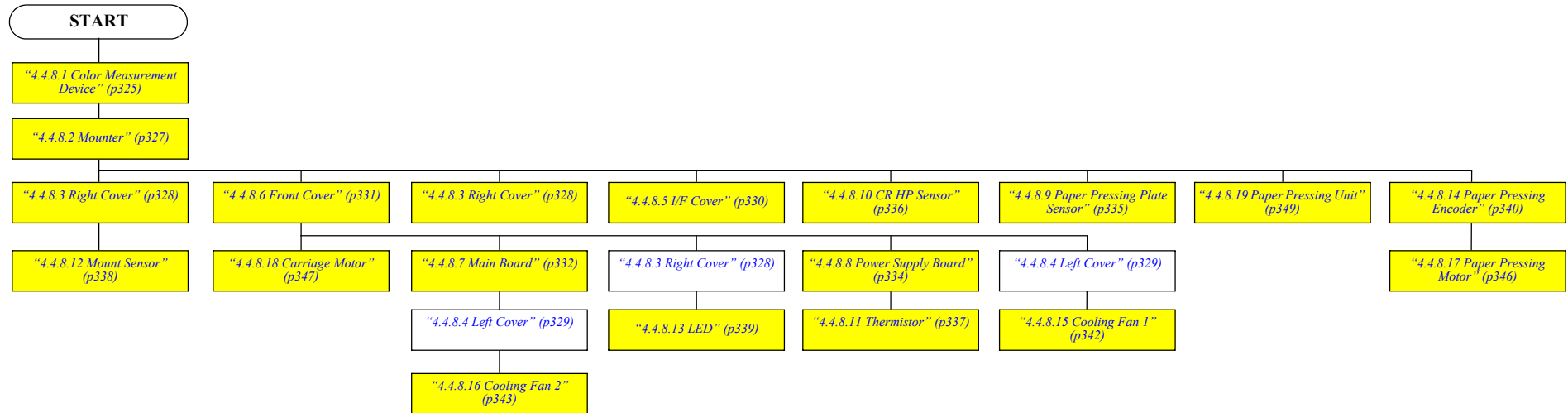
NOTE \* : Maintenance Tank L is only for Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908.

## INK SYSTEM MECHANISM

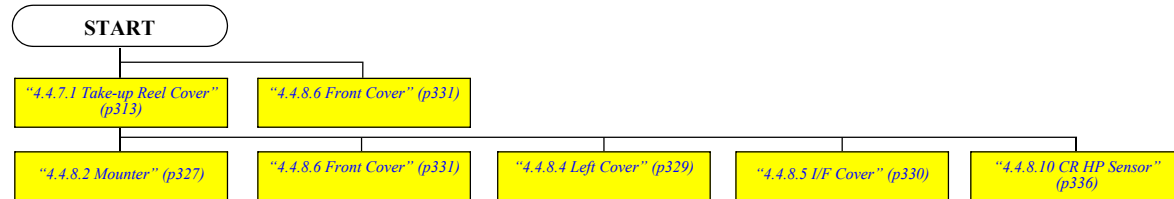


NOTE \* : Maintenance Tank L is only for Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908.

## SPECTROPROOFER



## AUTO TAKE-UP REEL



## 4.4 Disassembly and Assembly Procedure

This section describes procedures for disassembling the components allowed to be disassembled. Unless otherwise specified, disassembled units or components can be reassembled by reversing the disassembly procedure.

### 4.4.1 Special operation for servicing

#### 4.4.1.1 Unlocking the Carriage Unit manually

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Rotate the gear shown in the figure clockwise to unlock the Carriage Unit.

**CAUTION**

When unlocking the lock manually according to this procedure, turn on the printer to initialize it after reassembling. (In this initialization process, the Carriage Unit will be locked, and the Printhead will be capped.)

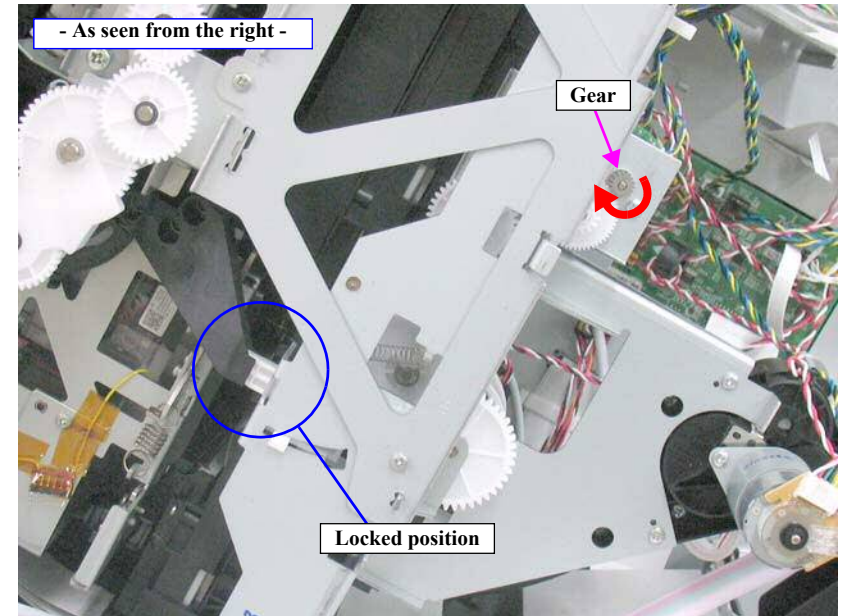


Figure 4-12. Unlocking the Carriage Unit

#### 4.4.1.2 Unlocking the IC Cover manually

CHECK  
POINT



In the case that the IC Cover cannot be opened by the Control Panel operation for some reasons, you can open the cover by the following procedure.

1. Insert a piece of wire or the like into the hole shown in the figure.
2. Unlock the cover with it to open the IC Cover.

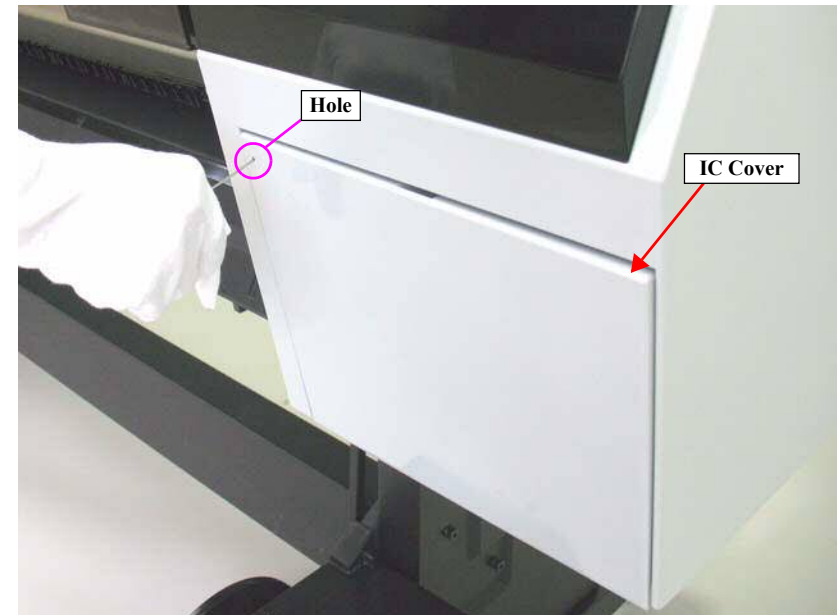


Figure 4-13. Unlocking the IC Cover manually

## 4.4.2 Housing

### 4.4.2.1 Control Panel

1. Insert a flathead screwdriver or a similar tool into the holes on both sides of the Control Panel to unlock the two hooks, and detach the Control Panel.
2. Disconnect the FFC from the connector on the Control Panel.

ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the Control Panel.

<Adjustment item>

1. Color LCD Display Check
2. Button Operation Check

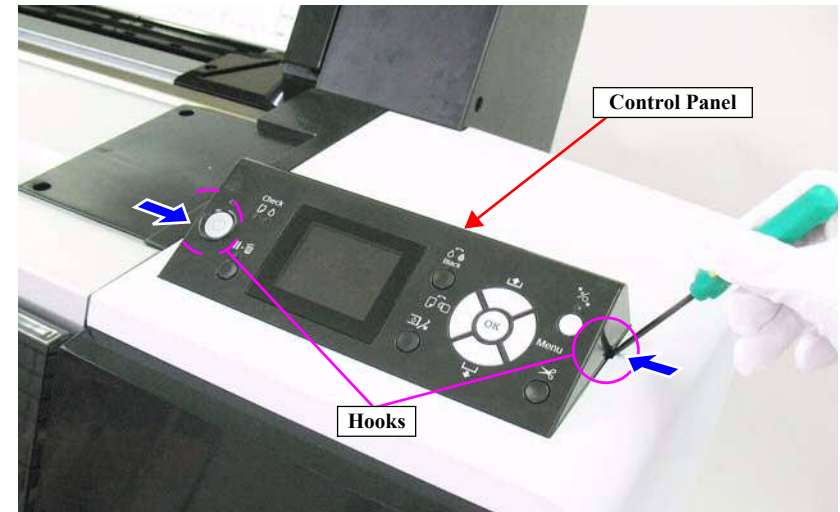


Figure 4-14. Removing the Control Panel

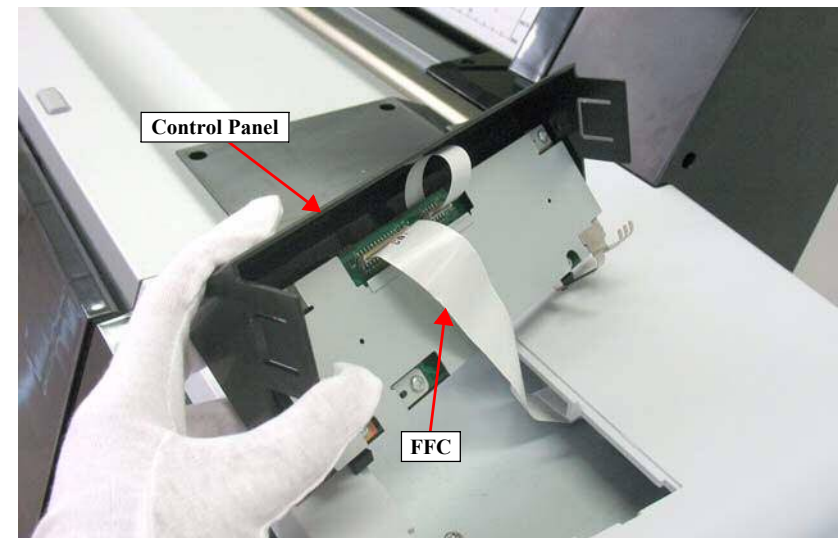


Figure 4-15. Disconnecting the FFC

#### 4.4.2.2 IC Cover (L/R)

**CHECK  
POINT**



Basically you can remove this part on the left and the one on the right in the same way. Therefore this section describes the way to remove the one on the right only.

1. Turn the printer ON.
2. Press the [Ink Cover Open] button on the Control Panel to open the IC Cover R.
3. Turn the printer OFF.

**CHECK  
POINT**



In the case that the IC Cover cannot be opened by the Control Panel operation for some reasons, follow the procedure of 4.4.1.2 Unlocking the IC Cover manually (p202) to open the IC Cover.

4. Pull the IC Cover downwards to disconnect the joints to remove the IC Cover R.

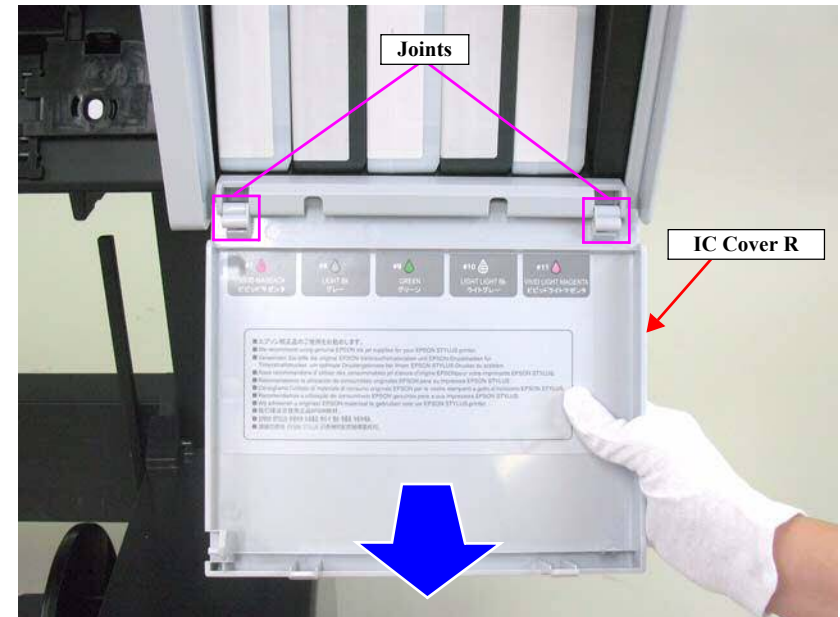


Figure 4-16. Removing the IC Cover (L/R)



#### 4.4.2.3 IC Shaft Cover (L/R)

**CHECK  
POINT**

Basically you can remove this part on the left and the one on the right in the same way. Therefore this section describes the way to remove the one on the right only.

1. Remove the IC Cover R. ([p204](#))
2. Remove the two screws that secure the IC Shaft Cover R.  
A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x8: two pieces
3. Remove the IC Shaft Cover R.

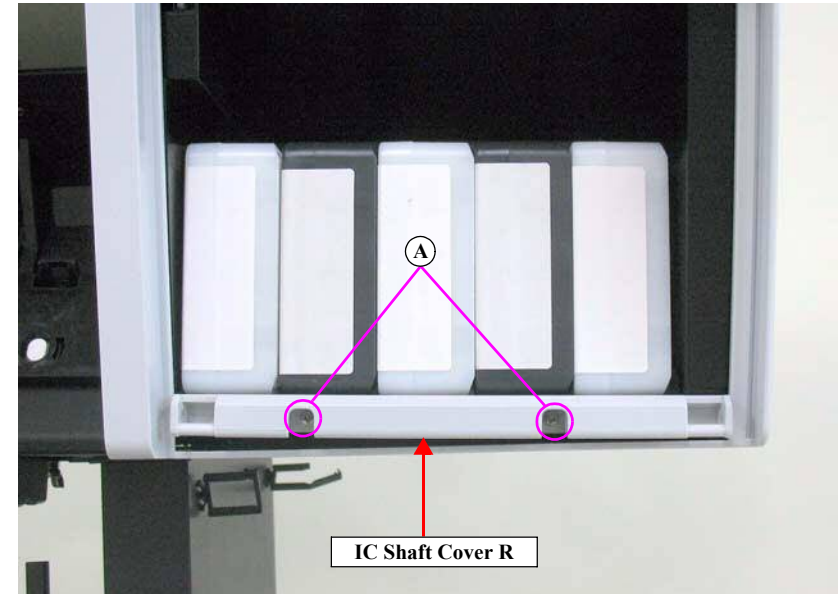


Figure 4-17. Removing the IC Shaft Cover (L/R)

#### 4.4.2.4 IC Cover (L/R) & IC Shaft Cover (L/R)

**CHECK  
POINT**

Basically you can remove this part on the left and the one on the right in the same way. Therefore this section describes the way to remove the one on the right only.

1. Turn the printer ON.
2. Press the [Ink Cover Open] button on the Control Panel to open the IC Cover R.
3. Turn the printer OFF.

**CHECK  
POINT**

In the case that the IC Cover cannot be opened by the Control Panel operation for some reasons, follow the procedure of 4.4.1.2 Unlocking the IC Cover manually ([p202](#)) to open the IC Cover.

4. Remove the two screws that secure the IC Shaft Cover R.  
A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x8: two pieces

**CHECK  
POINT**

When removing the screws, hold up the IC Cover to insert a driver.

5. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R.

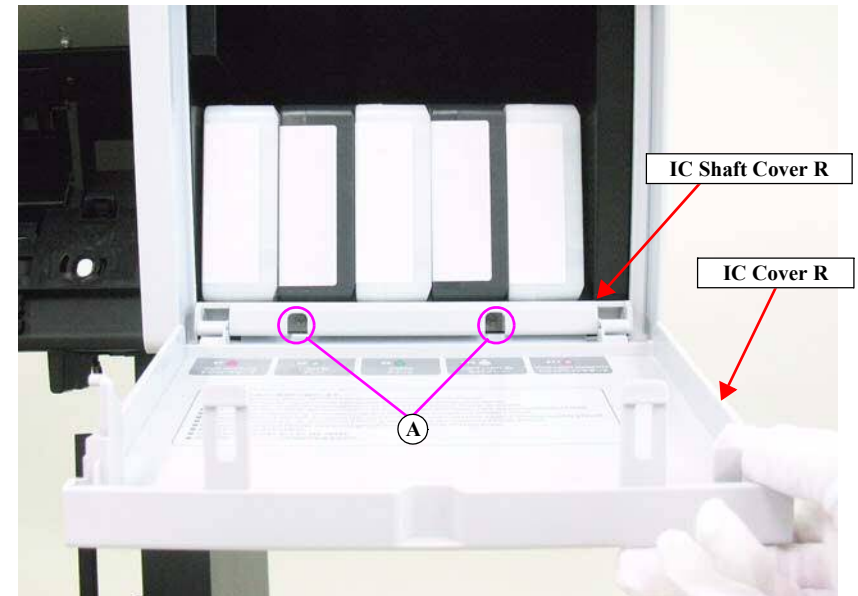


Figure 4-18. Removing the IC Cover (L/R) & IC Shaft Cover (L/R)

#### 4.4.2.5 Front Cover (L/R)

CHECK  
POINT



Basically you can remove this part on the left and the one on the right in the same way. Therefore this section describes the way to remove the one on the right only.

1. Push up the lower part of the Front Cover R to release the three hooks at the bottom.
2. Release the two hooks on the top, and remove the Front Cover R.

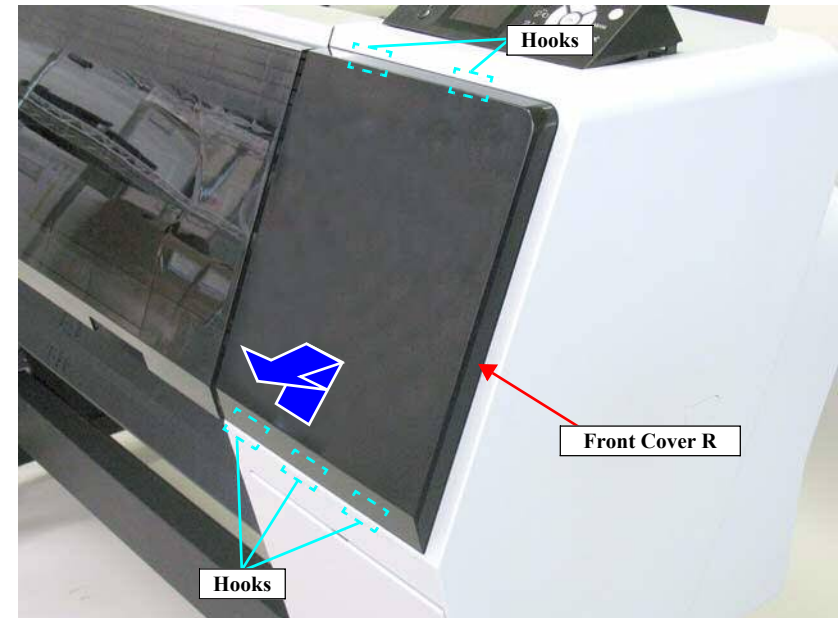


Figure 4-19. Removing the Front Cover (L/R)

#### 4.4.2.6 Maintenance Tank (L/R)

##### CHECK POINT



Basically you can remove this part on the left and the one on the right in the same way. Therefore this section describes the way to remove the one on the right only.

##### CAUTION



Make sure to use the Maintenance Tank with the type specified below.

- Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908:  
C12C890191 / C12C890193
- Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710:  
C12C890501 / C12C890502
- Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910:  
C12C890191 / C12C890193

1. Pull the handle of the Maintenance Tank R and remove the Maintenance Tank R.

*NOTE: Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908 does not have the Maintenance Tank L.*

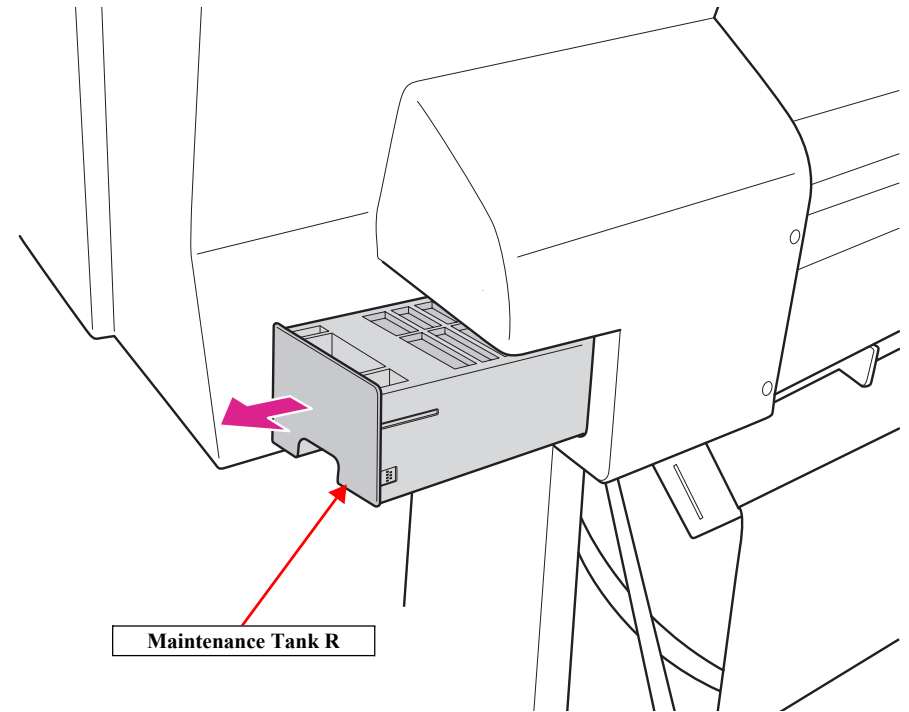


Figure 4-20. Removing the Maintenance Tank (L/R)

#### 4.4.2.7 Right Cover

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)



When you do not replace the Right Cover, skip the step 2.

2. Remove the Front Cover R. (p207)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the three screws that secure the Top Cover Support Base R, and remove the Top Cover Support Base R.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind machine screw M4x8: two pieces
  - B) Black, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M4x12: one piece

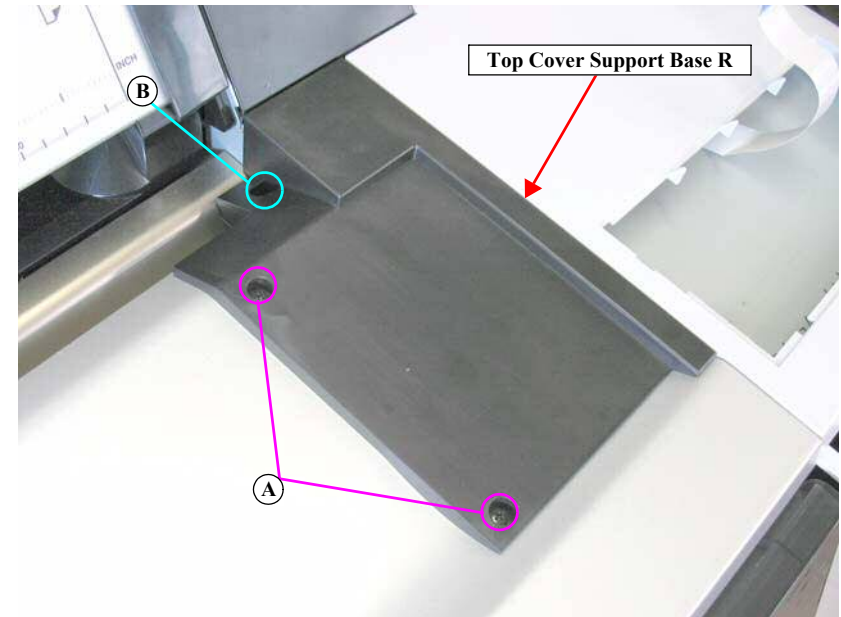


Figure 4-21. Removing the Top Cover Support Base R

5. Remove the nine screws that secure the Right Cover.

- C) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M4x8: five pieces
- D) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M4x8: two pieces
- E) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M4x12: two pieces

**NOTE:** Some of Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910 from a certain lot do not have the screw on the second from the top on the rear right. Therefore, in such a case, the screws to be removed here is eight pieces.



**When removing the Right Cover, make sure to hold the upper part so as not to catch (damage) the FFC shown in the figure.**

6. Remove the Right Cover.

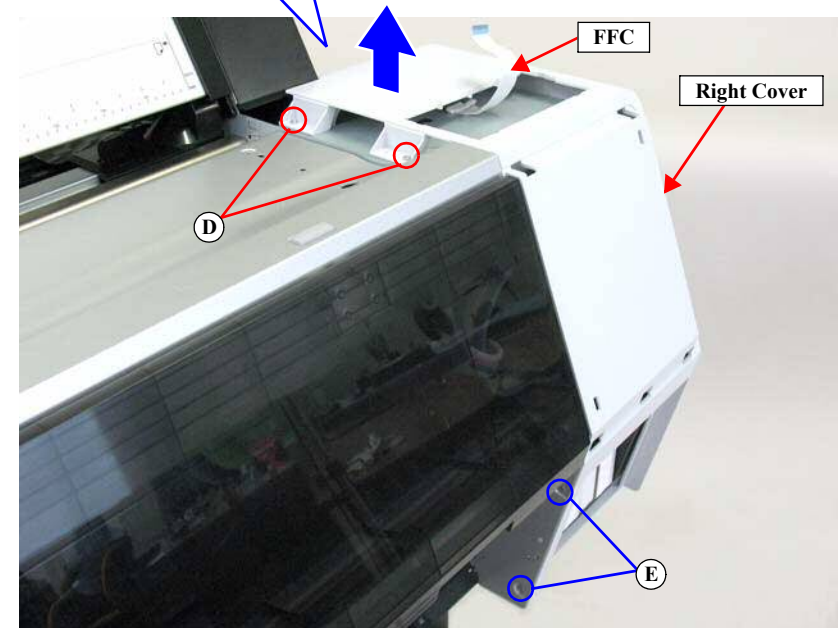
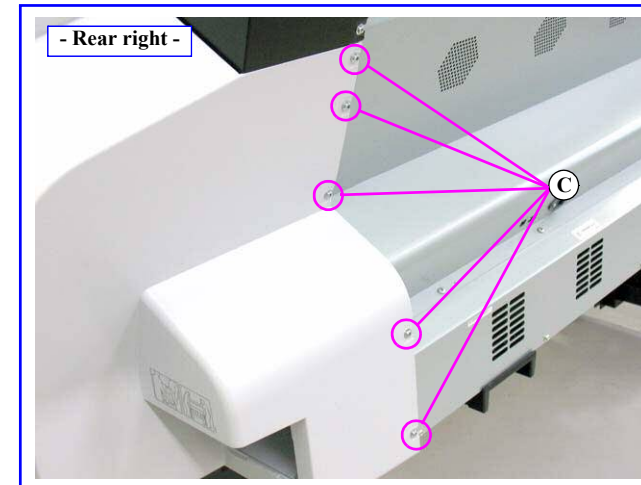


Figure 4-22. Removing the Right Cover

#### 4.4.2.8 Left Cover

**CHECK  
POINT**

When you do not replace the Left Cover, skip the step 1.

1. Remove the Front Cover L (p207)
2. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

3. Remove the two screws that secure the Top Cover Support Base L, and remove the Top Cover Support Base L.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M4x12: one piece
  - B) Black, Phillips, Bind machine screw M4x8: one piece

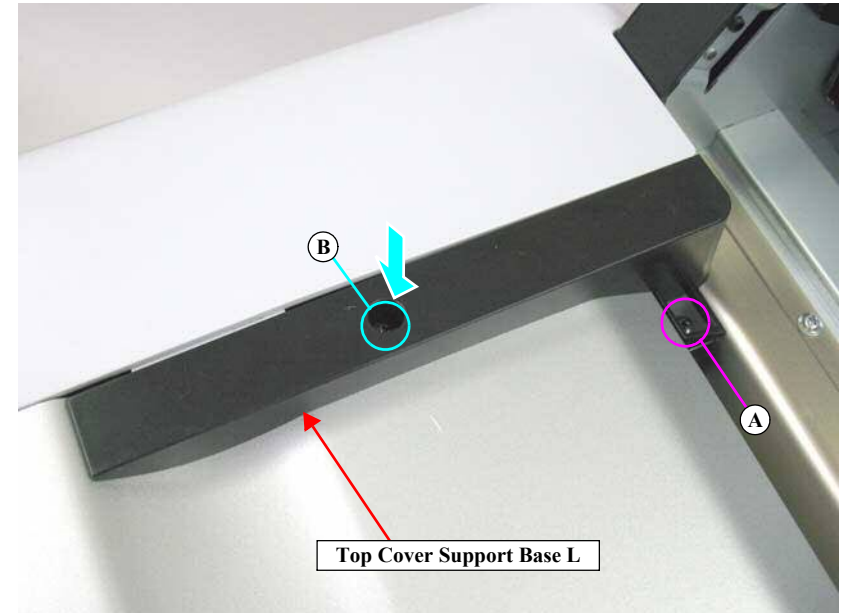


Figure 4-23. Removing the Top Cover Support Base L



4. Remove the ten screws that secure the Left Cover.
  - C) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M4x8: four pieces
  - D) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M4x12: two pieces
  - E) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M4x8: two pieces
  - F) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M4x12: two pieces
5. Remove the Left Cover.

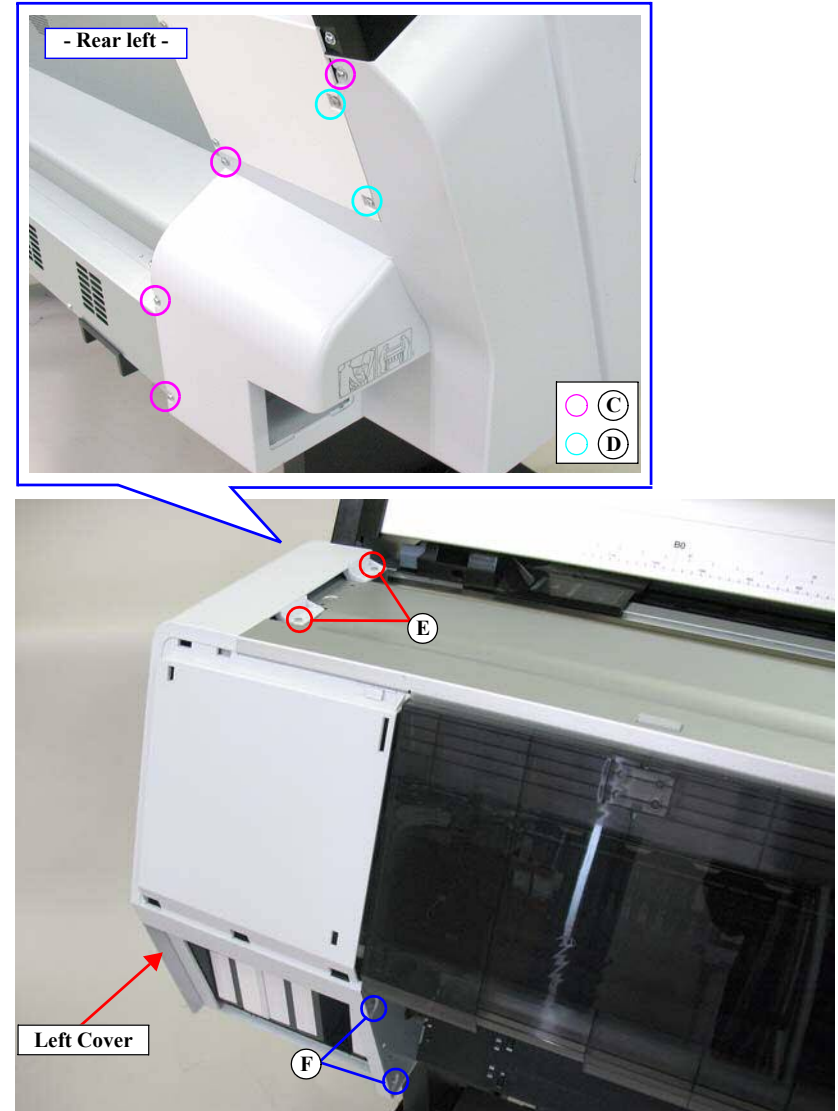


Figure 4-24. Removing the Left Cover



#### 4.4.2.9 Front Cover (Middle)

1. Open the Front Cover (Middle).

**CAUTION**


In the next step, the cover will drop immediately after removing the last screw. Therefore, make sure to hold the cover when removing the last few screws.

2. Remove the 12 screws that secure the Front Cover (Middle), and remove the Front Cover (Middle).

A) Black, Phillips, Bind P-tite M4x10: 12 pieces

**CAUTION**


When replacing the Front Cover with a new one, check if washers are installed to the screw holes (x4) as shown below. If installed, transfer them to the new Front Cover.  
(Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910 only.)

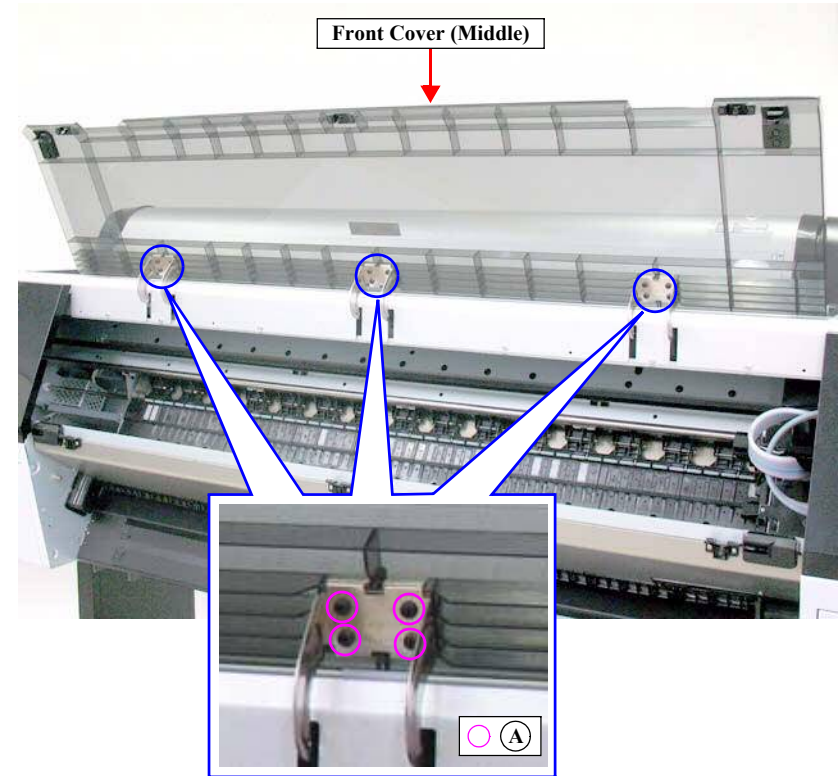
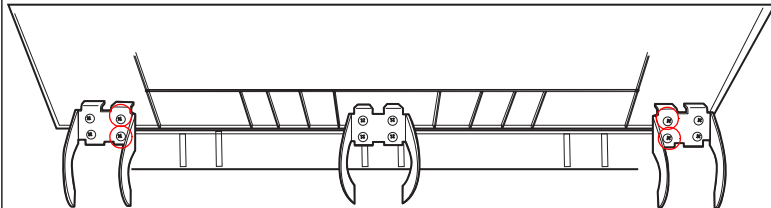


Figure 4-25. Removing the Front Cover (Middle)

#### 4.4.2.10 Top Cover

1. Remove the IC Cover (L/R). (p206)
2. Remove the Maintenance Tank (L/R). (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

3. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the Left Cover. (p211)
6. Open the Front Cover (Middle).
7. Remove the eight screws that secure the Top Cover.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M4x10: eight pieces
8. Close the Front Cover (Middle), and remove the Top Cover.

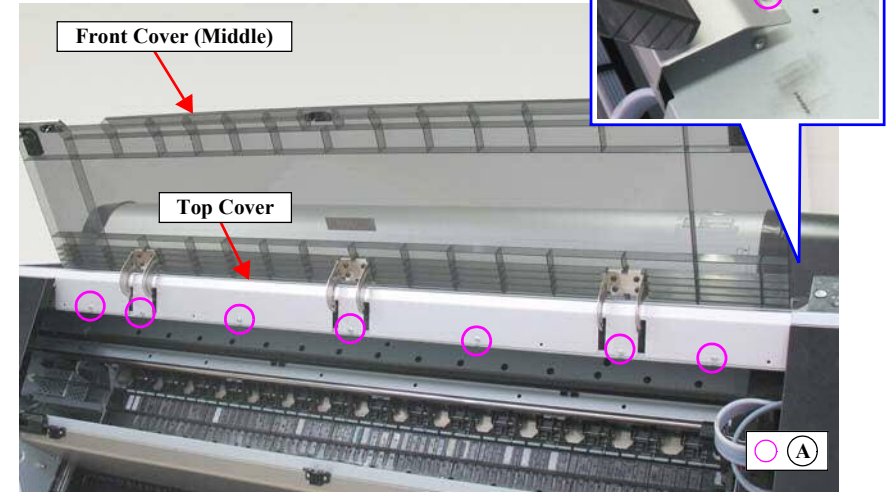


Figure 4-26. Removing the Top Cover (1)

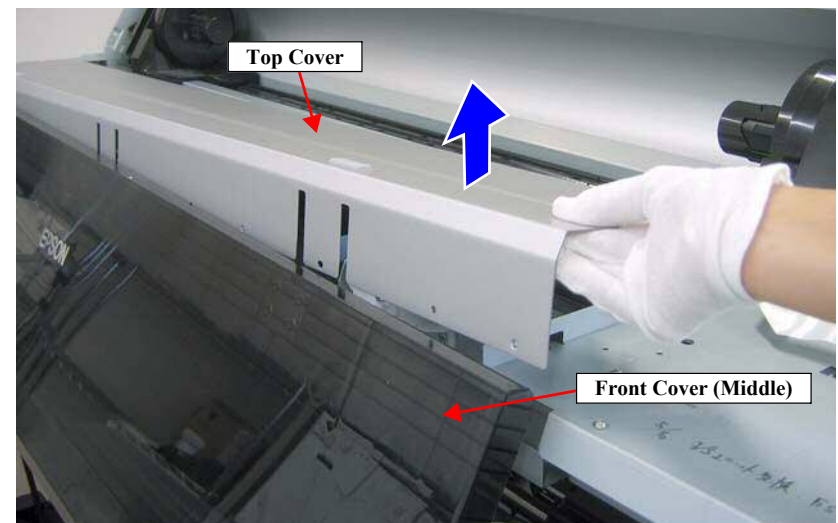


Figure 4-27. Removing the Top Cover (2)

#### 4.4.2.11 Spindle Cover R

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Open the Roll Cover Assy until the screw that secures the Spindle Cover R can be seen.
6. Remove the three screws that secure the Spindle Cover R.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M4x12: two pieces
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M4x12: one piece
7. Remove the Spindle Cover R.

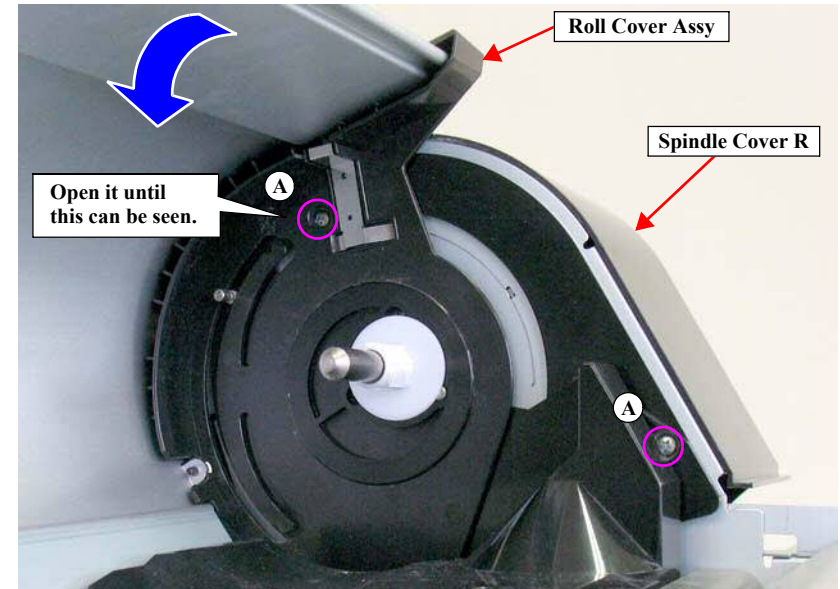


Figure 4-28. Removing the screws (inside)

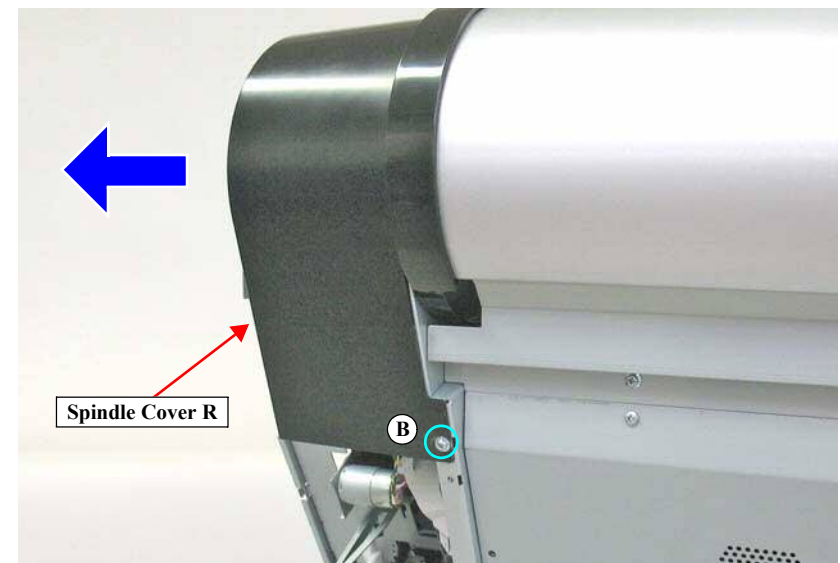


Figure 4-29. Removing the Spindle Cover R

#### 4.4.2.12 Spindle Cover L

1. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
2. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

3. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
4. Remove the three screws that secure the Spindle Cover L.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind machine screw M4x8: two pieces
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M4x8: one piece
5. Remove the Spindle Cover L.

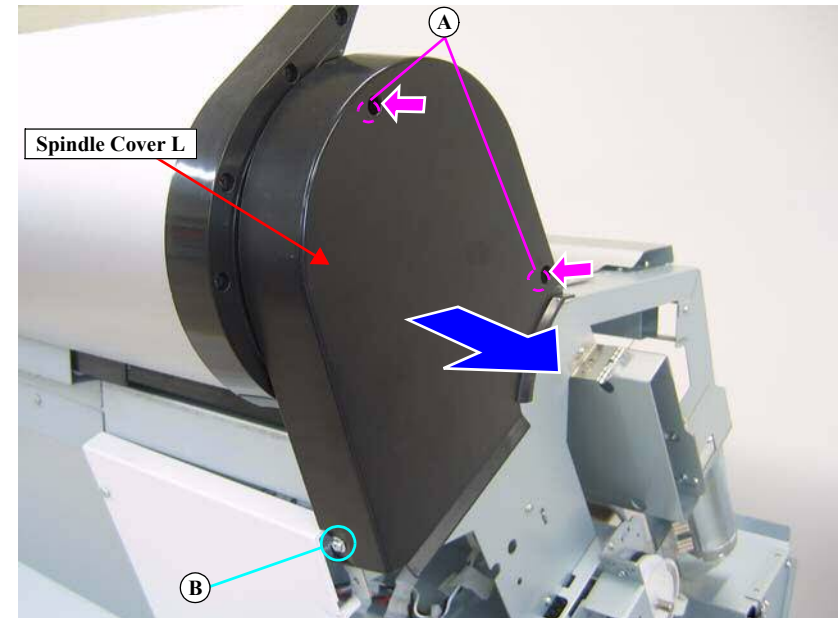


Figure 4-30. Removing the Spindle Cover L

#### 4.4.2.13 Roll Cover Assy

1. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
2. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

3. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
4. Remove the Spindle Cover R. (p215)
5. Remove the four screws that secure the Mounting Plate.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x8: three pieces
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x8: one piece
6. Pull out the guide pin, and remove the brake and the Dumper Cover Holder.
7. Remove the Mounting Plate.
8. Remove the wave washer and the spacer.

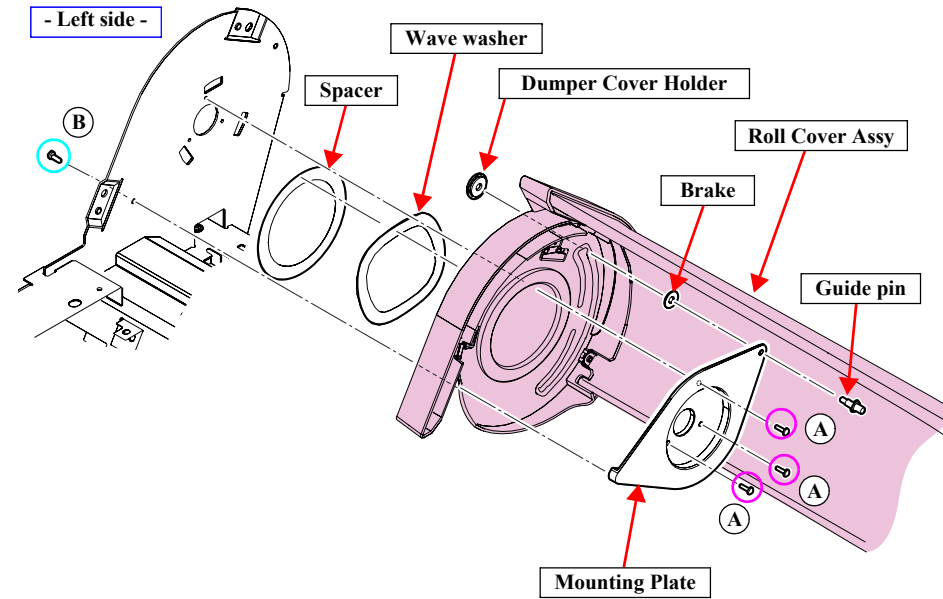


Figure 4-31. Removing the Roll Cover Assy (Left side)

9. Remove the retaining ring and remove the Roll Paper Guide.
10. Pull out the pin from the shaft.
11. Remove the three screws that secure the Mounting.
  - C) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: one piece
  - D) Black, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x8: two pieces
12. Remove the Mounting.
13. Pull out the guide pin.
14. Remove the Roll Cover Assy by moving it to the left.



When replacing or maintaining the Roll Cover Assy, carry out the specified lubrication if necessary. (See Chapter 6 "MAINTENANCE" (Page 444).)

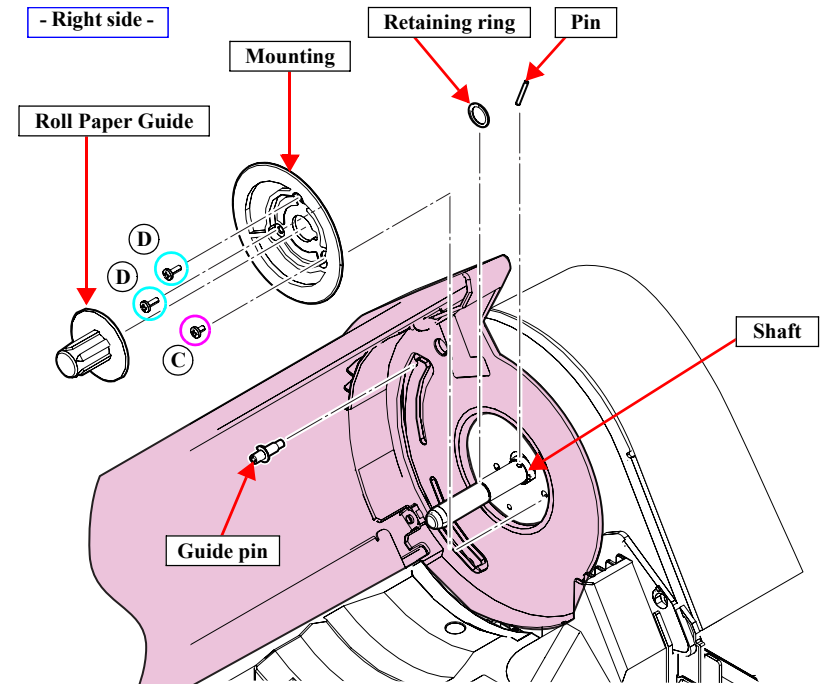


Figure 4-32. Removing the Roll Cover Assy (Right side)

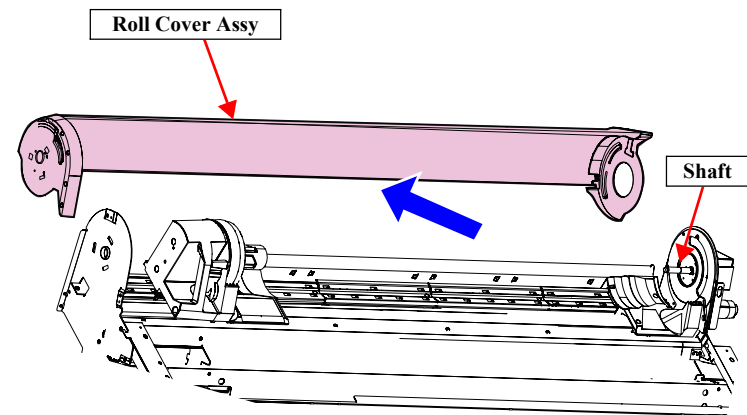


Figure 4-33. Removing the Roll Cover Assy



#### 4.4.2.14 Rear Left Cover

1. Remove the four screws that secure the Rear Left Cover.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M4x12: two pieces
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M4x8: two pieces
2. Remove the Rear Left Cover.

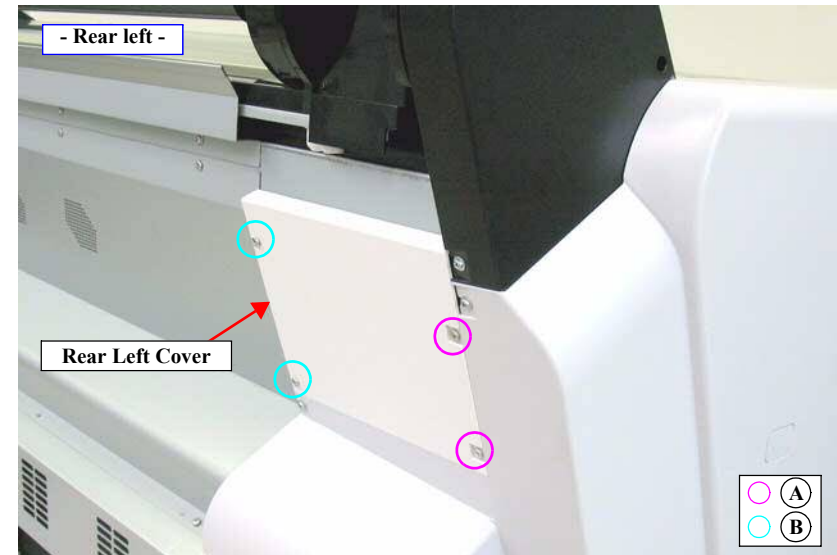


Figure 4-34. Removing the Rear Left Cover

#### 4.4.2.15 Rear Cover

1. Remove the two screws (one each) securing the AC Inlet and the USB I/F.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: two pieces
2. Remove the 12 screws that secure the Rear Cover.
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M4x6: 12 pieces
3. Remove the Rear Cover.

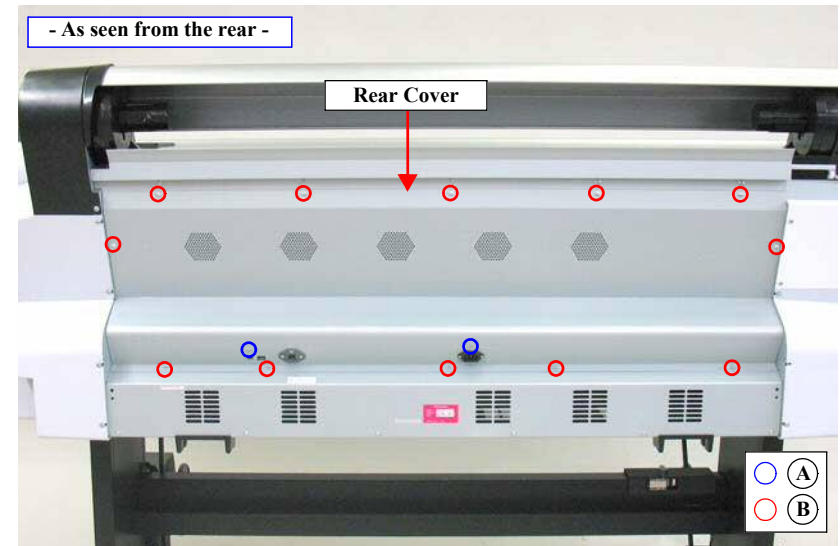


Figure 4-35. Removing the Rear Cover



#### 4.4.2.16 Front Cover Sensor R

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the Rear Cover. (p220)
6. Remove the Mid-Front Cover. (p257)
7. Remove the Front Cover (Lower). (p261)
8. Disconnect the connector (CN21) on the Main Board Assy.
9. Release the cable from the cable tie, clamp and the saddle. *See Figure 4-36.*
10. Pull out the harness from the hole on the Main Frame. *See Figure 4-37.*
11. Release the cable from the two clamps. *See Figure 4-37.*

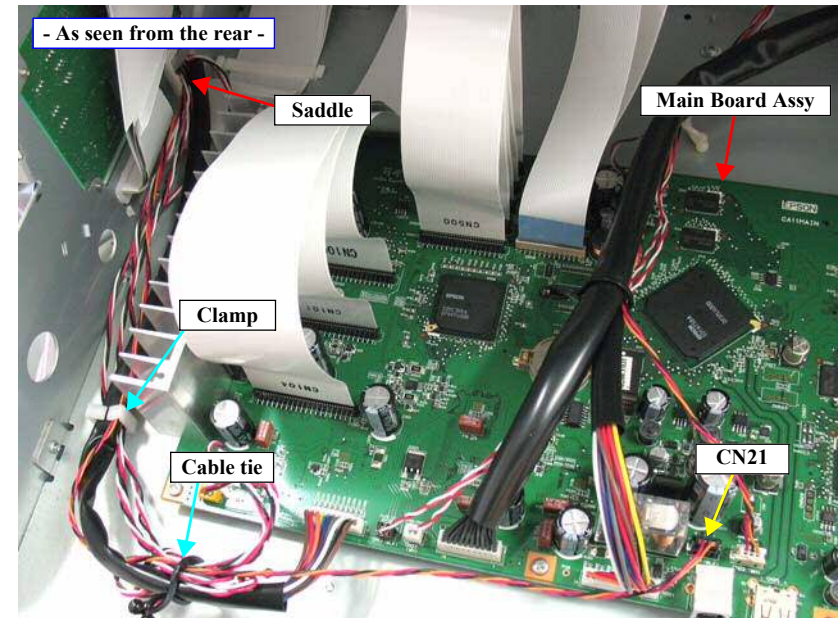


Figure 4-36. Releasing the harnesses (rear)

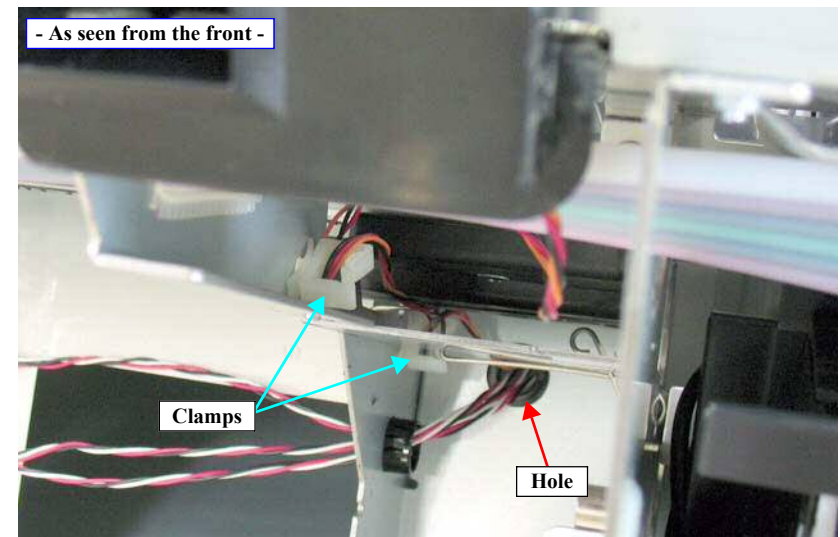


Figure 4-37. Releasing the harnesses (front)

12. Remove the two screws that secure the Front Cover Sensor R.

A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: two pieces

13. Remove the Front Cover Sensor R.

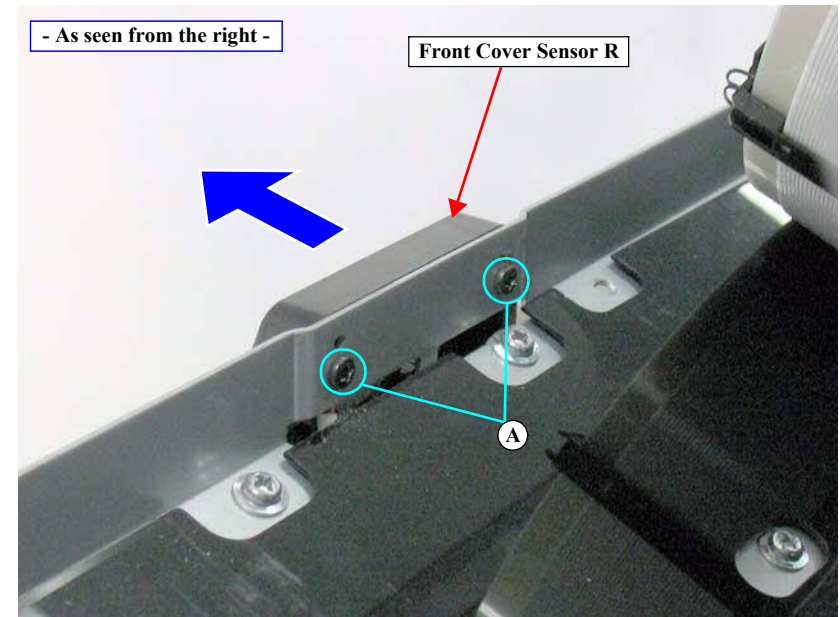


Figure 4-38. Removing the Front Cover Sensor R

#### 4.4.2.17 Front Cover Sensor L

1. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
2. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

3. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
4. Remove the Rear Cover. (p220)
5. Remove the Ink Tube Guide.  
(Step 8 in “4.4.5.6 Cutter Unit” (P. 257))

*NOTE: Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910 only*

6. Disconnect the two connectors (CN001, CN301) on the Power Supply Board Assy.
7. Remove the two screws that secure the PS Board Mounting Plate, and remove the PS Board Mounting Plate.  
A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: two pieces
8. Disconnect the connector (CN22) on the Main Board.
9. Release the cables from the seven clamps and the saddle. *See Figure 4-40.*

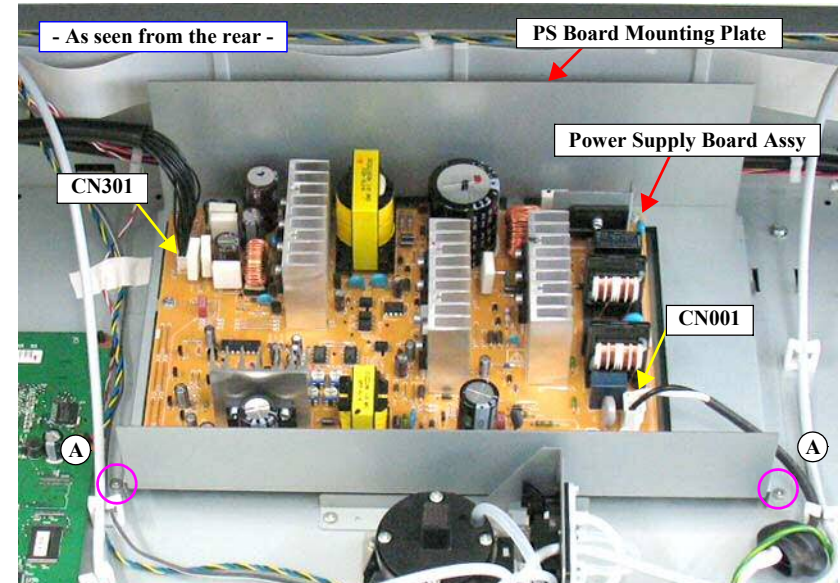


Figure 4-39. Removing the PS Board Mounting Plate

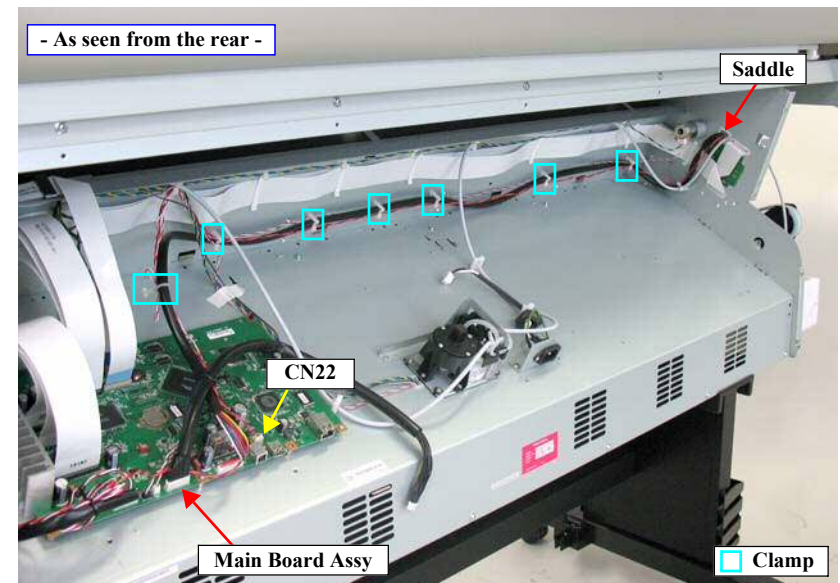


Figure 4-40. Releasing the harnesses



10. Release the cables from the clamp. *See Figure 4-41.*
11. Remove the two screws that secure the Front Cover Sensor L.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x10: two pieces
12. Remove the Front Cover Sensor L while drawing out the harness from the hole on the Main Frame.

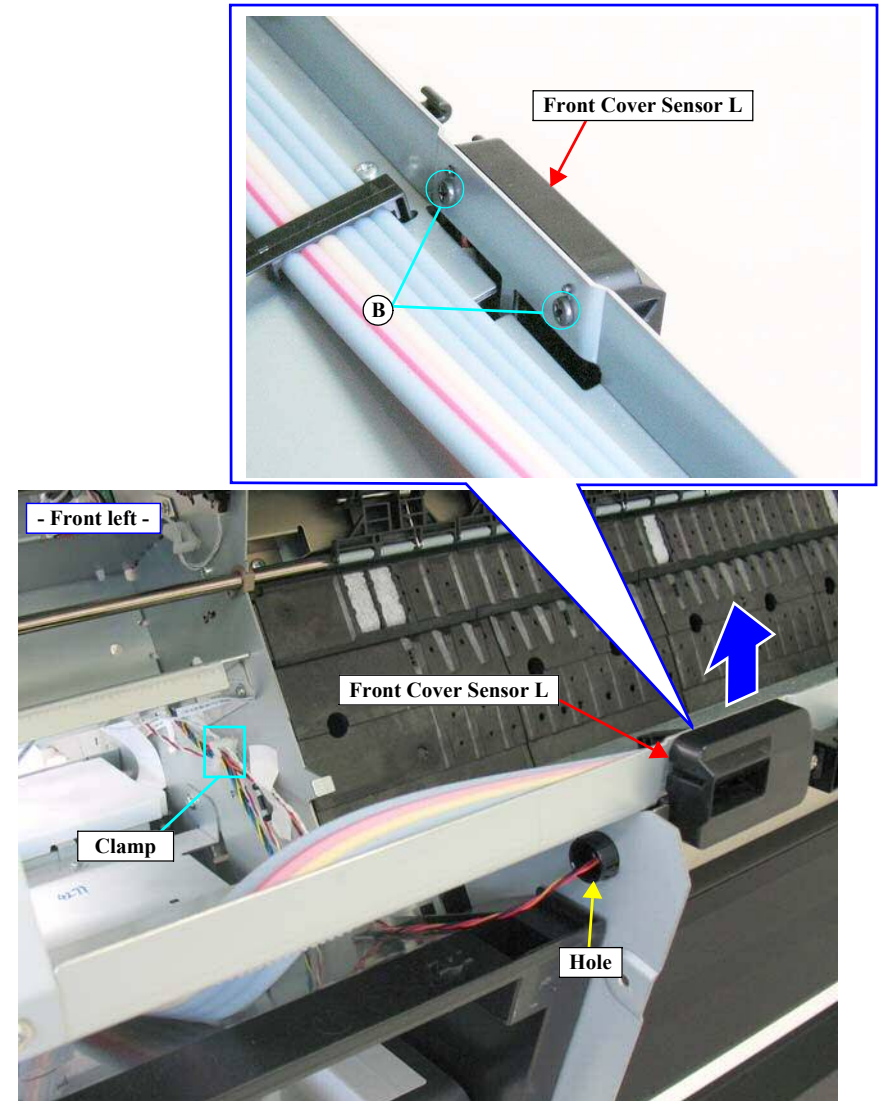


Figure 4-41. Removing the Front Cover Sensor L

#### 4.4.2.18 Cartridge Cover Sensor R

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the Rear Cover. (p220)
6. Remove the Ink Cartridge Holder R. (p277)
7. Disengage the two hooks that secure the cover of the Ink Holder Board Assy R, and remove the cover.
8. Disconnect the two connectors (CN408, CN409) on the Ink Holder Board Assy R.
9. Release the harness from the two hooks. See Figure 4-43.
10. Remove the two screws that secure the Cartridge Cover Sensor R, and remove the Cartridge Cover Sensor R.

A) Black, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x10: two pieces

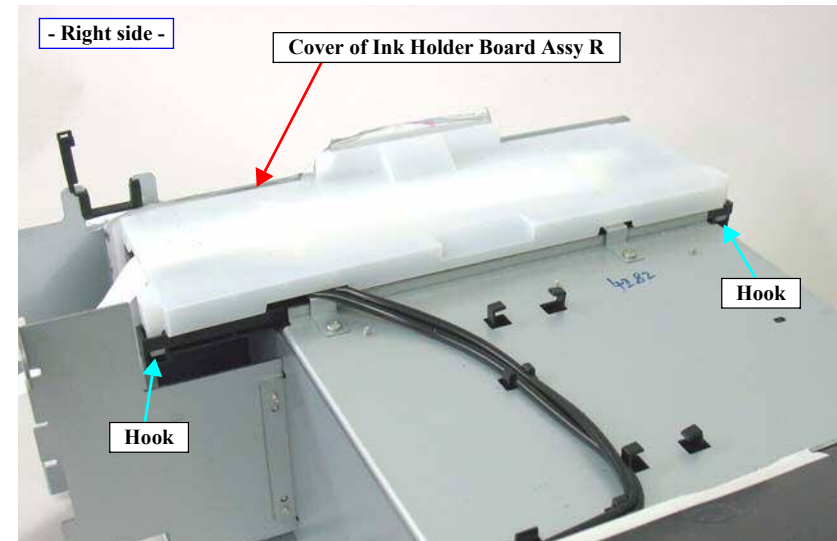


Figure 4-42. Removing the cover of the Ink Holder Board Assy R

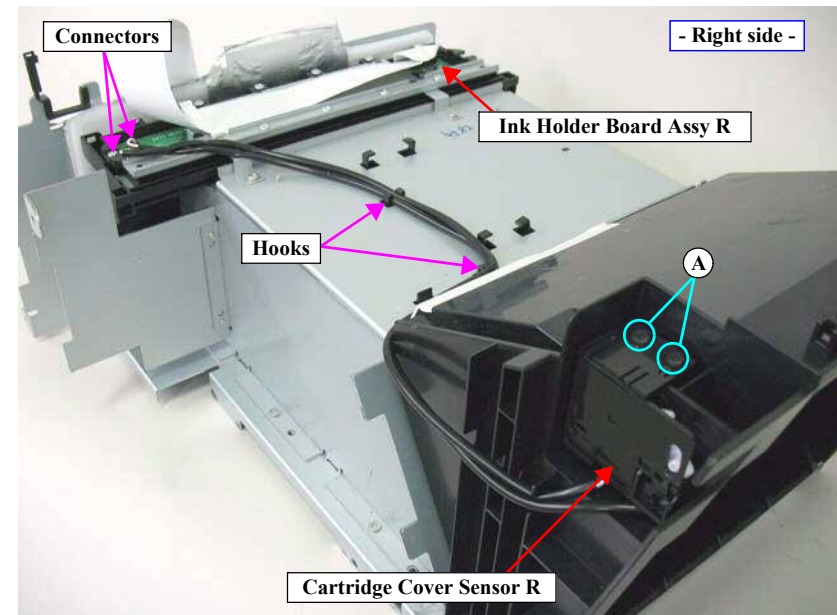


Figure 4-43. Removing the Cartridge Cover Sensor R

#### 4.4.2.19 Cartridge Cover Sensor L

1. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
2. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

**NOTE:** There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.

3. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
4. Pull off the Pressure Tube.
5. Release the Pressure Tube from the guide on the cover of the Ink Holder Board Assy L.
6. Disengage the two hooks that secure the cover of the Ink Holder Board Assy L, and remove the cover.
7. Remove the six screws that secure the plate, and remove the plate.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M4x6: four pieces
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M3x6: two pieces



Secure the terminal of the grounding wire and the plate with the same screw shown in the figure.

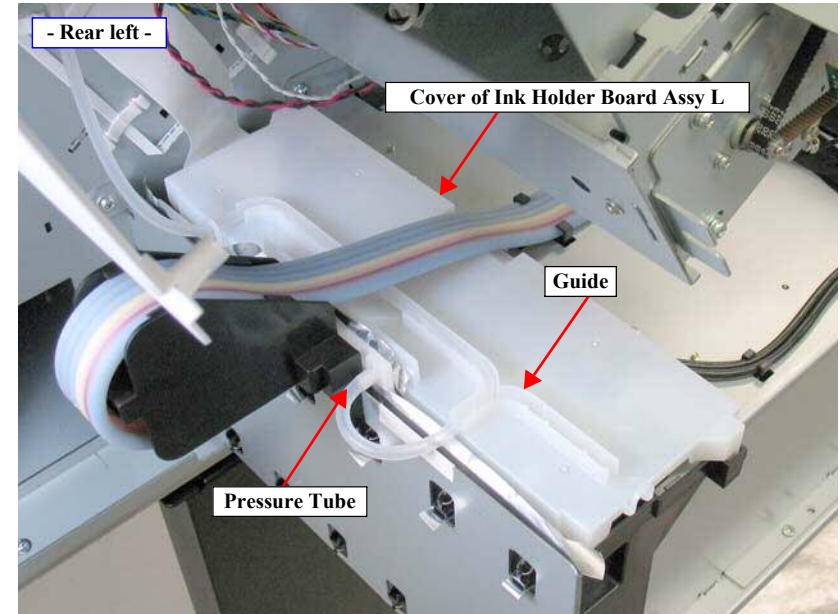


Figure 4-44. Releasing the Pressure Tube

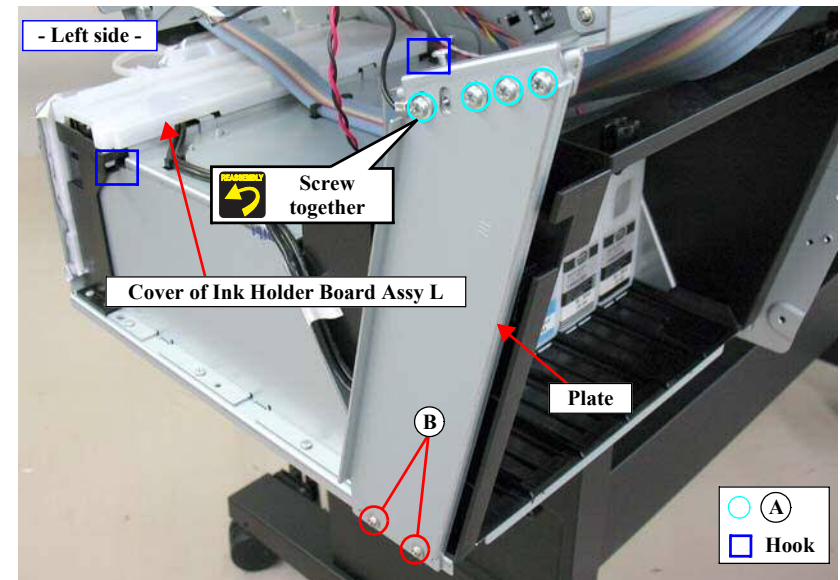


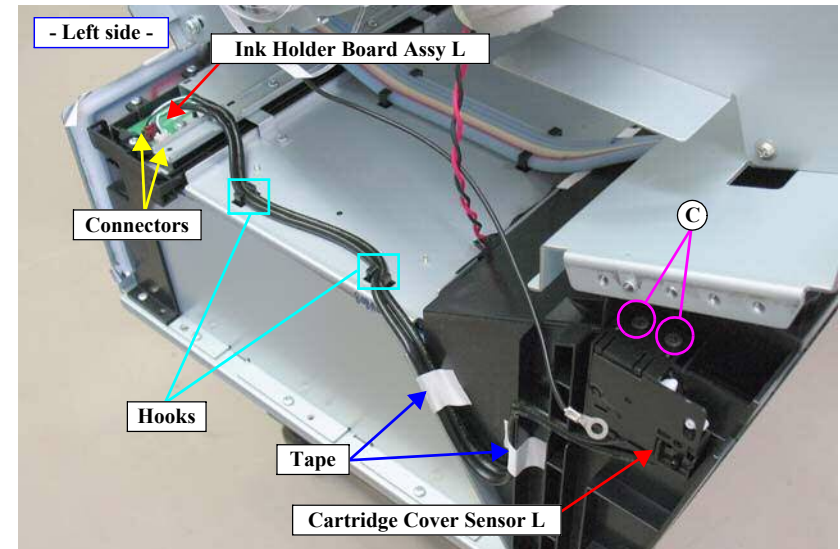
Figure 4-45. Removing the Cartridge Cover Sensor L

8. Disconnect the two connectors (CN408, CN409) on the Ink Holder Board Assy L.
9. Release the harness from the two hooks and the tape. *See Figure 4-46.*

**CHECK  
POINT**

**When removing the screws in the next step, use a stubby driver or a ratchet screw driver.**

10. Remove the two screws, and remove the Cartridge Cover Sensor L.
  - C) Black, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x10: two pieces



**Figure 4-46. Removing the Cartridge Cover Sensor L**



## 4.4.3 Electric Circuit Components

### 4.4.3.1 Main Board Assy

CHECK  
POINT



Before starting operation, refer to “4.1.4 Cautions when replacing the Main Board Assy/Power Supply Board Assy” (Page 171).

1. Remove the Rear Cover. (p220)
2. Disconnect the all cables and FFCs from the Main Board Assy. See Figure 4-47.

CAUTION



Be extremely careful not to insert FFCs at an angle in connectors. Doing so may cause serious damage to the terminals inside the connectors, and it can lead to big trouble of the circuit components.

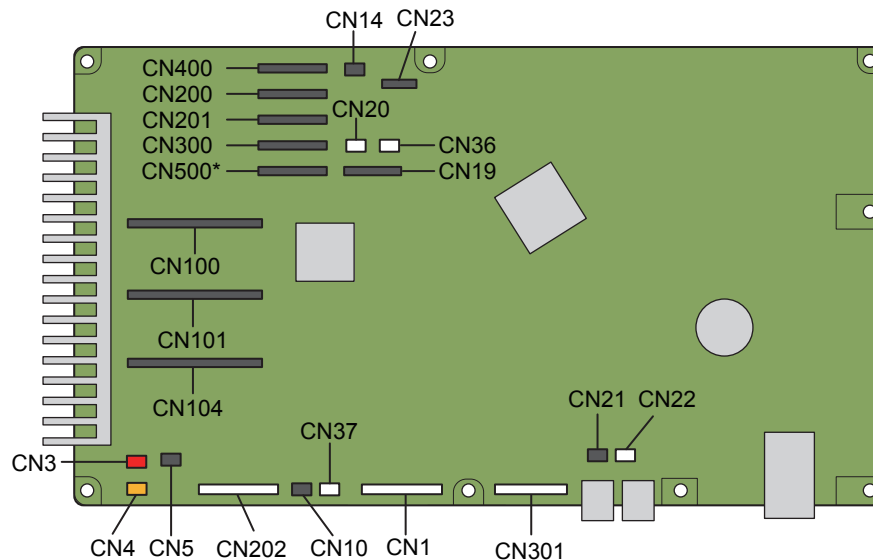
REASSEMBLY



The connector number that corresponds to the FFC is written on its surface as shown. Make sure to connect the FFCs to their correct connectors.



3. Remove the four screws that secure the Main Board Assy. See Figure 4-48.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: four pieces
4. Release the four fasteners, and remove the Main Board Assy.



NOTE: CN500 is only for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/WT7900/WT7910.

Figure 4-47. Connector locations

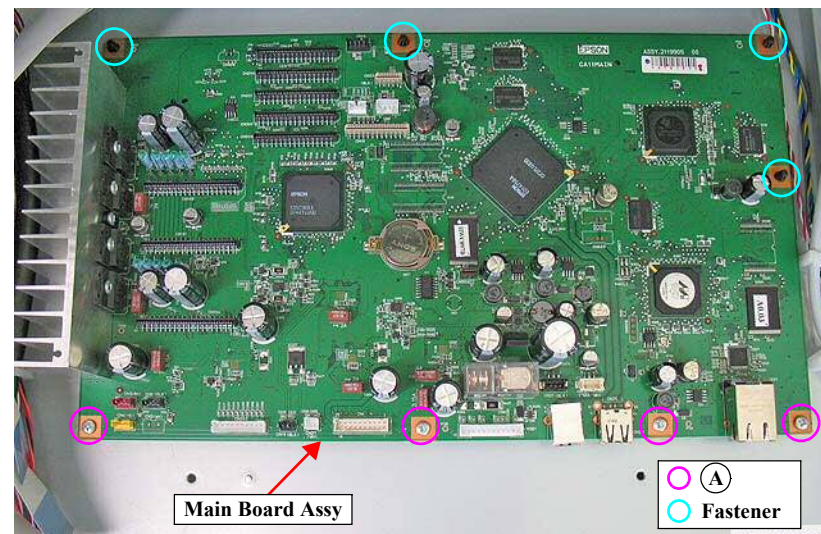


Figure 4-48. Removing the Main Board Assy



Connector assignment:

Connector No.	Color	Destination
CN1	White	Power Supply Board Assy (CN301)
CN3	Red	Suction Fan
CN4	Yellow	Suction Fan
CN5	Black	Suction Fan
CN10	Black	Pressurizing Unit
CN14	Black	Pressurizing Unit
CN19	(FFC)	Control Pane
CN20	White	Pressure Sensor
CN21	Black	Front Cover Sensor R
CN22	White	Front Cover Sensor L
CN23	(FFC)	AID Board (CN1)
CN28	-	USB
CN36	White	Driven Roller Release Motor Assy
CN37	White	Driven Roller Release Motor Assy
CN100	White	Sub Board Assy (CN100)
CN101	White	Sub Board Assy (CN101)
CN104	White	Sub Board Assy (CN104)
CN200	(FFC)	Sub Board Assy; B (CN200)
CN201	(FFC)	Sub Board Assy; B (CN201)
CN202	White	Sub Board Assy; B (CN202)
CN300	(FFC)	Sub Board Assy; C (CN300)
CN301	White	Sub Board Assy; C (CN301)
CN400	(FFC)	Ink Holder Board Assy (CN400)
CN500*	(FFC)	Ink Holder Board Assy (CN500)
CN501	-	LAN

Note \*: Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/9890/9908/7890/7908 only.



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Main Board Assy.

<Adjustment Item>

- **NVRAM Backup OK**
  1. NVRAM Backup
  2. Installing Firmware
  3. Setting Destination
  4. NVRAM Restore
  5. RTC&USB ID
  6. Input MAC Address
- **NVRAM Backup NG**
  1. Setting Destination
  2. Head Rank ID
  3. RTC&USB ID
  4. Input Serial Number
  5. Nozzle Check
  6. Cleaning PG Adjustment
  7. AID Function Check
  8. Initial Ink Charge Flag ON/OFF
  9. Installing Firmware
  10. CR/PF Motor Current Input
  11. Ink Mark Sensor Adjustment
  12. Rear Sensor AD Adjustment
  13. Band Feed
  14. Skew Check
  15. T&B&S Adjustment
  16. Auto Uni-D Adjustment
  17. Auto Bi-D Adjustment
  18. Cut Position Adjustment
  19. Colorimetric Calibration (Color ID)
  20. Print Image
  21. Input MAC Address

#### 4.4.3.2 Power Supply Board Assy



- When removing the Power Supply Board Assy, do not start the work immediately after disconnecting the AC cable. Wait for at least five minutes for the electrolytic capacitor to finish discharging residual charges.
- When powering this product, high-voltage current may be applied on the Power Supply Board Assy. To prevent **ELECTRIC SHOCK**, do not touch the Power Supply Board Assy when the power is ON. If the shock should happen, the flowing current is very tiny, about a few hundreds  $\mu\text{A}$ , therefore it will not do any harm on the human body.



Before starting operation, refer to **“4.1.4 Cautions when replacing the Main Board Assy/Power Supply Board Assy” (Page 171)**.

1. Remove the Rear Cover. (p220)
2. Disconnect the two connectors (CN001, CN301) on the Power Supply Board Assy.
3. Remove the two screws that secure the PS Board Mounting Plate, and remove the PS Board Mounting Plate.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: two pieces
4. Remove the nine screws that secure the Power Supply Board Assy, and remove the Power Supply Board Assy.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: nine pieces



Remove the five screws on the upper side of **Figure 4-50** using the screwdriver approx. 20 cm in length.



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (see p351) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Power Supply Board Assy.  
<Adjustment Item>

1. Colorimetric Calibration (Color ID)
2. CR/PF Motor Current Input

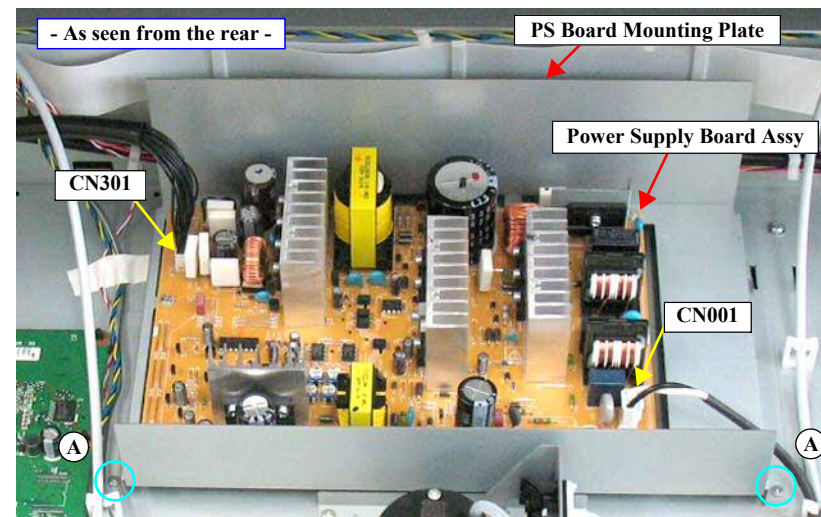


Figure 4-49. Removing the PS Board Mounting Plate

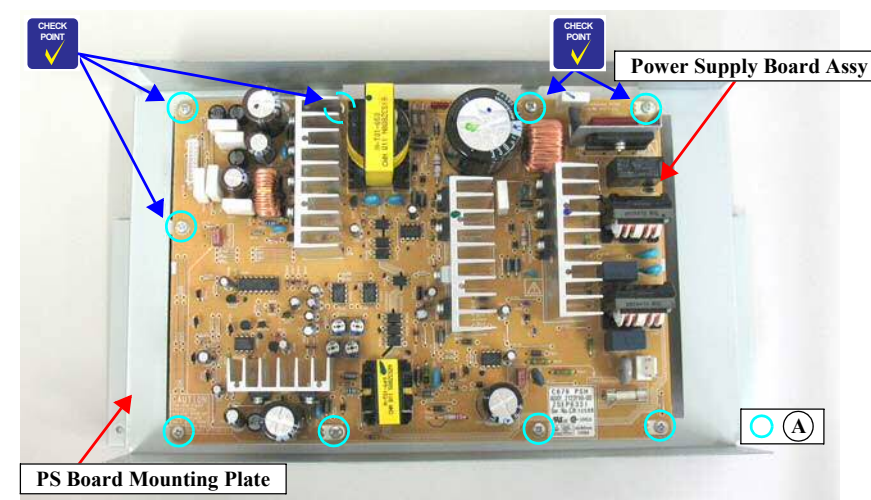


Figure 4-50. Removing the Power Supply Board Assy

Connector assignment:

Connector No.	Color	Destination
CN001	White	AC Inlet
CN301	White	Main Board Assy (CN1)

#### 4.4.3.3 Sub Board Assy

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
6. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

7. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
8. Remove the Top Cover. (p214)
9. Unlock the Carriage Unit. (p201)
10. Disengage the four hooks on the bottom, and remove the CR Belt Cover.
11. Disconnect all the cables and FFC on the Sub Board Assy.

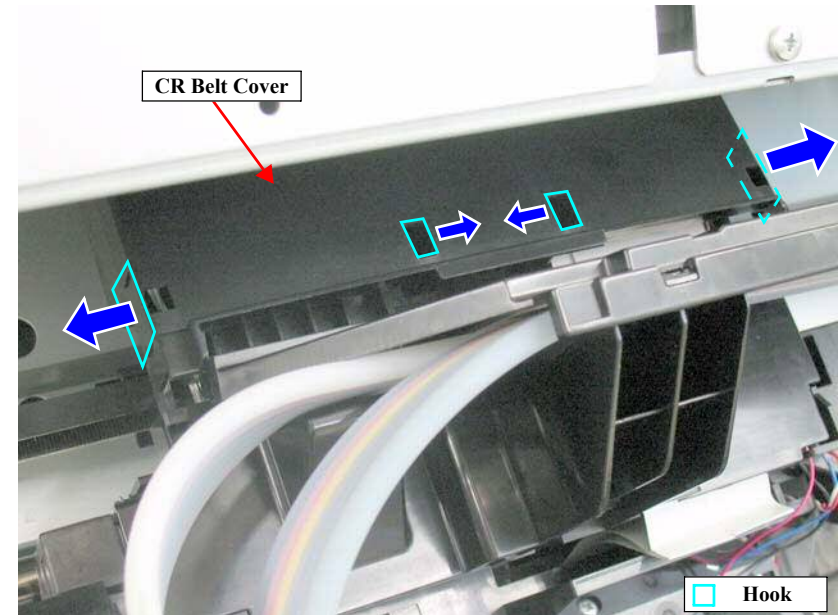


Figure 4-51. Removing the CR Belt Cover

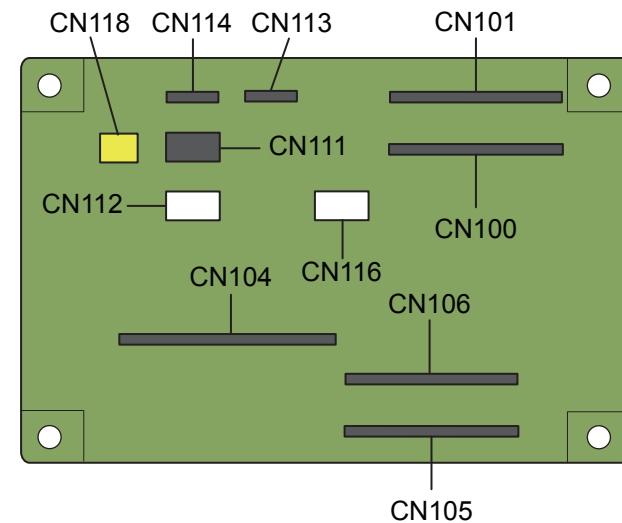


Figure 4-52. Connector locations

12. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the left end.
13. Remove the four screws that secure the Sub Board Assy.

A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x10: four pieces



**Secure the terminal of the grounding wire and the plate with the same screw shown in the figure.**

14. Remove the Sub Board Assy.

Connector assignment:

Connector No.	Color	Destination
CN100	(FFC)	Main Board Assy (CN100)
CN101	(FFC)	Main Board Assy (CN101)
CN104	(FFC)	Main Board Assy (CN104)
CN105	(FFC)	Printhead
CN106	(FFC)	Printhead
CN111	Black	PG HP Sensor
CN112	White	PW Sensor
CN113	(FFC)	Ink Mark Sensor
CN114	(FFC)	CR Encoder
CN116*	White	Ink Selector
CN118*	Yellow	Ink Selector

Note \*: Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908 only. Not used for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710.



**Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Sub Board Assy.**

<Adjustment Item>

1. Colorimetric Calibration (Color ID)

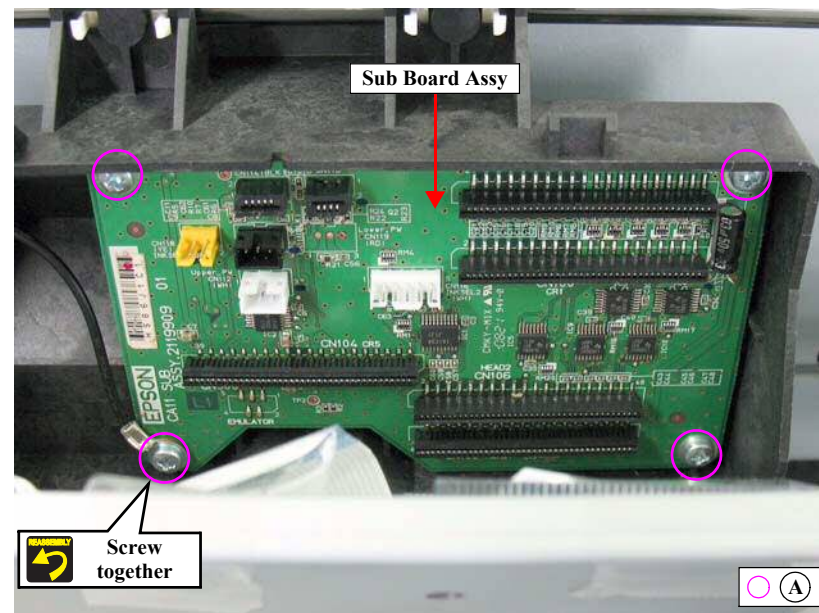


Figure 4-53. Removing the Sub Board Assy



#### 4.4.3.4 Sub Board Assy; B

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Disconnect all the cables and FFCs on the Sub Board Assy; B.
6. Remove the four screws, and remove the Sub Board Assy; B.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: four pieces

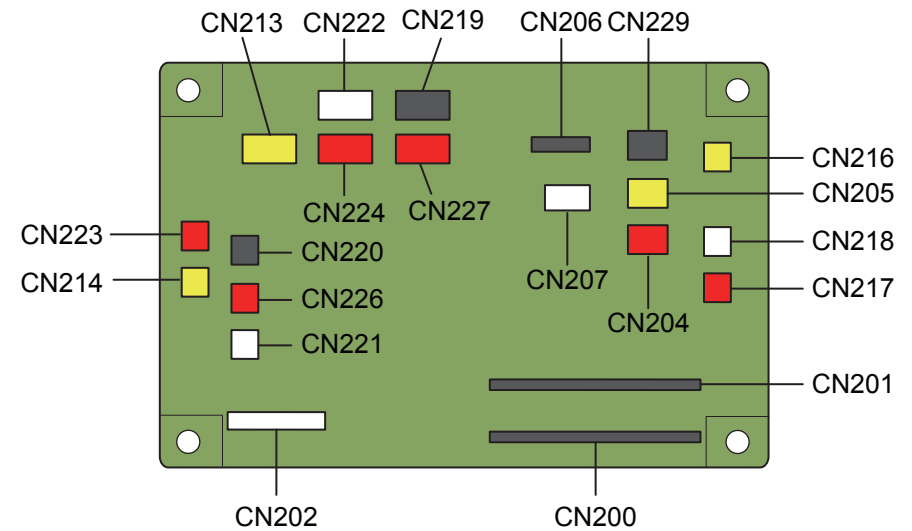


Figure 4-54. Connector locations

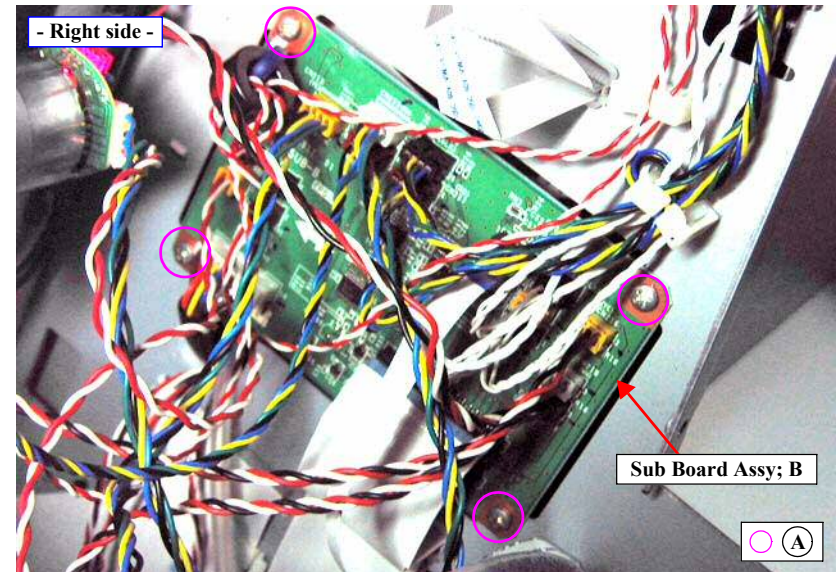


Figure 4-55. Removing the Sub Board Assy; B

Connector assignment:

Connector No.	Color	Destination
CN200	(FFC)	Main Board Assy (CN200)
CN201	(FFC)	Main Board Assy (CN201)
CN202	White	Main Board Assy (CN202)
CN204	Red	Paper Thickness Sensor 2
CN205	Yellow	Paper Thickness Sensor 2
CN206	(FFC)	Maintenance Tank
CN207	White	PE Sensor
CN213	Yellow	Pump Motor Encoder
CN214	Yellow	Pump Motor Encoder
CN216	Yellow	Valve HP Selector
CN217	Red	Cap HP Sensor
CN218	White	Wiper HP Sensor
CN219	Black	Rewind Unit
CN220	Black	Rewind Unit
CN221	White	Wiper Unit
CN222	White	Wiper Unit
CN223	Red	Cap Unit
CN224	Red	Cap Unit
CN226	Red	APG Unit
CN227	Red	APG Unit
CN229	Black	CR HP Sensor



## 4.4.4 Carriage Mechanism

### 4.4.4.1 CR Scale

**CAUTION**


Take extreme care to avoid soiling the CR Scale surfaces with ink or by touching them with bare hands. In addition, be careful not to scratch the surface on which patterns for detection is printed by bumping the scale against frames of the main unit. The above precautions should always be followed, or a malfunction of the Carriage Unit may occur.

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the center. (p201)
6. Remove the CR Scale Spring from the Main Frame and the hole on the CR Scale.
7. Detach the CR Scale from the two each hooks on the Guide Fences.
8. Remove the CR Scale from the hook on the right of the Main Frame.

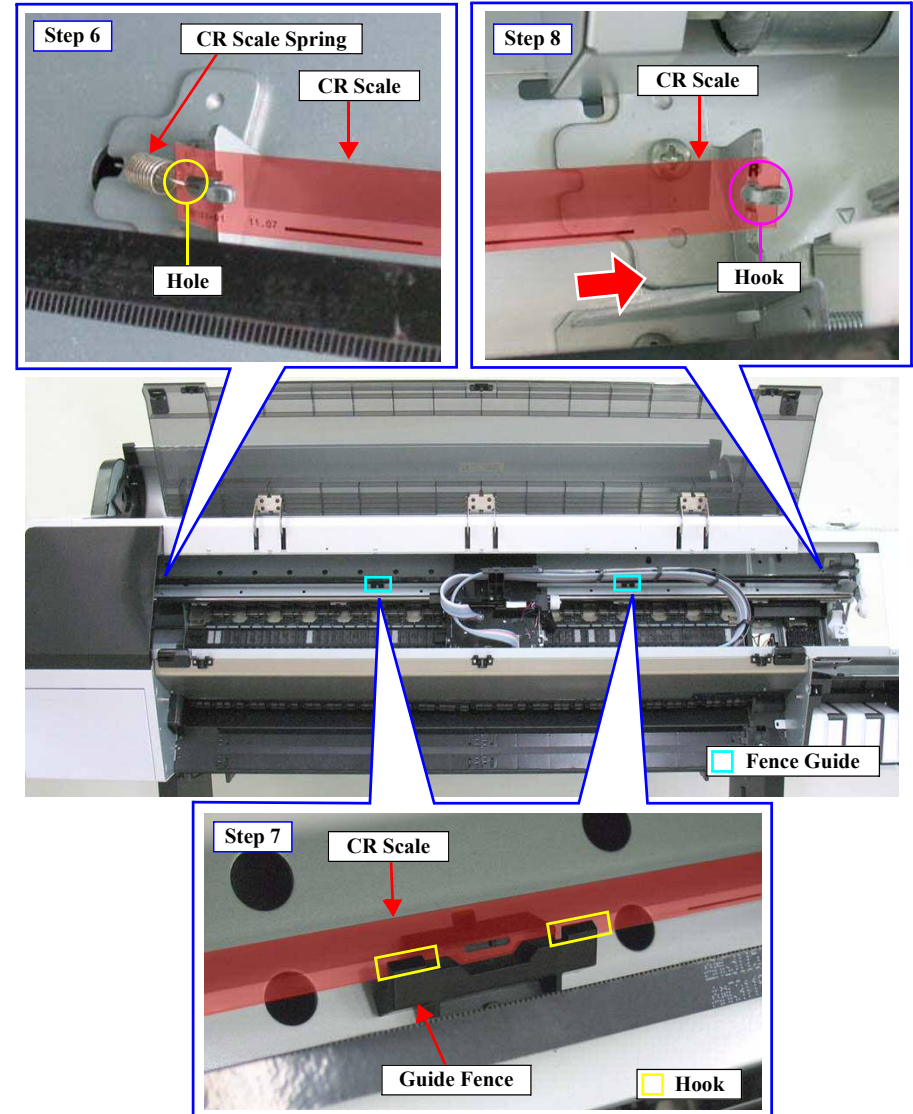
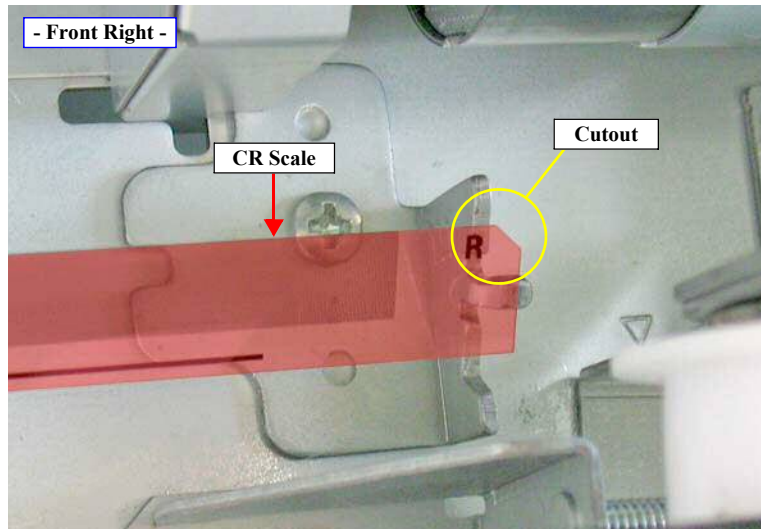


Figure 4-58. Removing the CR Scale



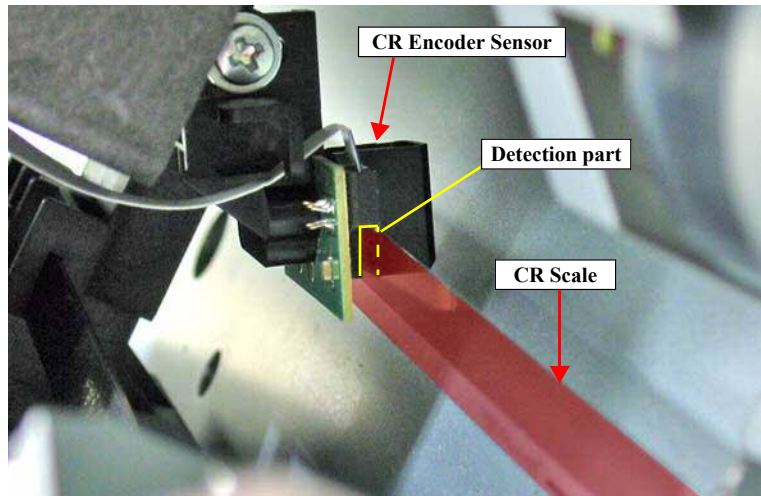
**REASSEMBLY**

- Attach the CR Scale with the cutout on the top right corner.



\*Some 44-inch CR Scales do not have the notation of L/R.

- Make sure to route the CR Scale between the detection part of the CR Encoder Sensor on the rear of the carriage.



#### 4.4.4.2 CR Encoder Sensor

**CAUTION**


When removing the CR Encoder Sensor, take extreme care to avoid soiling the CR Scale surfaces with ink or by touching them with bare hands. In addition, be careful not to scratch the surface on which patterns for detection is printed by bumping the scale against frames of the main unit. The above precautions should always be followed, or a malfunction of the Carriage Unit may occur.

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the center. (p201)
6. Remove the screw that secures the CR Encoder Sensor, and remove the CR Encoder Sensor.

A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M4x12: one piece

7. Disconnect the FFC from the CR Encoder Sensor.

**ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED**


Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (see p351) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the CR Encoder Sensor.

<Adjustment Item>

1. CR Encoder Sensor Adjustment

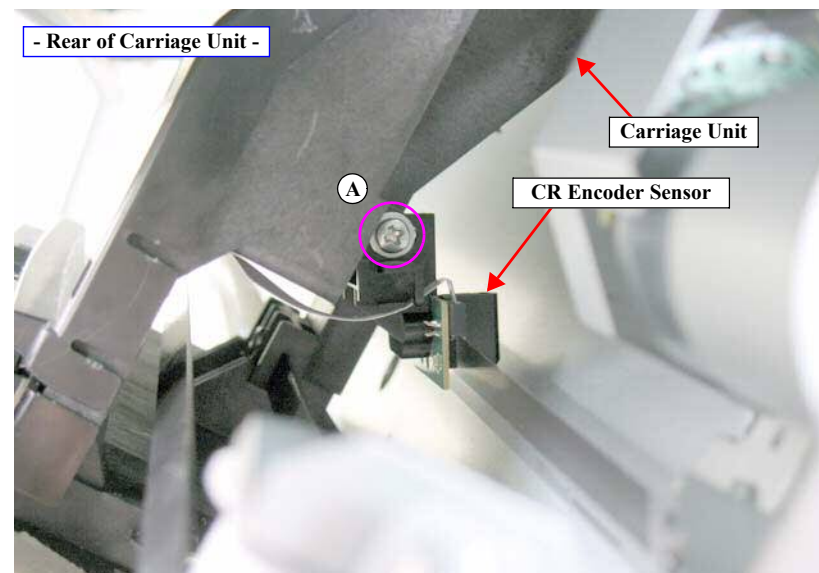


Figure 4-59. Removing the CR Encoder Sensor

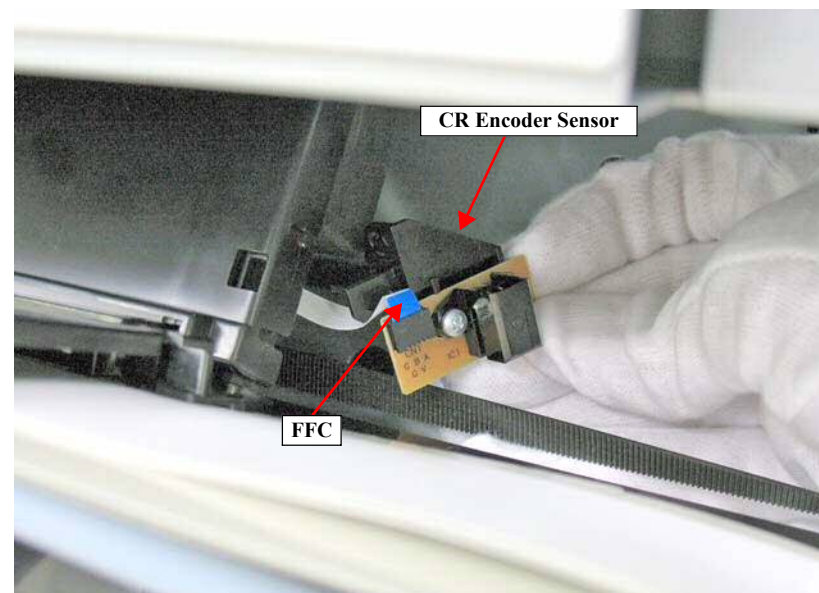


Figure 4-60. Disconnecting the FFC

#### 4.4.4.3 CR HP Sensor

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Unlock the Carriage Unit. (p201)
6. Move the Carriage Unit to the location where the CR HP Sensor can be removed.
7. Disengage the four hooks that secure the CR HP Sensor, and remove the CR HP Sensor.

**CAUTION**

When disconnecting the connector in the next step, take care not to push it inside the printer.

8. Disconnect the connector from the CR HP Sensor.

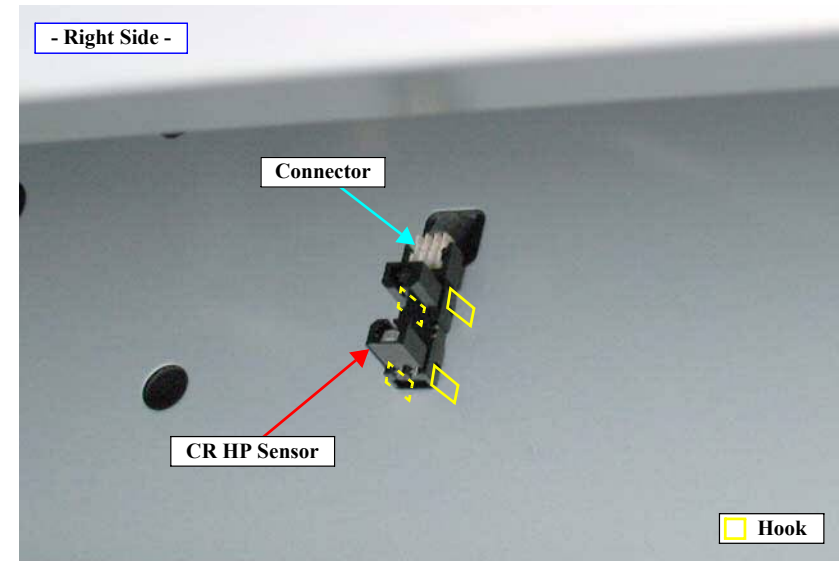


Figure 4-61. Removing the CR HP Sensor

#### 4.4.4.4 Driven Pulley Unit

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
6. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

7. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
8. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the center. (p201)
9. Disengage the four hooks on the bottom, and remove the CR Belt Cover.
10. Remove the screw that secures the CR Belt to the Carriage Unit.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M4x12: one piece

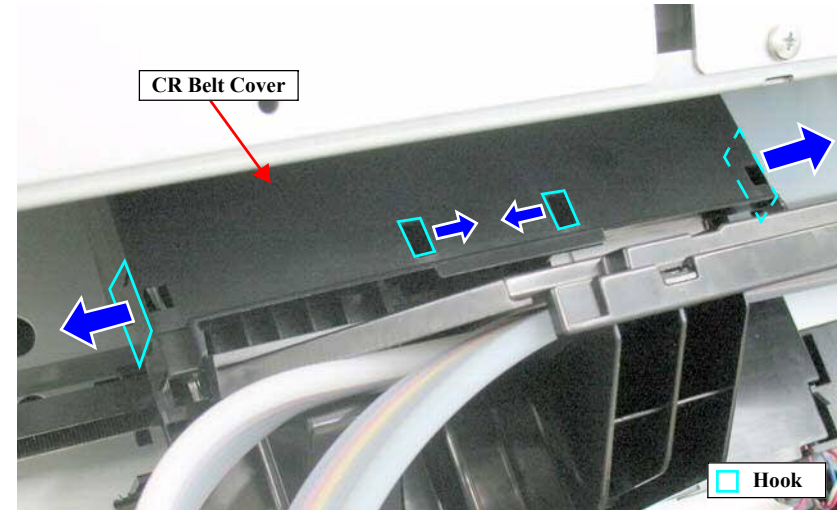


Figure 4-62. Removing the CR Belt Cover

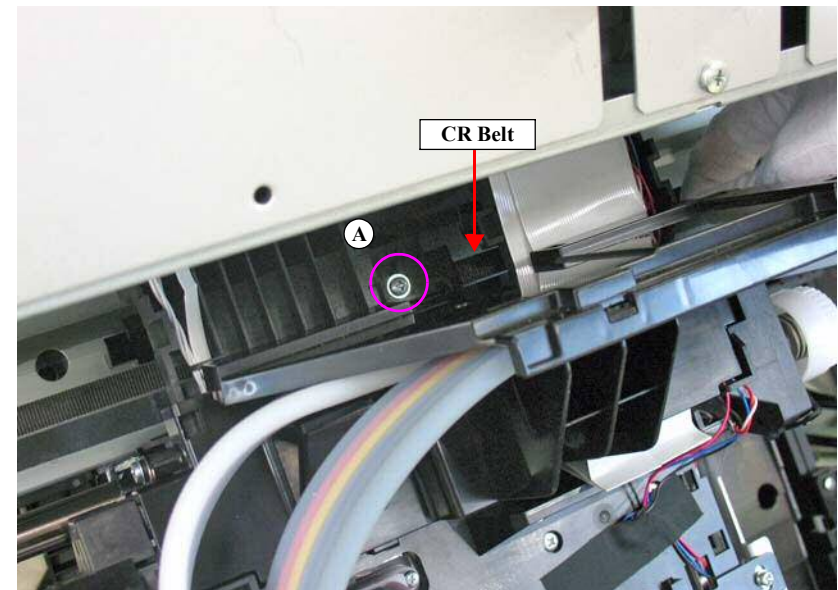


Figure 4-63. Removing the CR Belt



11. Remove the two screws that secure the Driven Pulley Holder, and remove the Driven Pulley Holder.
- B) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x8: two pieces
12. Loosen the CR Belt tension adjustment screw.
13. Detach the CR Belt from the drive pulley of the CR Motor.
14. Pull out the CR Belt as shown in the figure, and remove the Driven Pulley Unit.



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the Driven Pulley Unit.

<Adjustment Item>

1. CR Timing Belt Tension Adjustment
2. Skew Check
3. T&B&S Adjustment
4. Absorber Position Check
5. Auto Uni-D Adjustment
6. Auto Bi-D Adjustment

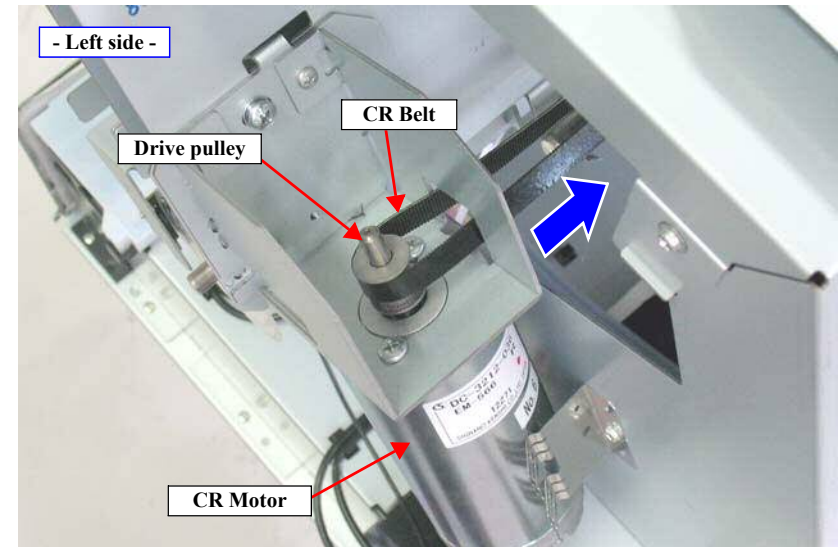


Figure 4-65. Removing the CR Belt

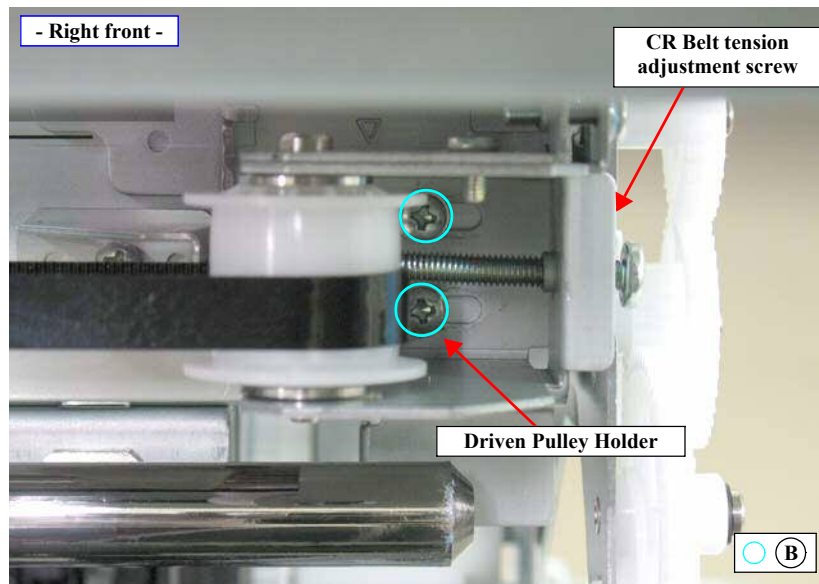


Figure 4-64. Removing the Driven Pulley Holder



Figure 4-66. Configuration Figure of the Driven Pulley Unit

#### 4.4.4.5 CR Motor

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
6. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

7. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
8. Loosen the two screws that secure the Driven Pulley Holder.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x8: two pieces
9. Loosen the CR Belt tension adjustment screw to relieve the tension of the CR Belt.
10. Detach the CR Belt from the drive pulley of the CR Motor.
11. Remove the two screws that secure the CR Motor, and remove the CR Motor. *See Figure 4-68.*
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M4x8: two pieces

ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (see p351) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the CR Motor.  
<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (CR Motor)
2. CR/PF Motor Current Input
3. CR Timing Belt Tension Adjustment
4. Skew Check
5. T&B&S Adjustment
6. Absorber Position Check
7. Auto Uni-D Adjustment
8. Auto Bi-D Adjustment

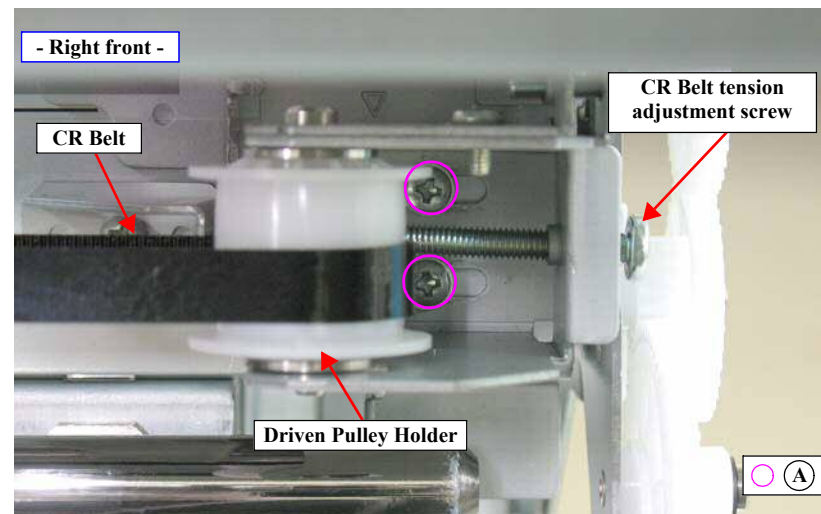


Figure 4-67. Relieving the tension of the CR Belt

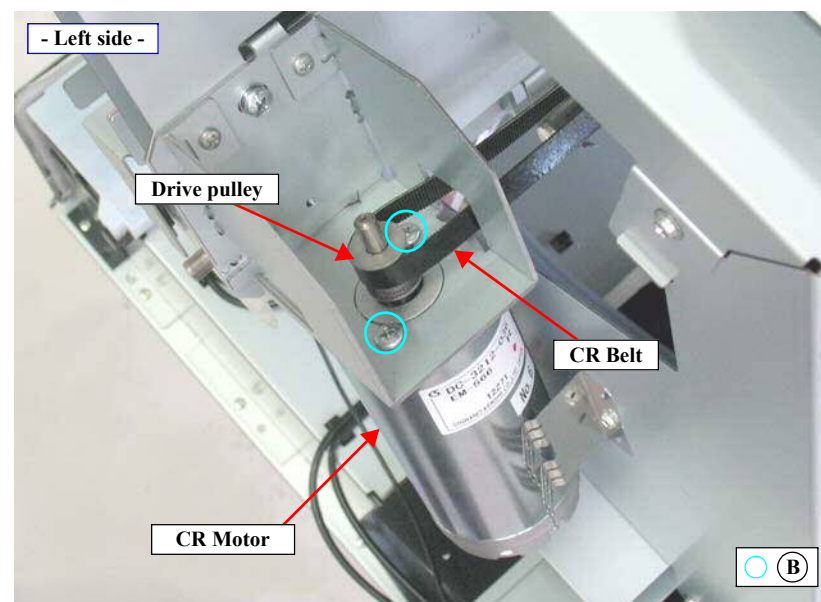


Figure 4-68. Removing the CR Motor

#### 4.4.4.6 APG Motor

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the center. (p201)

#### CHECK POINT



When having difficulty in removing the screw in the next step, first remove the plate B shown in **Figure 4-72**. (p244)

6. Remove the screw that secures the APG Motor Cover, and remove the APG Motor Cover.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x8: one piece
7. Remove the two screws that secure the APG Motor, and remove the APG Motor.
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Pan S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x6: two pieces
8. Disconnect the connector from the APG Motor.

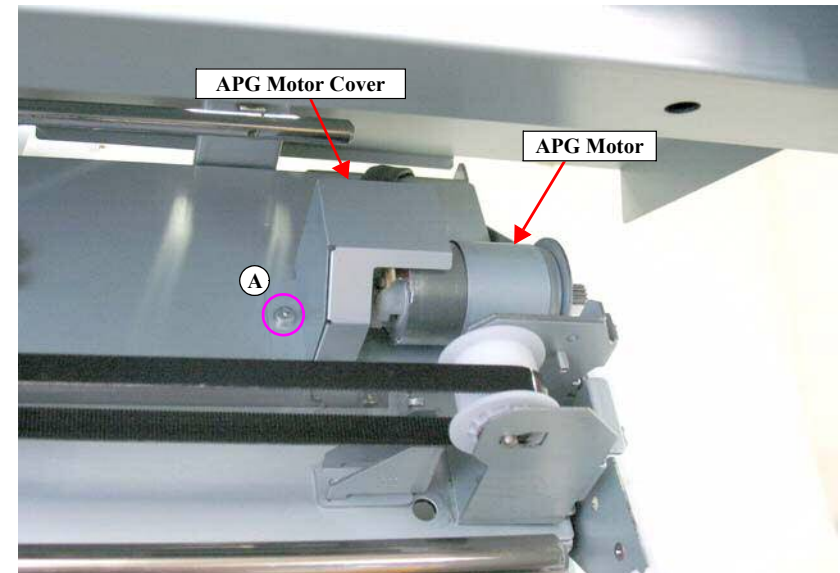


Figure 4-69. Removing the APG Motor (1)

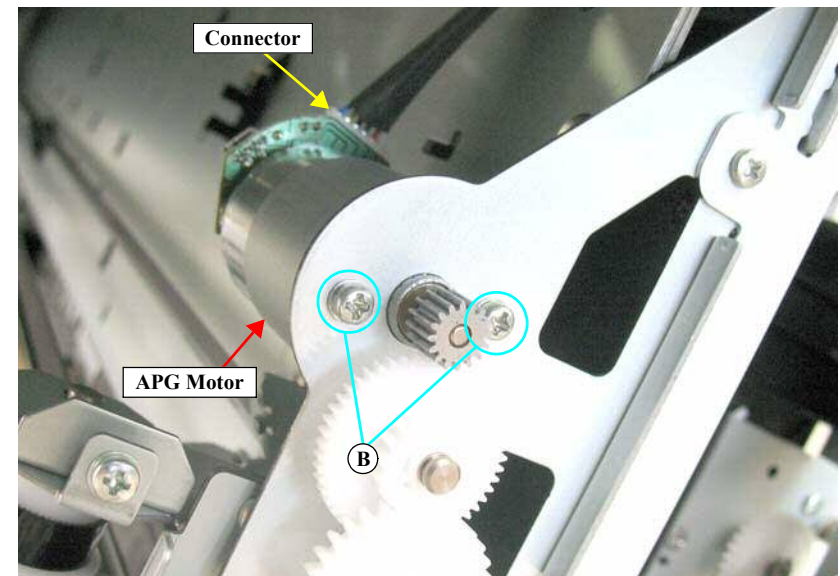


Figure 4-70. Removing the APG Motor (2)



#### 4.4.4.7 APG Unit

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
6. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

7. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
8. Remove the Top Cover. (p214)
9. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the center. (p201)
10. Remove the three screws that secure the Plate A, and remove the Plate A.

A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: three pieces

#### CAUTION



**In the next step, after removing the Plate B the Main Frame will drop and its weight may apply an extra load to the Carriage Unit. Therefore, make sure to hold the cover or remove the Front Cover (Middle) in advance. (p207) Removing the Front Cover (Middle) will make the frame lighter and avoid extra loading to the Carriage Unit.**

11. Remove the nine screws that secure the Plate B, and remove the Plate B.

B) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M3x6: two pieces

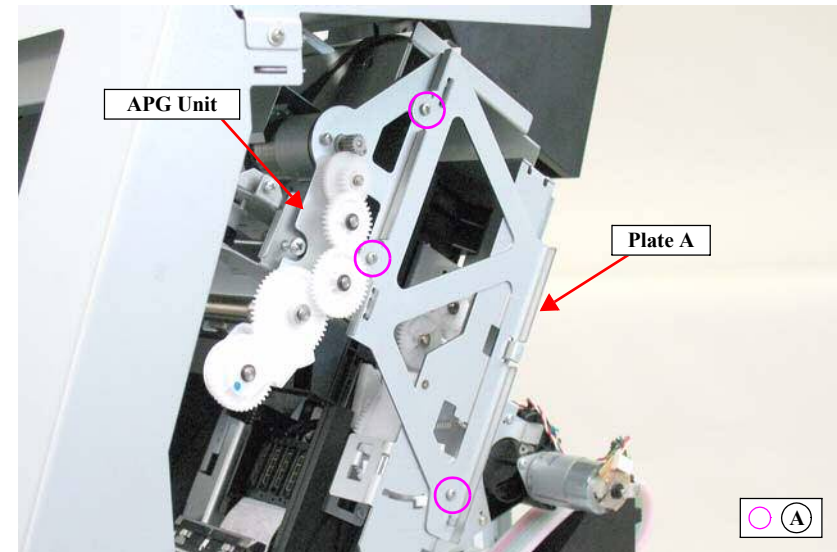


Figure 4-71. Removing the Plate A

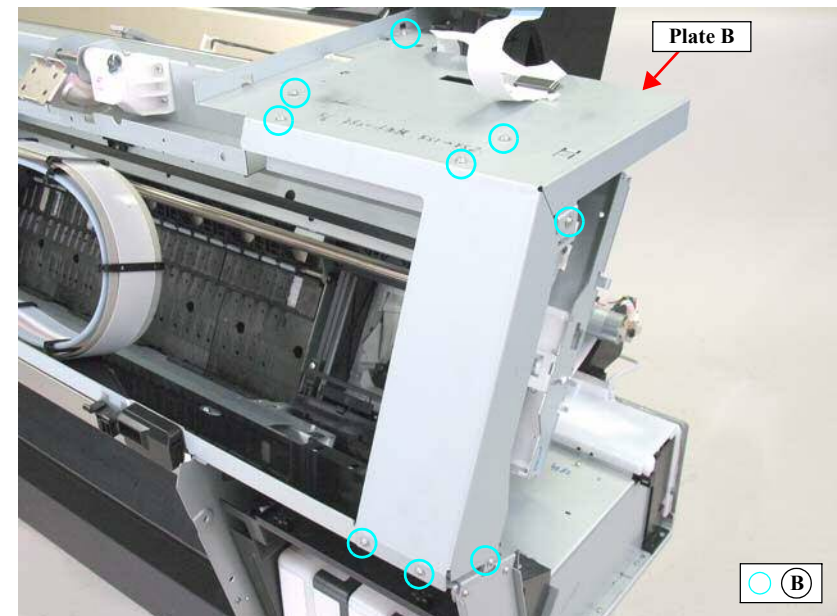


Figure 4-72. Removing the Plate B



12. Remove the two screws that secure the APG Unit, and remove the APG Unit.
  - C) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x6: two pieces
13. Remove the two screws that secure the APG Motor, and remove the APG Motor from the APG Unit.
  - D) Silver, Phillips, Pan S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x6: two pieces

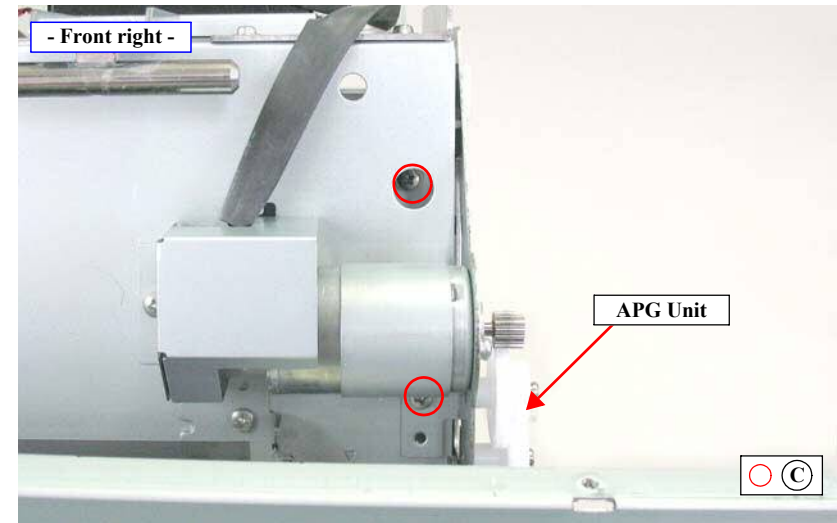


Figure 4-73. Removing the APG Unit

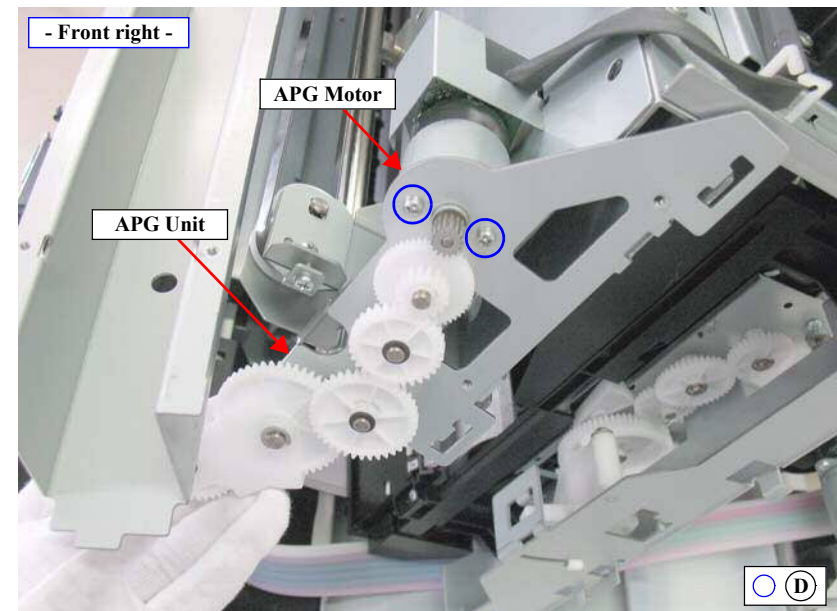


Figure 4-74. Removing the APG Motor

#### 4.4.4.8 PG HP Sensor

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the right end. (p201)
6. Remove the three screws that secure the Ink Mark Sensor, and remove the Ink Mark Sensor.  
A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x10: three pieces
7. Rotate the gear shown in **Figure 4-76** until the cutout of the shading plate comes in between the sensor's detector as shown in **Figure 4-76**.

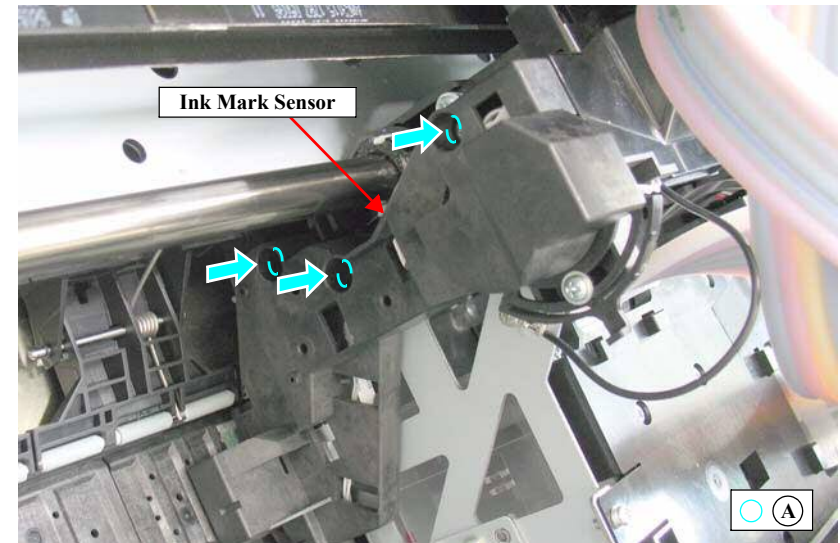


Figure 4-75. Removing the Ink Mark Sensor

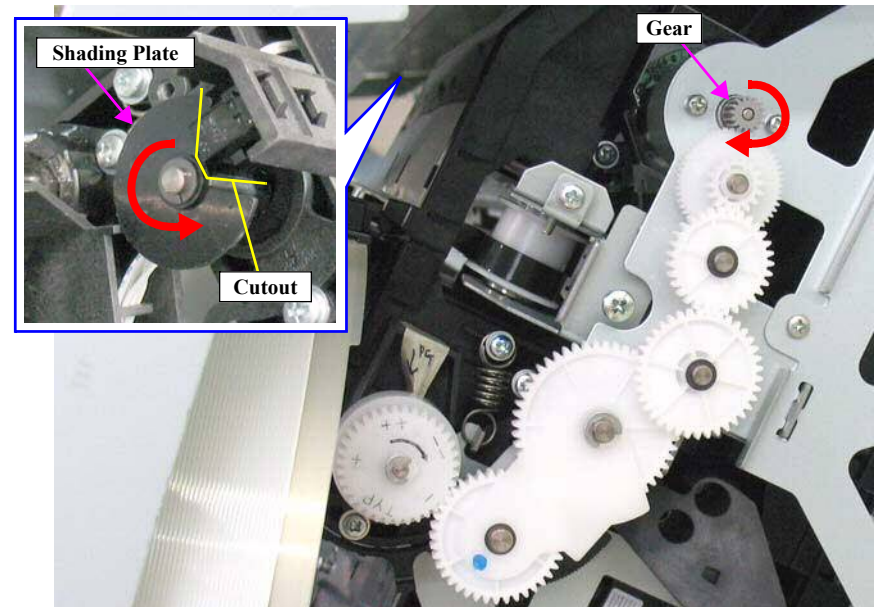


Figure 4-76. Rotating the Shading Plate

8. Disengage the hooks that secure the PG HP Sensor, and remove the PG HP Sensor.
9. Disconnect the connector from the PG HP Sensor.

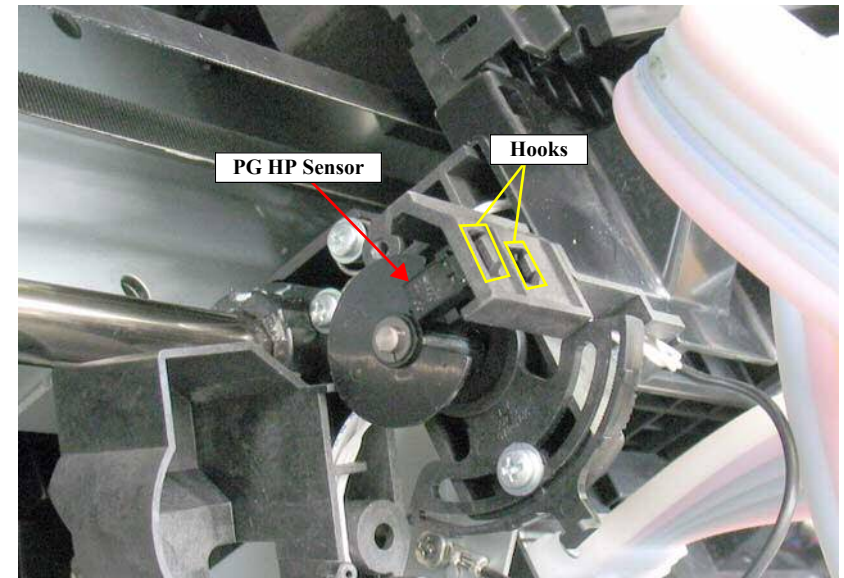


Figure 4-77. Removing the PG HP Sensor (1)

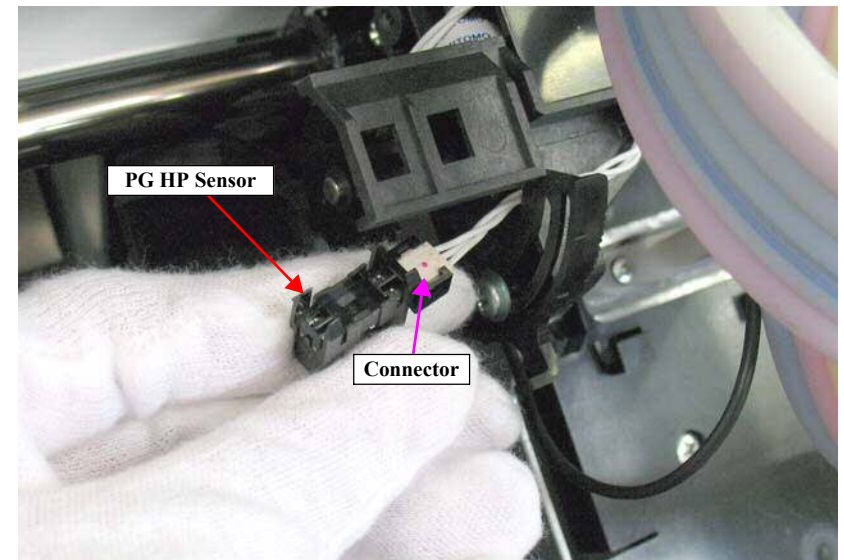


Figure 4-78. Removing the PG HP Sensor (2)



#### 4.4.4.9 Carriage Unit

1. Remove the Control Panel.(p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover (L/R) and the IC Shaft Cover (L/R).(p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank (L/R).(p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

4. Remove the Right Cover.(p209)
5. Remove the Left Cover.(p211)
6. Remove the Top Cover.(p214)
7. Remove the Ink Selector.(p300)
8. Remove the Print Head.(p270)
9. Remove the Driven Pulley Unit.(p240)
10. Remove the APG Motor.(p243)
11. Remove the APG Unit.(p244)
12. Remove the CR Scale.(p236)

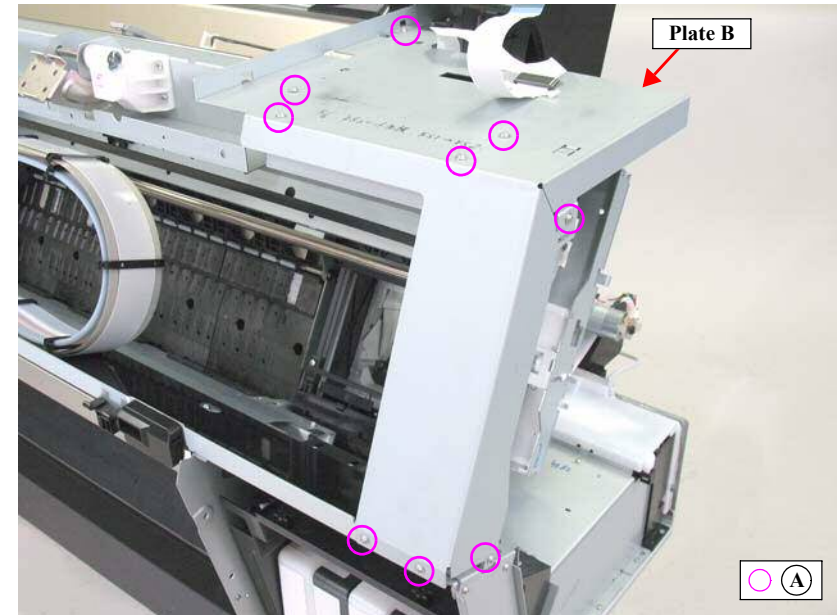


Figure 4-79. Removing the Plate B

#### CAUTION



**In the next step, after removing the Plate B the Main Frame will drop and its weight may apply an extra load to the Carriage Unit. Therefore, make sure to hold the cover or remove the Front Cover (Middle) in advance. (p207) Removing the Front Cover (Middle) will make the frame lighter and avoid extra loading to the Carriage Unit.**

13. Remove the nine screws that secure the Plate B, and remove the Plate B.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M3x6: nine pieces

14. Remove the each screw that secure the CR Stopper, and remove the three CR Stoppers.

B) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x8: each one piece

15. Remove the Carriage Unit by sliding it rightward.

ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 "Adjustment" ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the Carriage Unit.

<Adjustment Item>

1. Nozzle Check
2. Ink Mark Sensor Adjustment
3. Skew Check
4. T&B&S Adjustment
5. Absorber Position Check
6. Printhead Slant Adjustment (CR)
7. Printhead Slant Adjustment (PF)
8. Head PG Adjustment

Lubrication



When replacing or maintaining the Carriage Unit, carry out the specified lubrication if necessary. (See Chapter 6 "MAINTENANCE" ([Page 444](#)).)

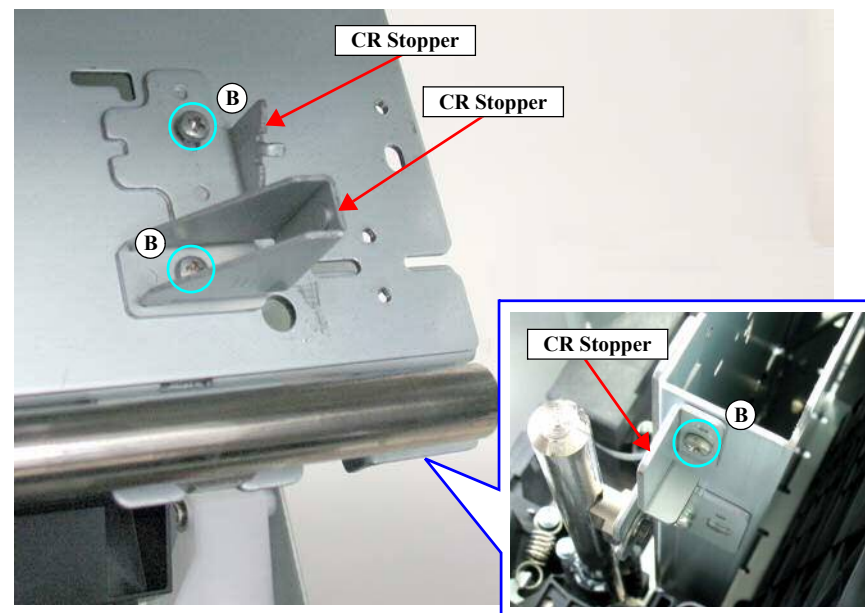


Figure 4-80. Remove the CR Stopper

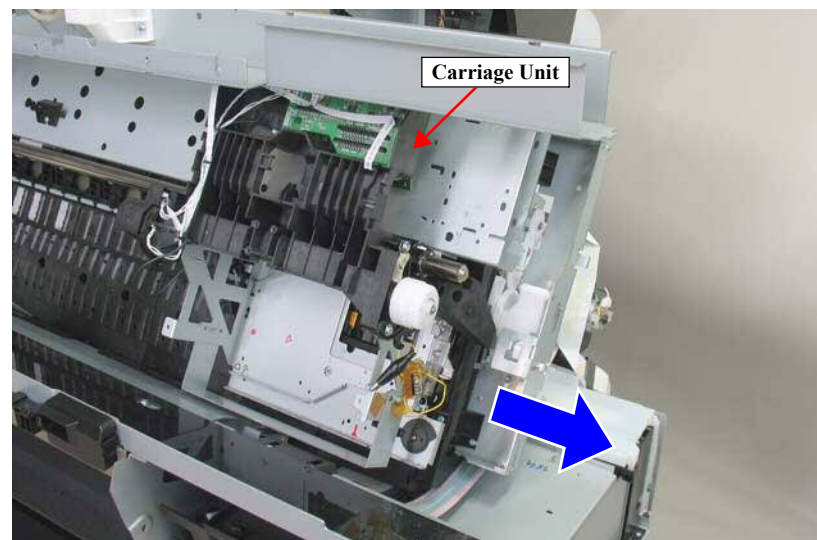


Figure 4-81. Remove the Carriage Unit

## 4.4.5 Paper Feed Mechanism

### 4.4.5.1 Paper Thickness Sensor

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
6. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

7. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
8. Remove the Top Cover. (p214)
9. Remove the screw that secures the Paper Thickness Sensor Mounting Plate, and remove the Paper Thickness Sensor Mounting Plate. *See Figure 4-82.*

A) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x6: one piece

#### CAUTION



In the next step, make sure to confirm the destination of each connector. When connecting them again, be sure to restore the original routing.

10. Disconnect the connectors from the Paper Thickness Sensors. *See Figure 4-83.*
11. Disengage the hooks that secure the Paper Thickness Sensors, and remove the Paper Thickness Sensors.

#### ADJUSTMENT REQUIRED



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (*see p351*) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the Paper Thickness Sensor.

<Adjustment Item>

1. Paper Thickness Sensor Position Adjustment

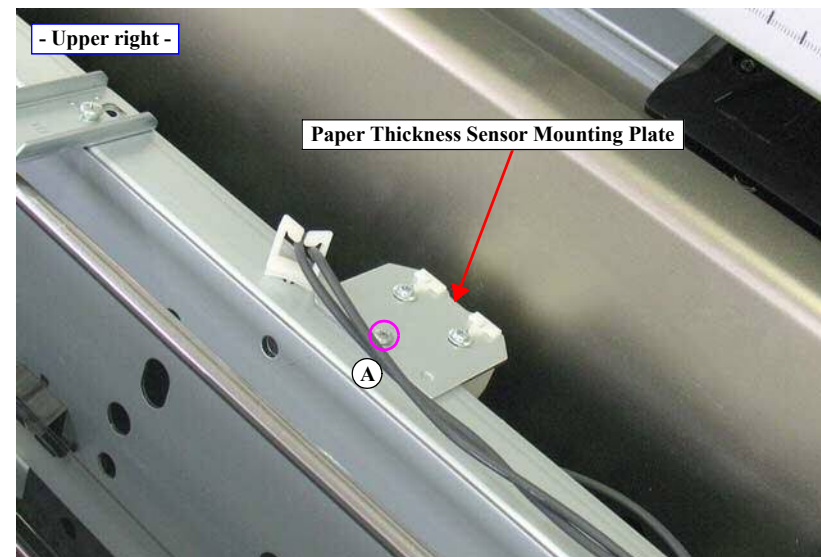


Figure 4-82. Removing the Paper Thickness Sensor Mounting Plate

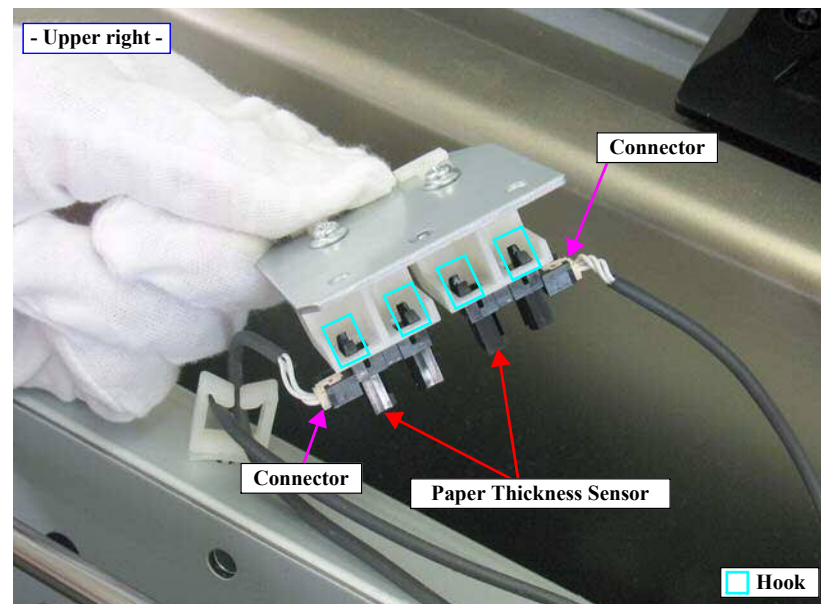


Figure 4-83. Removing the Paper Thickness Sensor



#### 4.4.5.2 PW Sensor

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the center. (p201)
6. Remove the three screws that secure the Arm Unit, and remove the Arm Unit.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x10: three pieces

#### REASSEMBLY



When installing the Arm Unit, be sure to secure the Arm Unit with the screws while pressing it toward the platen.

7. Remove the screw that secure the PW Sensor Cover, and remove the PW Sensor Cover.
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M2x6 (bit: No.1): one piece

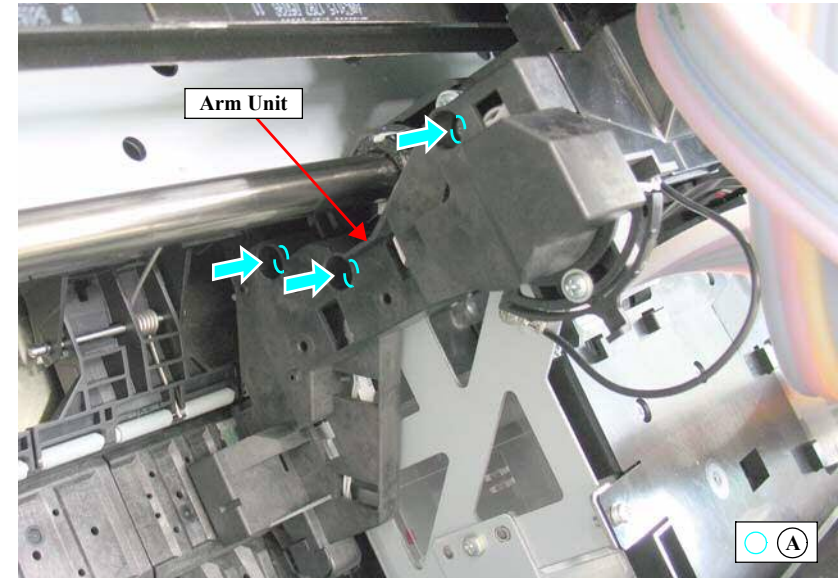


Figure 4-84. Removing the Arm Unit

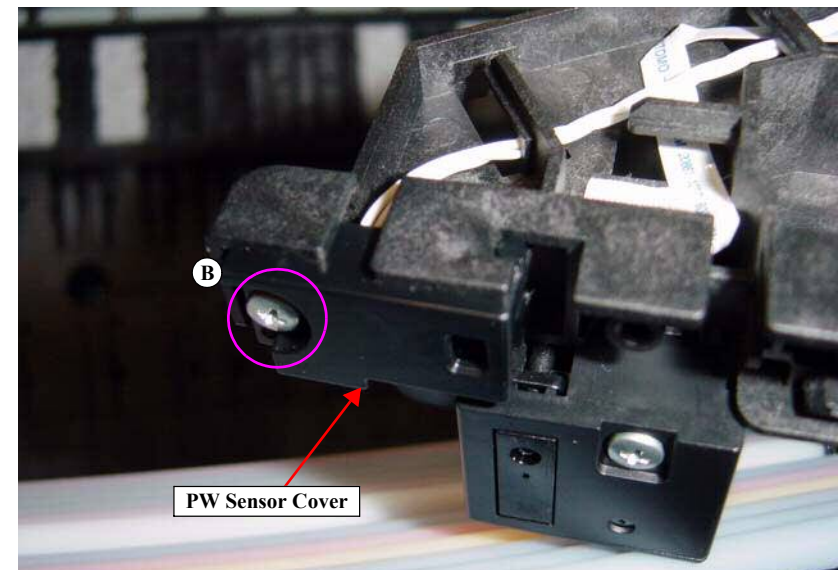


Figure 4-85. Removing the PW Sensor Cover

8. Remove the PW Sensor from the Arm, and disconnect the connector of the PW Sensor.

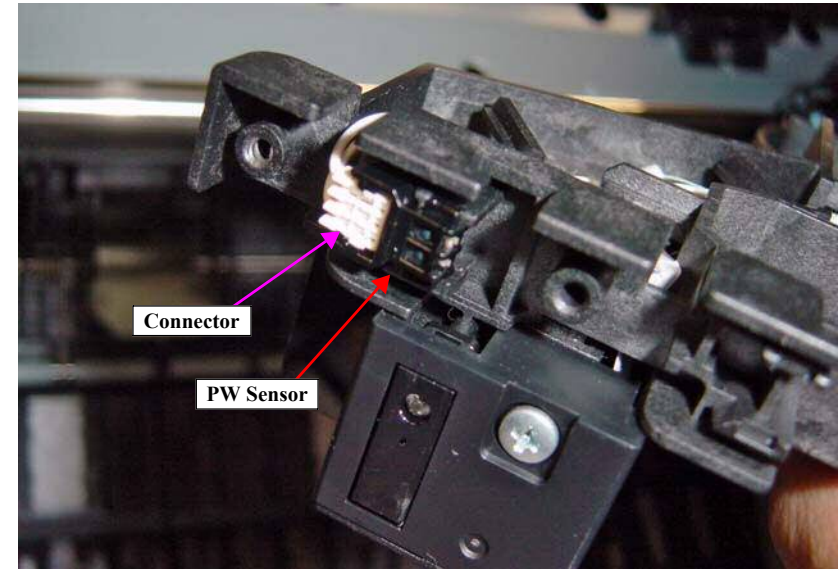


Figure 4-86. Removing the PW Sensor



#### 4.4.5.3 Driven Roller Release Motor

1. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
2. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

3. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
4. Remove the Rear Cover. (p220)
5. Disconnect the connector from the Driven Roller Release Motor.
6. Remove the two screws that secure the Driven Roller Release Motor, and remove the Driven Roller Release Motor. *See Figure 4-82.*
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Pan S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x6: two pieces

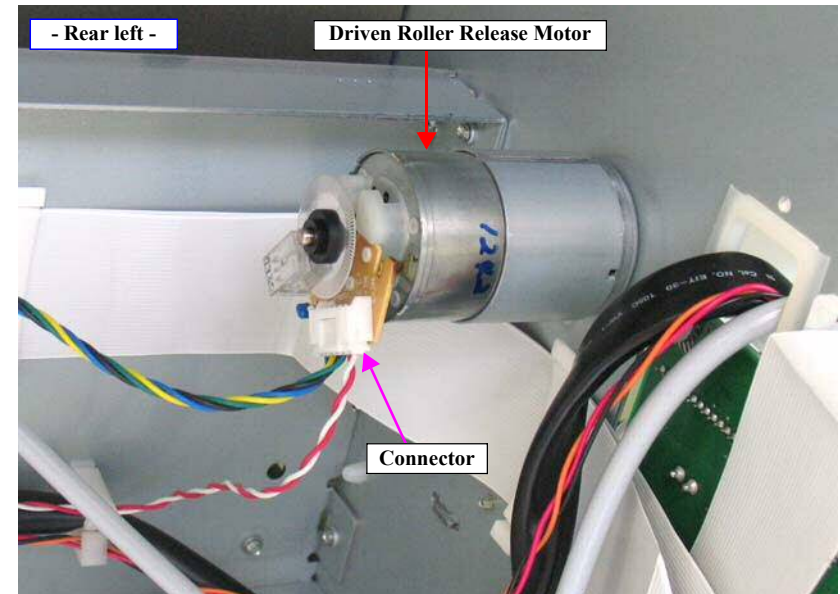


Figure 4-87. Disconnecting the connector

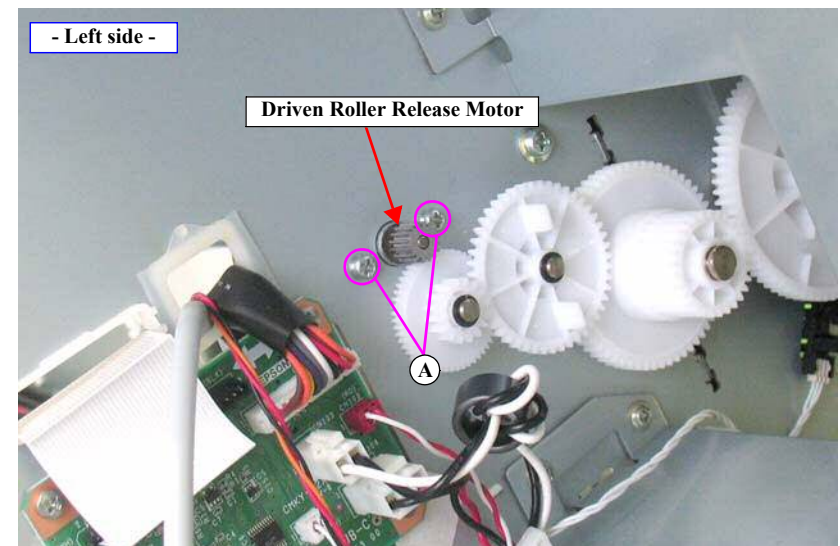


Figure 4-88. Removing the Driven Roller Release Motor

#### 4.4.5.4 Roller Release HP Sensor

1. Open the Front Cover (Middle).
2. Disengage the hooks that secure the Roller Release HP Sensor, and remove the Roller Release HP Sensor.
3. Disconnect the connector from the Roller Release HP Sensor.

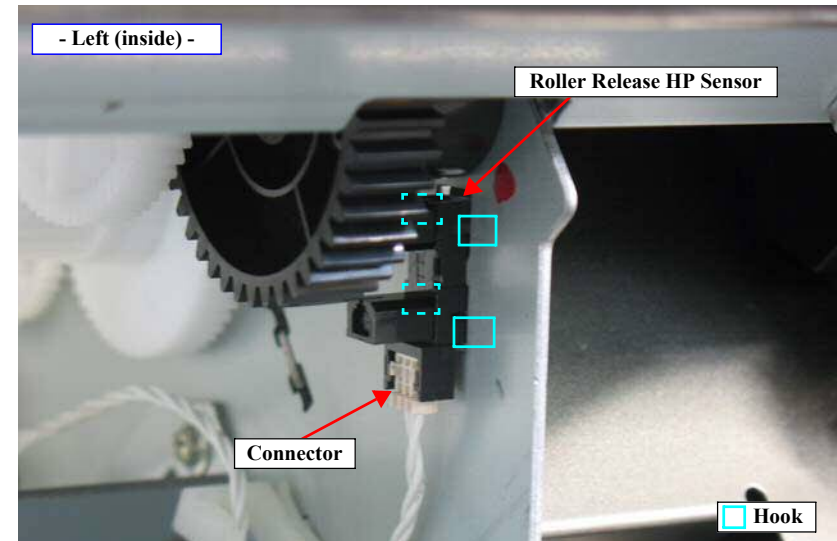


Figure 4-89. Removing the Roller Release HP Sensor

#### 4.4.5.5 Rewind Unit

**CAUTION**


The Rewind Unit is established as an ASP including the mounting plate. When replacing this part, transfer the necessary items or replace the whole unit.

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the Spindle Cover R. (p215)
6. Release the harness from the clamp, and disconnect the connector from the Rewind Unit.
7. Remove the three screws that secure the Rewind Unit Mounting Plate, and remove the Rewind Unit Mounting Plate.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: three pieces
8. Remove the two gears from the Rewind Unit Mounting Plate.

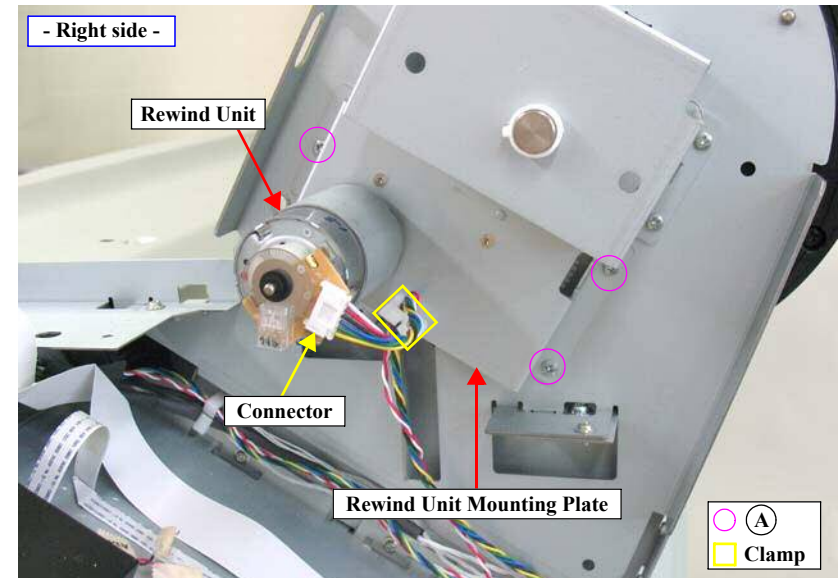


Figure 4-90. Removing the Rewind Unit Mounting Plate

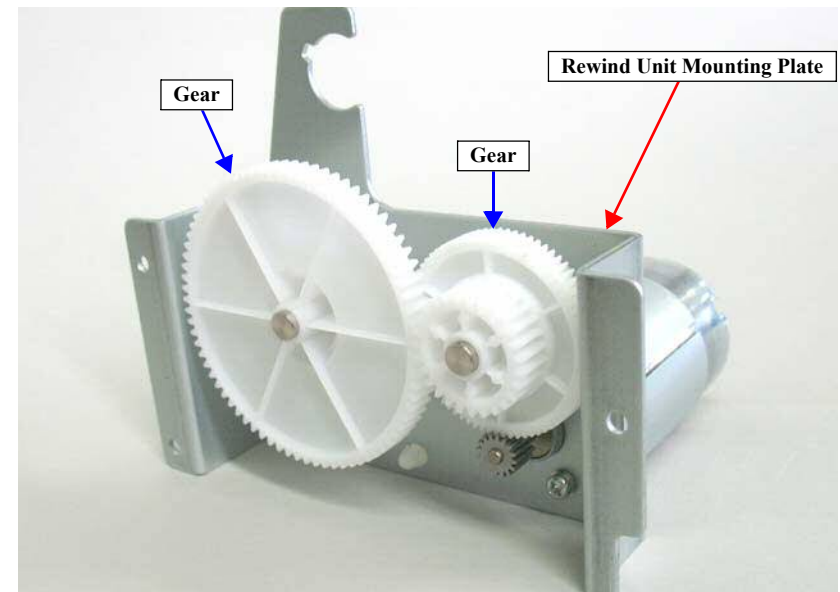


Figure 4-91. Removing the gears

9. Remove the two screws that secure the Rewind Unit, and remove the Rewind Unit.

B) Silver, Phillips, Pan S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x6: two pieces

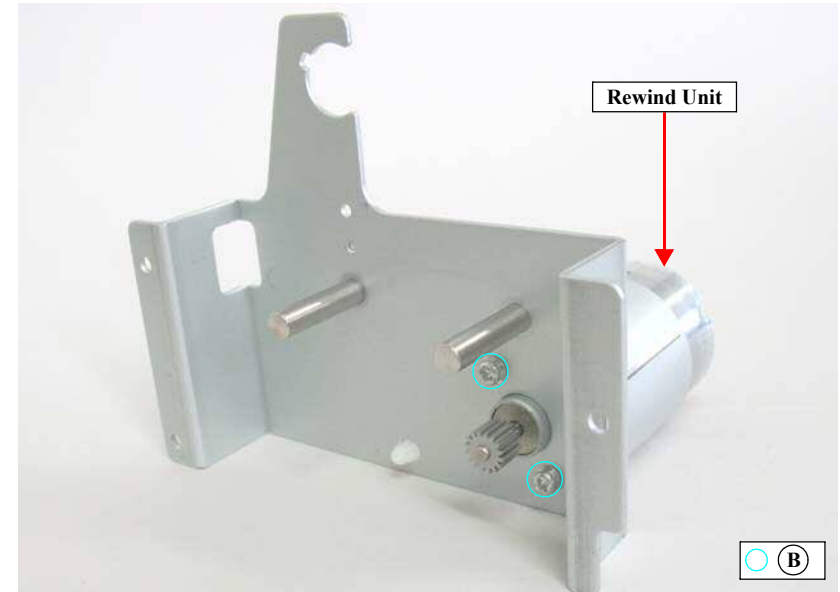


Figure 4-92. Removing the Rewind Unit

#### 4.4.5.6 Cutter Unit

1. Remove the IC Cover (L/R) and the IC Shaft Cover (L/R). (p206)
2. Remove the Maintenance Tank (L/R). (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

3. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the Left Cover. (p211)
6. Unlock the Carriage Unit. (p201)
7. Open the Front Cover (Middle).
8. Remove the screw that secures the Ink Tube Guide, and remove the Ink Tube Guide.

A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x8: one piece

9. Remove the seven EJ Roller Units from the Cutter Unit.
10. Push down the handle, and remove the Cutter Cover.

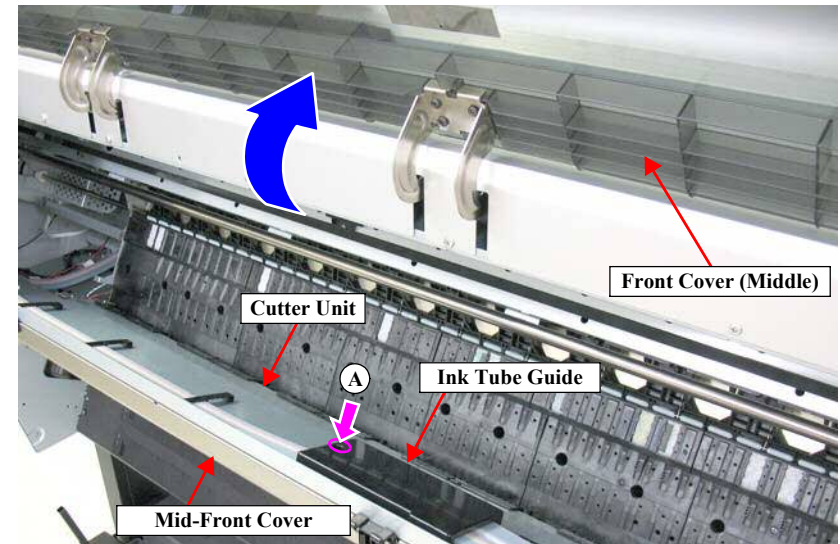


Figure 4-93. Removing the Ink Tube Guide

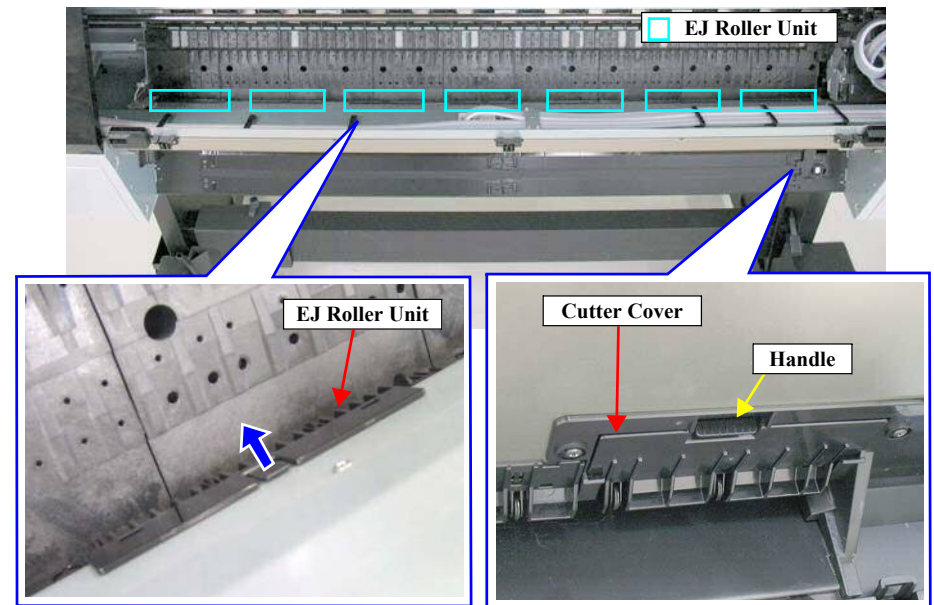


Figure 4-94. Removing the EJ Roller Unit



11. Remove the two screws that secure the Cutter Cover Support, and remove the Cutter Cover Support.  
B) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: two pieces
12. Remove the seven screws that secure the Mid-Front Cover, and remove the Mid-Front Cover.  
C) Black, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: seven pieces
13. Hold up the lower part of the Cutter Motor Cover and slide it upwards to remove the Cutter Motor Cover.

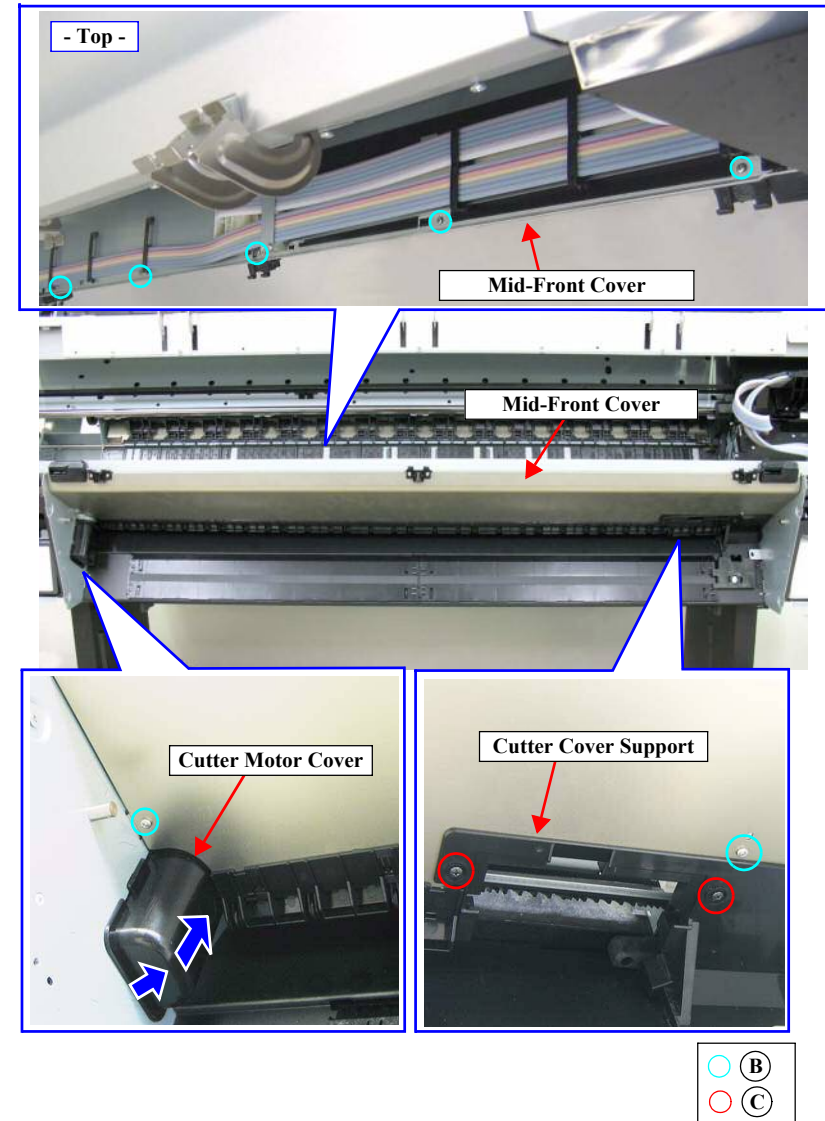


Figure 4-95. Removing the Mid-Front Cover

14. Disconnect the connector (CN307) on the Sub Board Assy; C.
15. Release the harness from the clamp 1.
16. Release all the harnesses from the clamp 2.

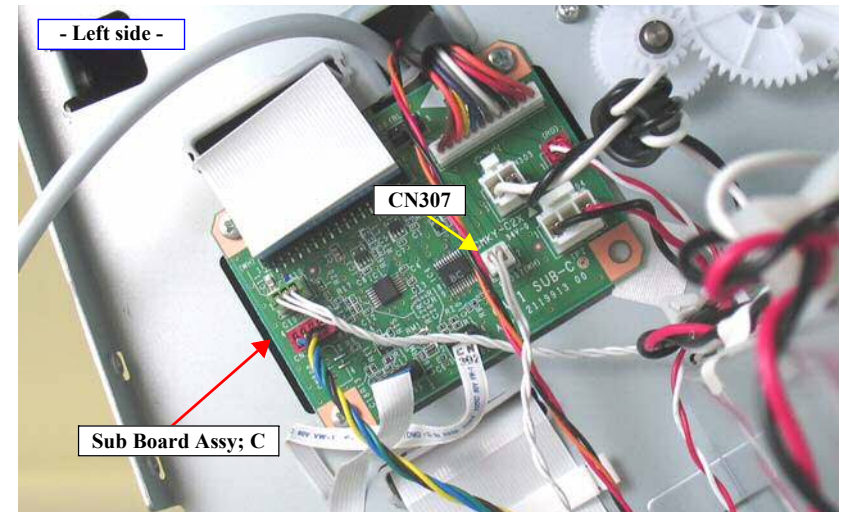


Figure 4-96. Disconnecting the connector

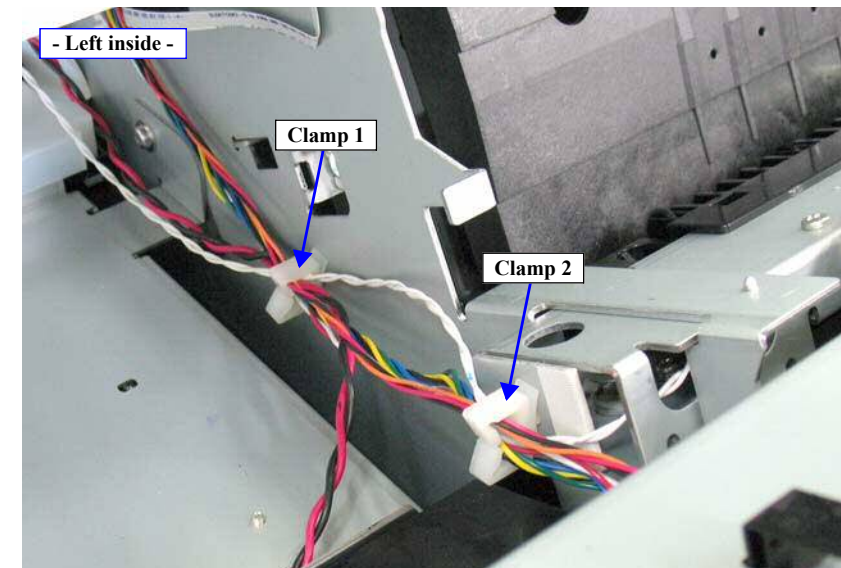


Figure 4-97. Releasing the Harness

17. Move the carriage over the platen.
18. Remove the five screws that secure the Cutter Unit.
  - D) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M3x6: five pieces
19. Slide the Cutter Unit to the right to detach the left side of it from the main body, then disconnect the connector of the Cutter Motor.
20. Remove the Cutter Unit while pulling out the harness.



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (*see p351*) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the Cutter Unit.  
<Adjustment Item>

1. Cut Position Adjustment

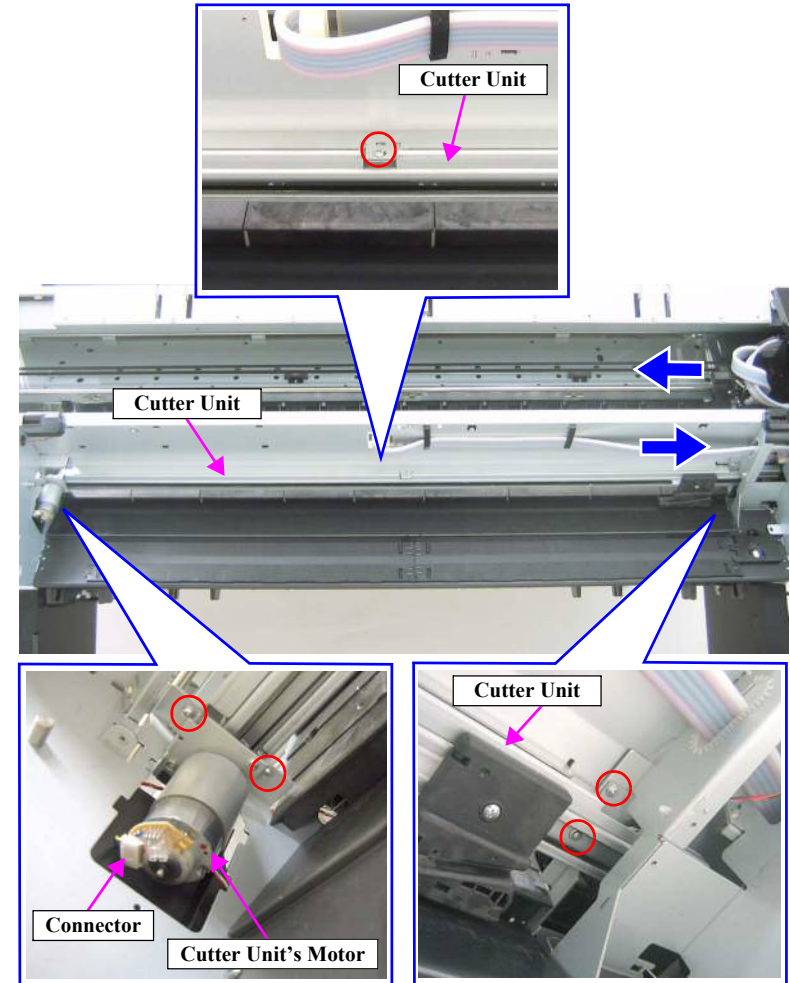


Figure 4-98. Removing the Cutter Unit



#### 4.4.5.7 Suction Fan

1. Push down the handle of the cover and remove the cover.
2. Remove the five screws that secure the Front Cover (Lower), and remove the Front Cover (Lower).
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Truss machine screw M4x6: five pieces

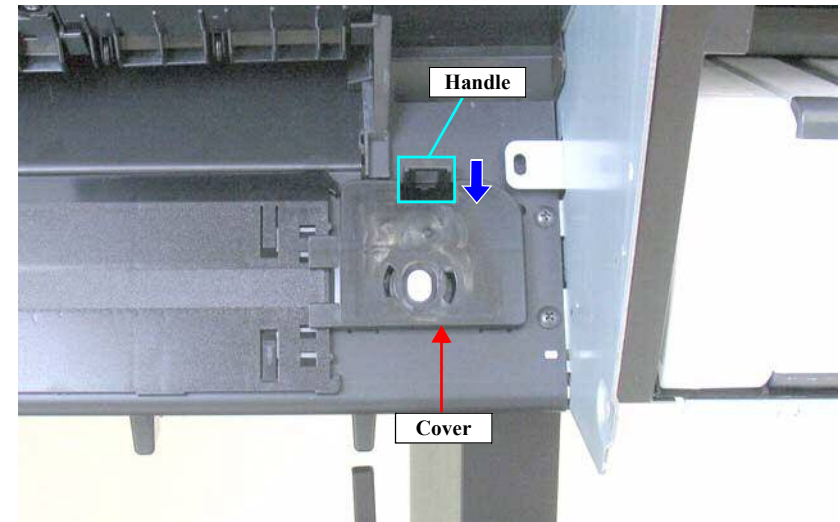


Figure 4-99. Removing the cover

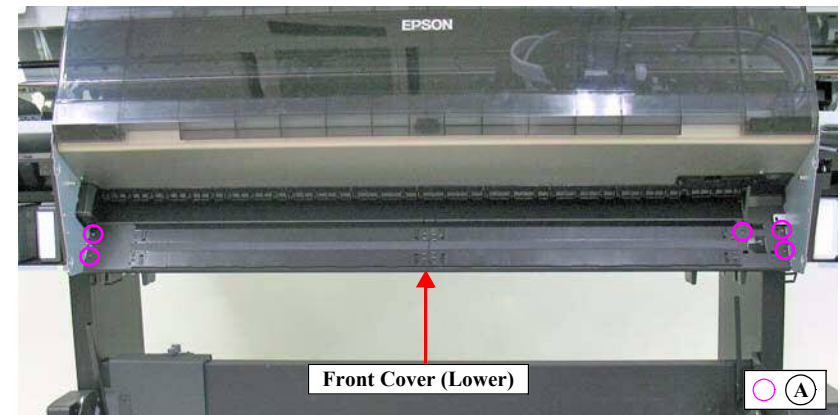


Figure 4-100. Removing the Front Cover (Lower)

**CAUTION**

Since the hooks of the EJ Roller are fragile, do not apply excessive force to them in the next step.

3. Release the two each hooks that secure the EJ Rollers, and remove the EJ Rollers.
4. Disconnect the relay connector.
5. Release the harness from the clamp.
6. Remove the three screws that secure the Suction Fan.
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head P-tite M3x12: three pieces
7. Remove the Suction Fan.

**ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED**

Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the Suction Fan.

<Adjustment Item>

1. Suction Fan Operation Check

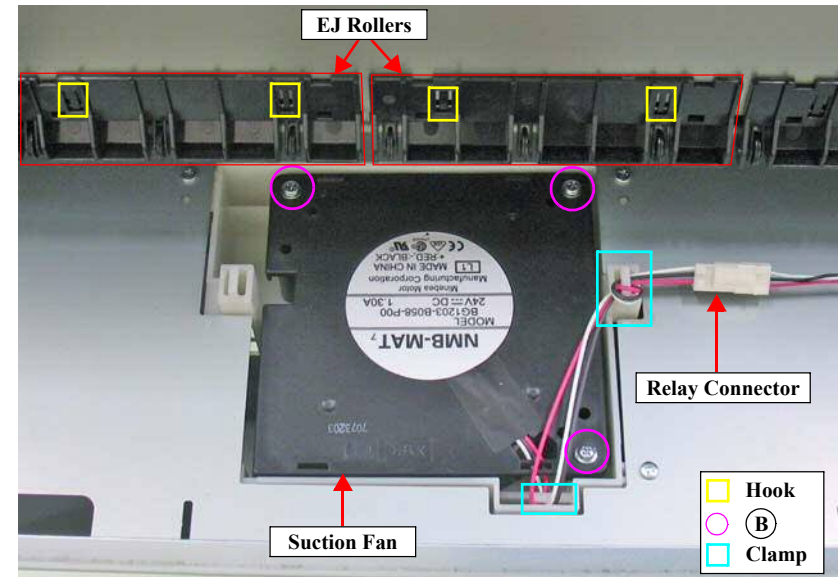


Figure 4-101. Removing the Suction Fan

#### 4.4.5.8 PF Encoder Sensor

1. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
2. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

3. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
4. Remove the two screw that secures the PF Encoder Sensor Holder, and remove the PF Encoder Sensor Holder.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: two pieces
5. Disconnect the FFC from the PF Encoder.
6. Remove the screw that secures the PF Encoder Sensor, and remove the PF Encoder Sensor.
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Pan machine screw M2x5: one piece

ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (see p351) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the PF Encoder Sensor.

<Adjustment Item>

1. PF Encoder Adjustment
2. Skew Check
3. Band Feed
4. T&B&S Adjustment

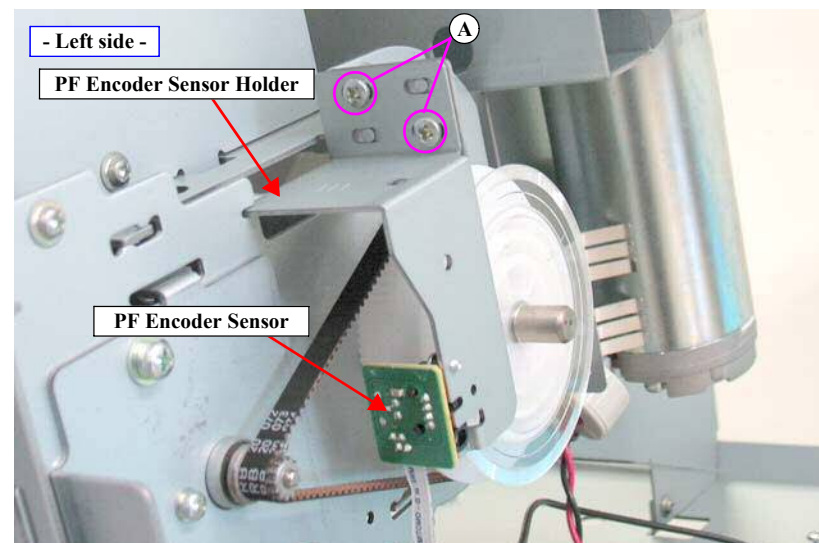


Figure 4-102. Removing the PF Encoder Sensor Holder

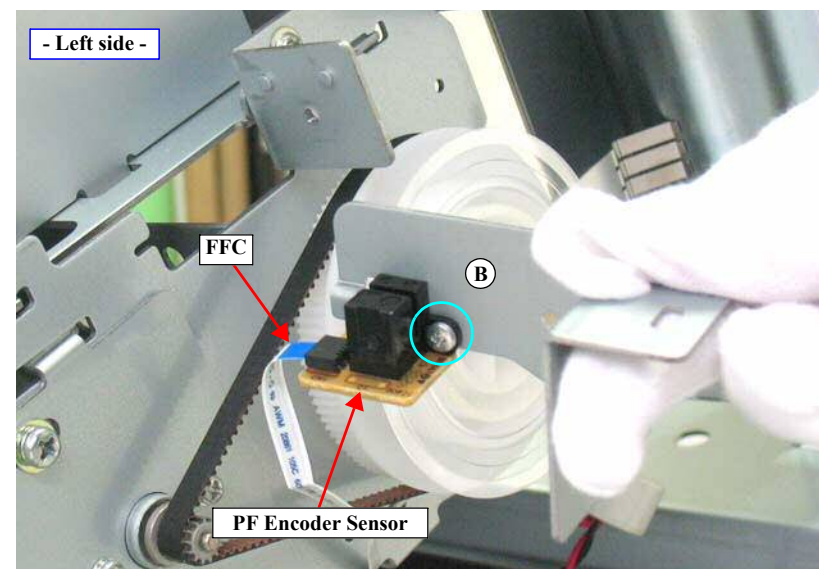


Figure 4-103. Removing the PF Encoder Sensor

#### 4.4.5.9 PF Motor

1. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
2. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

3. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
4. Disconnect the connector (CN303) on the Sub Board Assy; C.
5. Release the harness from the tape, the clamps, and the cable retainer.
6. Remove the three screws that secure the PF Motor Mounting Plate.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M4x8: three pieces
7. Detach the PF Timing Belt from the drive pulley of the PF Motor, and remove the PF Motor Mounting Plate.

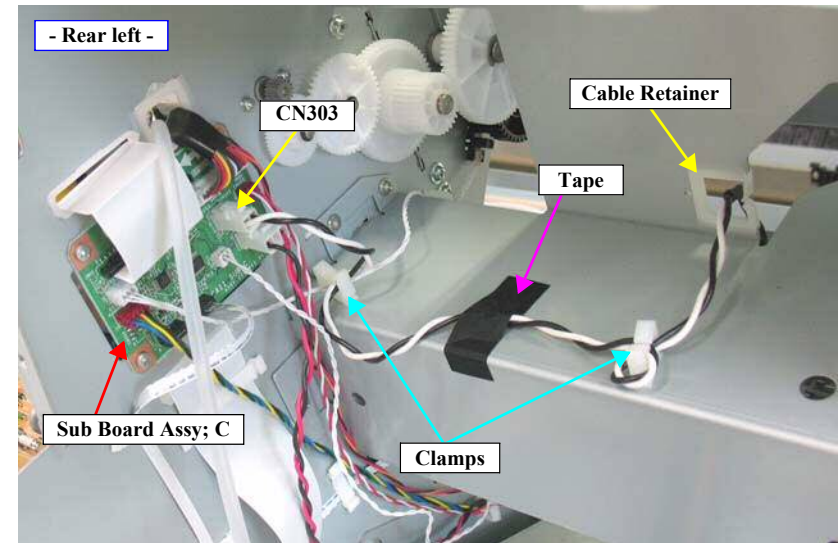


Figure 4-104. Releasing the harness

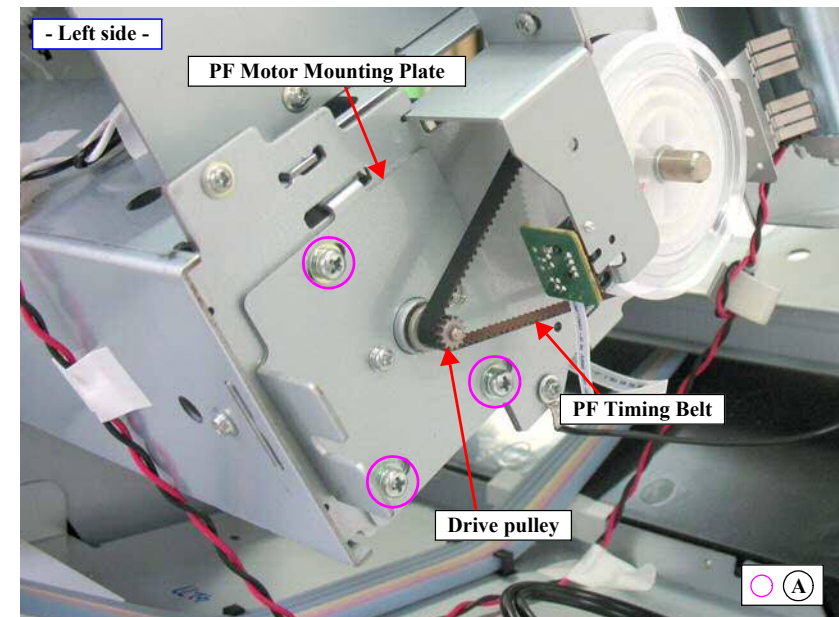


Figure 4-105. Removing the PF Motor Mounting Plate



8. Remove the two screws that secure the PF Motor, and remove the PF Motor from the PF Motor Mounting Plate.

B) Silver, Phillips, Pan S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x6: two pieces

ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the PF Motor.

<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (PF Motor)
2. CR/PF Motor Current Input
3. PF Timing Belt Tension Adjustment
4. T&B&S Adjustment

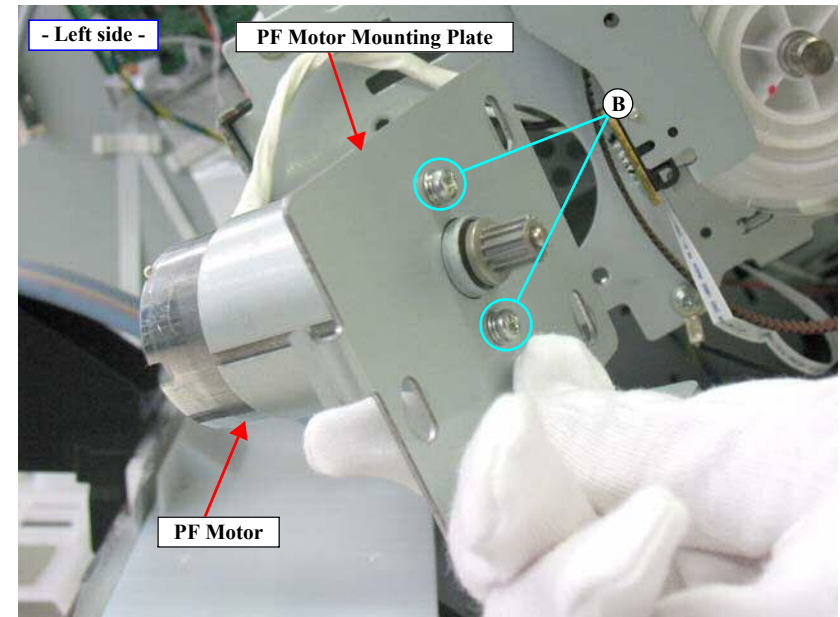


Figure 4-106. Removing the PF Motor

## 4.4.6 Ink System Mechanism

### 4.4.6.1 Ink System Unit



When powering this product, high-voltage current may be applied on the Ink System Unit (Flushing Box). To prevent ELECTRIC SHOCK, do not touch the Ink System Unit (Flushing Box) when the power is ON. If the shock should happen, the flowing current is very tiny, about a few hundreds  $\mu\text{A}$ , therefore it will not do any harm on the human body.

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the center. (p201)
6. Release the two hooks to remove the Tube Stopper, and pull off the Waste Ink Tube from the drain outlet of the Maintenance Tank.
7. Release the Waste Ink Tube from the tube retainer.



Prepare a waste cloth or the like in advance, be careful not to contaminate the surroundings because ink may leak from the Waste Ink Tube.

8. Disconnect the connectors (CN213, CN214, CN216, CN217, CN218, CN221, CN222, CN223, CN224) on the Sub Board Assy; B shown in **Figure 4-108**. (See **Figure 4-54** for the connector locations.)

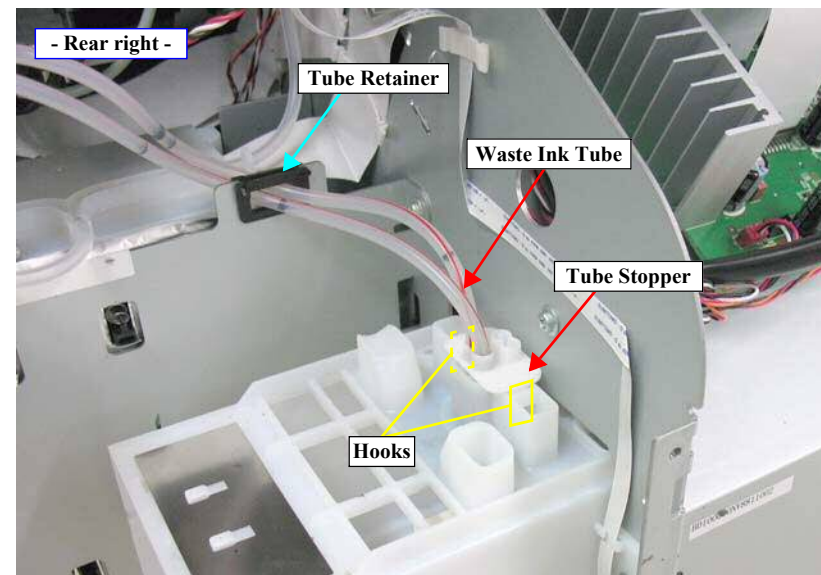


Figure 4-107. Disconnecting the Waste Ink Tube

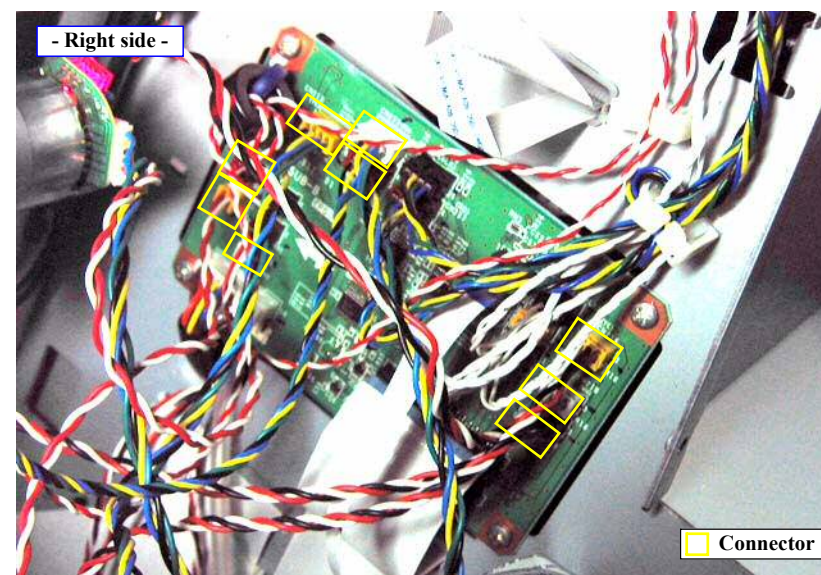


Figure 4-108. Disconnecting the connectors

9. Remove the two screws that secure the AID Board Cover, and remove the AID Board Cover.

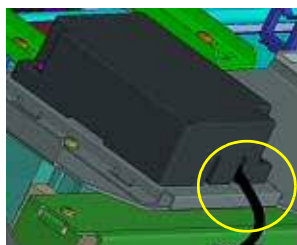
A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x8: two pieces

10. Disconnect the connector (CN2) on the AID Board.

# REASSEMBLY



After installing the AID Board Cover, check the status of the cable connected to the CN2 on the AID Board, and if the black and white cables can be seen, place the white one over the black one.



<Black and white cables are hidden>  
No treatment required



<Black & white cables can be seen>  
Place the white over the black

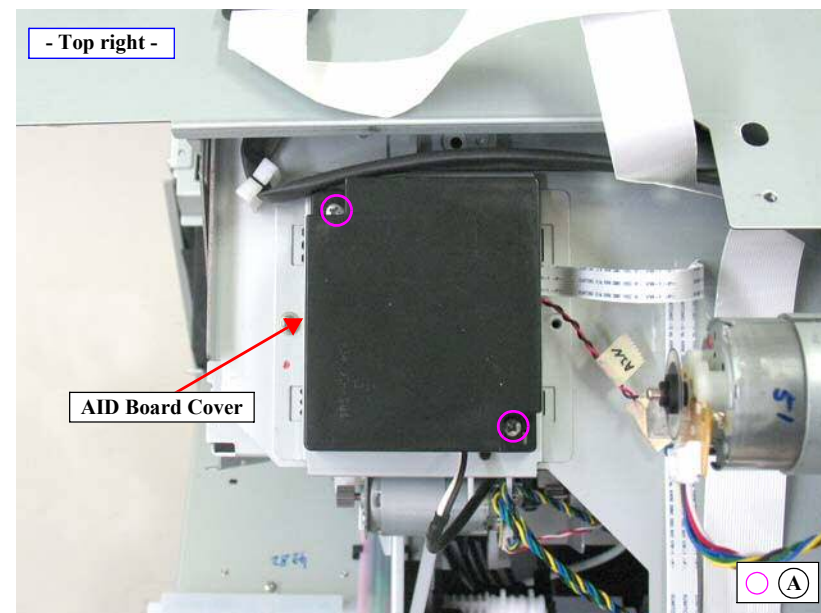


Figure 4-109. Removing the AID Board Cover

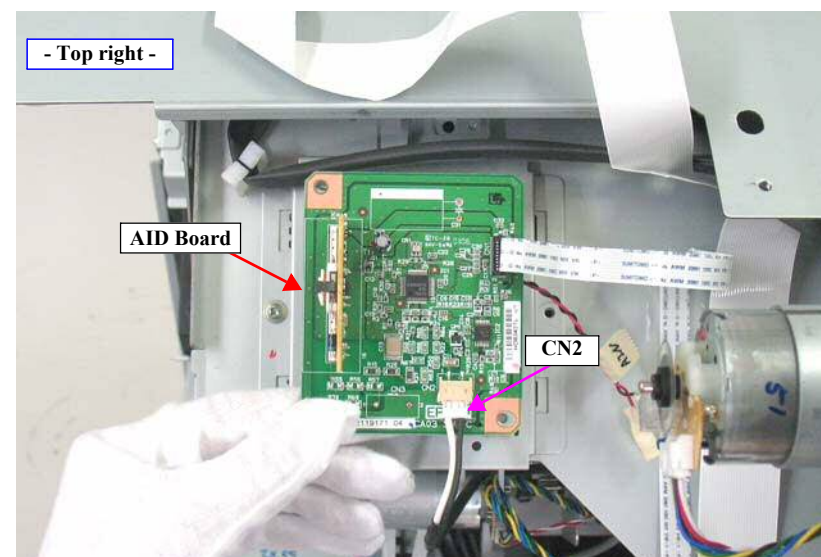


Figure 4-110. Disconnecting the connector on the AID Board.



11. Remove the three screws that secure the plate, and remove the plate.
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: three pieces
12. Remove the screw that secures the Ink System Unit.
  - C) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M4x6: one piece
13. Hold up the Ink System Unit to disengage the hook from the main body, and remove the Ink System Unit.

ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED

Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Ink System Unit.

<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (Wiper)
2. Counter Clear (Pump Motor)
3. Cleaning PG Adjustment
4. AID Function Check

## CAUTION



The Ink System Unit as an ASP does not include the Wiper Cleaner Assy ([see p269](#)). Therefore, if you replace the Ink System Unit, set a new Wiper Cleaner Assy or move the part from the old Ink System Unit to set it on the new one.

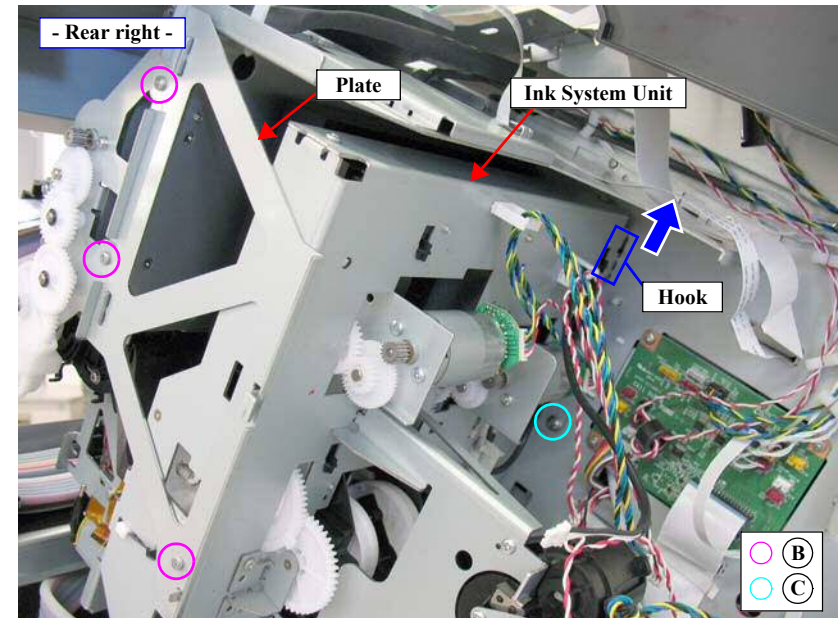


Figure 4-111. Removing the Ink System Unit



#### 4.4.6.2 Wiper Cleaner Assy

##### PREPARATION FOR REPLACEMENT

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Reinstall the Control Panel.
6. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►], [PaperFeed ▼], and [OK] button.
7. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Maintenance** → **Wiper Exchange** → **Sequence**.
8. Press the [OK] button.  
The Carriage Unit moves, then the Wiper Cleaner Assy moves to the replacement position.
9. Open the Front Cover.

##### DISASSEMBLING PROCEDURE

###### CAUTION



When working, follow the instructions below. Otherwise; this procedure is carried out with the power on, the Carriage Unit may operate.

- Do not close the Front Cover.
- Do not touch the parts other than described here.
- Do not press any button on the Control Panel.

1. Push up the tab of the Wiper Cleaner Assy, and remove the Wiper Cleaner Assy.

###### ADJUSTMENT REQUIRED



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (see p351) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Wiper Cleaner Assy.

<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (Wiper)

##### AFTER REPLACEMENT

1. Press the [OK] button while **[Enter] Finish** is displayed.  
The Carriage Unit moves to the home position.
2. Turn the printer OFF.
3. Reinstall the removed parts.

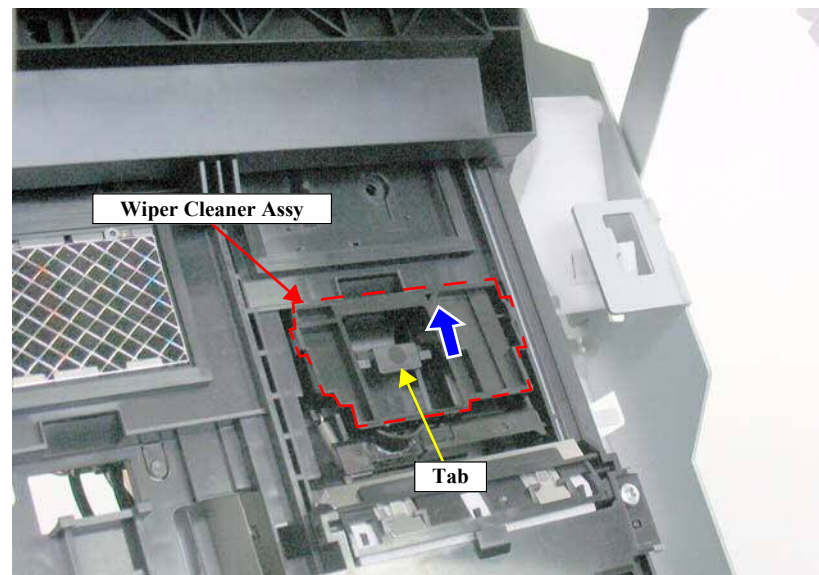


Figure 4-112. Removing the Wiper Cleaner Assy

### 4.4.6.3 Printhead

#### PREPARATION FOR THE REPLACEMENT

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►], [PaperFeed ▼], and [OK].
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Maintenance** → **Head Exchange**.
3. Press the [OK] button.  
The Carriage Unit moves to the replacement position.
4. Turn the printer OFF when **[Press] Power Button** is displayed.

#### DISASSEMBLING PROCEDURE

*NOTE: In Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710's case, the Printhead can be removed by starting from [Step 13](#).*

1. Remove the Control Panel. ([p203](#))
2. Remove the IC Cover (L/R) and the IC Shaft Cover (L/R). ([p206](#))
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank (L/R). ([p208](#))

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

4. Remove the Right Cover. ([p209](#))
5. Remove the Left Cover. ([p209](#))
6. Remove the Top Cover. ([p214](#))
7. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the left end. ([p201](#))
8. Disengage the four hooks on the bottom, and remove the CR Belt Cover.
9. Disconnect the connectors (CN116, CN118) and FFCs (CN100, CN101, CN104, CN105, CN106) on the Sub Board Assy.

*NOTE: CN116 and CN118 are only for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908.*

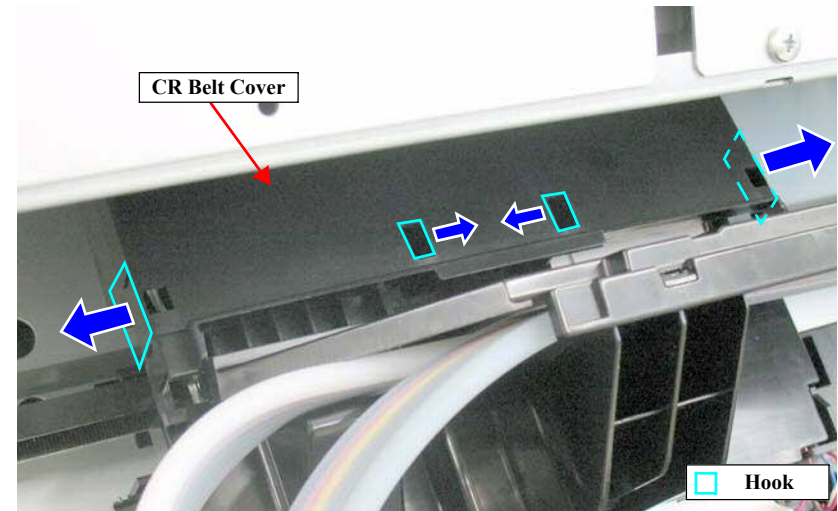


Figure 4-113. Removing the CR Belt Cover

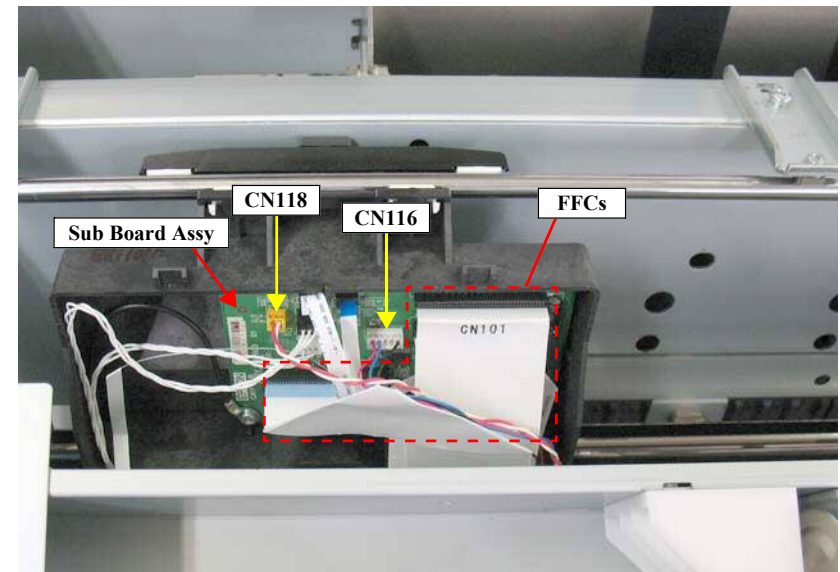


Figure 4-114. Disconnecting the connectors

10. Remove the three screws that secure the Ink Tube Holder.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x8: three pieces
11. Disengage the two hooks that secure the Ink Tube Holder, and remove the Ink Tube Holder.
12. Release the harness from the cable guides.

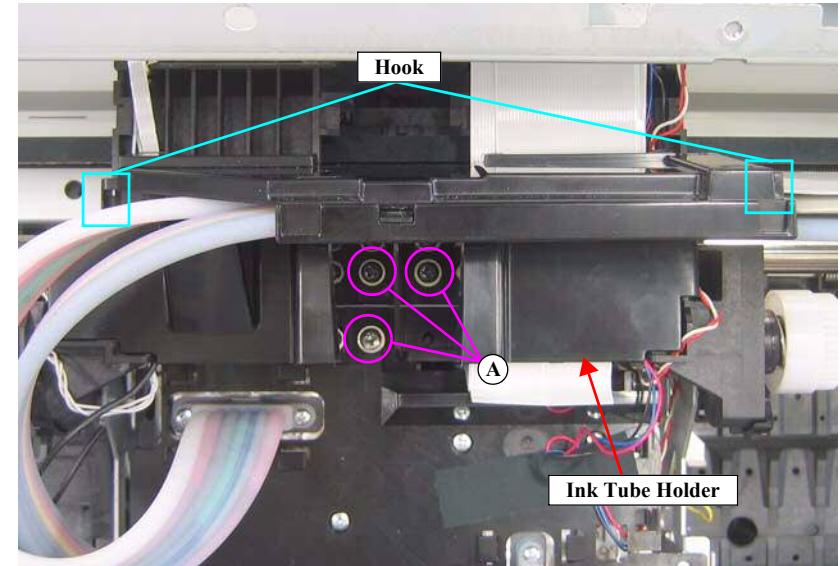


Figure 4-115. Removing the Ink Tube Holder

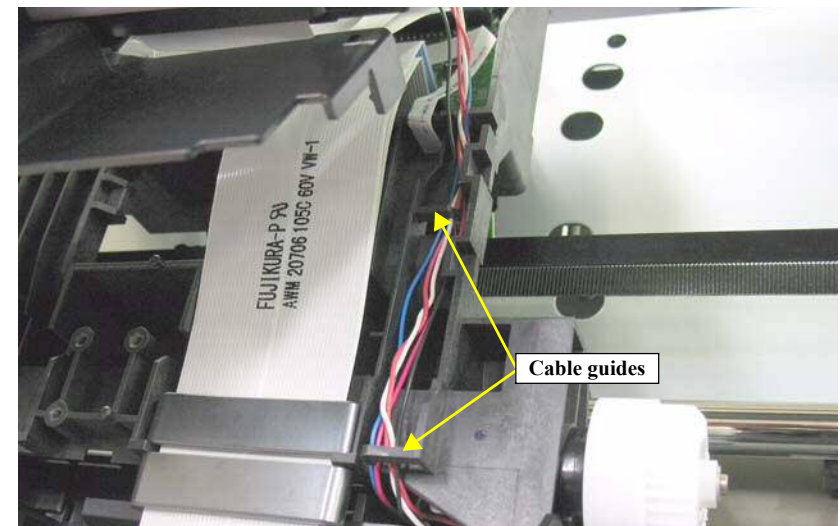


Figure 4-116. Releasing the Harness



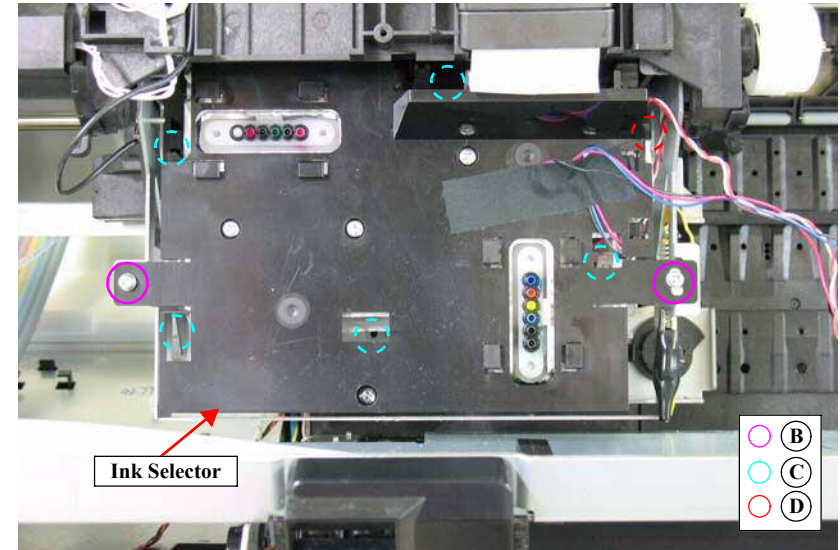
**CHECK  
POINT**

In **Figure 4-117** and **Figure 4-119**, the Ink Tubes are disconnected to indicate the screw locations easily. In actual operation; however, there is no need to disconnect them.

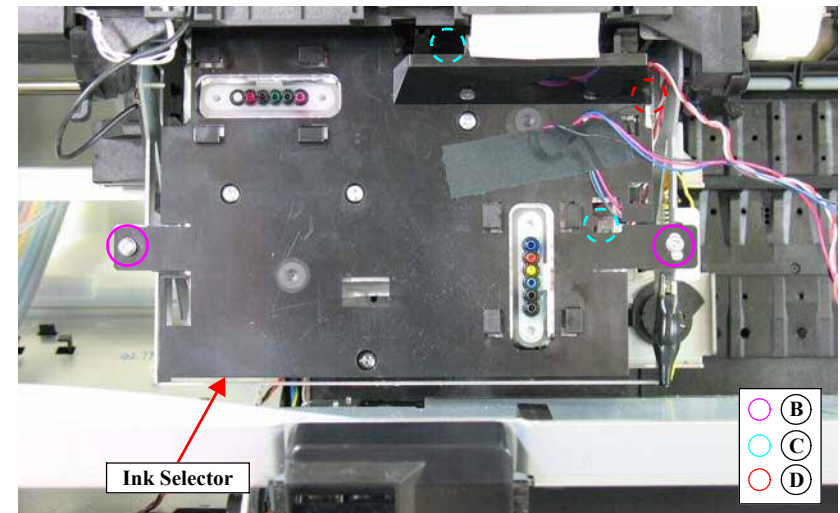
13. Remove the screws that secure the Ink Selector.

**NOTE:** The number of screws differs between Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908 and Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710.

- B) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x8:  
Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908: two pieces  
Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710: two pieces
- C) Silver, Phillips, Pan screw with S.W & P.W. M3x8:  
Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908: five pieces  
Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710: two pieces
- D) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x12:  
Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908: one piece  
Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710: one piece



**Figure 4-117. Ink Selector fixing screws (Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908)**



**Figure 4-118. Ink Selector fixing screws (Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710)**

14. Remove the Ink Selector.
15. Attach the hook on the rear of the Ink Selector onto the Main Frame to secure the Ink Selector. *See Figure 4-120.*

**CAUTION**

After secure the Ink Selector, make sure to place a sheet of paper below it to catch the spilling remaining ink.

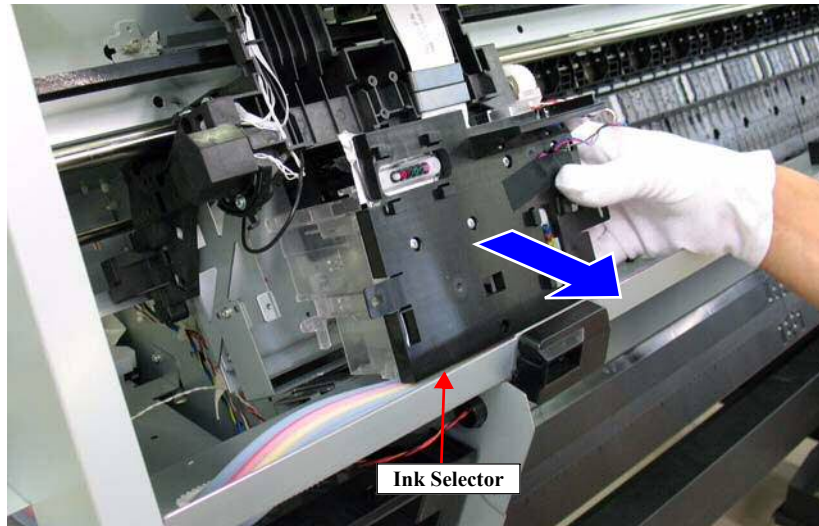


Figure 4-119. Removing the Ink Selector

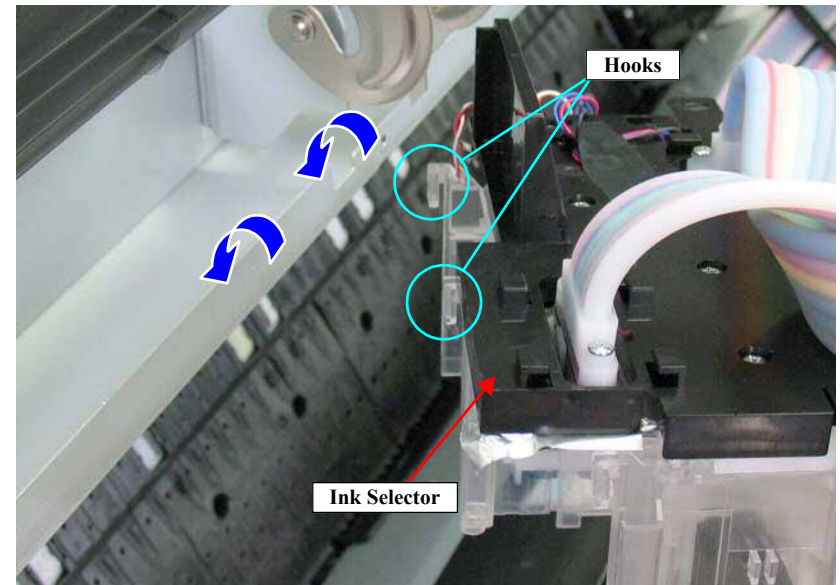


Figure 4-120. Securing the Ink Selector to the main body (1)

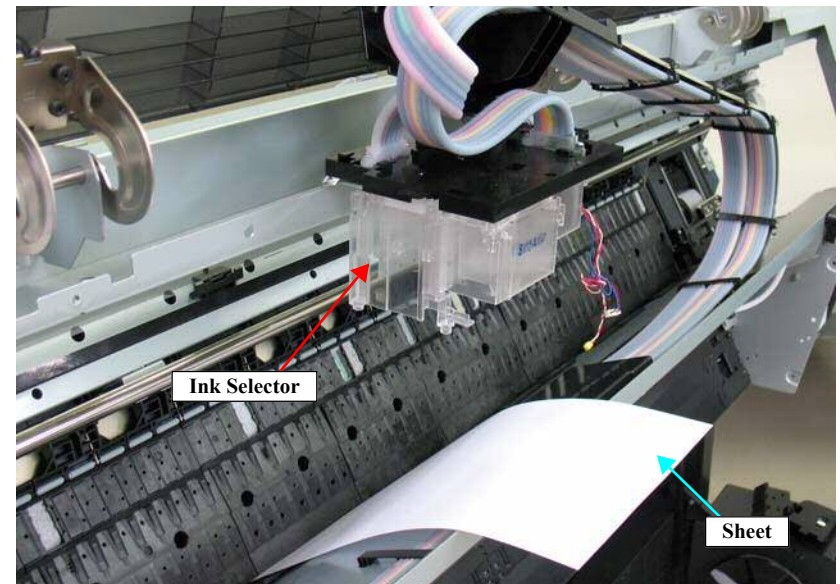


Figure 4-121. Securing the Ink Selector to the main body (2)

16. Disconnect four FFCs from the Printhead. *See Figure 4-122.*

**CHECK  
POINT**



In the next step, to make it easier to remove the screw of the Printhead it is recommended to use the long shaft screwdriver.

17. Remove the three screws that secure the Printhead, and remove the Printhead. *See Figure 4-122.*

E) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M2x6 (bit: No.1): three pieces

**ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED**



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (*see p351*) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the Printhead.

<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (Printhead)
2. Head Cleaning
3. Head Rank ID
4. Nozzle Check
5. AID Function Check
6. Head PG Adjustment
7. Printhead Slant Adjustment (CR)
8. Printhead Slant Adjustment (PF)
9. Auto Uni-D Adjustment
10. Auto Bi-D Adjustment
11. Colorimetric Calibration (Color ID)
12. Print Image

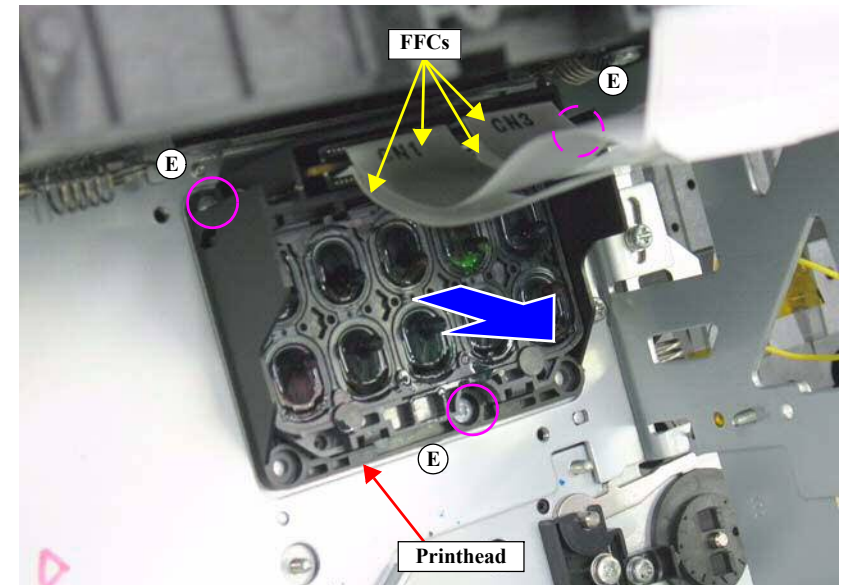


Figure 4-122. Removing the Printhead



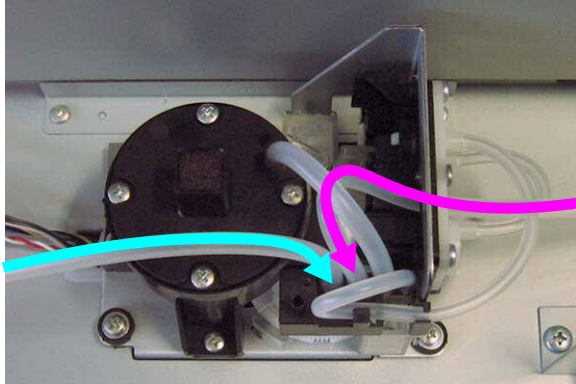
#### 4.4.6.4 Pressurizing Unit

1. Remove the Rear Cover. (p220)

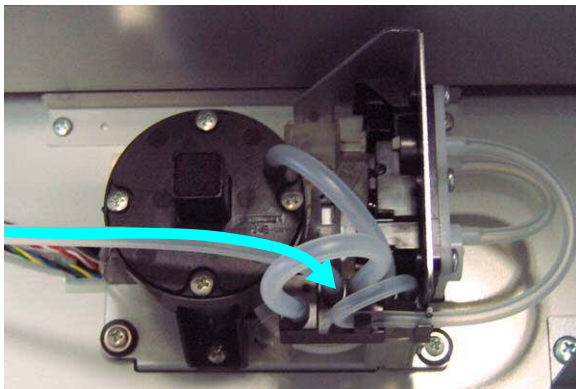


In the next step, confirm the destination of the Pressure Tubes so as to restore the original routing when reassembling.

Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908



Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710



2. Disconnect the two Pressure Tubes from the Pressurizing Unit.

NOTE: In Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710's case, disconnect only the Pressure Tube shown in **Figure 4-123**.

3. Remove the three screws that secure the Pressurizing Unit.

A) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x10: three pieces

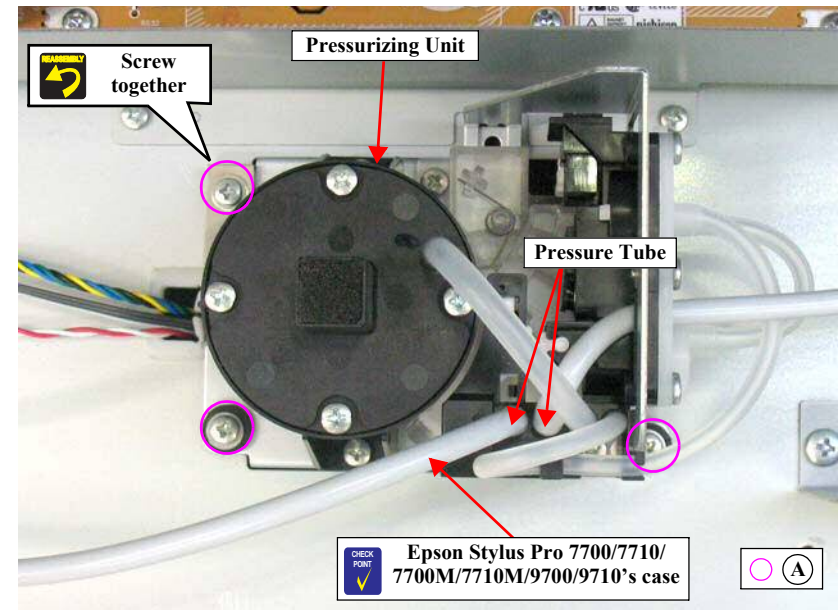


Figure 4-123. Removing the screws securing the Pressurizing Unit



Secure the Pressurizing Unit together with the grounding plate using the same screw shown in the figure.

4. Hold up the Pressurizing Unit, and release the harness from the clamp and the cable retainer.
5. Disconnect the two connectors, and remove the Pressurizing Unit.

**ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED**

Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Pressurizing Unit.

<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (Pressure Motor)

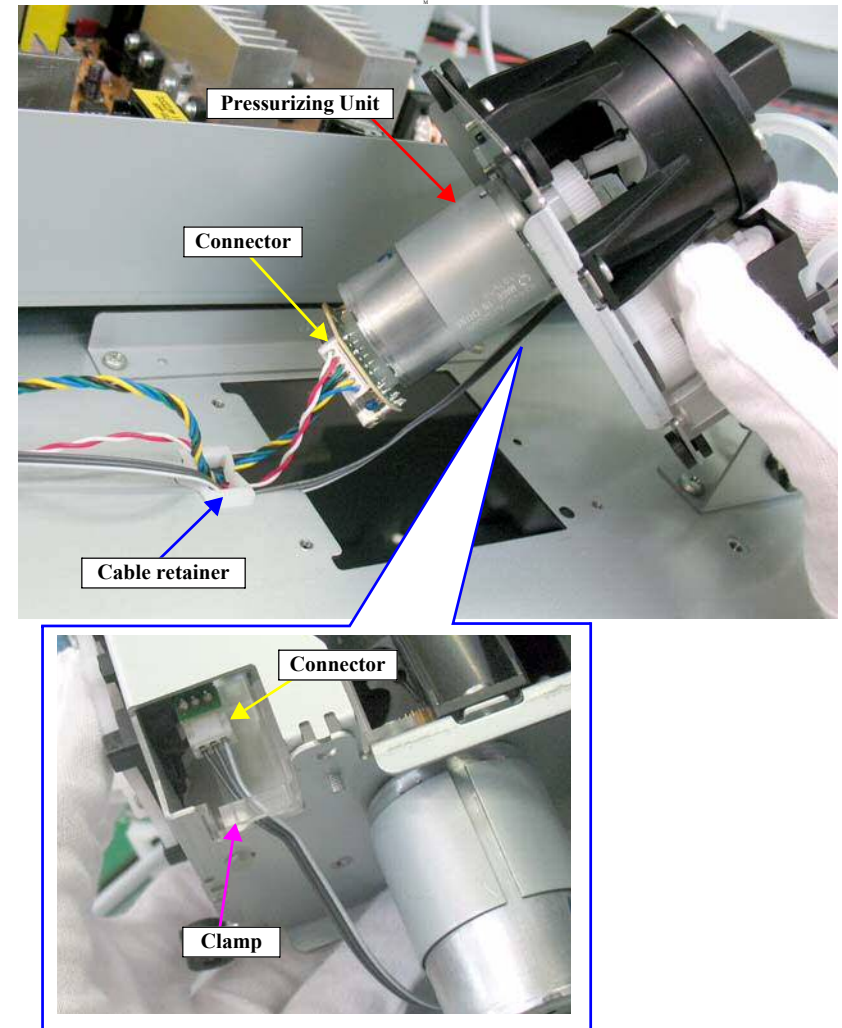


Figure 4-124. Removing the Pressurizing Unit



#### 4.4.6.5 Ink Cartridge Holder R



- This part is not compatible between Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/7890/7908/9890/9908 and Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710. If replaced with a new part, see " 4.1.5 Differences of the parts/components between models " ([Page 172](#)) in advance, then replace it with the correct one.
- When disassembling this part, be sure to discharge ink in advance following the procedure below.

---

#### INK DISCHARGE

---

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►], [PaperFeed ▼], and [OK].
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Maintenance** → **I/H Exchange** → **Sequence**.
3. Press the [OK] button.
4. Remove all the ink cartridges, and install the drain cartridges to all the ink slots.
5. Press the [OK] button to discharge ink.
6. Turn the printer OFF when [**Press**] **Power Button** is displayed.



After discharging ink, the initial charge flag is automatically set.  
The next time turning the power on, the initial ink charge sequence starts.

---

**DISASSEMBLING PROCEDURE**

---

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Release the two hooks to remove the Tube Stopper, and pull off the Waste Ink Tube from the drain outlet of the Maintenance Tank.
6. Release the Waste Ink Tubes from the tube retainer.
7. Pull off the Pressure Tube from the main body, and release the Pressure Tube from the guide.

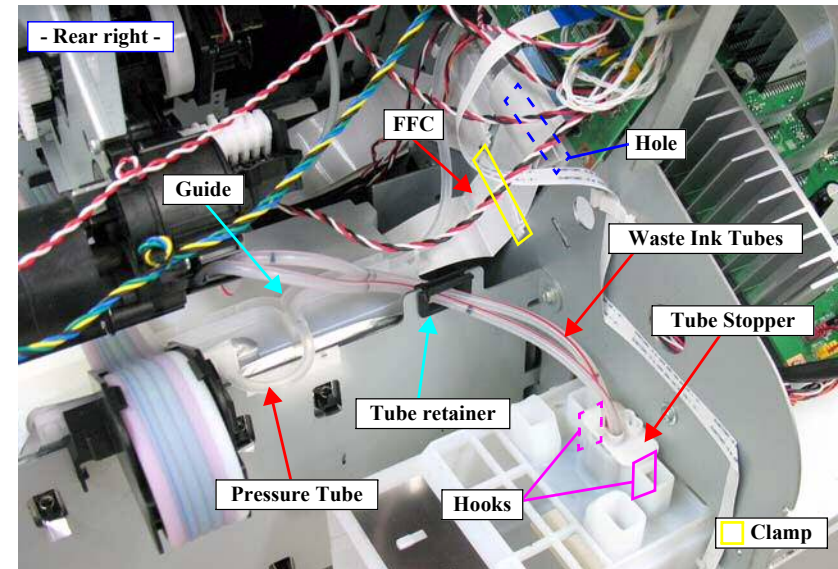


Figure 4-125. Releasing the FFC, Waste Ink Tube and Pressure Tube

8. Release the Ink Tubes from the two hooks on the Ink Cartridge Holder R.
9. Pull the Ink Tube backward to give it some slack.

**REASSEMBLY**

**Pull the Ink Tube forward to remove the slack. Route the Ink Tube so as not to apply load to the bend of the tube at the front of the printer.**

10. Release the Ink Tubes from the six hooks on the Ink Tube Guide.

**CAUTION**

**Be careful not to apply load to the joint of the Ink Cartridge Holder R and the Ink Tube.**

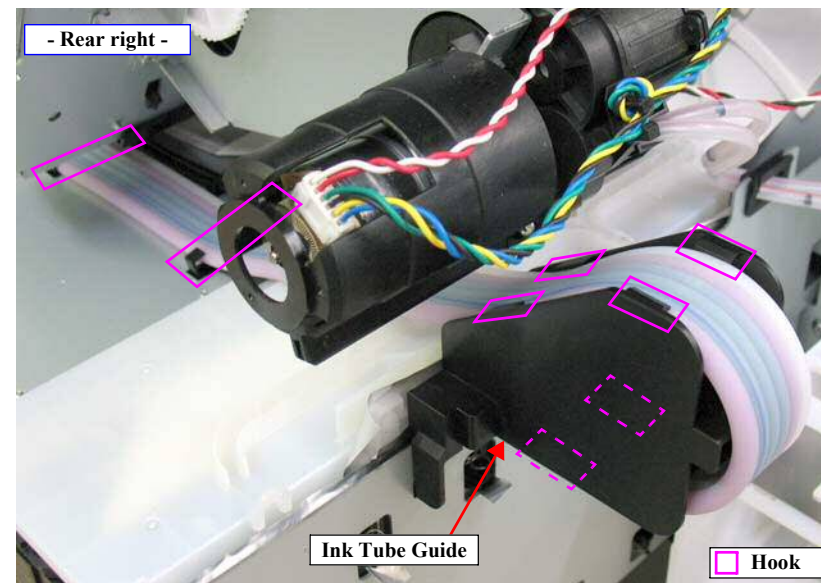


Figure 4-126. Releasing the Ink Tube Guide (before released)

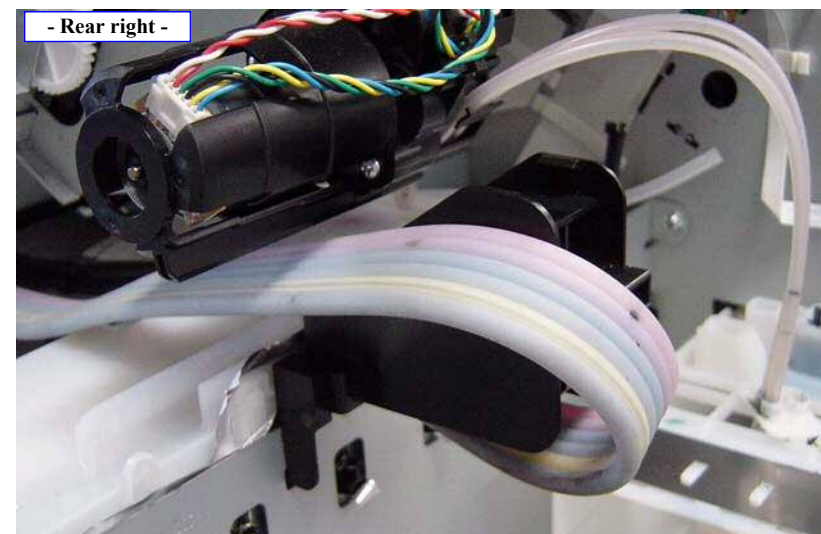


Figure 4-127. Releasing the Ink Tube Guide (after released)

11. Disengage the two hooks that secure the Ink Tube Guide, and remove the Ink Tube Guide from the main body.

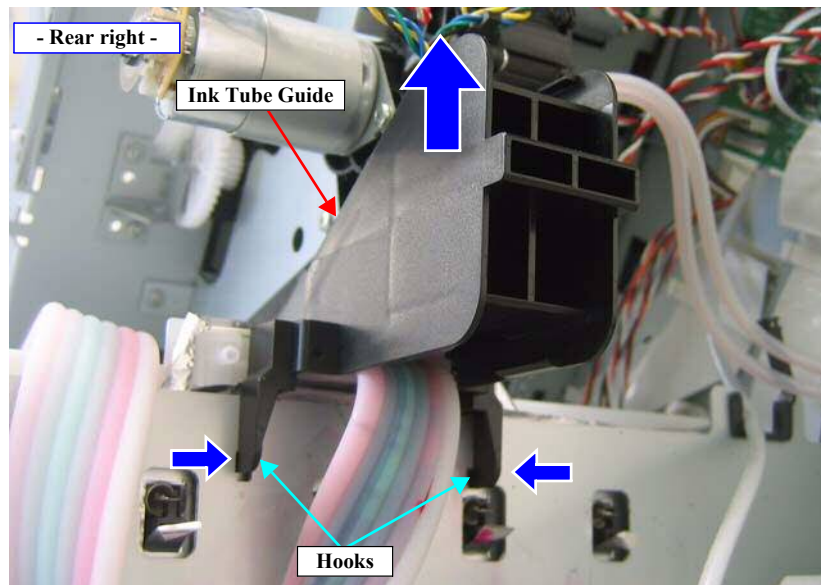


Figure 4-128. Removing the Ink Tube Guide

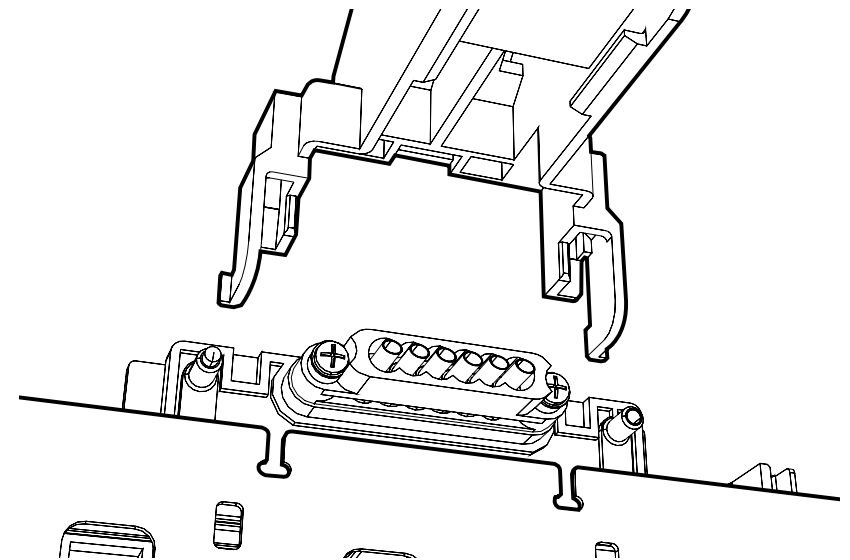
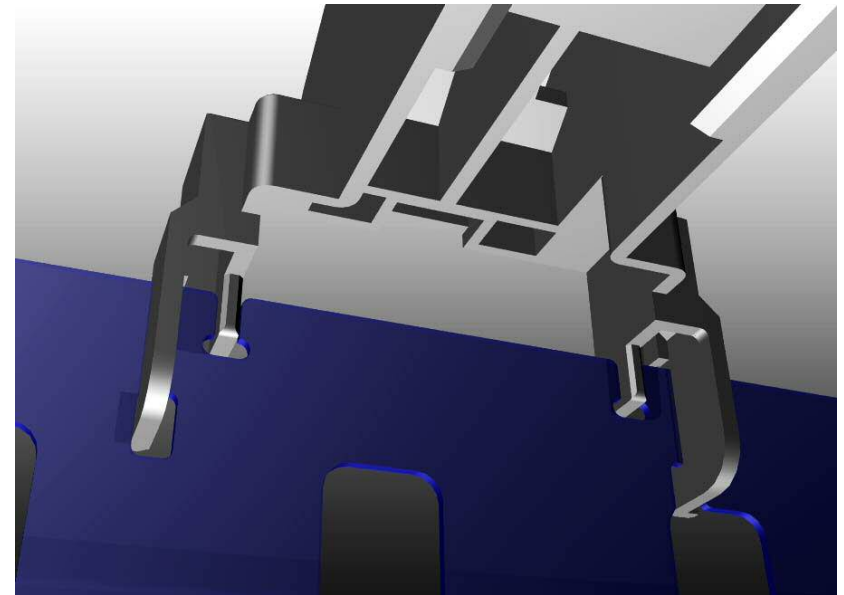


Figure 4-129. Removing the Ink Tube Guide



12. Release the two hooks securing the cover of the Ink Holder Board Assy R, and remove the cover.
13. Release the FFC from the clamp.
14. Disconnect the FFC from the Ink Holder Board Assy R.

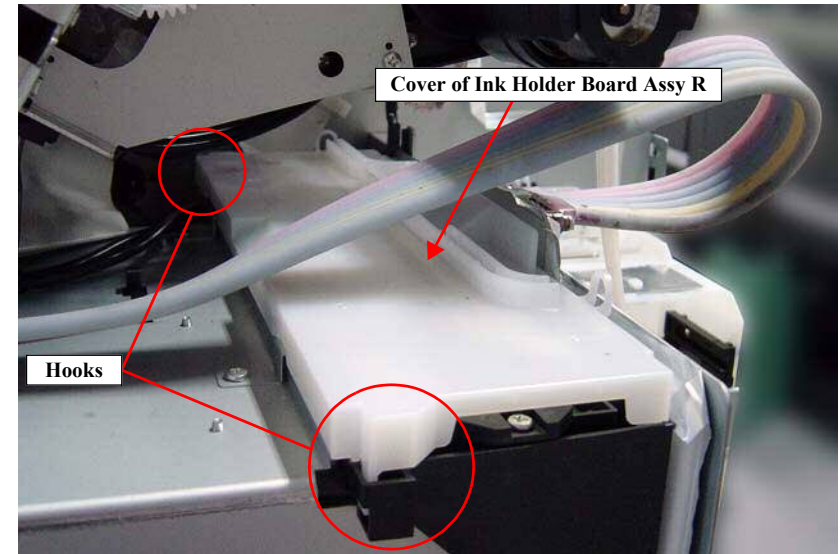


Figure 4-130. Removing the Cover of Ink Holder Board Assy R

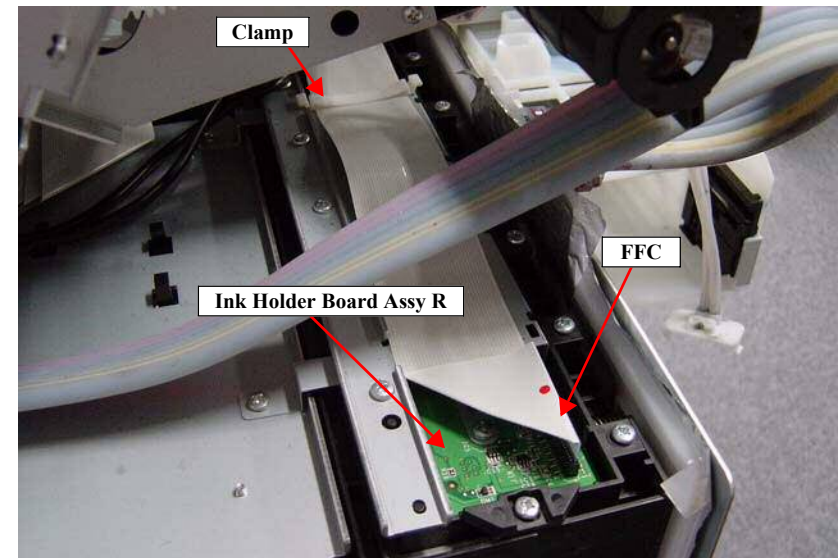


Figure 4-131. Disconnecting the FFC

15. Remove the two screws, and detach the Ink Tubes.

A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M2x16 (bit: No.1): two pieces

#### REASSEMBLY



- Use a torque driver with the torque given below when tightening the screws securing the Ink Tube.  
3±0.5kgf·cm
- Make sure to install the SEAL RUBBER, JOINT, ASP. The SEAL RUBBER, JOINT, ASP (1518317) is not included in the Ink Cartridge Holder and the Ink Tube; therefore, re-use the originally installed one. Make sure to confirm there is no damage or no foreign material attached on the sealing rubber or the joint section visually then. Installing a damaged part such as mentioned above may cause ink leakage.



16. Remove the six screws that secure the Ink Cartridge Holder Mounting Plate, and remove the Ink Cartridge Holder Mounting Plate.

B) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M4x8: four pieces

C) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M3x6: two pieces

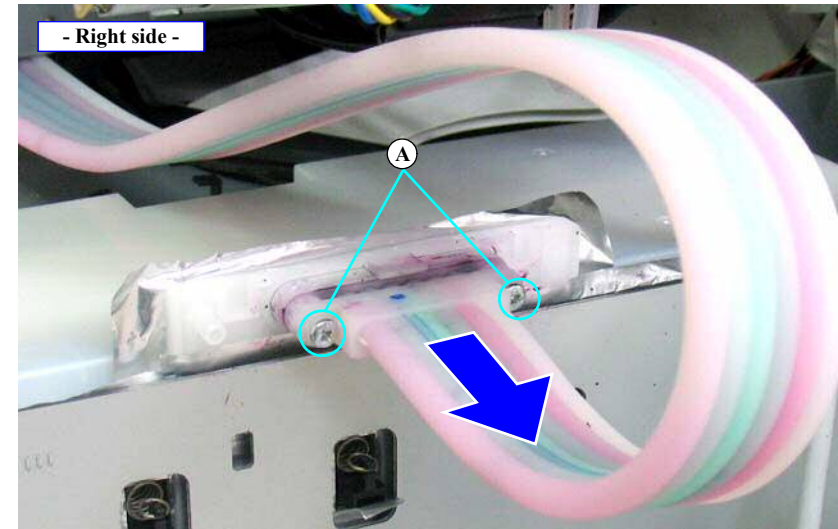


Figure 4-132. Detaching the Ink Tube

17. Remove the four screws that secure the Ink Cartridge Holder R.

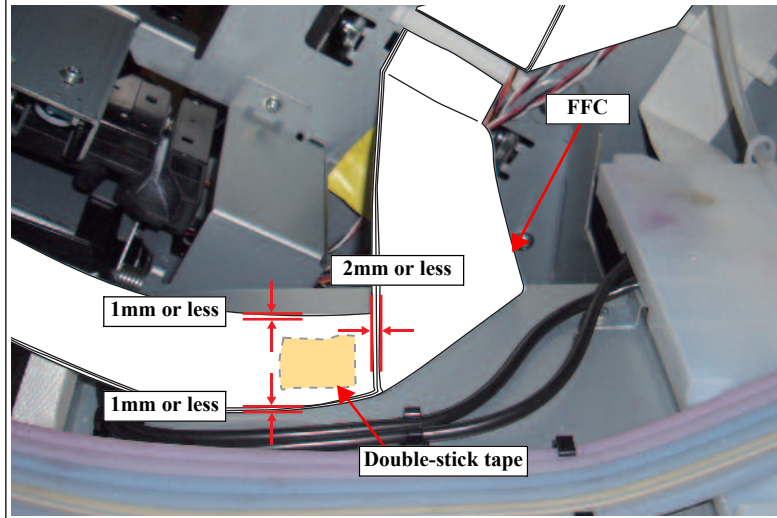
D) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M4x6: four pieces

18. Remove the Ink Cartridge Holder R.

# REASSEMBLY



When installing the Ink Cartridge Holder R, first align the three FFCs referring to the figure below, then attach them. If they are not correctly aligned, electric noise may occur and cause interferences on electric equipments placed near by.



# ADJUSTMENT REQUIRED



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Ink Cartridge Holder R.  
<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (IH Absorber)
2. Ink Holder Adjustment
3. Air Leak Check for Ink Supply Sys.

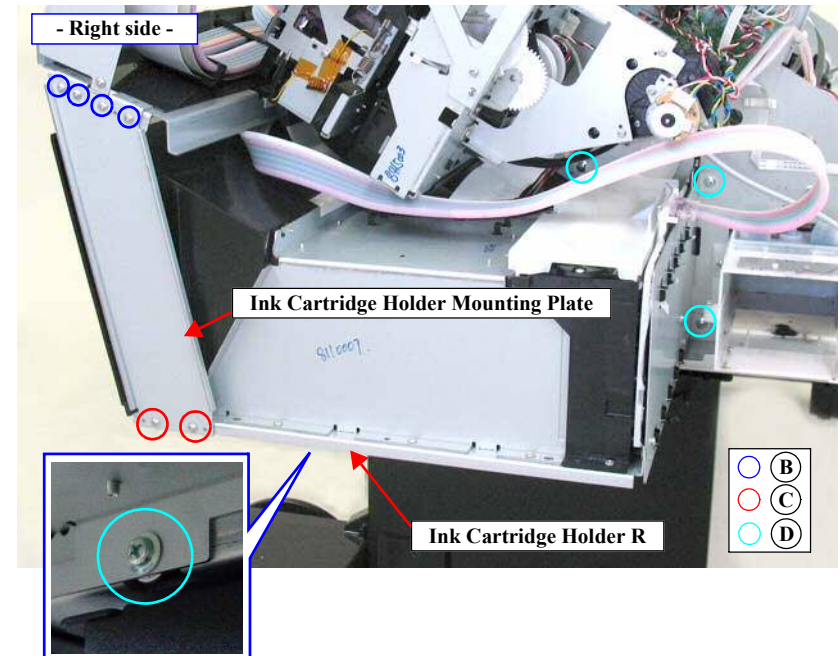


Figure 4-133. Removing the Ink Cartridge Holder R

#### 4.4.6.6 Ink Cartridge Holder L

*NOTE: This part is installed on Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/  
WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908 only.*



- When replacing this part with a new one, refer to " 4.1.5 Differences of the parts/components between models " ([Page 172](#)) in advance, and make sure to replace it with a correct one.
- When disassembling this part, be sure to discharge ink in advance following the procedure below.

---

#### INK DISCHARGE

---

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►], [PaperFeed ▼], and [OK].
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Maintenance** → **I/H Exchange** → **Sequence**.
3. Press the [OK] button.
4. Remove all the ink cartridges, and install the drain cartridges to all the ink slots.
5. Press the [OK] button to discharge ink.
6. Turn the printer OFF when **[Press] Power Button** is displayed.



After discharging ink, the initial charge flag is automatically set.  
The next time turning the power on, the initial ink charge sequence starts.



## DISASSEMBLING PROCEDURE

1. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
2. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

3. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
4. Peel off the tape shown in the figure, and release the harness.
5. Pull off the Pressure Tube from the main body and release the Pressure Tube from the guide.
6. Release the Ink Tubes from the two hooks on the Ink Cartridge Holder L.
7. Pull the Ink Tube backward to give it some slack.



**Pull the Ink Tube forward to remove the slack. Route the Ink Tube so as not to apply load to the bend of the tube at the front of the printer.**

8. Release the Ink Tubes from the six hooks on the Ink Tube Guide.



**Be careful not to apply load to the joint of the Ink Cartridge Holder L and the Ink Tube.**

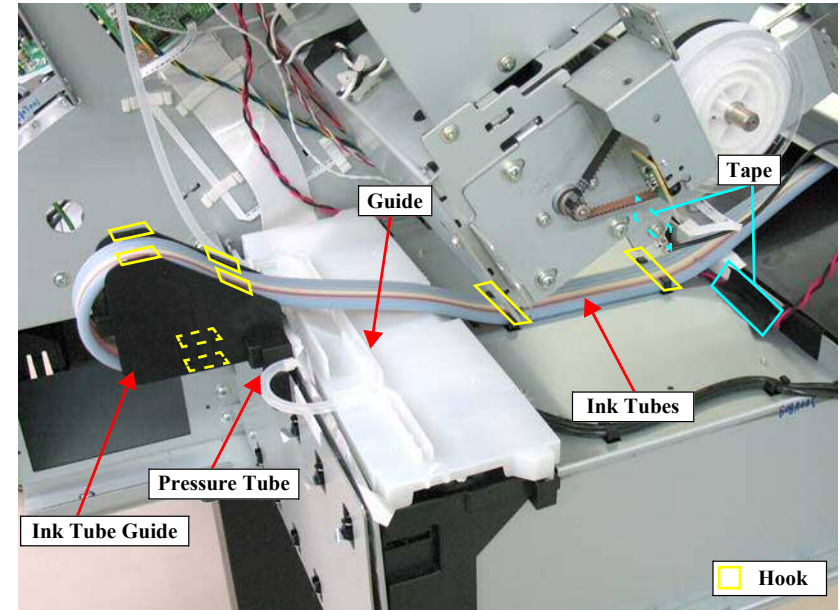


Figure 4-134. Releasing the Waste Ink Tube and Pressure Tube (before released)



Figure 4-135. Releasing the Waste Ink Tube and Pressure Tube (after released)

9. Disengage the two hooks that secure the Ink Tube Guide, and remove the Ink Tube Guide from the main body.

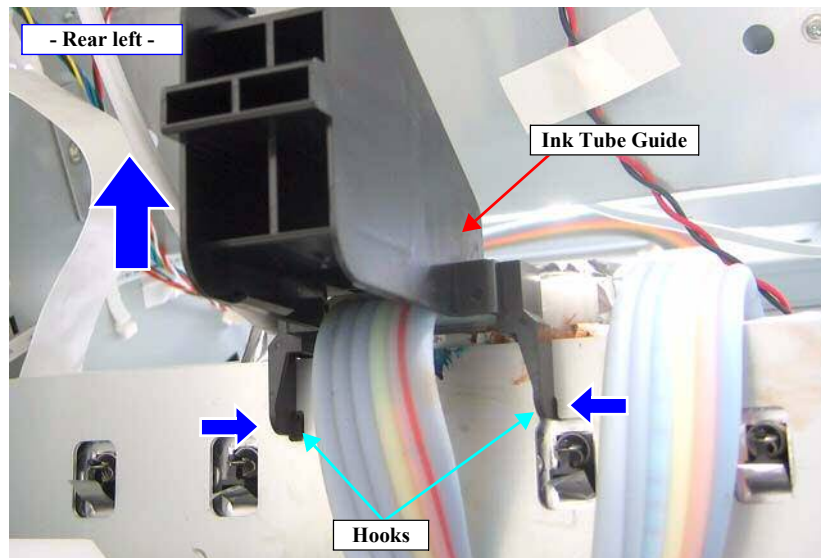


Figure 4-136. Removing the Ink Tube Guide

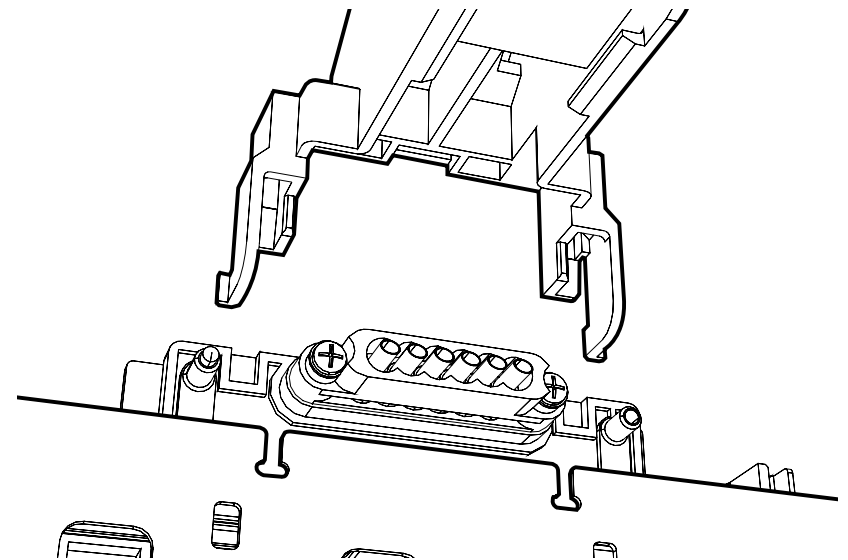
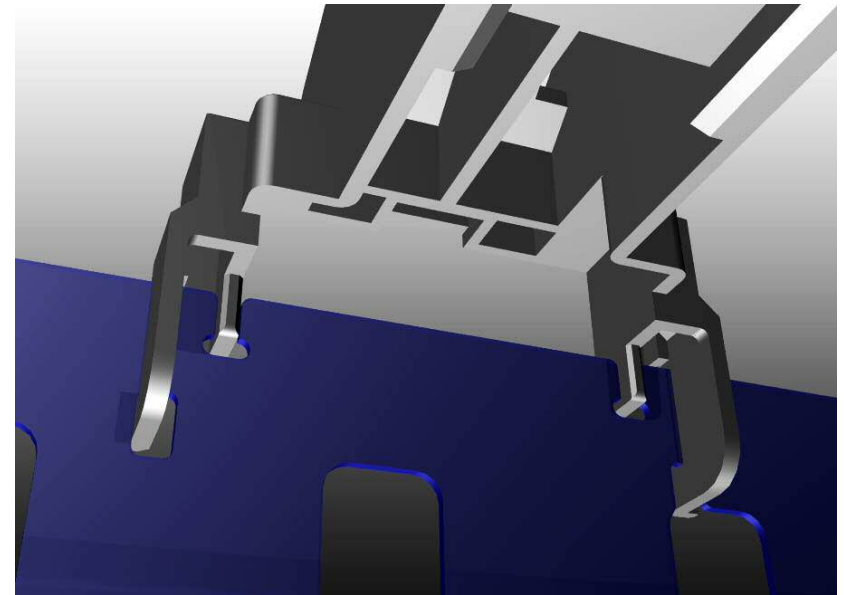


Figure 4-137. Removing the Ink Tube Guide

10. Release the two hooks securing the cover of the Ink Holder Board Assy L, and remove the cover.
11. Disconnect the FFC from the Ink Holder Board Assy L.

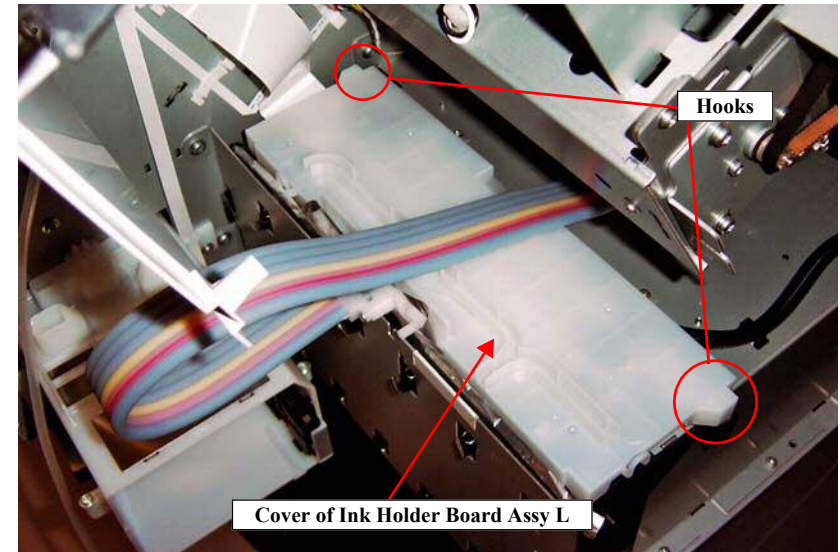


Figure 4-138. Removing the Cover of Ink Holder Board Assy L

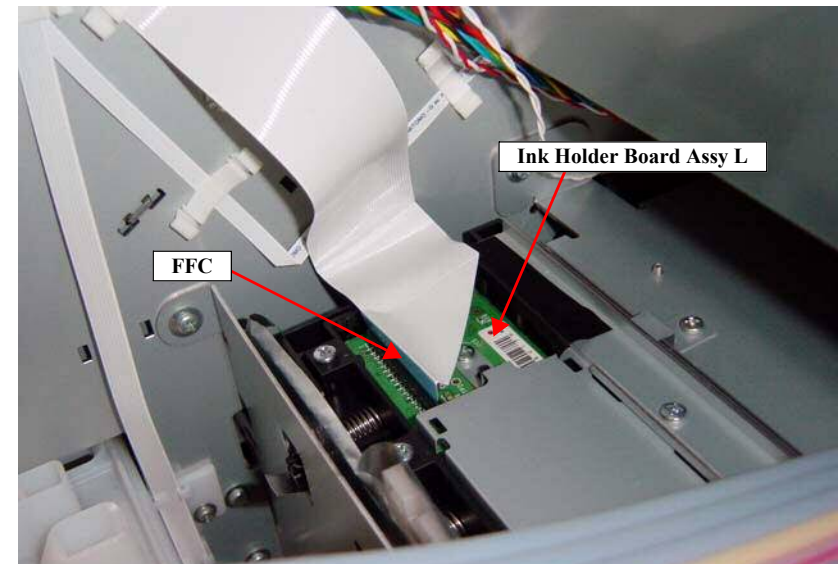


Figure 4-139. Disconnecting the FFC



12. Remove the two screws, and detach the Ink Tubes.

A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M2x16 (bit: No.1): two pieces

**REASSEMBLY**

- Use a torque driver with the torque given below when tightening the screws securing the Ink Tube.  
 $3\pm0.5\text{kgf}\cdot\text{cm}$
- Make sure to install the SEAL RUBBER, JOINT, ASP. The SEAL RUBBER, JOINT, ASP (1518317) is not included in the Ink Cartridge Holder and the Ink Tube; therefore, re-use the originally installed one. Make sure to confirm there is no damage or no foreign material attached on the sealing rubber or the joint section visually then. Installing a damaged part such as mentioned above may cause ink leakage.

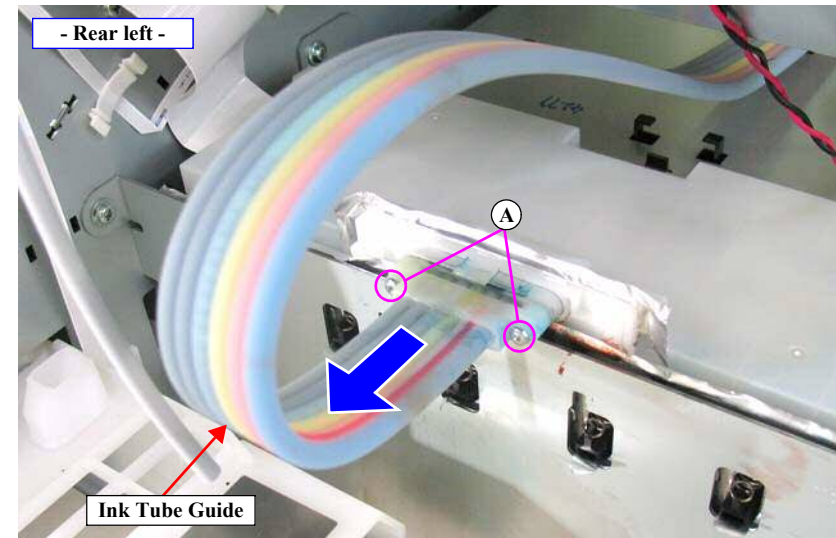


Figure 4-140. Detaching the Ink Tube

13. Remove the six screws that secure the Ink Cartridge Holder Mounting Plate, and remove the Ink Cartridge Holder Mounting Plate.

B) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M4x8: four pieces

C) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M3x6: two pieces



**Secure the Ink Cartridge Holder L together with the grounding wire using the same screw shown in the figure.**

14. Remove the four screws that secure the Ink Cartridge Holder L.

D) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M4x6: four pieces

15. Remove the Ink Cartridge Holder L.



**Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Ink Cartridge Holder L.**  
**<Adjustment Item>**

1. Counter Clear (IH Absorber)
2. Ink Holder Adjustment
3. Air Leak Check for Ink Supply Sys.

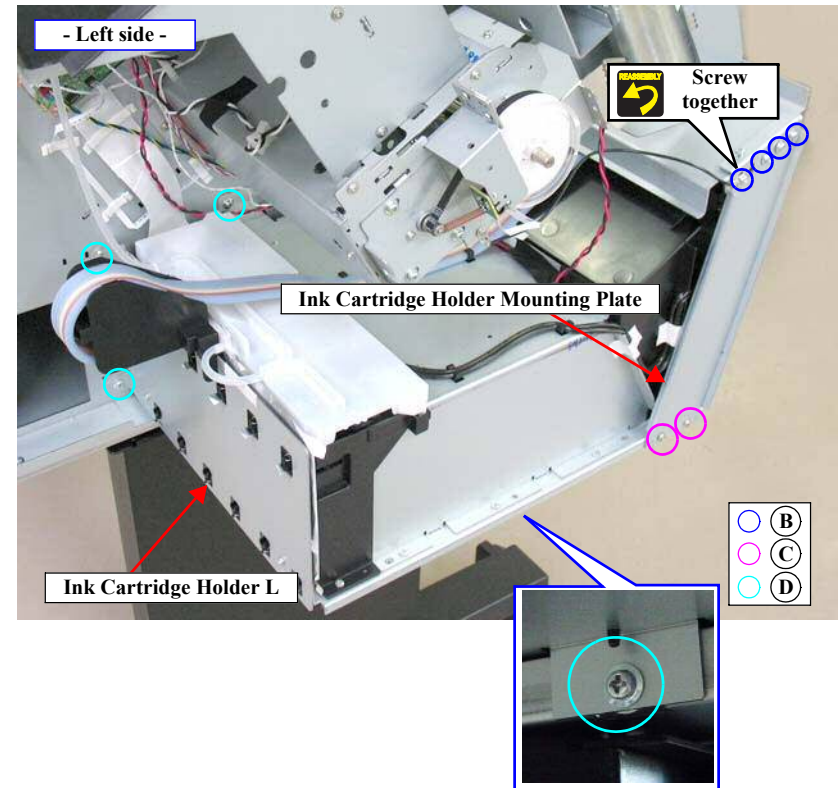


Figure 4-141. Removing the Ink Cartridge Holder L

#### 4.4.6.7 Ink Holder Board Assy L

1. Remove the IC Cover L and the IC Shaft Cover L. (p206)
2. Remove the Maintenance Tank L. (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

3. Remove the Left Cover. (p211)
4. Pull off the Pressure Tube from the main body.

**REASSEMBLY**

**Make sure to connect the Pressure Tube.**

5. Release the Pressure Tube from the guide of the Board Cover.
6. Pull out the Pressure Tube from the hole of the Board Cover.
7. Disengage the two hooks, and remove the Board Cover.

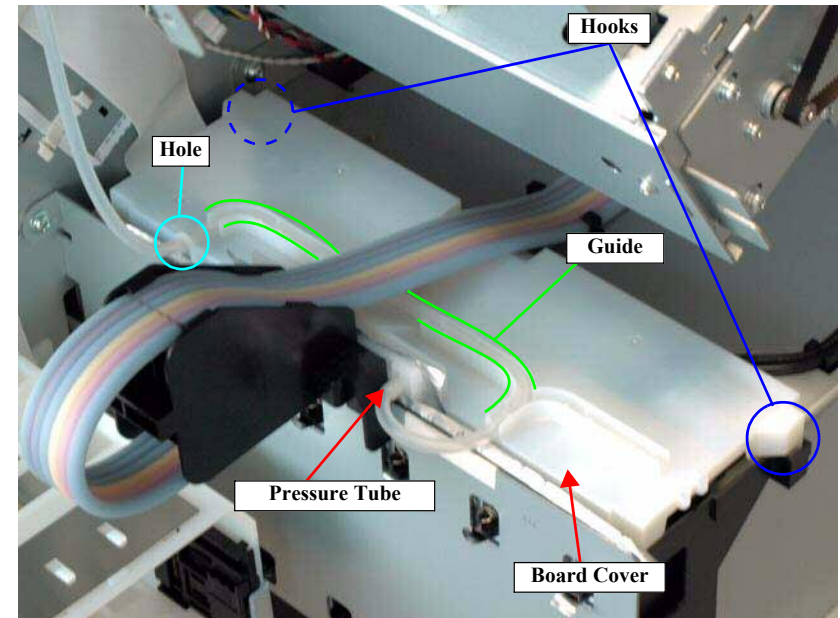


Figure 4-142. Removing the Board Cover

8. Disconnect the connectors (CN408, CN409) and FFC (CN400) from the Ink Holder Board Assy L.

**CHECK  
POINT**


Use a stubby driver or a ratchet driver for the following procedure. If you do not have such a driver, remove the Ink Cartridge Holder L before disassembly. (see p284)

9. Remove the five screws that secure the plate.
- A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x10: five pieces
10. Remove the plate.
11. Remove the ten screws that secure the Ink Holder Board Assy L.
- B) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: two pieces
- C) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x10: eight pieces
12. Remove the Ink Holder Board Assy L.

**REASSEMBLY**


Be careful not to damage the CSIC terminal when removing/installing the Ink Holder Board Assy L.

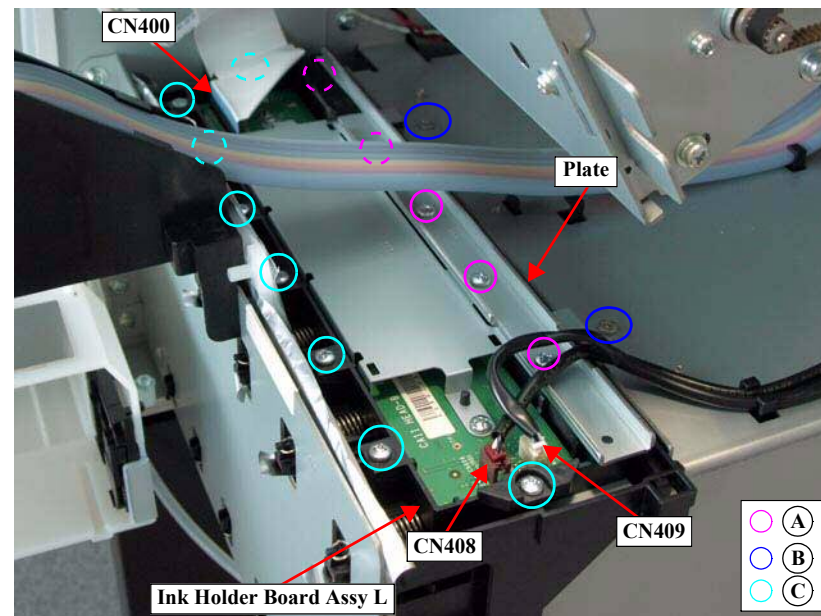
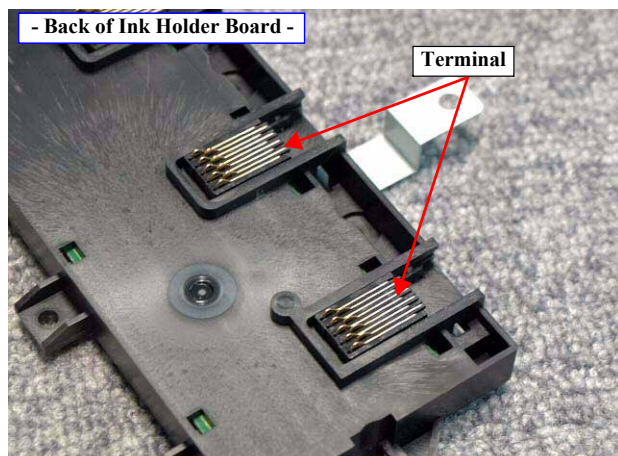


Figure 4-143. Removing the Ink Holder Board Assy L

**ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED**


Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (see p351) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Ink Holder Board Assy L.

<Adjustment Item>

1. Ink Holder Adjustment



#### 4.4.6.8 Ink Holder Board Assy R

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the center. (p201)

**CHECK  
POINT**

The next step is not necessary when the Ink Cartridge Holder R is already removed.

6. Remove the Ink System Unit. (p266)
7. Pull off the Pressure Tube from the main body.

**REASSEMBLY**

Make sure to connect the Pressure Tube.

8. Release the Pressure Tube from the guide of the Board Cover.
9. Pull out the Pressure Tube from the hole of the Board Cover.
10. Disengage the two hooks, and remove the Board Cover.

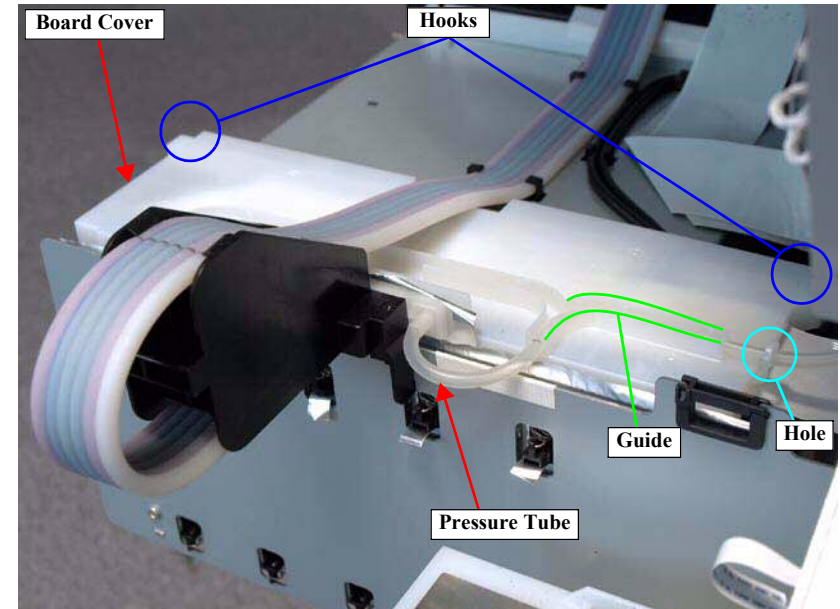


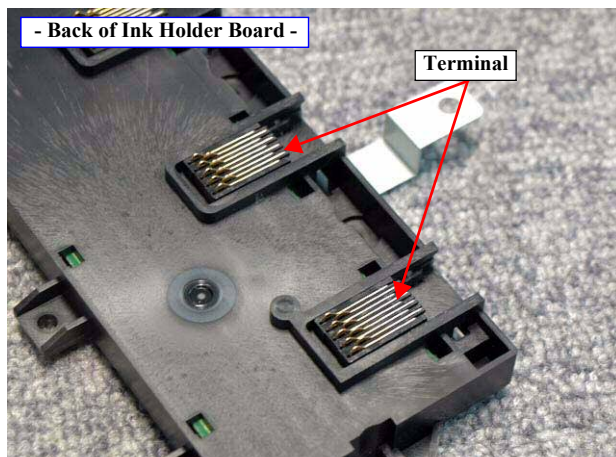
Figure 4-144. Removing the Board Cover



11. Disconnect the FFC (CN400) from the Ink Holder Board Assy and release the FFC from the clamp.
12. Disconnect the connectors (CN408, CN409) from the Ink Holder Board Assy R.
13. Remove the five screws that secure the plate.
- A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x10: five pieces
14. Remove the plate.
15. Remove the ten screws that secure the Ink Holder Board Assy R.
- B) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: two pieces
- C) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x10: eight pieces
16. Remove the Ink Holder Board Assy R.

**REASSEMBLY**

Be careful not to damage the CSIC terminal when removing/installing the Ink Holder Board Assy R.

**ADJUSTMENT REQUIRED**

Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Ink Holder Board Assy R.  
<Adjustment Item>

1. Ink Holder Adjustment

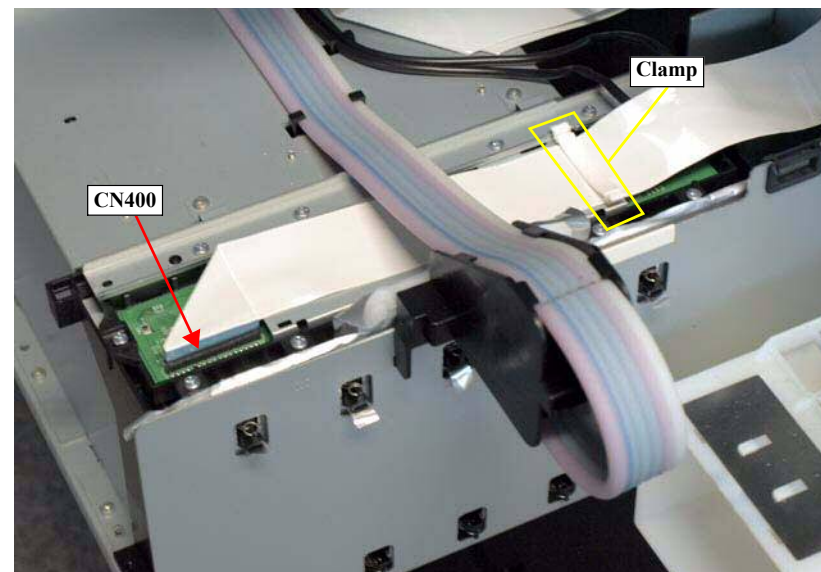


Figure 4-145. Releasing the FFC

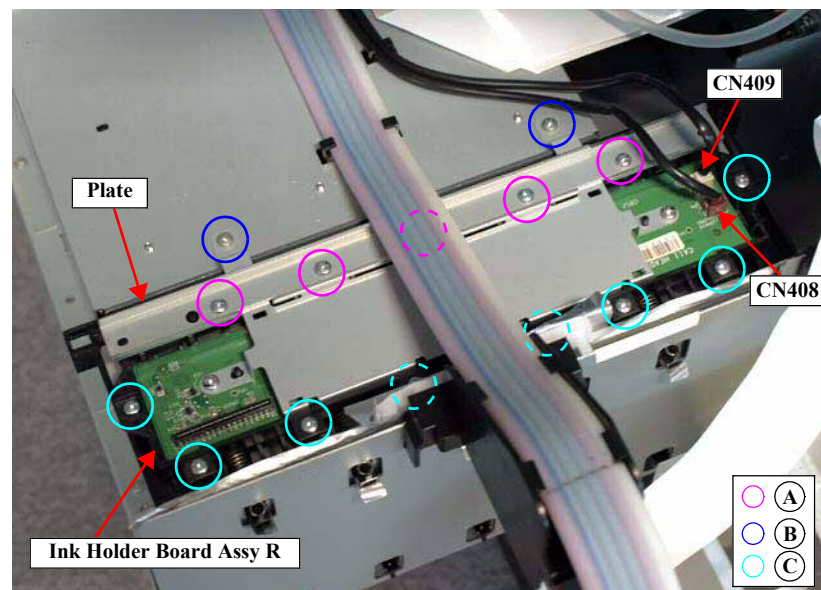


Figure 4-146. Removing the Ink Holder Board Assy R

#### 4.4.6.9 AID Board



When powering this product, high-voltage current may be applied on the AID Board. To prevent ELECTRIC SHOCK, do not touch the AID Board when the power is ON. If the shock should happen, the flowing current is very tiny, about a few hundreds  $\mu\text{A}$ , therefore it will not do any harm on the human body.



The shape of the AID Board and the parts around it differs depending on the production timing, therefore, check the shape of them and take proper procedures when disassembling/assembling this printer.

- “Disassembling procedure for the previous type before design change” (p294)
- “Disassembling procedure for the new type after design change” (p296)

- Previous type -

Main body



AID Board



- New type -

Main body



AID Board



- Disassembling procedure for the previous type before design change

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the two screws that secure the AID Board Cover, and remove the AID Board Cover.

A) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x8: two pieces

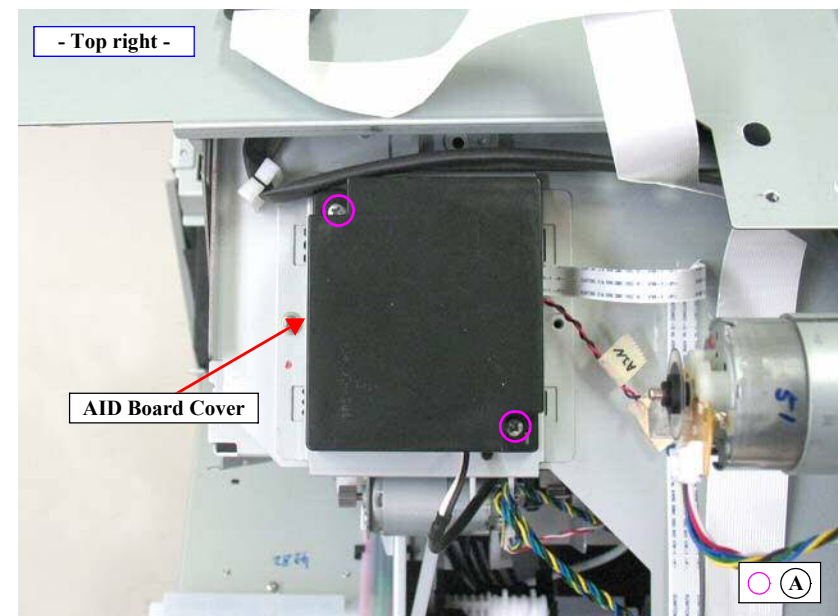


Figure 4-147. Removing the AID Board Cover



6. Remove the AID Board.
7. Disconnect the connector (CN2), and the FFC (CN1) on the AID Board.

**REASSEMBLY**

After installing the AID Board Cover, check the status of the cable connected to the CN2 on the AID Board, and if the black and white cables can be seen, place the white one over the black one.



<Black and white cables are hidden>  
No treatment required



<Black & white cables can be seen>  
Place the white over the black

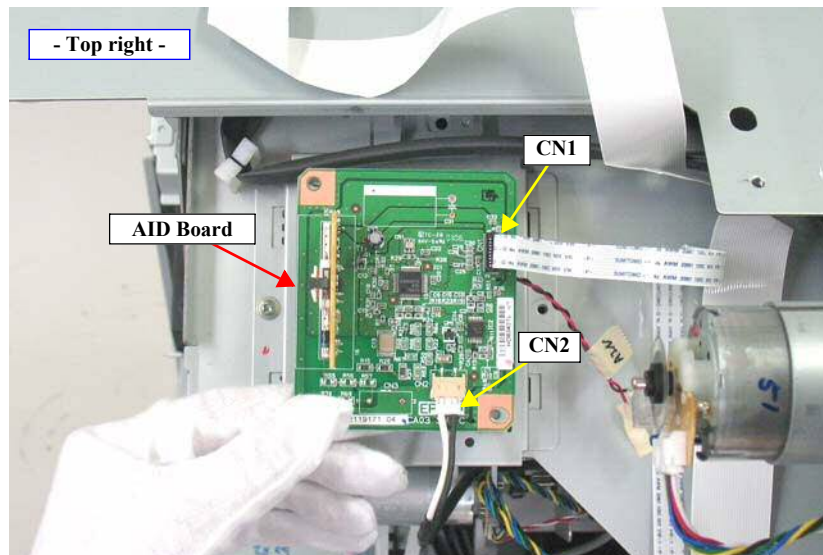


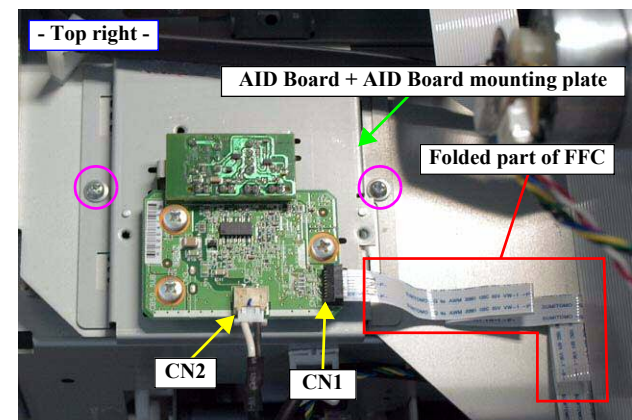
Figure 4-148. Removing the AID Board

**CHECK POINT**

- When installing the AID Board before design change, it can be reassembled by reversing the disassembly procedure in **“Disassembling procedure for the previous type before design change” (p294)**.
- When installing the new-shaped AID Board to the old main body, follow the procedure below.
  1. Remove the Spindle Cover R. (p215)
  2. Remove the two screws that secure the AID Board mounting plate, and remove the AID Board mounting plate.

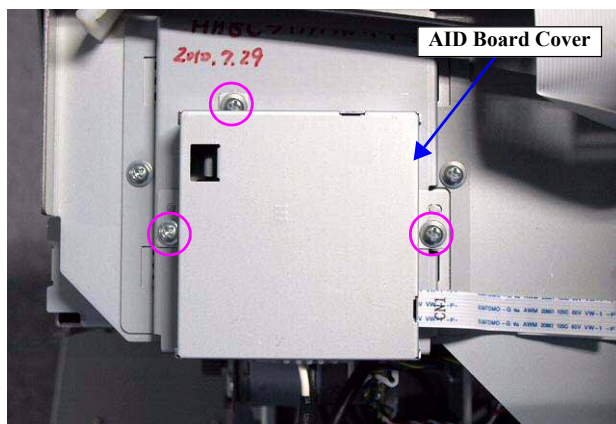


3. Secure the new AID Board and AID Board mounting plate with the two screws.
4. Fold the FFC as shown below and connect the connector and the FFC to the AID Board.



**CHECK  
POINT**

5. Secure the new AID Board Cover with the three screws.



6. Install the Spindle Cover R. (p215)
7. Install the Right Cover. (p209)
8. Install the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
9. Install the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
10. Install the Control Panel. (p203)

**ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED**

Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (see p351) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the AID Board.  
<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (AID)
2. Cleaning PG Adjustment
3. AID Function Check

- Disassembling procedure for the new type after design change

**CAUTION**

The old AID Board cannot be installed to a new main body. Make sure to prepare the new AID Board before taking the following procedure.

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the three screws that secure the AID Board Cover.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M3x6: three pieces
6. Remove the AID Board Cover.

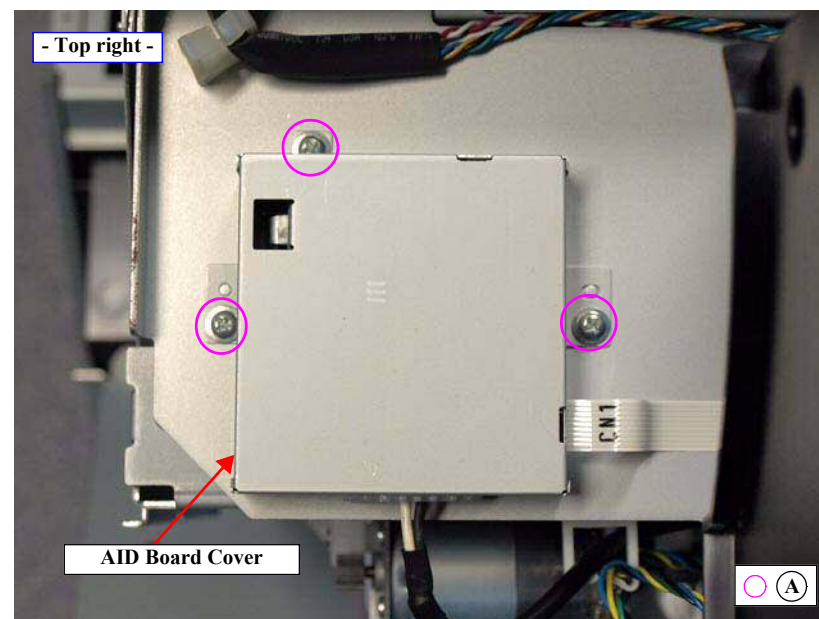


Figure 4-149. Removing the AID Board Cover

7. Remove the three screws that secure the AID Board.
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: three pieces
8. Remove the AID Board.
9. Disconnect the connector (CN2) and the FFC (CN1) on the AID Board.

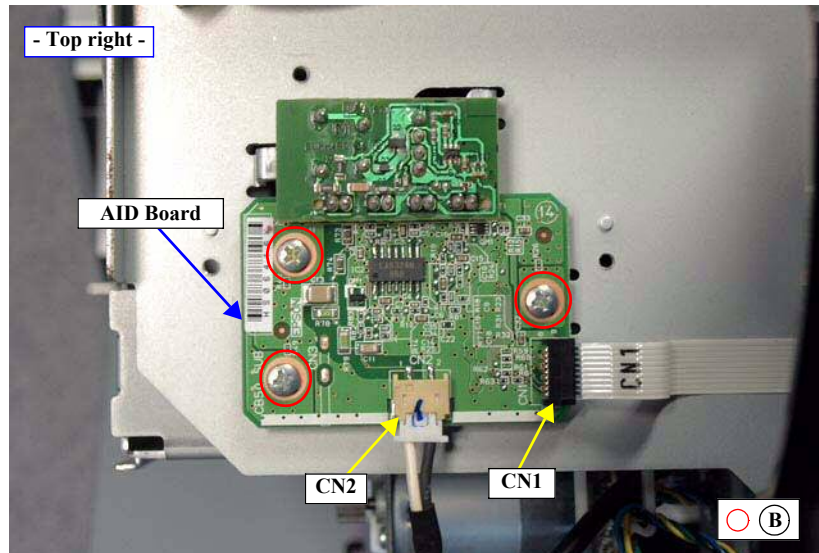
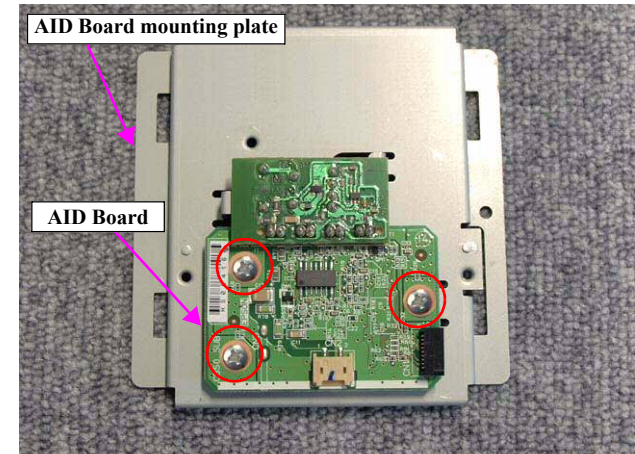


Figure 4-150. Removing the AID Board



The AID Board comes with the AID Board mounting plate and AID Board Cover as a set. When installing the new AID Board to the new main body, take out the board from them (secured with three screws) and use only the board. Dispose the AID Board mounting plate and AID Board Cover since they are not necessary.



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the AID Board.

<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (AID)
2. Cleaning PG Adjustment
3. AID Function Check



#### 4.4.6.10 Ink Mark Sensor

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover R and the IC Shaft Cover R. (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank R. (p208)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the center. (p201)
6. Remove the three screws that secure the Arm Unit, and remove the Arm Unit.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x10: three pieces

**REASSEMBLY**

When installing the Arm Unit, be sure to secure the Arm Unit with the screws while pressing it toward the platen.

7. Remove the screw that secure the Ink Mark Sensor Cover, and remove the Ink Mark Sensor Cover.
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M2x6 (bit: No.1): one piece

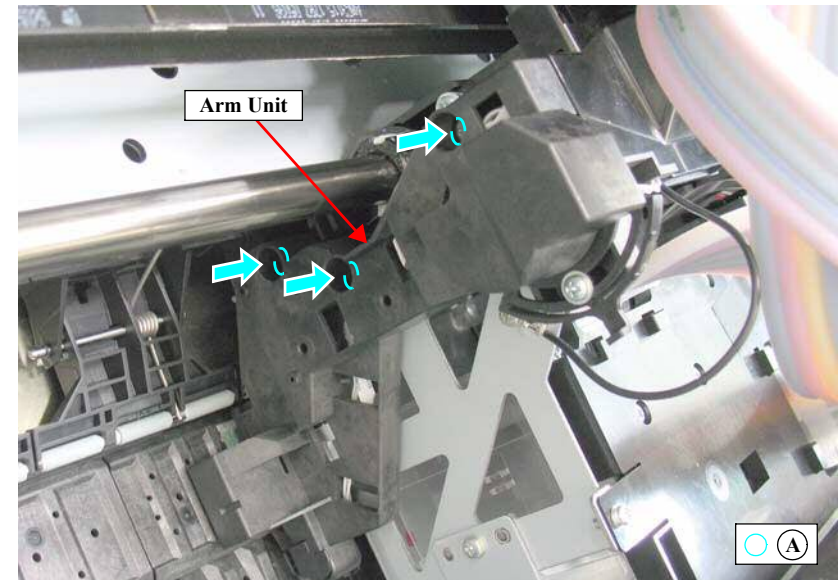


Figure 4-151. Removing the Arm Unit

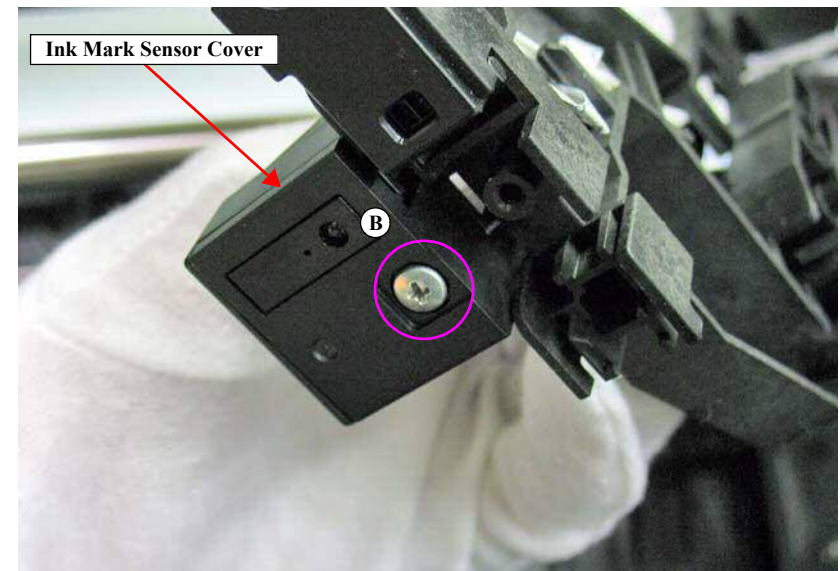


Figure 4-152. Removing the Ink Mark sensor Cover

8. Disconnect the FFC, and remove the Ink Mark Sensor.



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the Ink Mark Sensor.

<Adjustment Item>

1. Ink Mark Sensor Height Adjustment
2. Ink Mark Sensor Adjustment
3. Skew Check
4. T&B&S Adjustment
5. Absorber Position Check
6. Auto Uni-D Adjustment
7. Auto Bi-D Adjustment

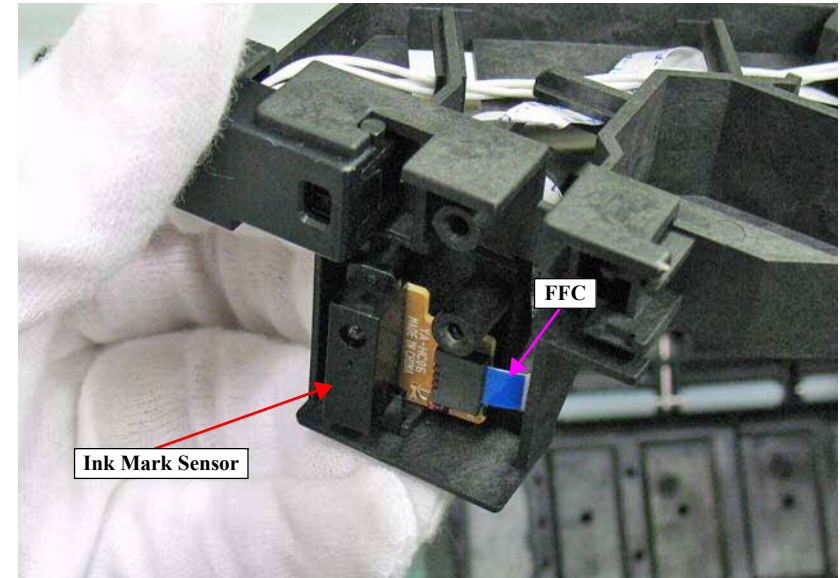


Figure 4-153. Removing the Ink Mark Sensor

#### 4.4.6.11 Ink Selector



When disassembling this part, be sure to discharge ink in advance following the procedure below.

##### INK DISCHARGE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►], [PaperFeed ▼], and [OK].
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Maintenance** → **Selector Exchange** → **Sequence**.



Because Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710 does not have the **Selector Exchange** menu, select the **Tube Exchange** menu instead.

3. Press the [OK] button.
4. Remove all the ink cartridges, and install the drain cartridges to all the ink slots.
5. Press the [OK] button to discharge ink.
6. Turn the printer OFF when **[Press] Power Button** is displayed.



After discharging ink, the initial charge flag is automatically set. The next time turning the power on, the initial ink charge sequence starts.



## DISASSEMBLING PROCEDURE

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover (L/R) and the IC Shaft Cover (L/R). (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank (L/R). (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
6. Remove the Top Cover. (p214)
7. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the center. (p201)
8. Disengage the four hooks on the bottom, and remove the CR Belt Cover.
9. Disconnect the connector (CN116, CN118) and FFC (CN105, CN106) on the Sub Board Assy.

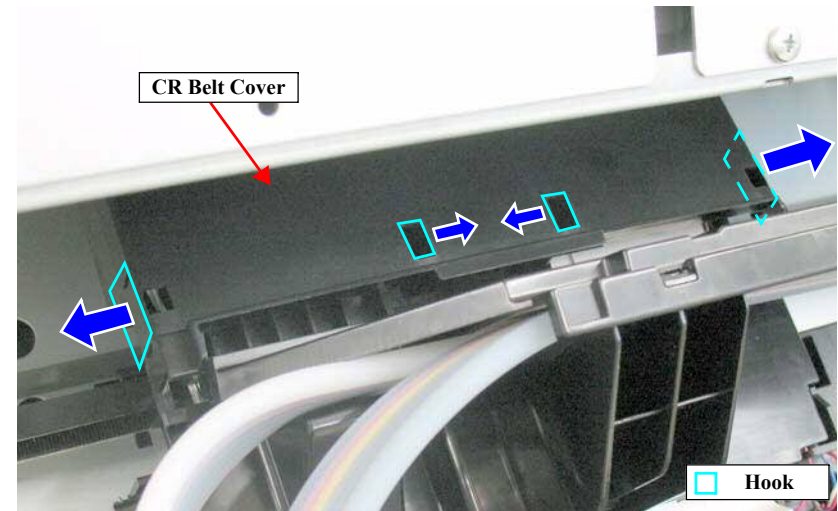


Figure 4-154. Removing the CR Belt Cover

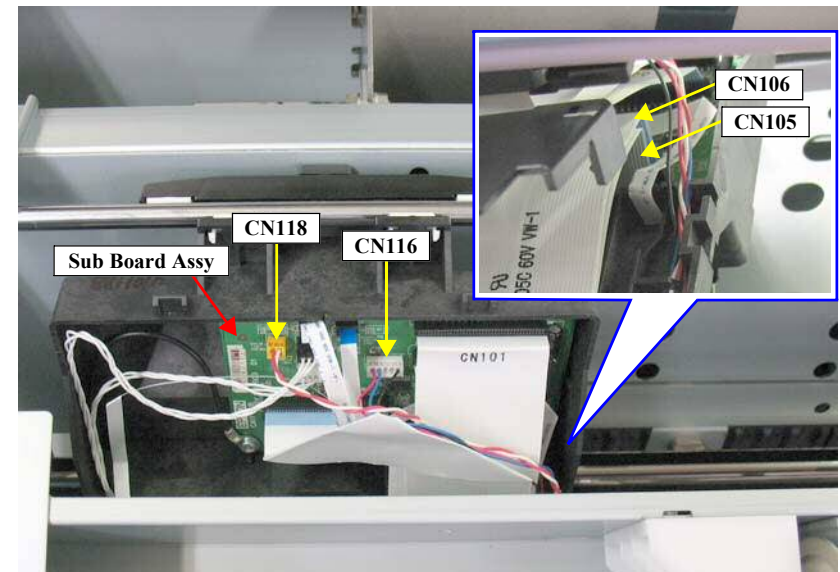


Figure 4-155. Disconnecting the connectors

10. Remove the three screws that secure the Ink Tube Holder.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x8: three pieces
11. Disengage the two hooks that secure the Ink Tube Holder, and remove the Ink Tube Holder.
12. Release the harness from the cable guides.

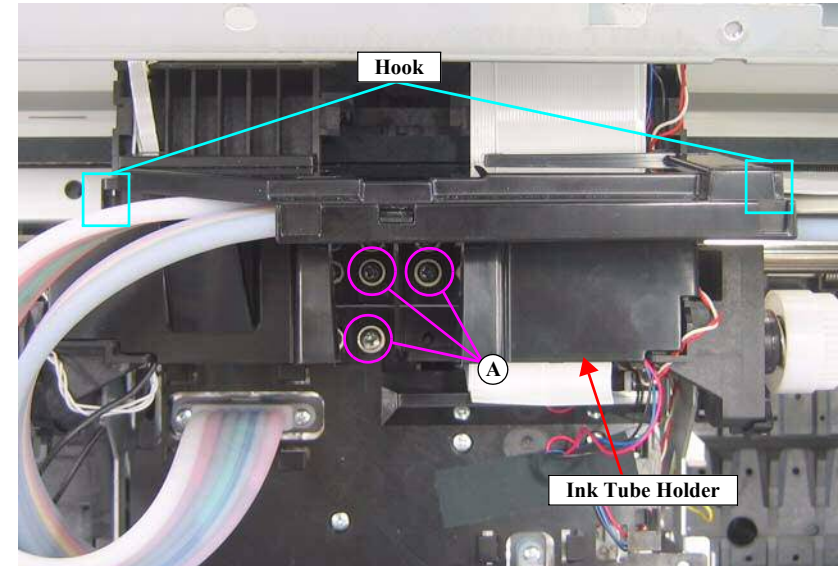


Figure 4-156. Removing the Ink Tube Holder

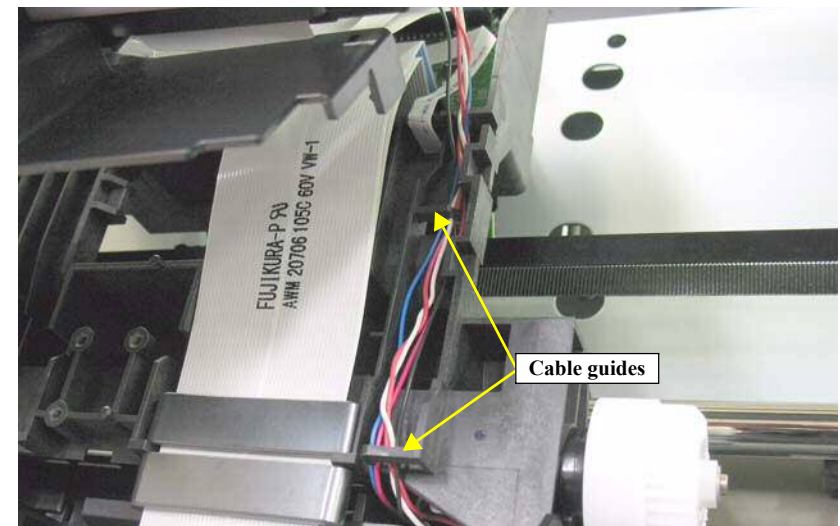


Figure 4-157. Releasing the Harness

13. Slide the two Ink Tube Stoppers in the directions of the arrow to remove them.
14. Remove the two screws that secure the Ink Tube L, and remove the Ink Tube L from the Ink Selector.  
 B) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M2x16 (bit: No.1): 2 pieces
15. Remove the two screws that secure the Ink Tube R, and remove the Ink Tube R from the Ink Selector.  
 B) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M2x16 (bit: No.1): 2 pieces

**REASSEMBLY**

- Use a torque driver with the torque given below when tightening the screws securing the Ink Tube.  
 $3 \pm 0.5 \text{ kgf}\cdot\text{cm}$
- Make sure to install the SEAL RUBBER, JOINT, ASP. The SEAL RUBBER, JOINT, ASP (1518317) is not included in the Ink Cartridge Holder and the Ink Tube; therefore, re-use the originally installed one. Make sure to confirm there is no damage or no foreign material attached on the sealing rubber or the joint section visually then. Installing a damaged part such as mentioned above may cause ink leakage.

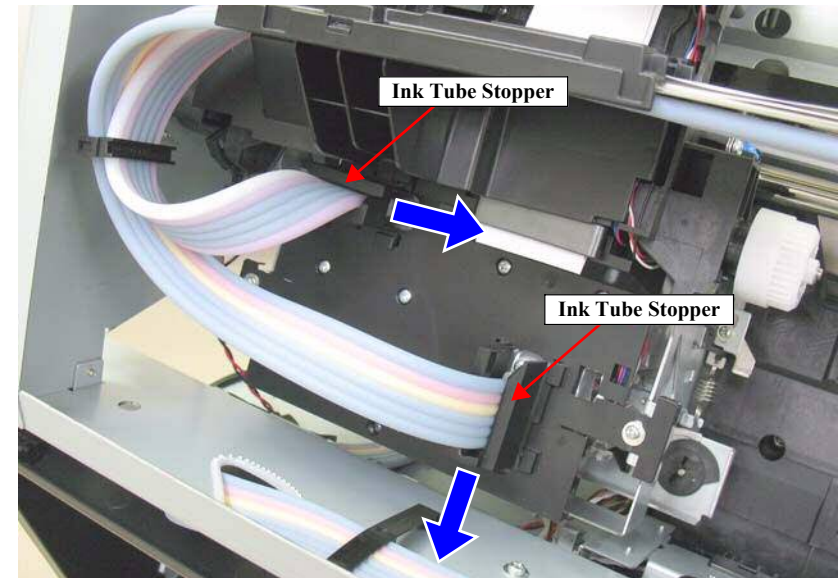


Figure 4-158. Removing the Ink Tube Stopper

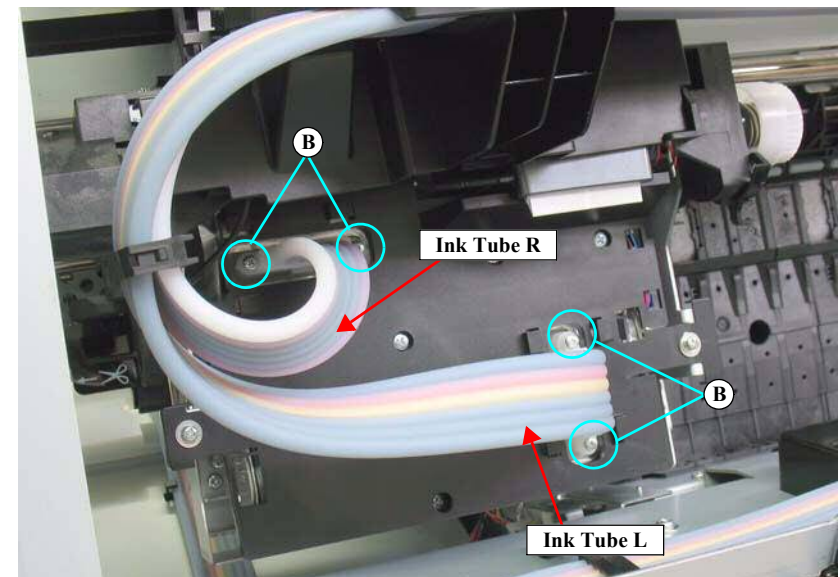


Figure 4-159. Removing the Ink Tube L and R



16. Remove the screws that secure the Ink Selector.

**NOTE:** The number of screws differs between Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908 and Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710.

- C) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x8:  
Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908: two pieces  
Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710: two pieces
- D) Silver, Phillips, Pan screw with S.W & P.W. M3x8:  
Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908: five pieces  
Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710: two pieces
- E) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x12:  
Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908: one piece  
Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710: one piece

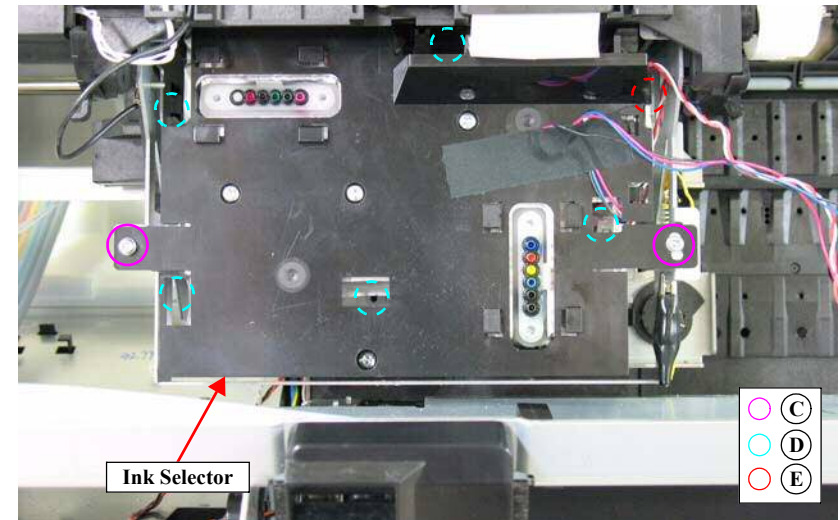


Figure 4-160. Ink Selector fixing screws (Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908)

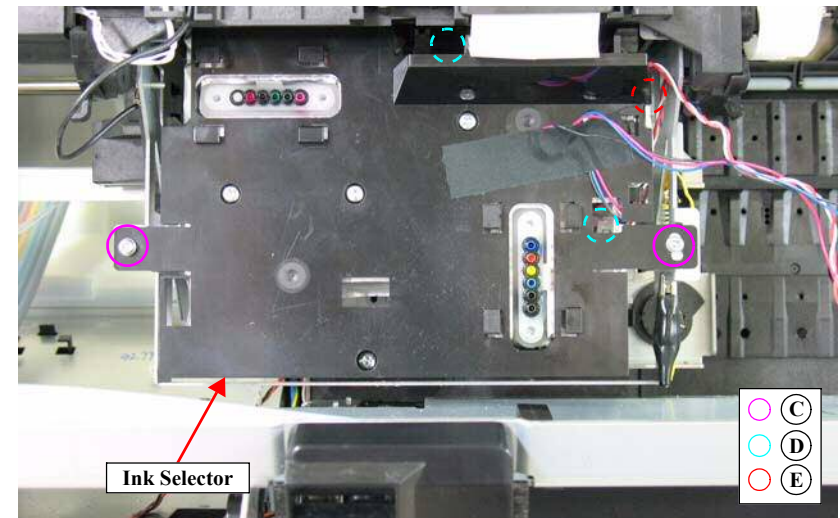


Figure 4-161. Ink Selector fixing screws (Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710)

17. Remove the Ink Selector.



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the Ink Selector.  
<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (Ink Selector)

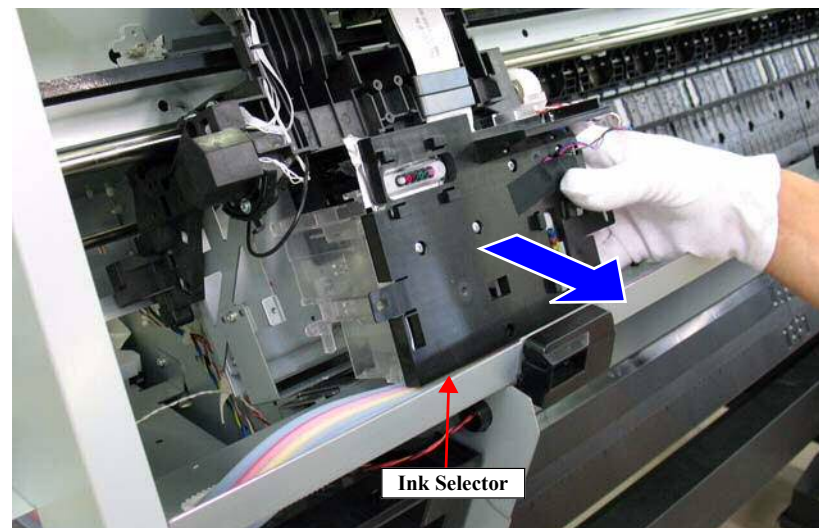


Figure 4-162. Removing the Ink Selector (2)

#### 4.4.6.12 Ink Tube R



When disassembling this part, be sure to discharge ink in advance following the procedure below.

---

#### INK DISCHARGE

---

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►], [PaperFeed ▼], and [OK].
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Maintenance** → **Tube Exchange** → **Sequence**.
3. Press the [OK] button.
4. Remove all the ink cartridges, and install the drain cartridges to all the ink slots.
5. Press the [OK] button to discharge ink.
6. Turn the printer OFF when **[Press] Power Button** is displayed.



After discharging ink, the initial charge flag is automatically set.  
The next time turning the power on, the initial ink charge sequence starts.

## DISASSEMBLING PROCEDURE

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover (L/R) and the IC Shaft Cover (L/R). (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank (L/R). (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
6. Remove the Top Cover. (p214)
7. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the center. (p201)
8. Remove the Ink Tube Guide.  
(Step 7 in “4.4.5.6 Cutter Unit” (P. 257))
9. Remove the Cutter Cover.  
(Step 9 in “4.4.5.6 Cutter Unit” (P. 257))
10. Remove the Mid-Front Cover.  
(Step 10 in “4.4.5.6 Cutter Unit” (P. 257))
11. Remove the Ink Tube from the Ink Cartridge Cover R.  
(Step 8 to Step 16 in “4.4.6.5 Ink Cartridge Holder R” (P. 277))
12. Remove the two screws that secure the plate, and remove the plate.  
A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x10: two pieces
13. Disengage the eight tube holders, and release the Ink Tube R.
14. Pull out the Ink Tube R from the two holes on the Main Frame.

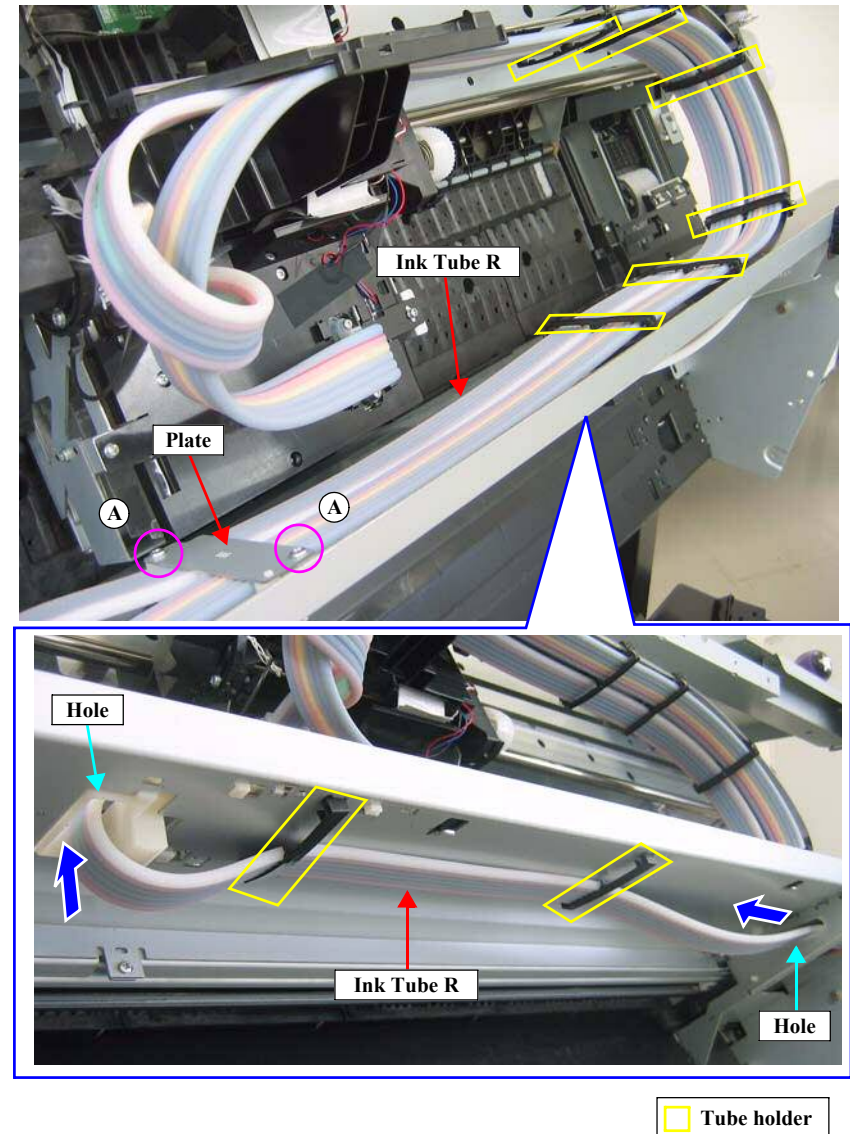


Figure 4-163. Releasing the Ink Tube R



15. Remove the three screws that secure the Ink Tube Holder. *See Figure 4-164.*
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x8: three pieces
16. Disengage the two hooks that secure the Ink Tube Holder, and remove the Ink Tube Holder.
17. Remove the two screws that secure the Ink Tube Cover, and remove the Ink Tube Cover. *See Figure 4-165.*
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x8: two pieces

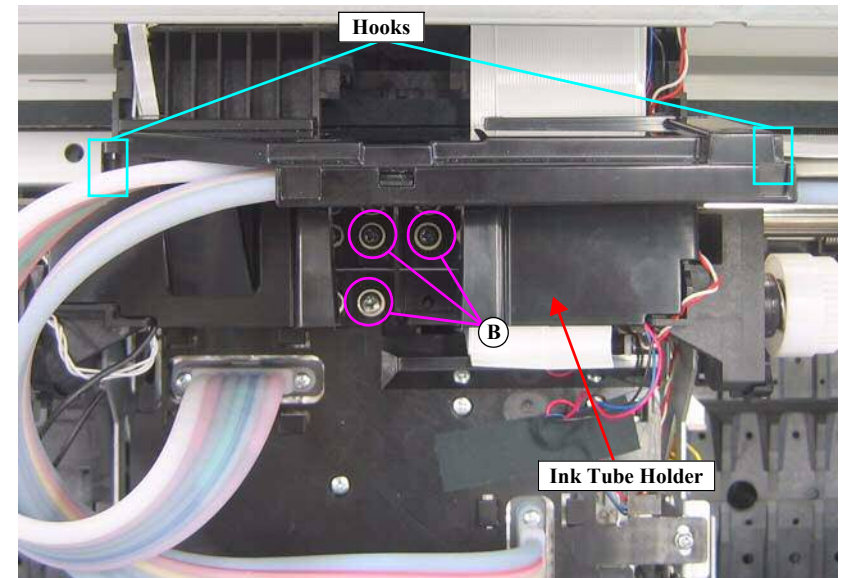


Figure 4-164. Removing the Ink Tube Holder

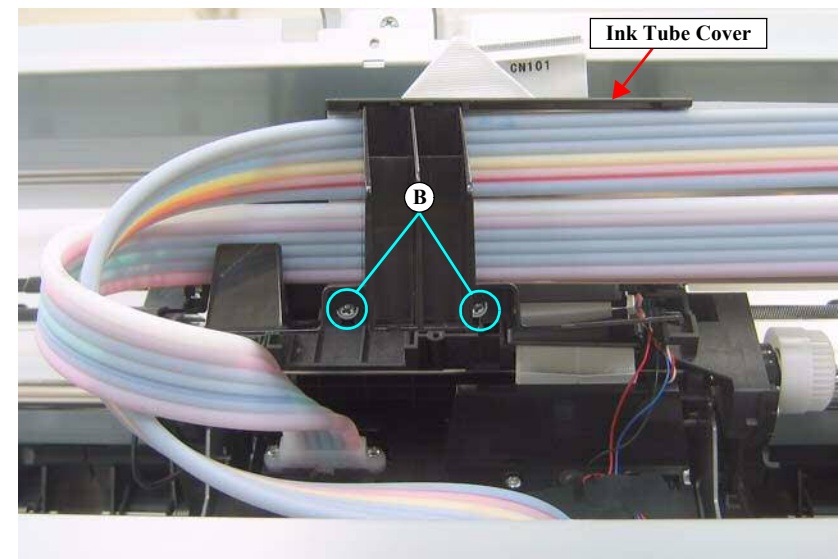


Figure 4-165. Removing the Ink Tube Cover

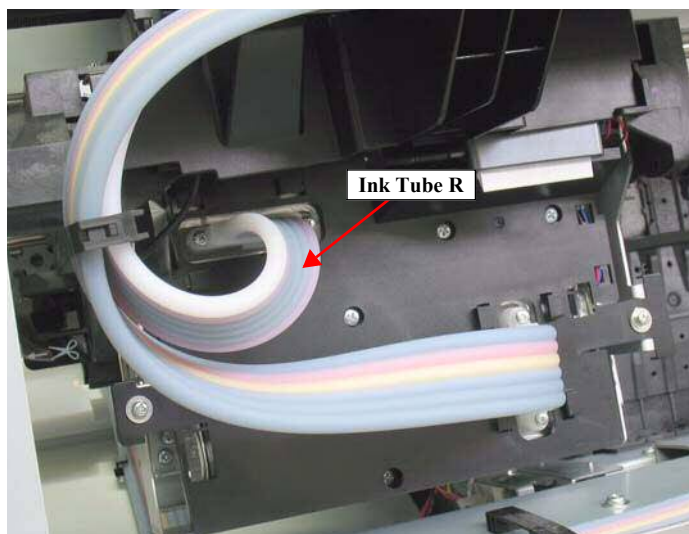


18. Remove the two screws that secure the Ink Tube R, and remove the Ink Tube R.  
See Figure 4-166.

C) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M2x16 (bit: No.1): two pieces

**REASSEMBLY**

- When connecting the Ink Tube R, make sure to connect it correctly as shown in the figure below.



- Use a torque driver with the torque given below when tightening the screws securing the Ink Tube.  
 $3 \pm 0.5 \text{ kgf}\cdot\text{cm}$
- Make sure to install the SEAL RUBBER, JOINT, ASP. The SEAL RUBBER, JOINT, ASP (1518317) is not included in the Ink Cartridge Holder and the Ink Tube; therefore, re-use the originally installed one. Make sure to confirm there is no damage or no foreign material attached on the sealing rubber or the joint section visually then. Installing a damaged part such as mentioned above may cause ink leakage.

**ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED**

Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the Ink Tube R.  
<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (Ink Tube)
2. Air Leak Check for Ink Supply Sys.

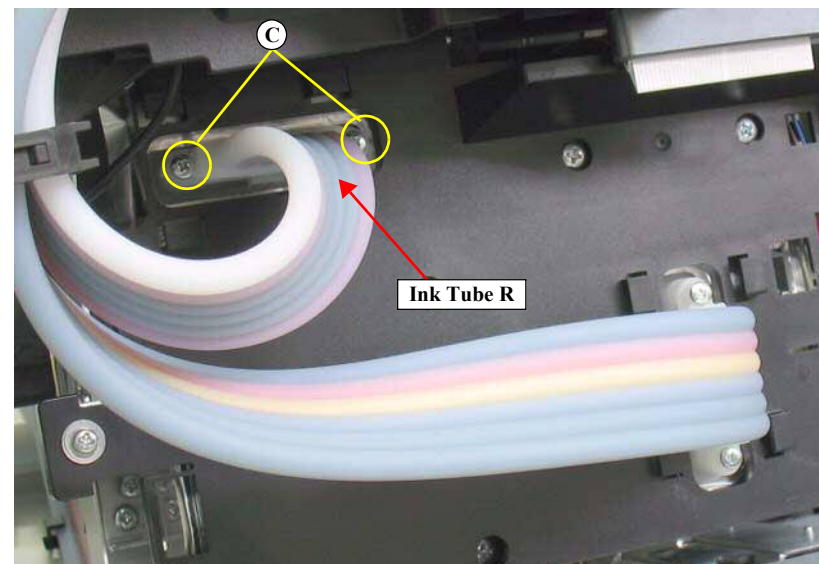


Figure 4-166. Removing the Ink Tube R

**CAUTION**

When replacing the Ink Tube R with a new one, make sure to replace the Ink Tube L together.

#### 4.4.6.13 Ink Tube L

*NOTE: The Ink Tube L is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908/9890/9908 only.*



When disassembling this part, be sure to discharge ink in advance following the procedure below.

---

#### INK DISCHARGE

---

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►], [PaperFeed ▼], and [OK].
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Maintenance** → **Tube Exchange** → **Sequence**.
3. Press the [OK] button.
4. Remove all the ink cartridges, and install the drain cartridges to all the ink slots.
5. Press the [OK] button to discharge ink.
6. Turn the printer OFF when **[Press] Power Button** is displayed.



After discharging ink, the initial charge flag is automatically set.  
The next time turning the power on, the initial ink charge sequence starts.

## DISASSEMBLING PROCEDURE

1. Remove the Control Panel. (p203)
2. Remove the IC Cover (L/R) and the IC Shaft Cover (L/R). (p206)
3. Remove the Maintenance Tank (L/R). (p208)

*NOTE: There is no Maintenance Tank (L) mounted for the Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.*

4. Remove the Right Cover. (p209)
5. Remove the Left Cover. (p209)
6. Remove the Top Cover. (p214)
7. Unlock the Carriage Unit and move it to the center. (p201)
8. Remove the Ink Tube Guide.  
(Step 5 in “4.4.5.6 Cutter Unit” (P. 257))
9. Remove the Ink Tube from the Ink Cartridge Cover L.  
(Step 10 to Step 13 in “4.4.6.6 Ink Cartridge Holder L” (P. 284))
10. Remove the two screws that secure the plate, and remove the plate.  
(Step 12 in “4.4.6.12 Ink Tube R” (P. 306))
11. Disengage the nine tube holders, and release the Ink Tube L. *See Figure 4-167, 4-168.*
12. Pull out the Ink Tube L from the hole on the Main Frame. *See Figure 4-168.*

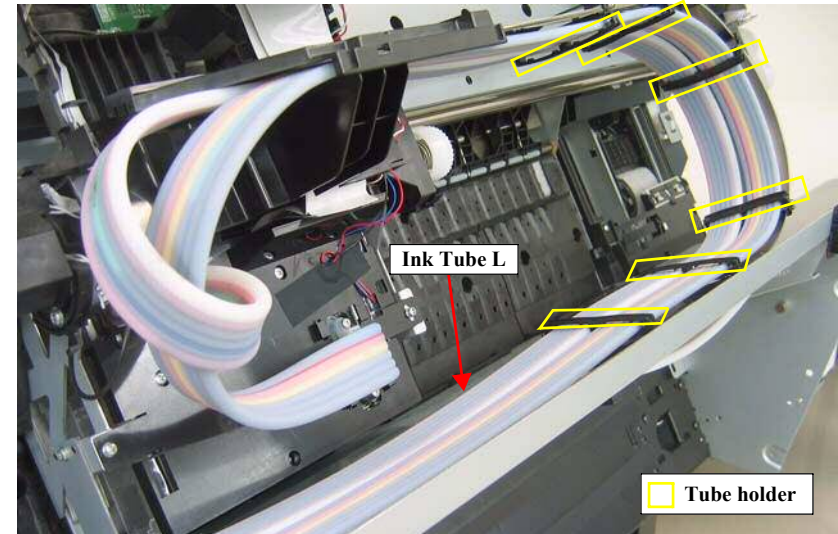


Figure 4-167. Releasing the Ink Tube L (1)

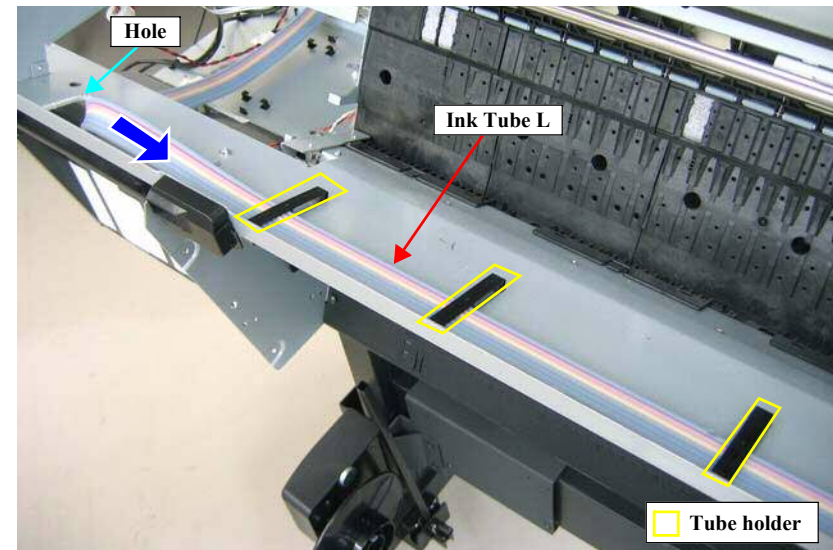
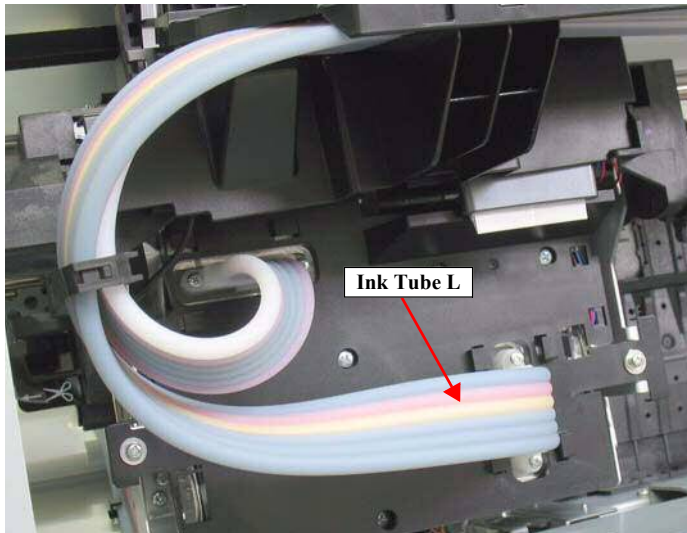


Figure 4-168. Releasing the Ink Tube L (2)

13. Remove the Ink Tube Holder.  
(Step 15 in “4.4.6.12 Ink Tube R” (P. 306))
14. Remove the Ink Tube Cover.  
(Step 17 in “4.4.6.12 Ink Tube R” (P. 306))
15. Remove the two screws that secure the Ink Tube L, and remove the Ink Tube L.  
A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M2x16 (bit: No.1): two pieces

**REASSEMBLY**

- When connecting the Ink Tube L, make sure to connect it correctly as shown in the figure below.



- Use a torque driver with the torque given below when tightening the screws securing the Ink Tube.  
 $3 \pm 0.5 \text{ kgf}\cdot\text{cm}$
- Make sure to install the SEAL RUBBER, JOINT, ASP. The SEAL RUBBER, JOINT, ASP (1518317) is not included in the Ink Cartridge Holder and the Ink Tube; therefore, re-use the originally installed one. Make sure to confirm there is no damage or no foreign material attached on the sealing rubber or the joint section visually then. Installing a damaged part such as mentioned above may cause ink leakage.

**CAUTION**

When replacing the Ink Tube L with a new one, make sure to replace the Ink Tube R together.

**ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED**

Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (see p351) and perform specified adjustments after replacing or removing the Ink Tube L.  
<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (Ink Tube)
2. Air Leak Check for Ink Supply Sys.

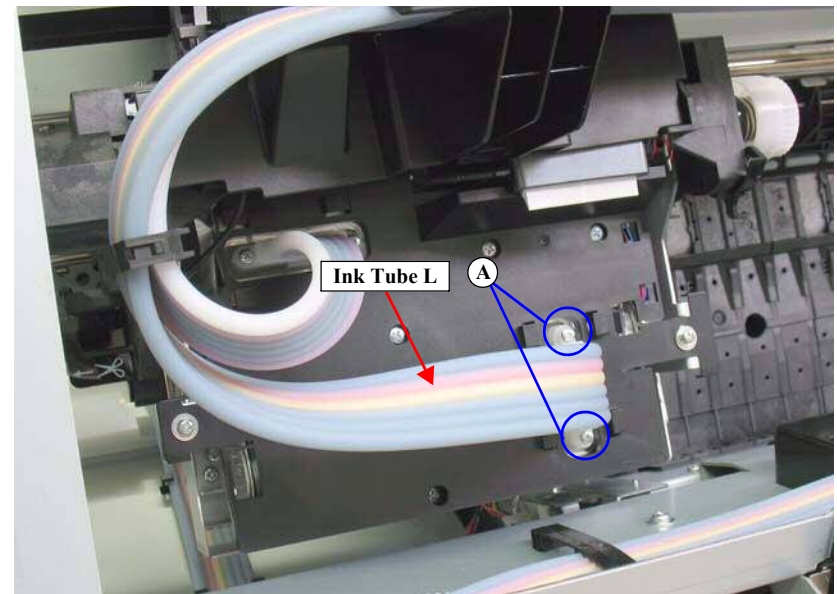


Figure 4-169. Removing the Ink Tube L



## 4.4.7 Auto Take-up Reel

### 4.4.7.1 Take-up Reel Cover

1. Remove the two screws that secure the Auto Take-up Reel.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Pan S-tite with S.W & P.W. M4x10: two pieces
2. Hold up the Auto Take-up Reel to disengage the hook, and remove the Auto Take-up Reel.
3. Remove the four screws that secure the Take-up Reel Cover, and remove the Take-up Reel Cover from the Auto Take-up Reel.
  - B) Black, Phillips, Pan P-tite M3x10: four pieces
4. Disengage the six hooks that secure the Panel Cover from inside, and remove the Panel Cover from the Take-up Reel Cover.

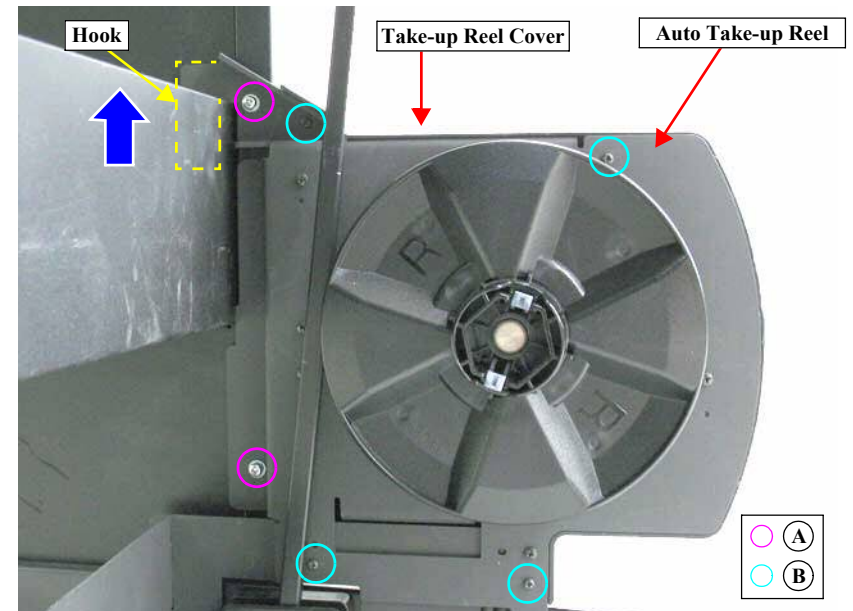


Figure 4-170. Removing the Auto Take-up Reel

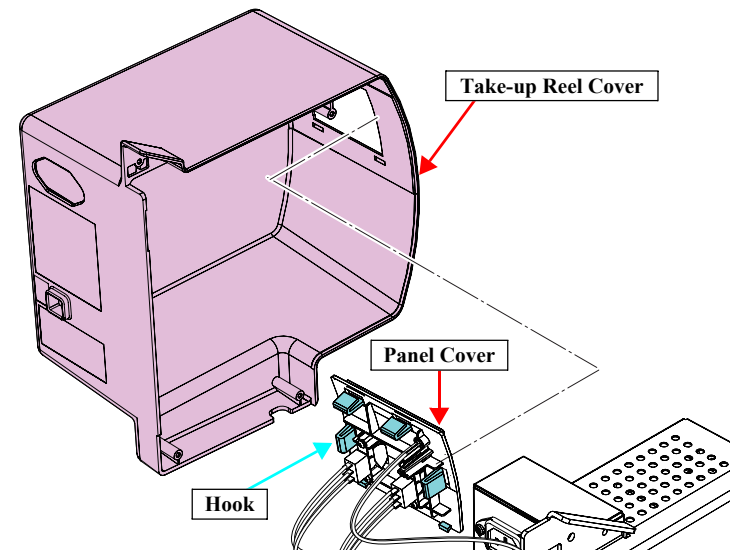


Figure 4-171. Removing the Take-up Reel Cover

#### 4.4.7.2 Take-up Reel Sensor

1. Remove the screw that secures the Take-up Reel Sensor.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x10: one piece
2. Remove the Take-up Reel Sensor from the Auto Take-up Reel.
3. Disconnect the connector from the Take-up Reel Sensor.

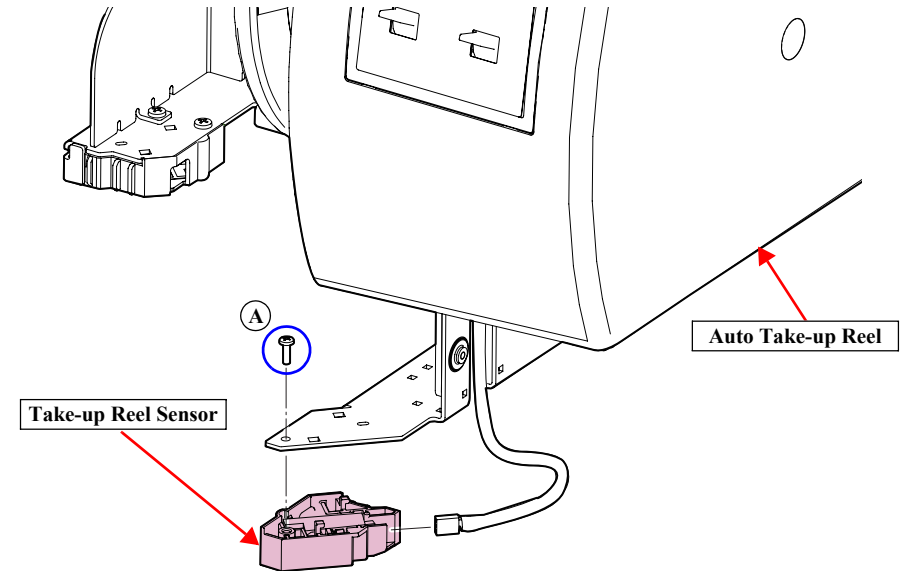


Figure 4-172. Removing the Take-up Reel Sensor

#### 4.4.7.3 Take-up Reel LED

1. Remove the Flange from the Auto Take-up Reel.
2. Remove the Take-up Reel Cover. ([p313](#))
3. Disconnect the connector (CN1) on the Main Board.
4. Remove the four screws that secure the Power Supply Unit, and remove the Power Supply Unit.

A) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: four pieces

5. Disconnect the connector (CN23) on the Main Board.
6. Release the harness from the cable guide, and remove the Take-up Reel LED.

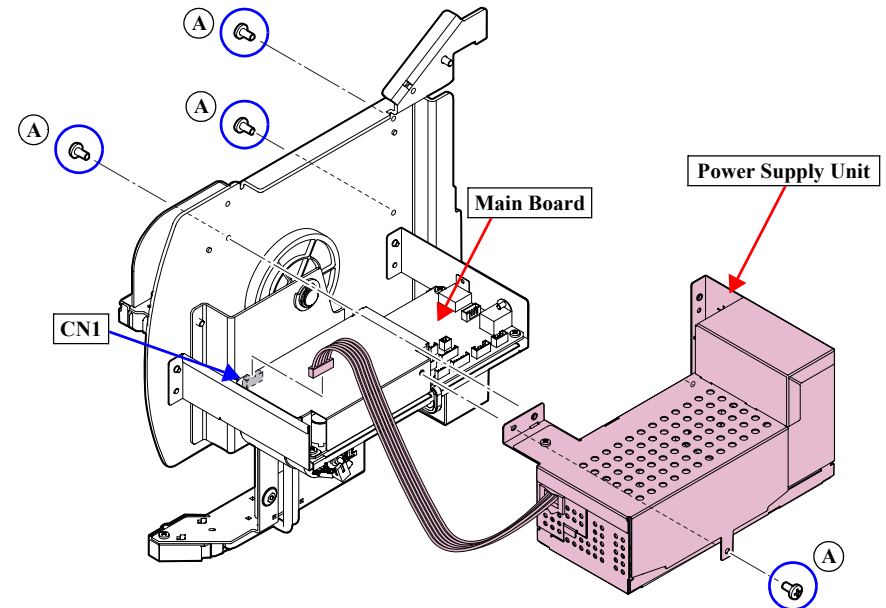


Figure 4-174. Removing the Power Supply Unit

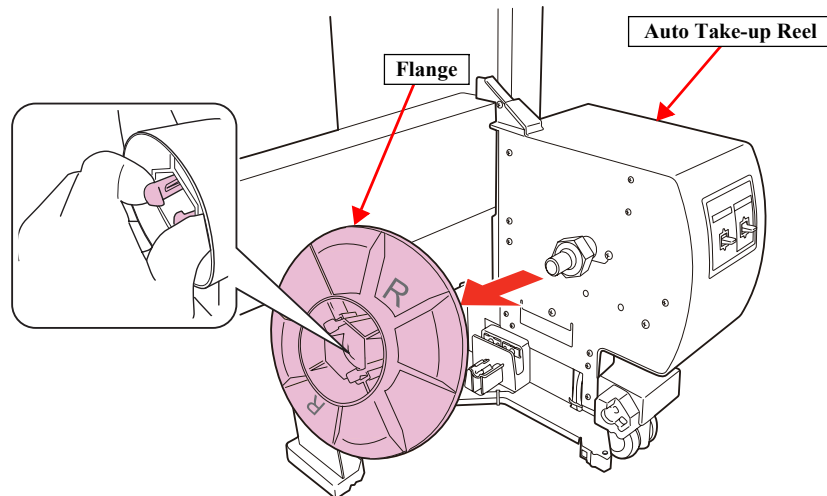


Figure 4-173. Removing the Flange

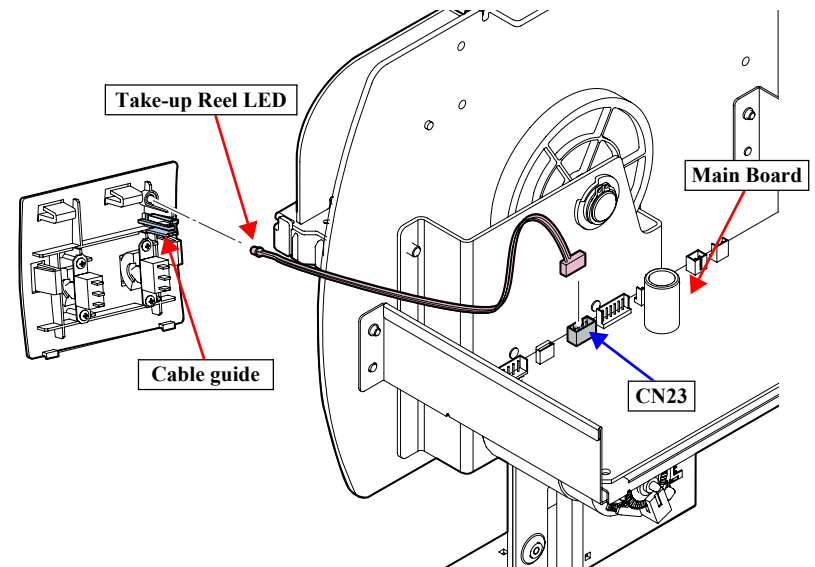


Figure 4-175. Removing the Take-up Reel LED



#### 4.4.7.4 Take-up Reel Switch

1. Remove the Flange from the Auto Take-up Reel.
2. Remove the Take-up Reel Cover. ([p313](#))
3. Disconnect the connector (CN1) on the Main Board.
4. Remove the four screws that secure the Power Supply Unit, and remove the Power Supply Unit.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: four pieces

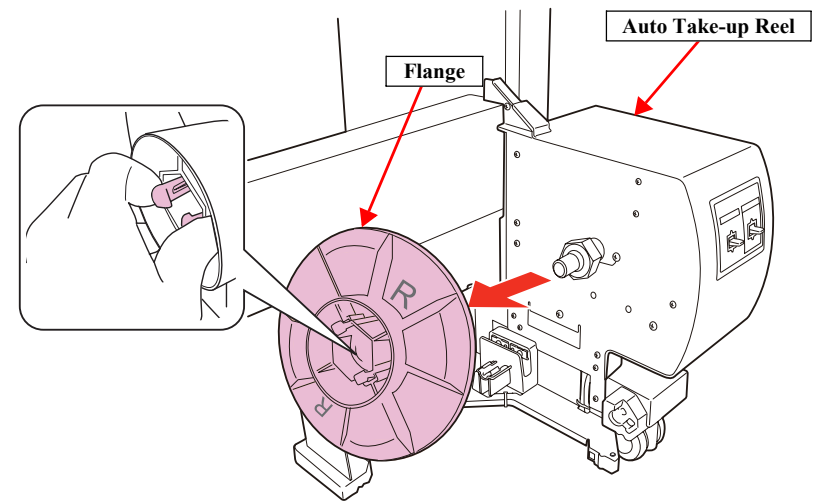


Figure 4-176. Removing the Flange

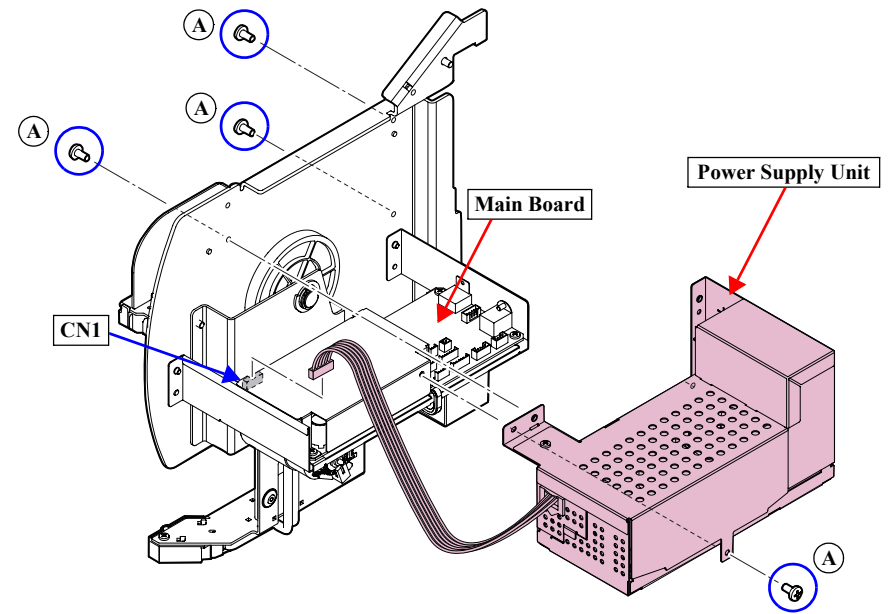


Figure 4-177. Removing the Power Supply Unit

5. Disconnect the connector (CN17) on the Main Board.
6. Remove the four screws that secure the Take-up Reel Switch, and remove the Take-up Reel Switch from the Panel Cover.

B) Black, Phillips, Bind P-tite screw M2x7 (bit: No.1): four pieces

# REASSEMBLY



Install the Take-up Reel Switch with the “ON/OFF/ON” inscription to the right. And install the Take-up Reel Switch with “M” inscription to the Manual side.

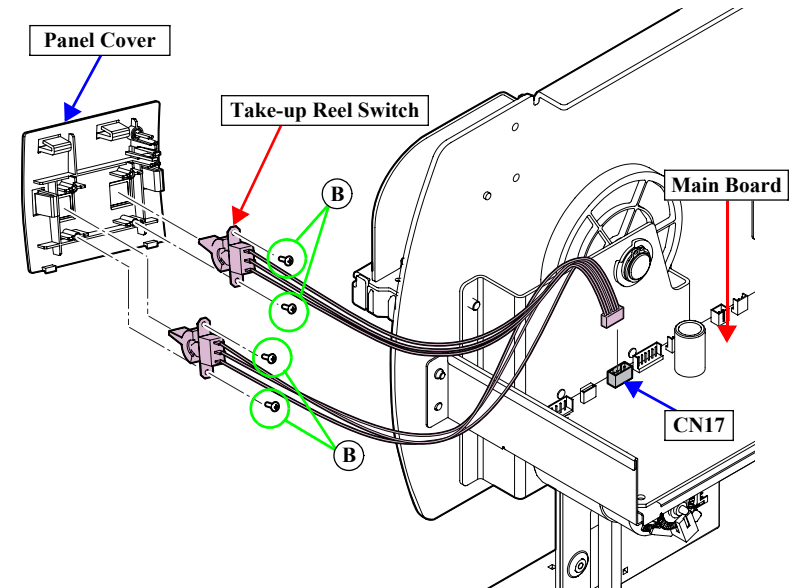
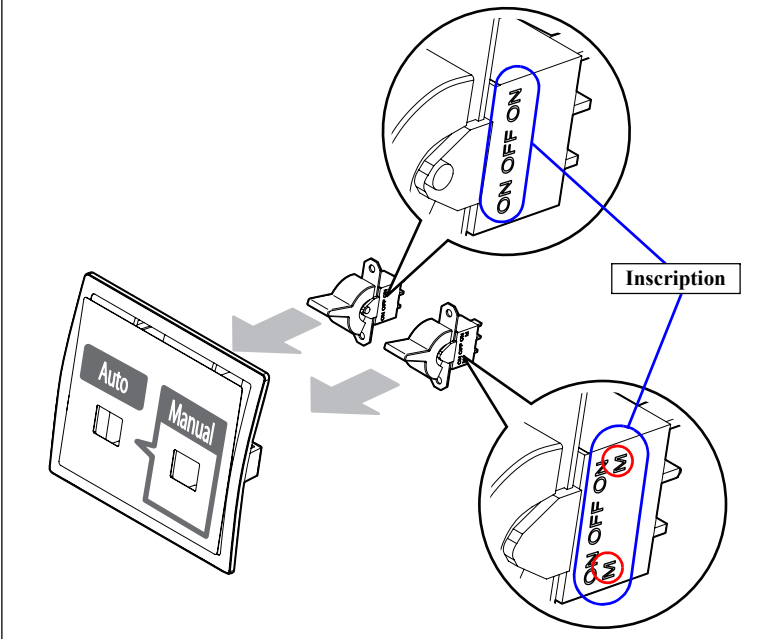


Figure 4-178. Removing the Take-up Reel Switch

#### 4.4.7.5 Power Supply Board

1. Remove the Flange from the Auto Take-up Reel.
2. Remove the Take-up Reel Cover. ([p313](#))
3. Remove the two screws that secure the Plate A, and remove the Plate A.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: two pieces
4. Remove the two screws that secure the Plate B, and remove the Plate B.
  - B) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: one piece
  - C) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M4x8: one piece

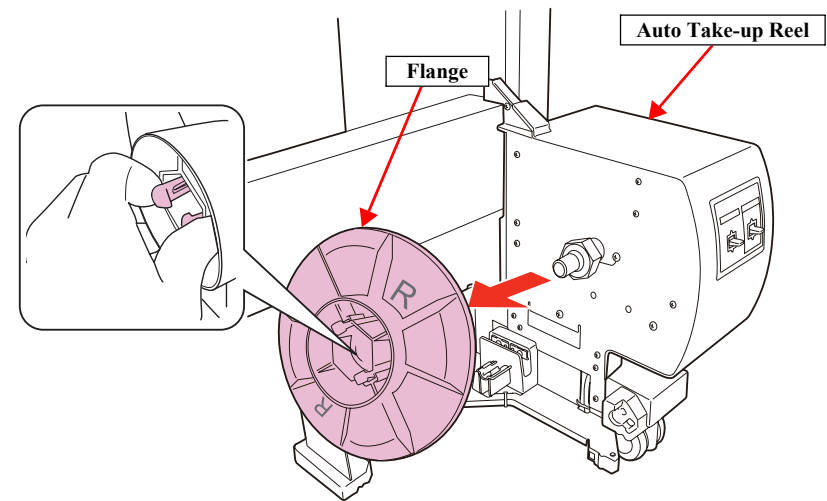


Figure 4-179. Removing the Flange

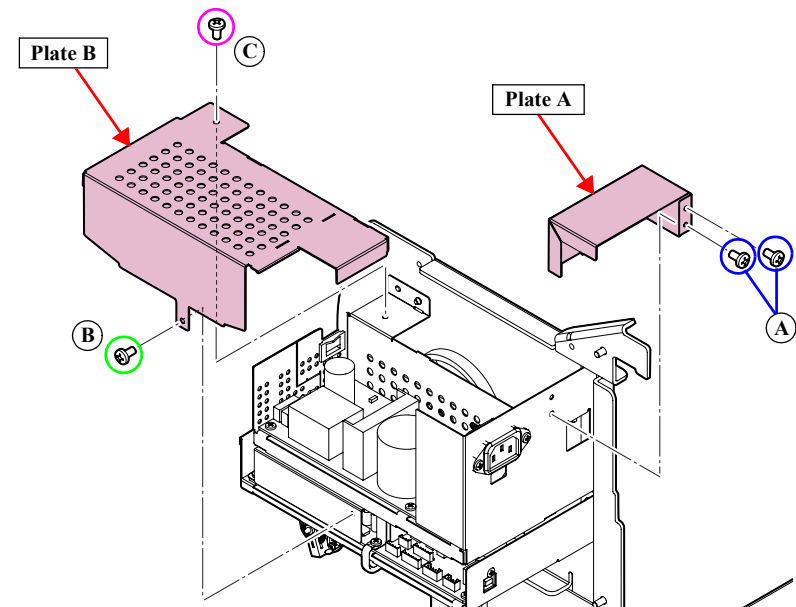


Figure 4-180. Removing the Plate A/B

5. Remove the six screws that secure the Power Supply Board, and remove the Power Supply Board.

D) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: six pieces

6. Disconnect the connectors (CN1, CN2) on the Power Supply Board.

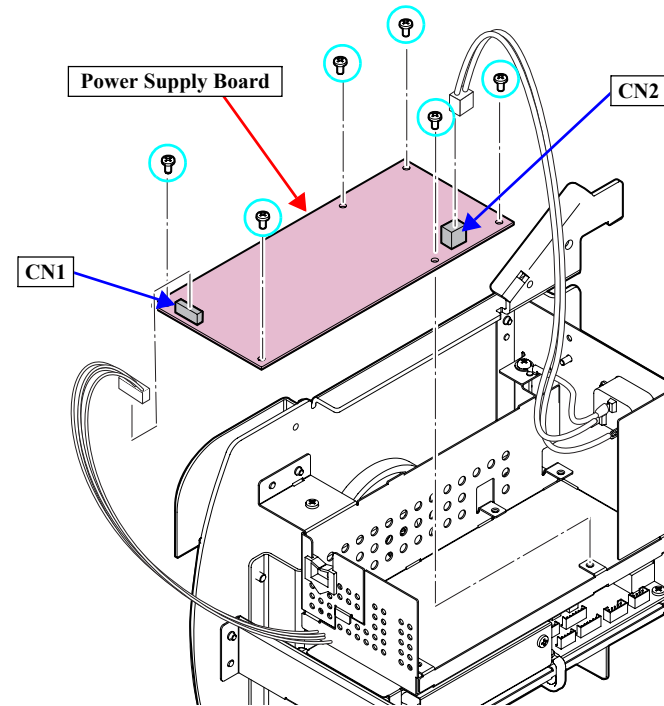


Figure 4-181. Removing the Power Supply Board

#### 4.4.7.6 Take-up Reel Motor

1. Remove the Flange from the Auto Take-up Reel.
2. Remove the Take-up Reel Cover. ([p313](#))
3. Disconnect the connector (CN1) on the Main Board.
4. Remove the four screws that secure the Power Supply Unit, and remove the Power Supply Unit.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: four pieces

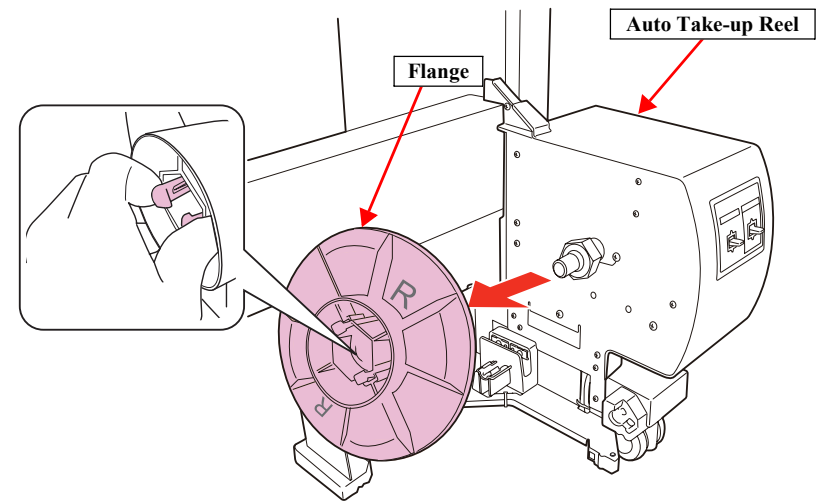


Figure 4-182. Removing the Flange

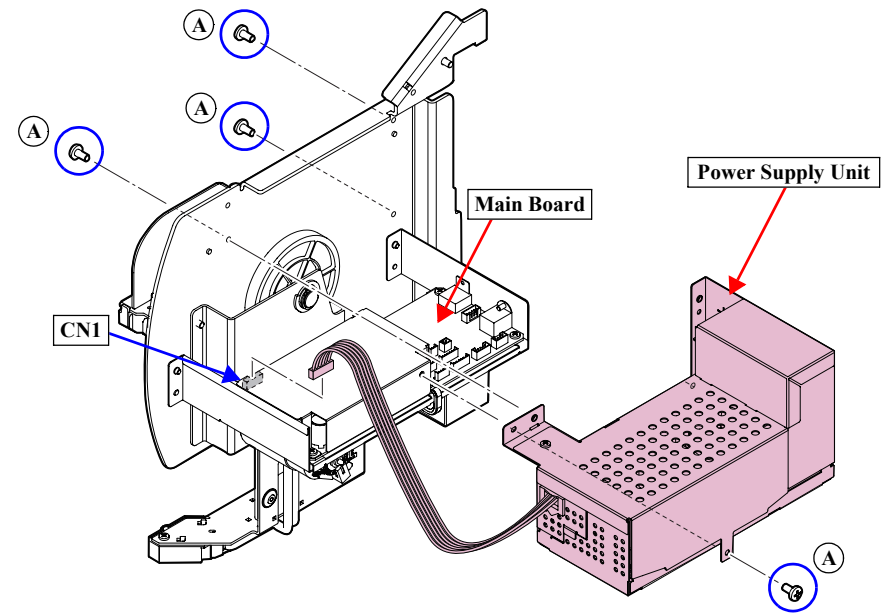


Figure 4-183. Removing the Power Supply Unit

5. Remove the two screws that secure the Main Board Unit.
  - B) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: two pieces
6. Disconnect the connector from the Take-up Reel Motor, and remove the Main Board Unit.
7. Remove the C-Ring.
8. Remove the four screws that secure the Motor Mounting Plate, and remove the Motor Mounting Plate.
  - C) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M4x8: four pieces
9. Remove the two gears from the Motor Mounting Plate.
10. Remove the two screws that secure the Take-up Reel Motor, and remove the Take-up Reel Motor.
  - D) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x6: two pieces

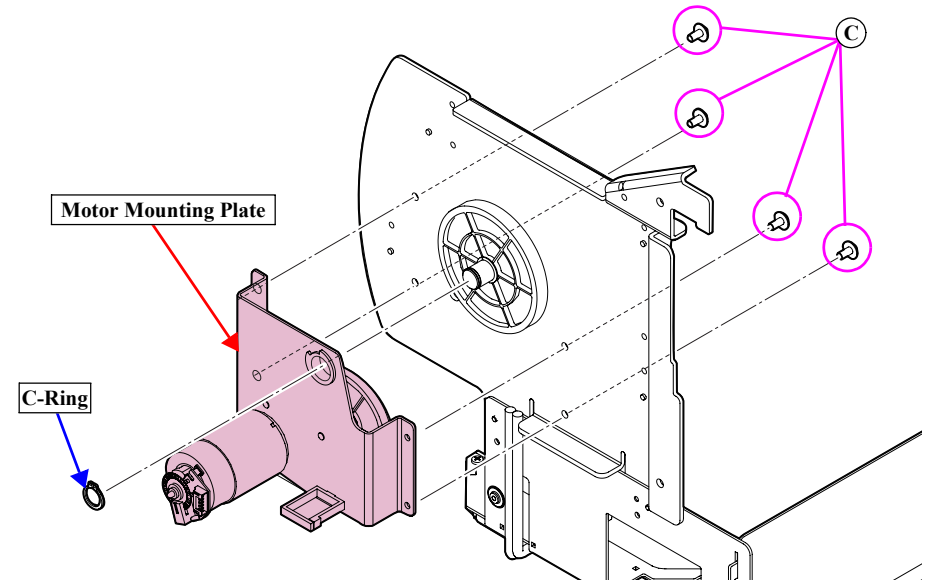


Figure 4-185. Removing the Motor Mounting Plate

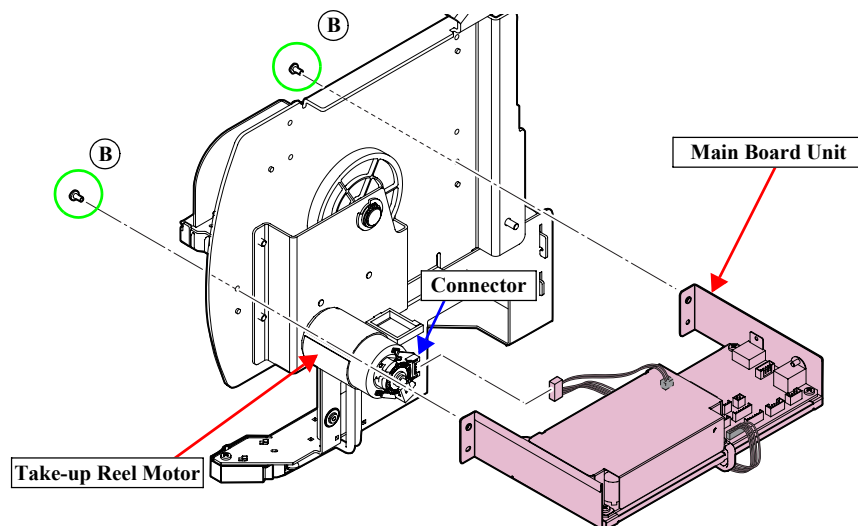


Figure 4-184. Removing the Main Board Unit

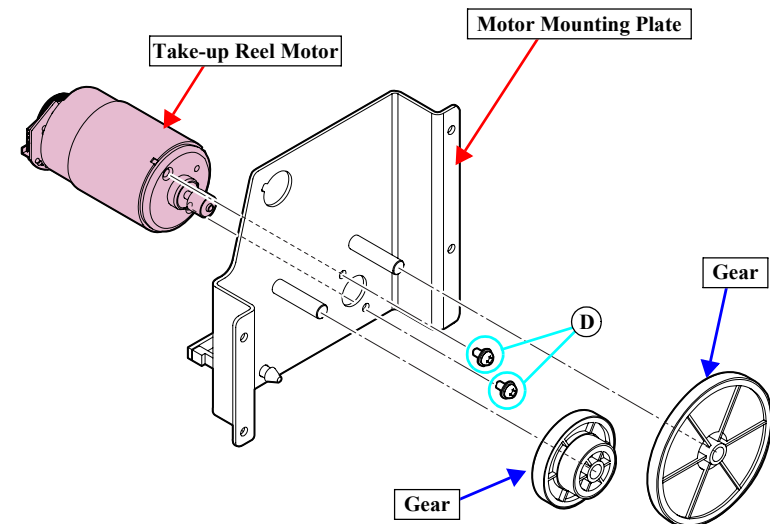


Figure 4-186. Removing the Take-up Reel Motor

#### 4.4.7.7 Main Board Assy

1. Remove the Flange from the Auto Take-up Reel.
2. Remove the Take-up Reel Cover. ([p313](#))
3. Disconnect the connector (CN1) on the Main Board.
4. Remove the four screws that secure the Power Supply Unit, and remove the Power Supply Unit.  
A) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: four pieces

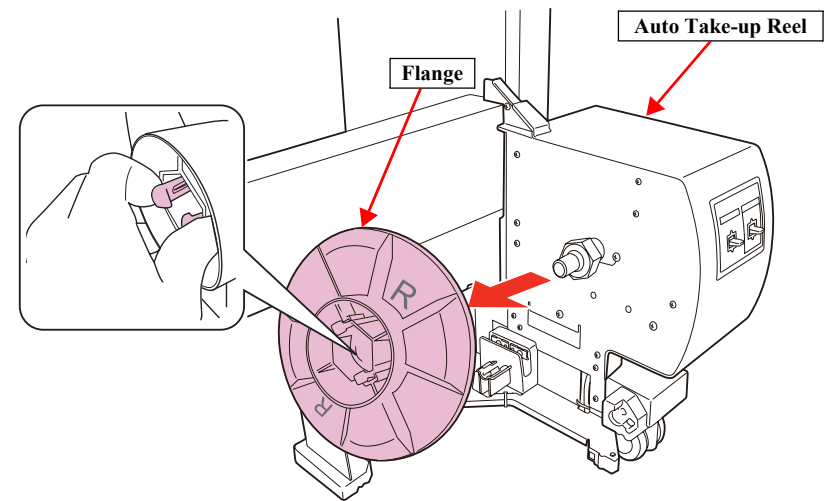


Figure 4-187. Removing the Flange

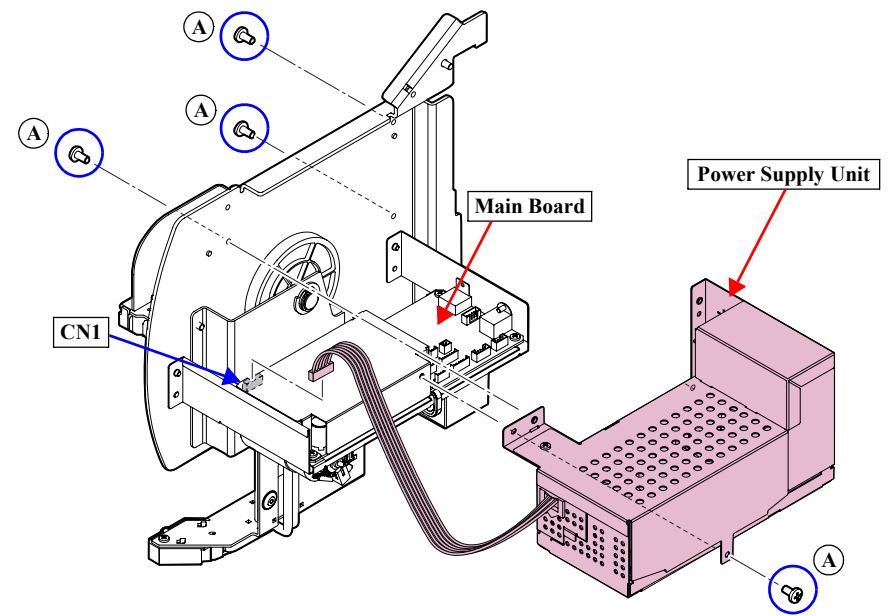


Figure 4-188. Removing the Power Supply Unit



5. Remove the four screws that secure the Shield Plate, and remove the three clamps and the Shield Plate.
  - B) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: four pieces
6. Disconnect all the connectors on the Main Board.
7. Remove the three screws that secure the Main Board Assy, and remove the Main Board Assy.
  - C) Black, Phillips, Bind S-tite M3x6: three pieces

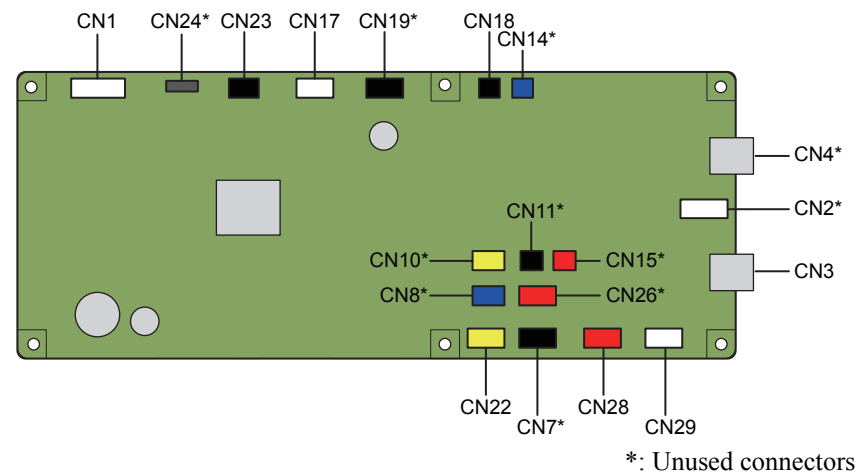


Figure 4-190. Connector location

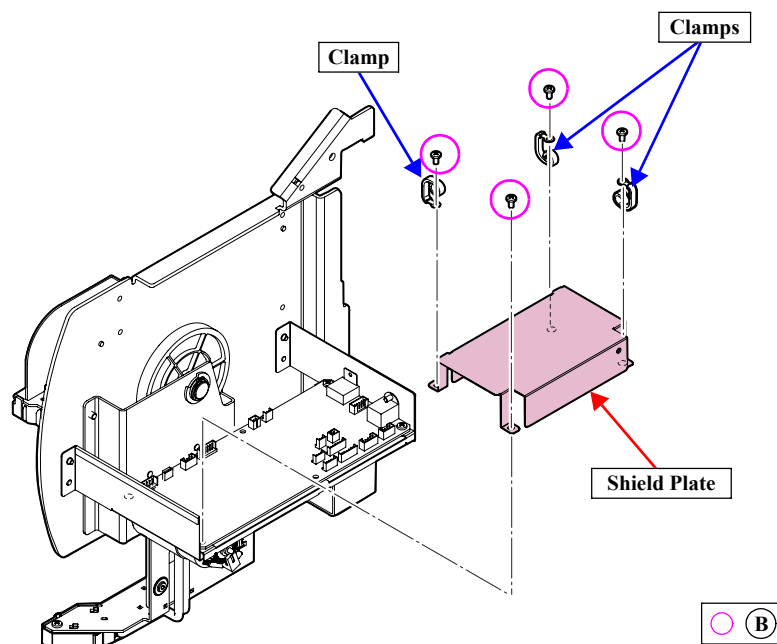


Figure 4-189. Removing the Shield Plate

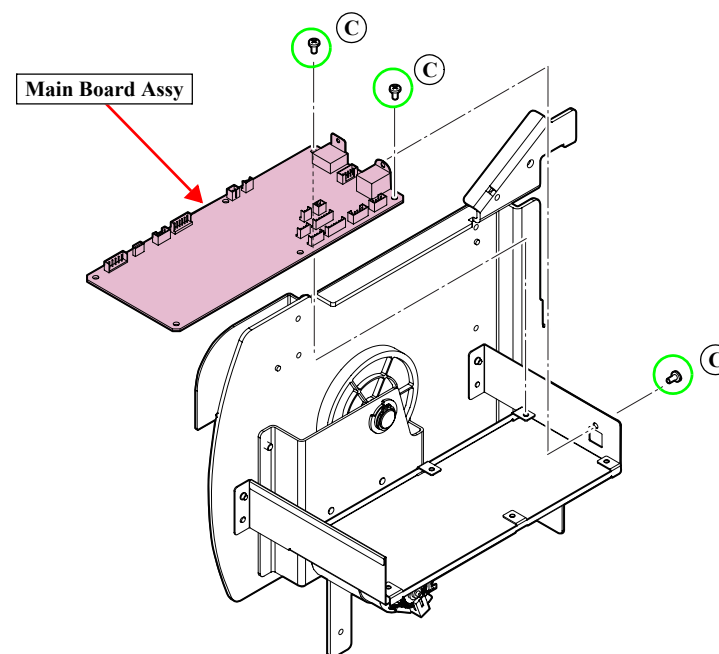


Figure 4-191. Removing the Main Board Assy

Connector assignment:

Connector No.	Color	Destination
CN1	White	Power Supply Board (CN2)
CN2*	White	Unused
CN3	-	USB-A
CN4*	-	Unused
CN7*	Black	Unused
CN8*	Blue	Unused
CN10*	Yellow	Unused
CN11*	Black	Unused
CN14*	Blue	Unused
CN15*	Red	Unused
CN17	White	Take-up Reel Switch
CN18	Black	Take-up Reel Motor
CN19*	Black	Unused
CN22	Yellow	Take-up Reel Motor
CN23	Black	LED
CN24*	(FFC)	Unused
CN26*	Red	Unused
CN28	Red	Take-up Reel Sensor
CN29	White	Take-up Reel Sensor

## 4.4.8 SpectroProofer

### 4.4.8.1 Color Measurement Device



- Do not touch the lens of the Color Measurement Device.
- When removing the Color Measurement Device, be careful not to drop it.

1. Detach the power cord from the Mounter.
2. Open the cover, and disconnect the connection cables for printer and the Auto Take-up Reel.

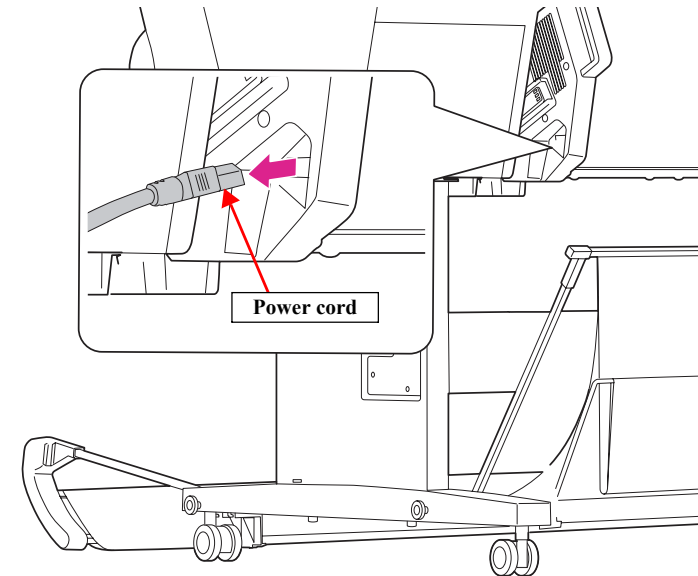


Figure 4-192. Detaching the power cord

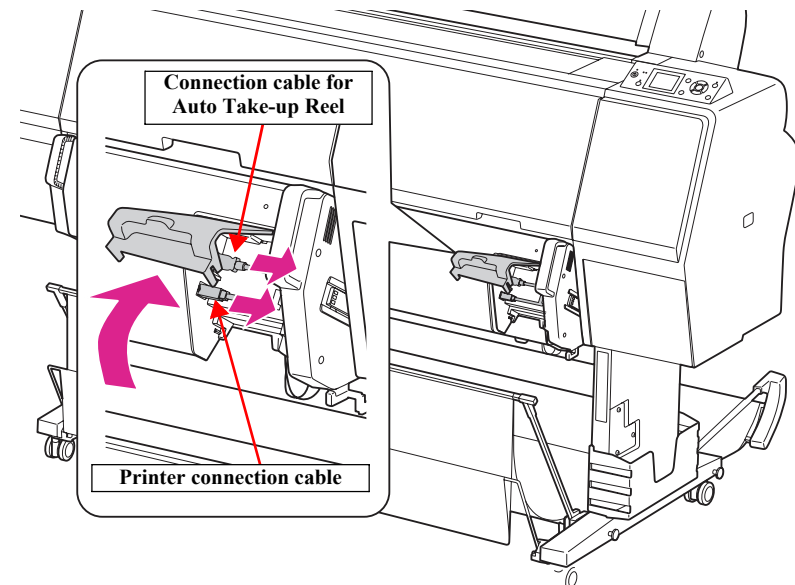


Figure 4-193. Disconnecting the cables (1)

3. Disconnect the mini USB interface cable and the DC cable connected to the Color Measurement Device.
4. Hold the rear of the Color Measurement Device, and lift it forward slightly, then remove it.

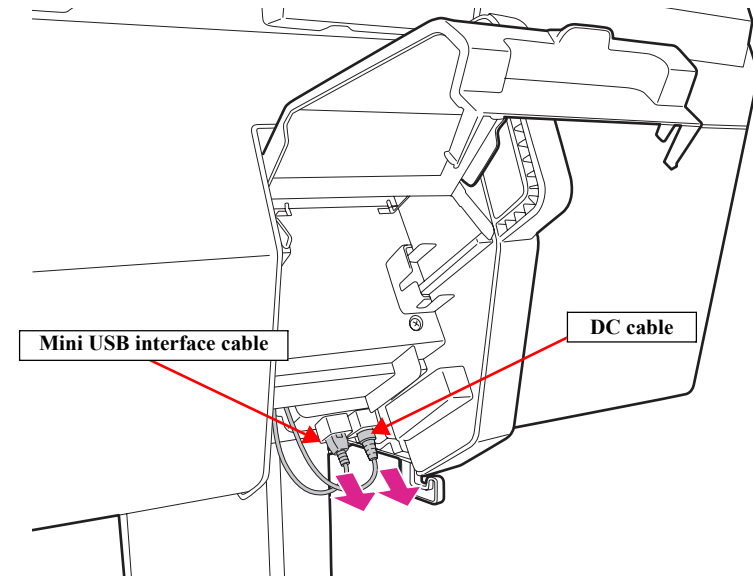


Figure 4-194. Disconnecting the cables (2)

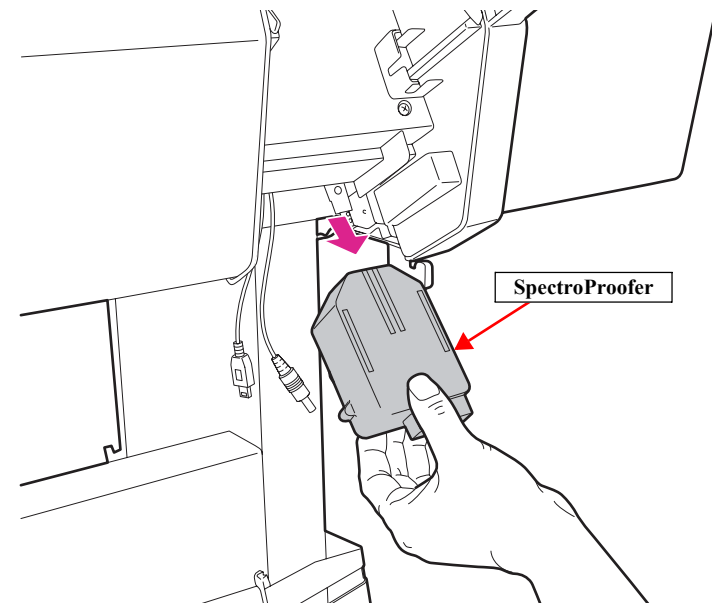


Figure 4-195. Removing the Color Measurement Device

#### 4.4.8.2 Mounter

**CAUTION**

When removing the Mounter, make sure to hold it up supporting the locations shown in the figure by two or more people.

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. ([p325](#))
2. Hold the handles and lift it by two people to remove the Mounter from the main body.

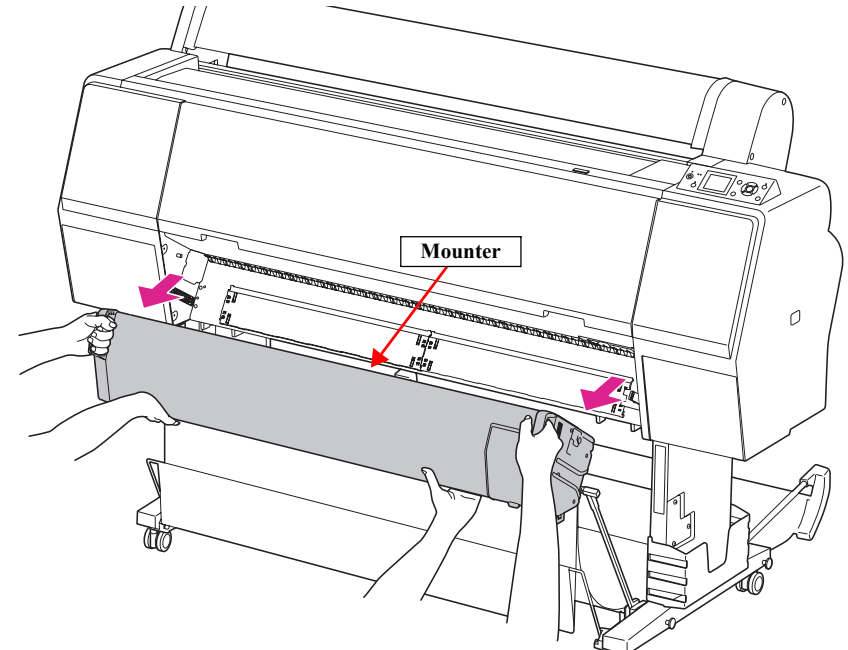


Figure 4-196. Removing the Mounter

#### 4.4.8.3 Right Cover

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. [\(p325\)](#)
2. Remove the Mounter. [\(p327\)](#)

**CHECK  
POINT**

In the next procedure, one of the screws is different from the others; therefore, make sure to confirm which is attached to which location.

3. Remove the five screws that secure the Right Cover.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x10: four pieces
  - B) Black, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: one piece
4. Remove the Right Cover.



Figure 4-197. Removing the Right Cover

#### 4.4.8.4 Left Cover

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. [\(p325\)](#)
2. Remove the Mounter. [\(p327\)](#)
3. Remove the five screws that secure the Left Cover.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: five pieces
4. Remove the Left Cover.



Figure 4-198. Removing the Left Cover



#### 4.4.8.5 I/F Cover

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. [\(p325\)](#)
2. Remove the Mounter. [\(p327\)](#)
3. Open the I/F Cover.
4. Disengage the two dowels, and remove the I/F Cover.

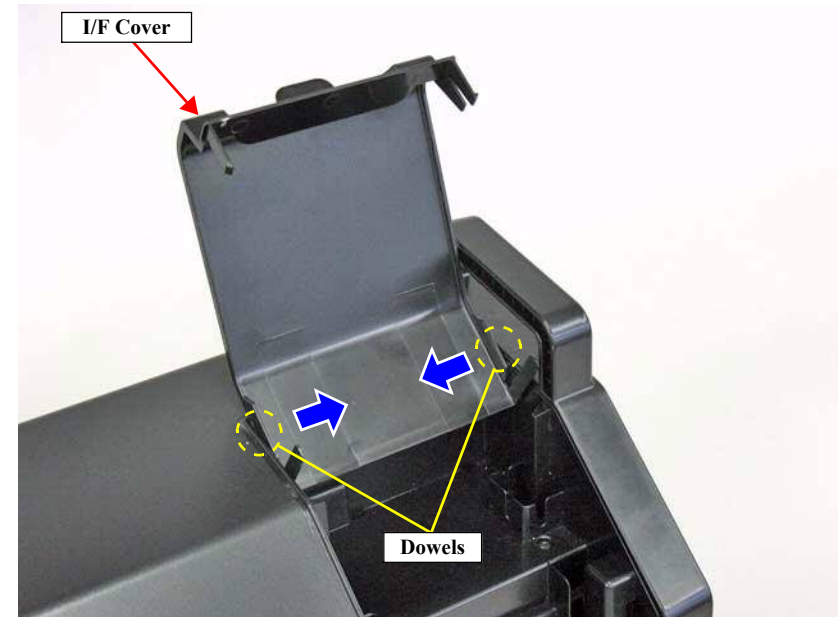


Figure 4-199. Removing the I/F Cover

#### 4.4.8.6 Front Cover

This part is not an ASP.

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. (p325)
2. Remove the Mounter. (p327)

CHECK  
POINT



**In the next step, make sure to confirm which screw is attached to which location because various screws are used here.**

3. Remove the six screws that secure the Front Cover.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M3x6: three pieces
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Pan P-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x10: two pieces
  - C) Silver, Phillips, Pan S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x6: one piece
4. Hold up the Front Cover to remove it.

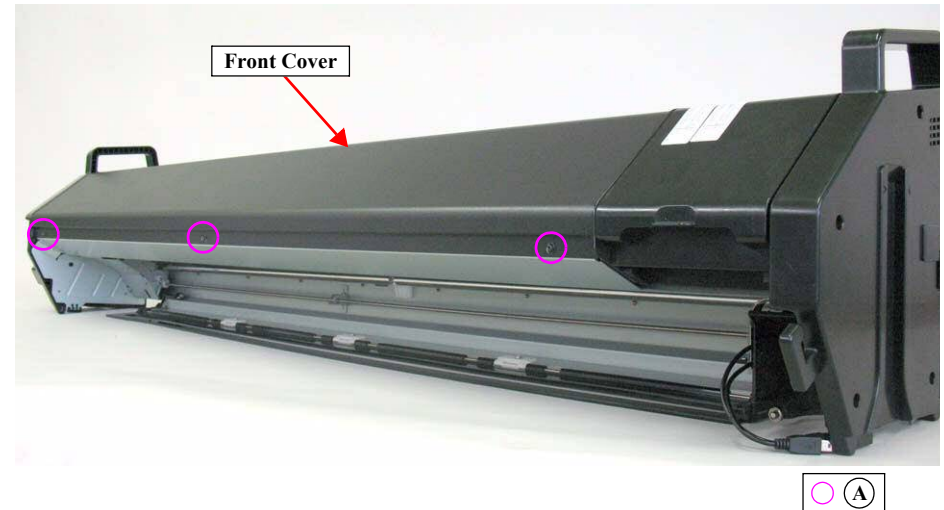


Figure 4-200. Removing the Front Cover (1)

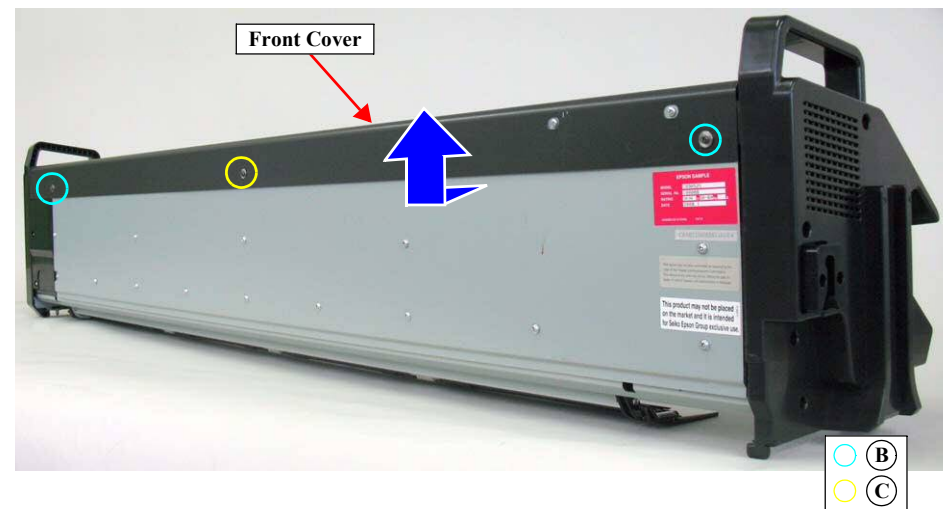


Figure 4-201. Removing the Front Cover (2)

#### 4.4.8.7 Main Board

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. (p325)
2. Remove the Mounter. (p327)
3. Remove the Front Cover. (p331)
4. Disconnect all the connectors and FFC on the Main Board.



Those connectors which are shown in the figure are not used.

5. Remove the eight screws that secure the Main Board, and remove the Main Board.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: six pieces
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M2x6 (bit: No.1): one piece
  - C) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: one piece

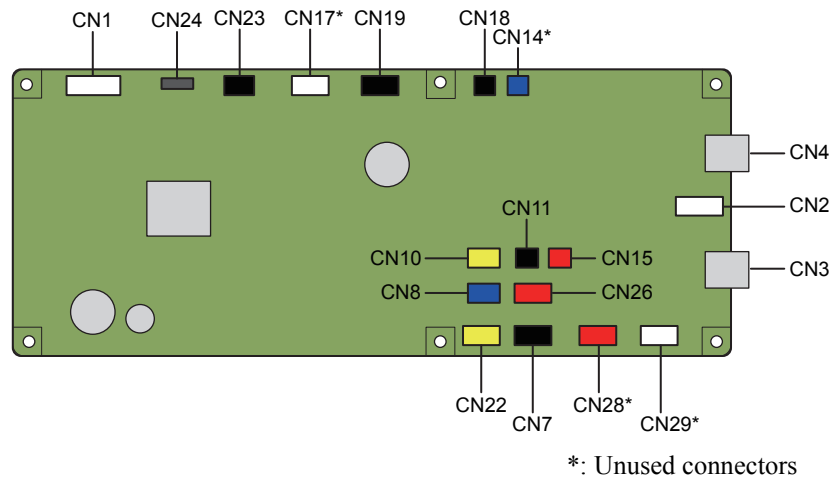


Figure 4-202. Connector Locations

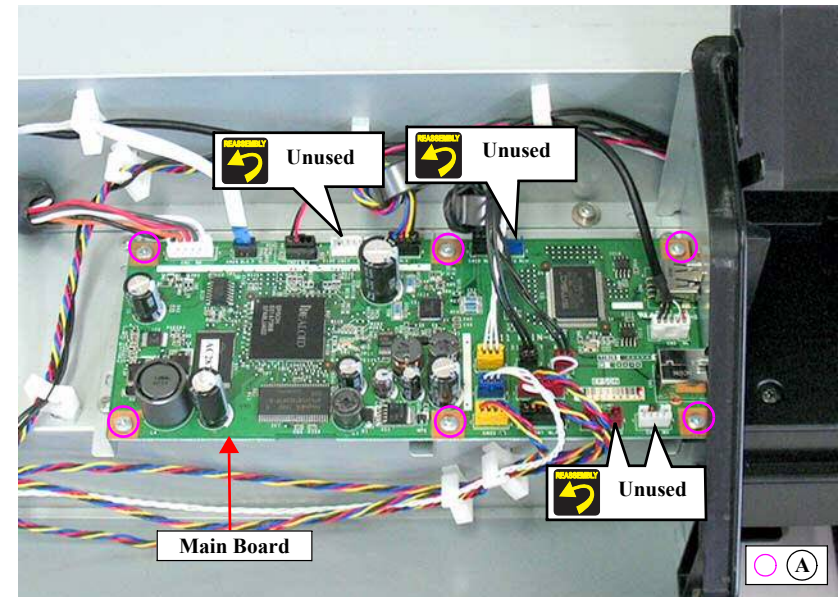


Figure 4-203. Removing the Main Board (1)

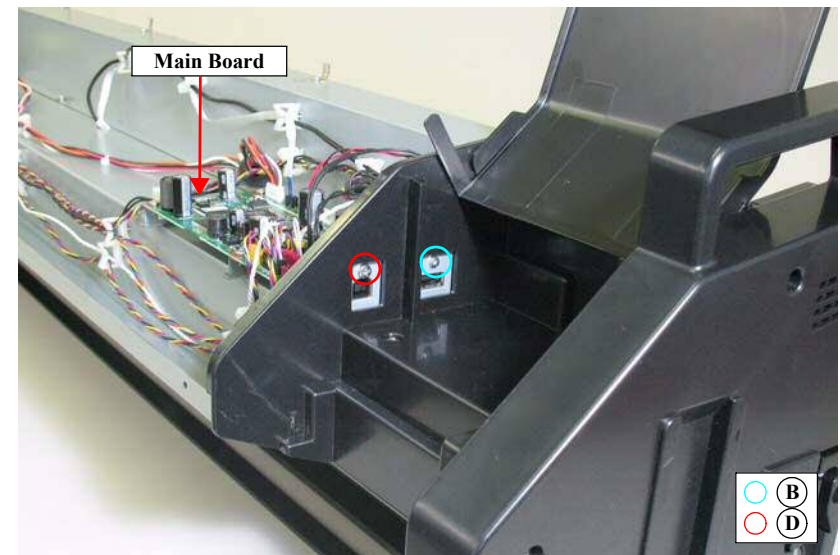


Figure 4-204. Removing the Main Board (2)

Connector assignment:

Connector No.	Color	Destination
CN1	White	Power Supply Board (CN2)
CN2	White	Color Measurement Device
CN3	-	USB-A
CN4	-	USB-B
CN7	Black	Cooling Fan 1
CN8	Blue	Paper Pressing HP Sensor
CN10	Yellow	CR HP Sensor
CN11	Black	Thermistor
CN14*	Blue	Unused
CN15	Red	ACCEL Mount Sensor
CN17*	-	Unused
CN18	Black	Paper Pressing Motor
CN19	Black	Carriage Motor
CN22	Yellow	Paper Pressing Motor
CN23	Black	LED
CN24	(FFC)	DC Board (CN1)
CN26	Red	Cooling Fan 2
CN28*	-	Unused
CN29*	-	Unused

ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Main Board.

<Adjustment Item>

1. NVRAM Backup
2. NVRAM Restore

#### 4.4.8.8 Power Supply Board

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. [\(p325\)](#)
2. Remove the Mounter. [\(p327\)](#)
3. Remove the Front Cover. [\(p331\)](#)
4. Disconnect all the connectors (CN1, CN2) on the Power Supply Board.
5. Remove the six screws that secure the Power Supply Board, and remove the Power Supply Board.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: six pieces

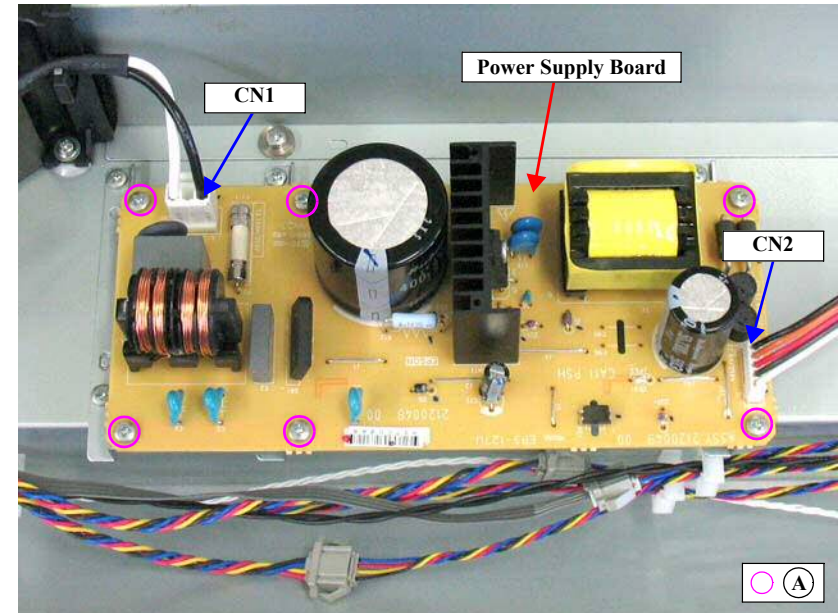


Figure 4-205. Removing the Power Supply Board



#### 4.4.8.9 Paper Pressing Plate Sensor

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. [\(p325\)](#)
2. Remove the Mounter. [\(p327\)](#)
3. Remove the three screws that secure the shield plate, and remove the shield plate.  
A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: three pieces
4. Disengage the hook that secures the Paper Pressing Plate Sensor, and remove the Paper Pressing Plate Sensor.
5. Disconnect the connector from the Paper Pressing Plate Sensor.

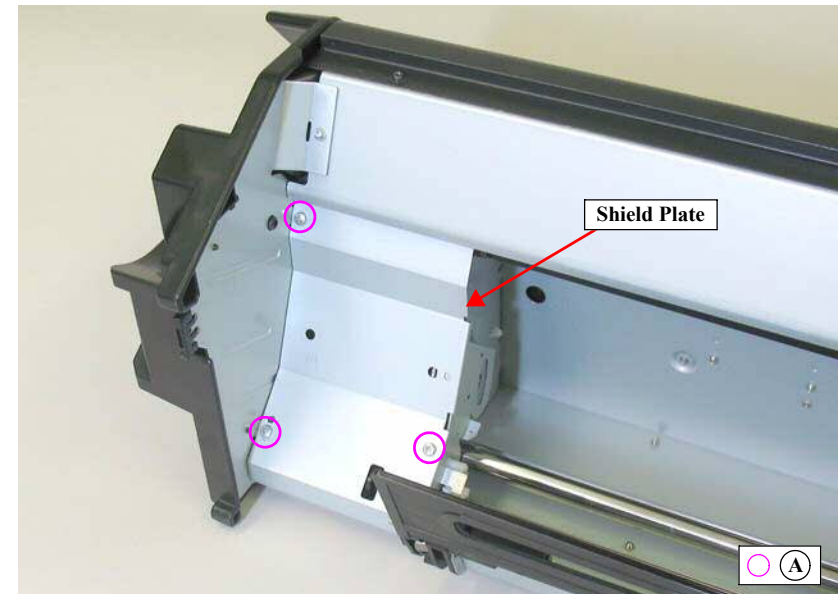


Figure 4-206. Removing the shield Plate

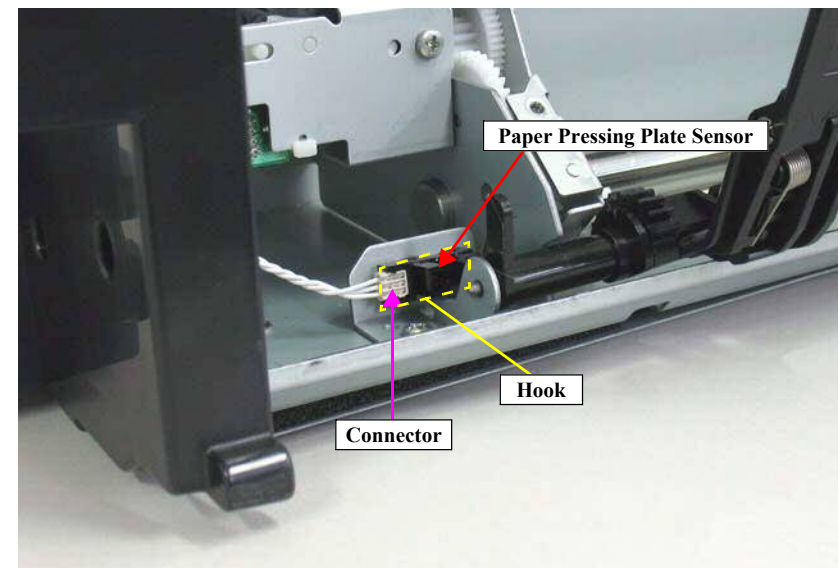


Figure 4-207. Removing the Paper Pressing Plate Sensor

#### 4.4.8.10 CR HP Sensor

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. [\(p325\)](#)
2. Remove the Mounter. [\(p327\)](#)
3. Move the carriage to the center.
4. Disengage the hooks that secure the CR HP Sensor, and detach the CR HP Sensor.
5. Disconnect the connector from the CR HP Sensor.

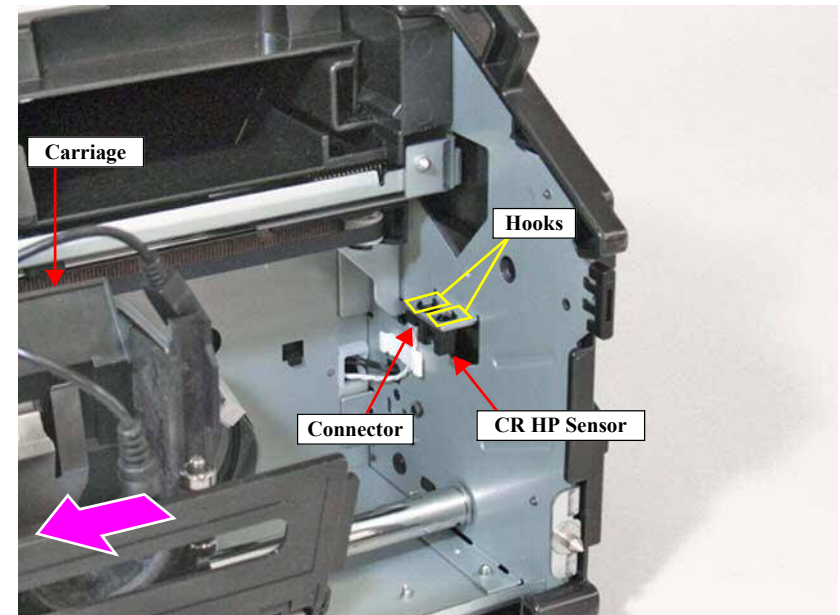


Figure 4-208. Removing the CR HP Sensor



#### 4.4.8.11 Thermistor

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. (p325)
2. Remove the Mounter. (p327)
3. Remove the Front Cover. (p331)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p328)
5. Disconnect the connector (CN11) on the Main Board.
6. Remove the two screws that secure the USB Housing, and remove the USB Housing.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: two pieces
7. Release the harness of the Thermistor from the cable guide, and remove the Thermistor.

#### REASSEMBLY



Make sure to route the harness as shown in the figure.

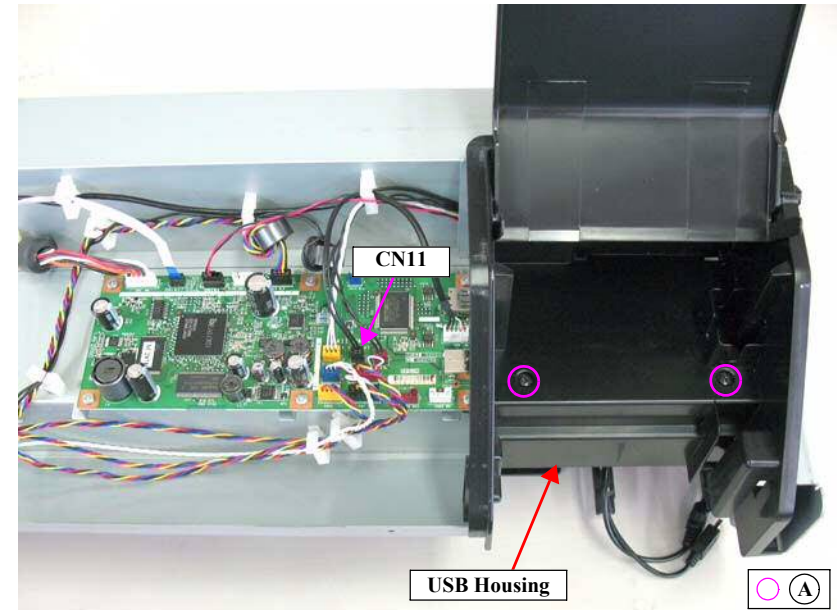


Figure 4-209. Removing the USB Housing

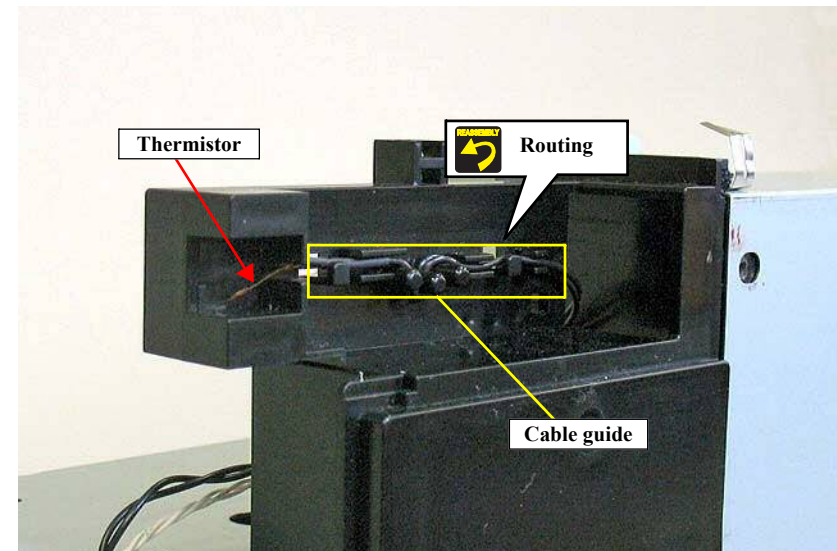


Figure 4-210. Removing the Thermistor

#### 4.4.8.12 Mount Sensor

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. [\(p325\)](#)
2. Remove the Mounter. [\(p327\)](#)
3. Remove the Front Cover. [\(p331\)](#)
4. Remove the Right Cover. [\(p328\)](#)
5. Remove the two screws that secure the Mount Sensor Holder, and remove the Mount Sensor Holder.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: two pieces
6. Disengage the four hooks that secure the Mount Sensor, and detach the Mount Sensor from the Mount Sensor Holder.
7. Disconnect the connector from the Mount Sensor.

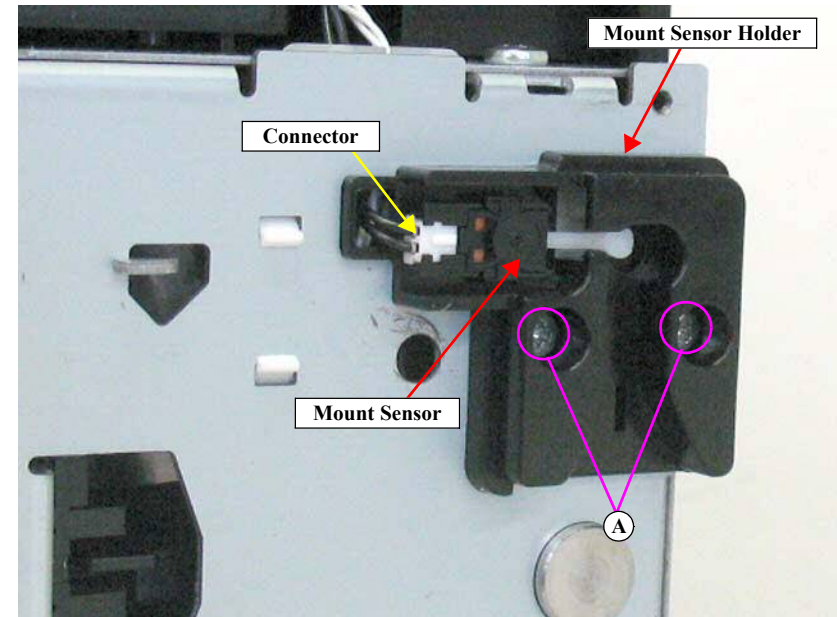


Figure 4-211. Removing the Mount Sensor

#### 4.4.8.13 LED

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. (p325)
2. Remove the Mounter. (p327)
3. Remove the Front Cover. (p331)
4. Remove the Right Cover. (p328)
5. Disconnect the connector (CN23) on the Main Board.
6. Remove the two screws that secure the USB Housing, and remove the USB Housing.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: two pieces
7. Release the harness of the LED from the cable guide, and remove the LED.

#### REASSEMBLY



Make sure to route the harness as shown in the figure.

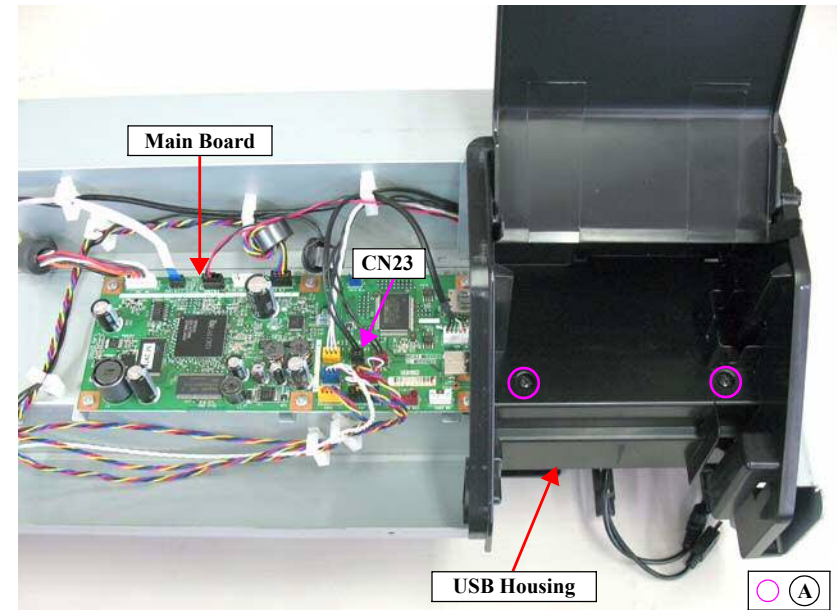


Figure 4-212. Removing the USB Housing

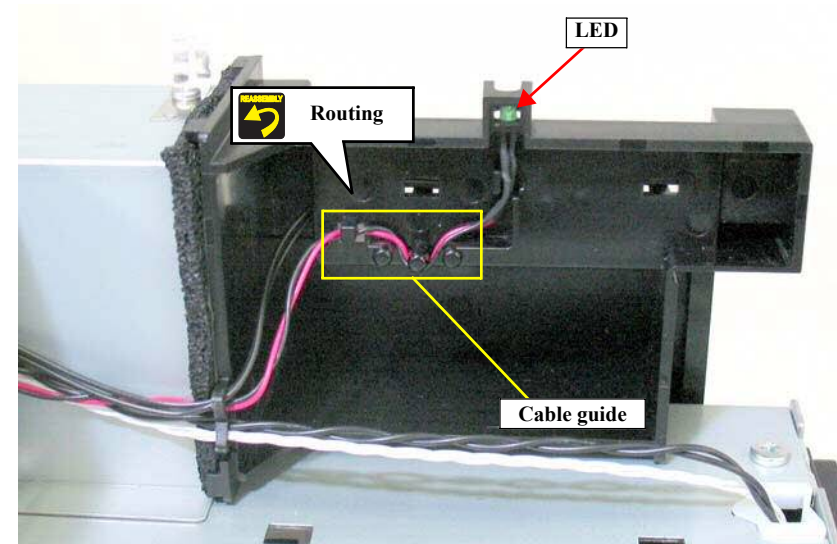


Figure 4-213. Removing the LED

#### 4.4.8.14 Paper Pressing Encoder

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. (p325)
2. Remove the Mounter. (p327)

**CAUTION**

In the next steps, take care not to damage the scale of the Paper Pressing Encoder.

3. Remove the three screws that secure the shield plate, and remove the shield plate.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: three pieces
4. Remove the screw that secures the encoder mounting plate, and remove the encoder mounting plate.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: one piece
5. Remove the screw that secures the Paper Pressing Encoder.
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x8: one piece

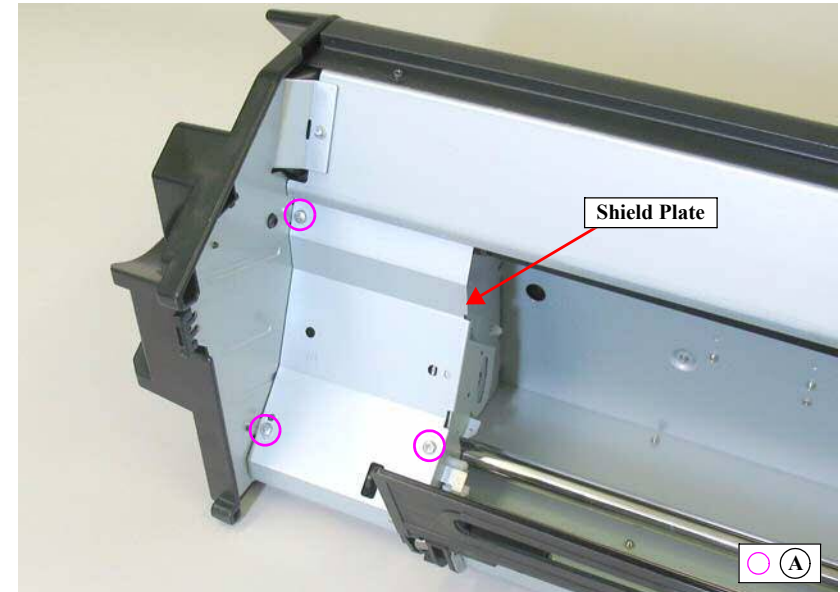


Figure 4-214. Removing the shield Plate

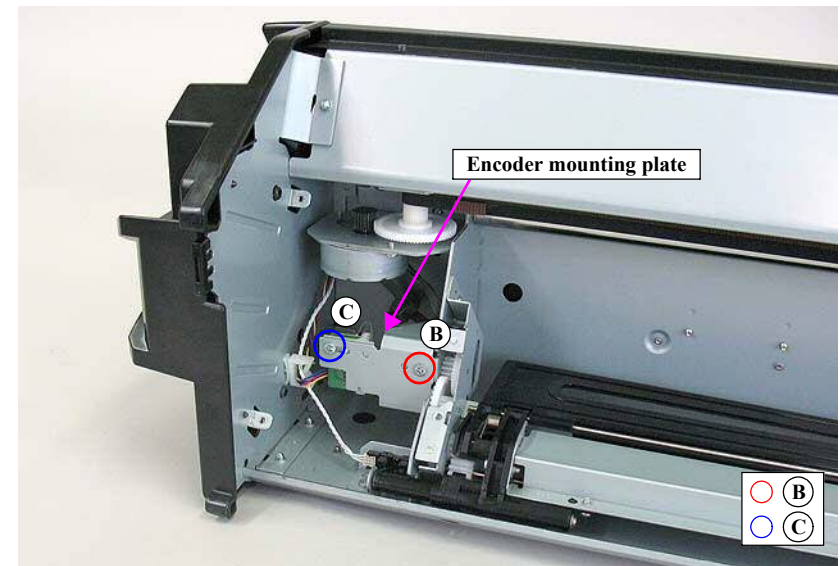


Figure 4-215. Removing the encoder mounting plate



6. Disconnect the connector from the Paper Pressing Encoder and remove the Paper Pressing Encoder.

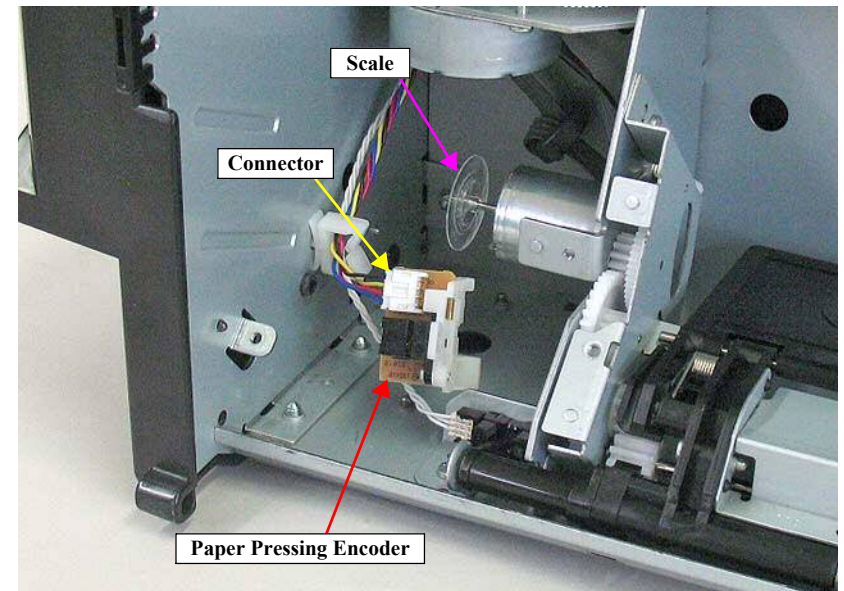


Figure 4-216. Removing the Paper Pressing Encoder

#### 4.4.8.15 Cooling Fan 1

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. (p325)
2. Remove the Mounter. (p327)
3. Remove the Front Cover. (p331)
4. Remove the Left Cover. (p329)
5. Remove the four screws that secure the Cooling Fan 1 mounting plate, and remove the Cooling Fan 1 mounting plate.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x8: four pieces
6. Disconnect the relay connector, and release the harness from the clamp.
7. Remove the four screws that secure the Cooling Fan 1, and remove the Cooling Fan 1.
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x12 & nut: four pairs

ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (see p351) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Cooling Fan 1.

<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (FAN)

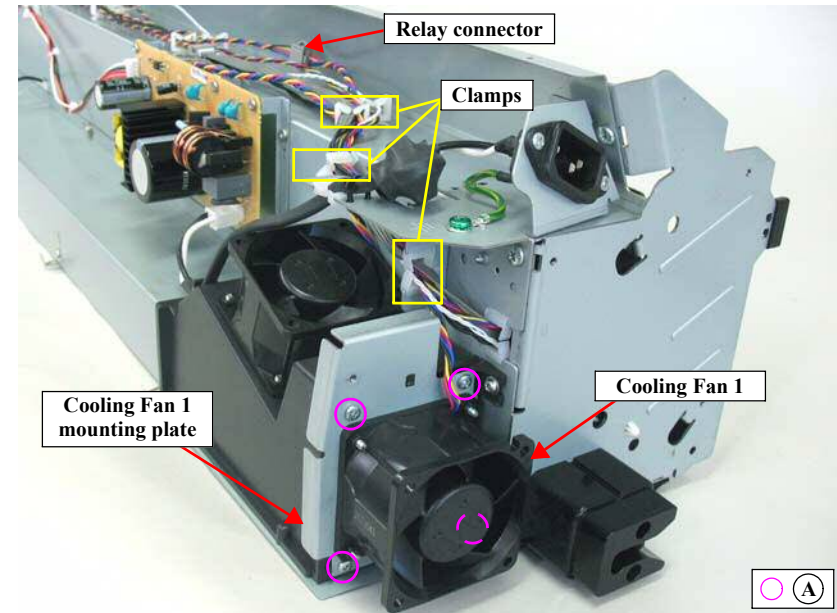


Figure 4-217. Removing the Cooling Fan 1 mounting plate

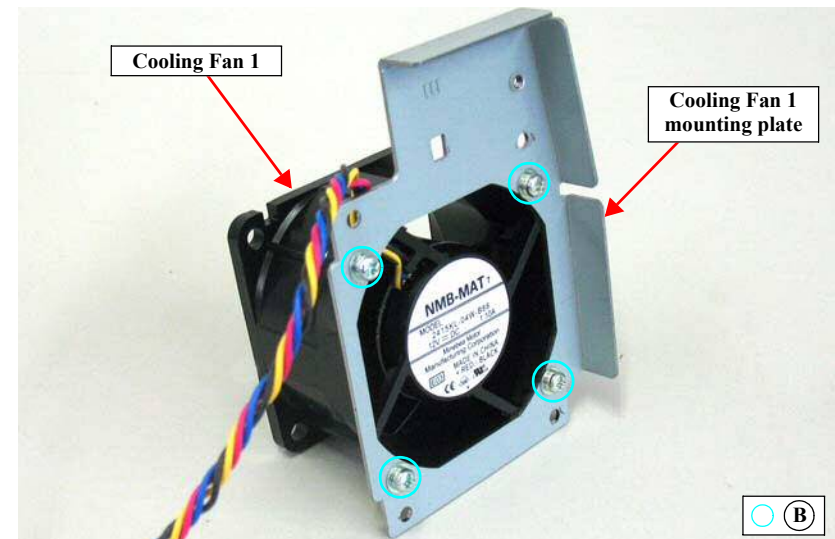


Figure 4-218. Removing the Cooling Fan 1

#### 4.4.8.16 Cooling Fan 2

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. [\(p325\)](#)
2. Remove the Mounter. [\(p327\)](#)
3. Remove the Front Cover. [\(p331\)](#)
4. Remove the Right Cover. [\(p328\)](#)
5. Remove the Left Cover. [\(p329\)](#)
6. Remove the two screws that secure the USB Housing, and remove the USB Housing.
  - A) Black, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: two pieces
7. Release all the harness from the clamps.
8. Remove the four screws that secure the plate.
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x6: four pieces

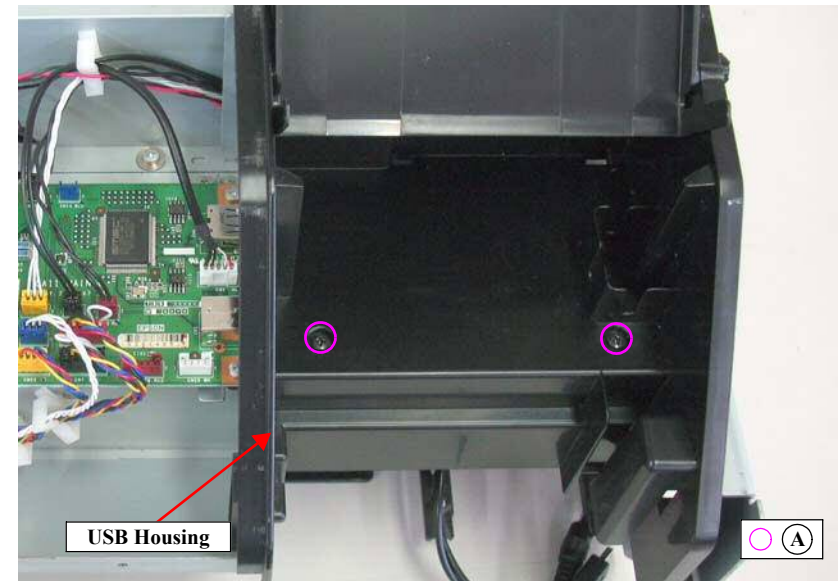


Figure 4-219. Removing the USB Housing

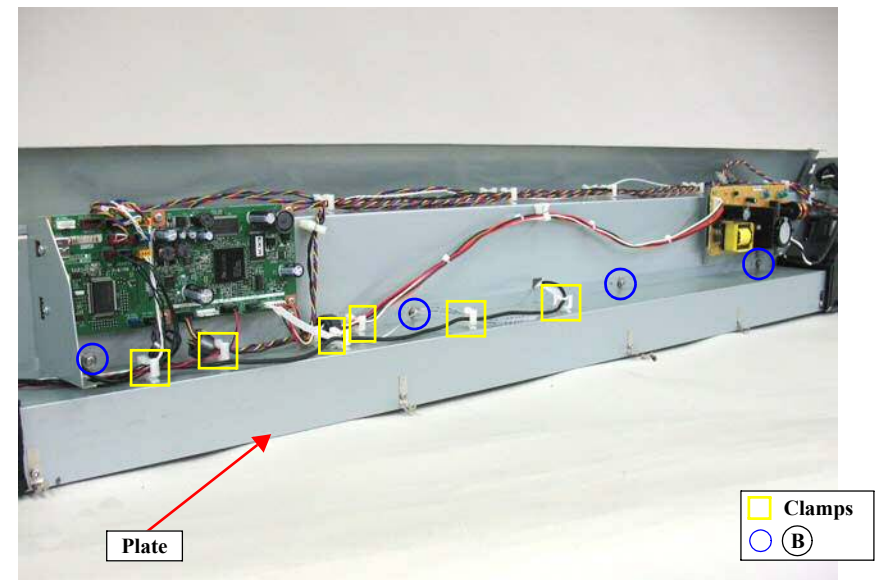


Figure 4-220. Releasing the harnesses



9. Remove the four screws that secure the USB Housing Duct, and remove the USB Housing Duct.

C) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M3x10: four pieces

10. Remove the four screws that secure the plate.

D) Silver, Phillips, Bind P-tite M3x8: two pieces

E) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M3x4: two pieces

11. Loosen the ten screws that secure the plate, and remove the plate.

F) Silver, Phillips, Round Washer Head S-tite M3x8 & spring: ten pairs

# CAUTION



**When removing the plate, take care in the following.**

- The screws (F) that secure the plate do not come off, just become loosened.
- Some of the screws have a spring attached at the tip; therefore, make sure not to drop the springs when removing those screws.

# REASSEMBLY



**When attaching the plate, align the screws and the screw holes while checking them from the opening space so as not to drop the springs.**

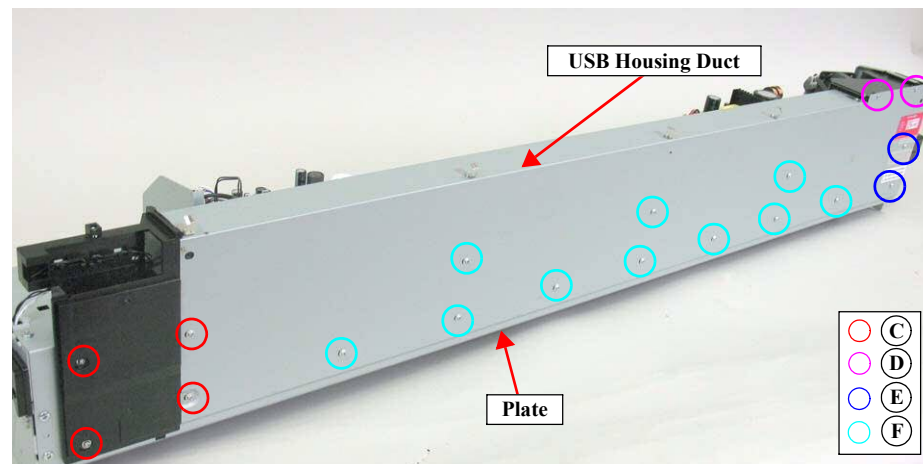
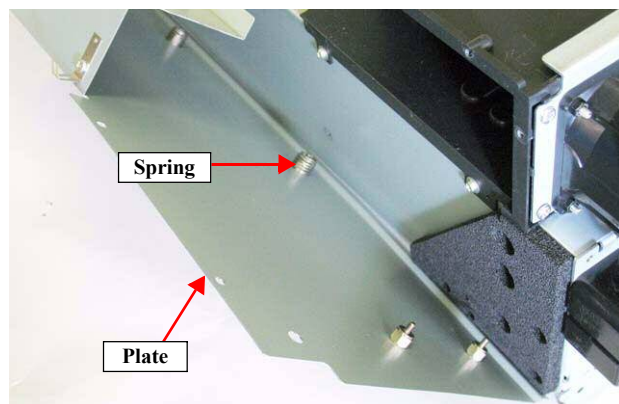


Figure 4-221. Removing the plate

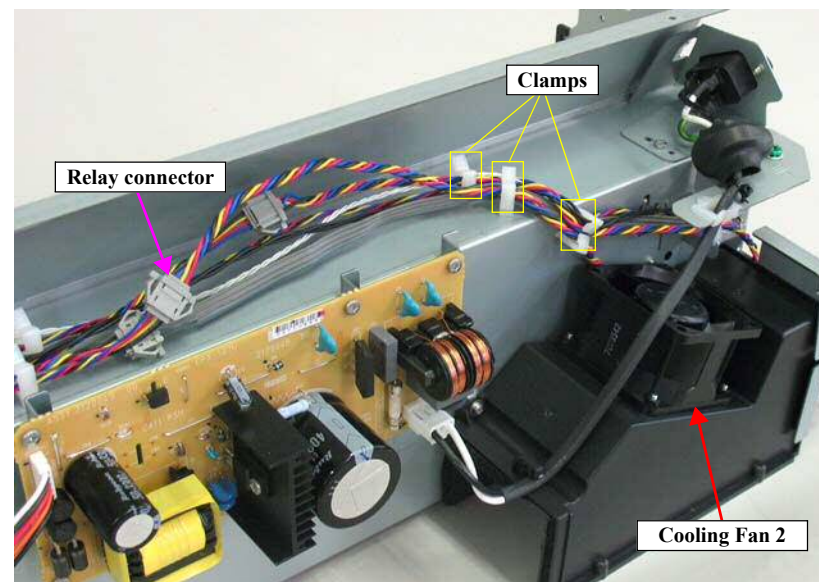


Figure 4-222. Removing the Cooling Fan 2 (1)

12. Disconnect the relay connector, and release the harness from the clamps.

13. Remove the four screws that secure the Cooling Fan2, and remove the Cooling Fan2.

G) Silver, Phillips, Bind S-tite with S.W & P.W. M3x12 & nut: four pairs

ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Cooling Fan 2.  
<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (FAN)

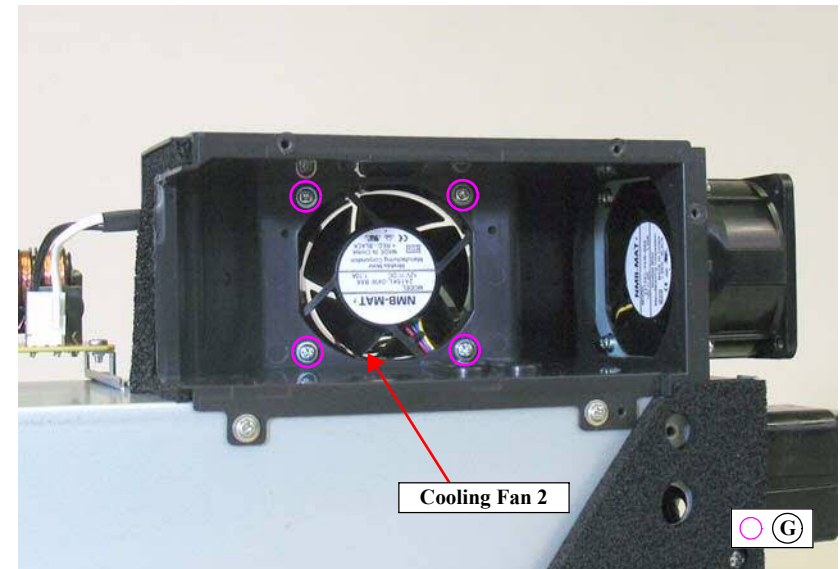


Figure 4-223. Removing the Cooling Fan 2 (2)

#### 4.4.8.17 Paper Pressing Motor

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. (p325)
2. Remove the Mounter. (p327)
3. Remove the Paper Pressing Encoder. (p340)

**CAUTION**


In the next steps, take care not to damage the scale of the Paper Pressing Encoder.

4. Remove the screw that secures the Carriage Motor mounting plate, and remove the Carriage Motor Mounting Plate.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M4x8: one piece
5. Disconnect the relay connector of the Paper Pressing Motor.
6. Release the harness from the clamp.
7. Remove the two screws that secure the Paper Pressing Motor, and remove the Paper Pressing Motor.
  - B) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x4: two pieces

**ADJUSTMENT  
REQUIRED**


Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” (see p351) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Paper Pressing Motor.  
<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (Paper Pressing Motor)

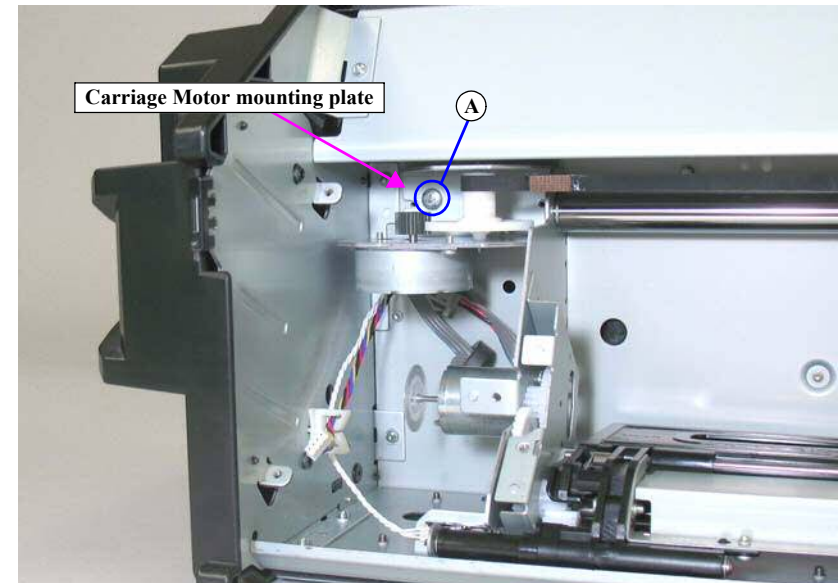


Figure 4-224. Removing the Carriage Motor mounting plate

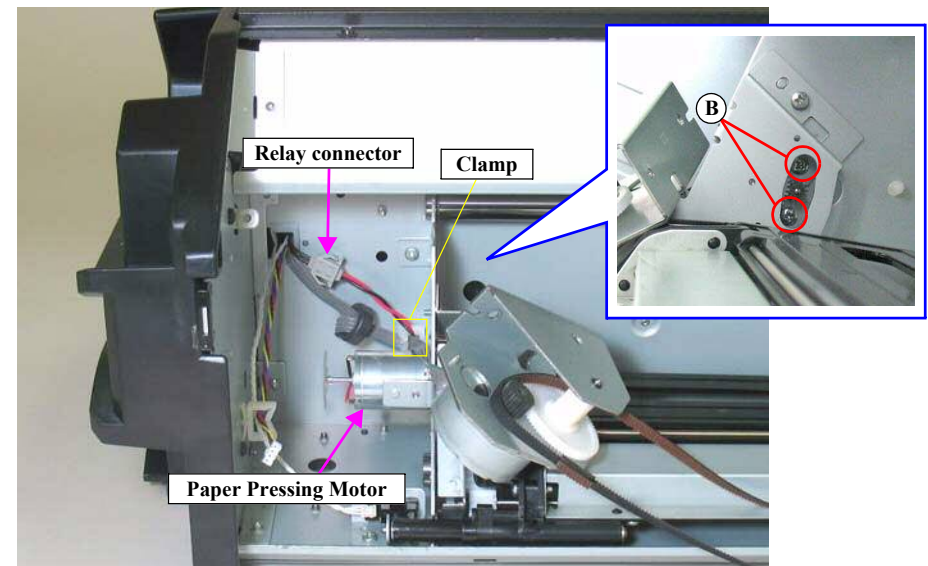


Figure 4-225. Removing the Paper Pressing motor

#### 4.4.8.18 Carriage Motor

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. [\(p325\)](#)
2. Remove the Mounter. [\(p327\)](#)
3. Remove the Front Cover. [\(p331\)](#)
4. Remove the three screws that secure the shield plate, and remove the shield plate.  
A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: three pieces
5. Disconnect the relay connector, and release the cable from the clamp and the cable retainer.

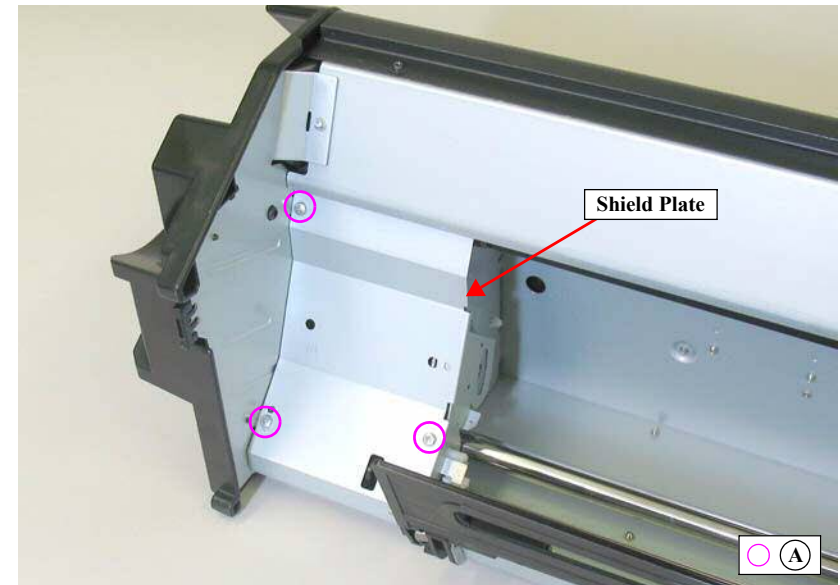


Figure 4-226. Removing the shield Plate

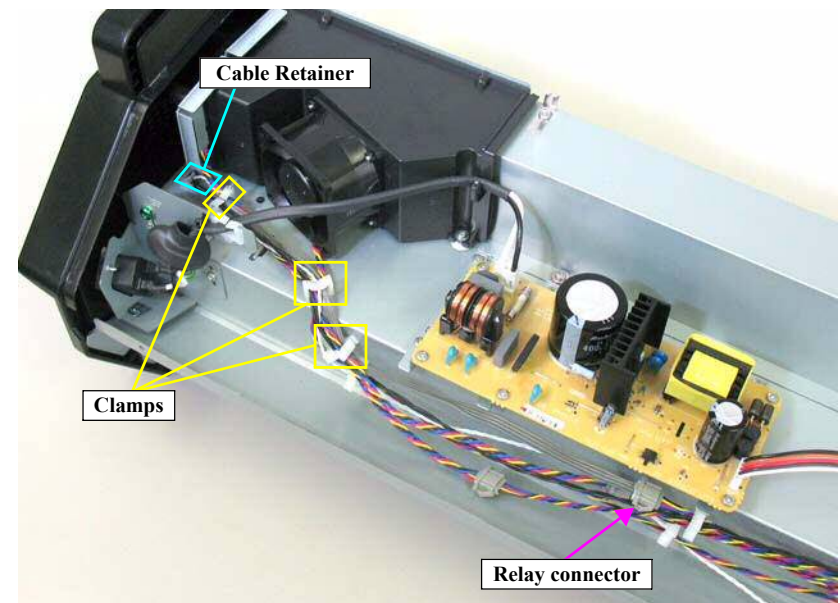


Figure 4-227. Disconnecting the relay connector



6. Remove the screw that secures the Carriage Motor mounting plate, and remove the Carriage Motor mounting plate.

B) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M4x8: one piece

7. Remove the two screws that secure the Carriage Motor, and remove the Carriage Motor.

C) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: two pieces



Be sure to refer to Chapter 5 “Adjustment” ([see p351](#)) and perform specified adjustments after replacing the Carriage Motor.  
<Adjustment Item>

1. Counter Clear (Carriage Motor)

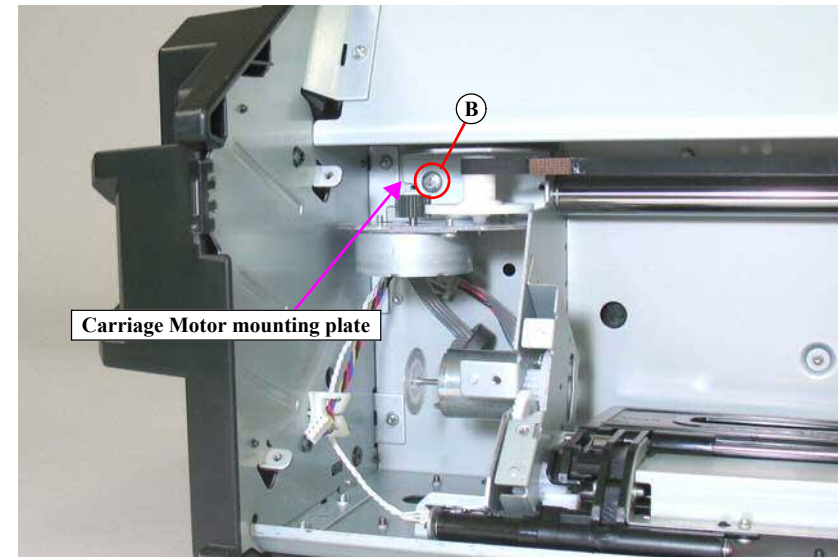


Figure 4-228. Removing the Carriage Motor mounting plate

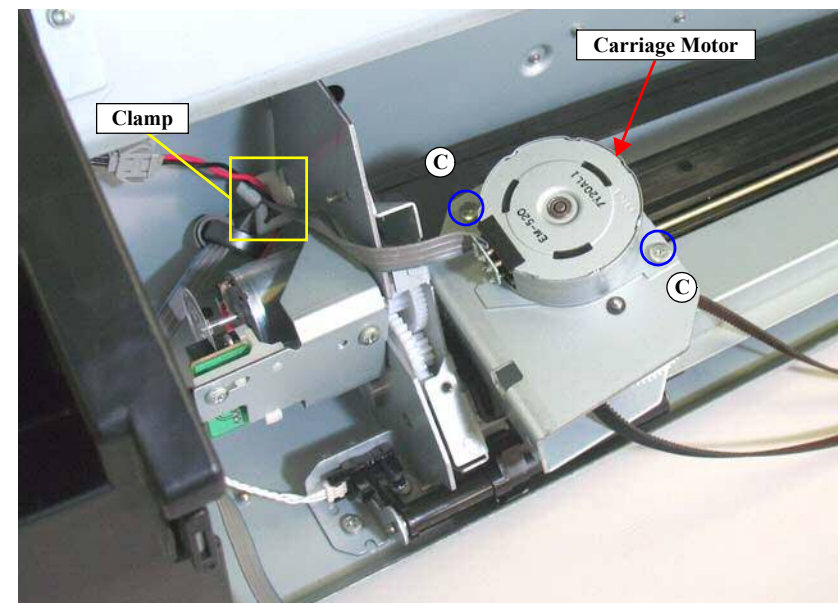


Figure 4-229. Removing the Carriage Motor

#### 4.4.8.19 Paper Pressing Unit

1. Remove the Color Measurement Device. [\(p325\)](#)
2. Remove the Mounter. [\(p327\)](#)
3. Remove the three screws that secure the shield plate, and remove the shield plate.
  - A) Silver, Phillips, Bind machine screw M3x6: three pieces

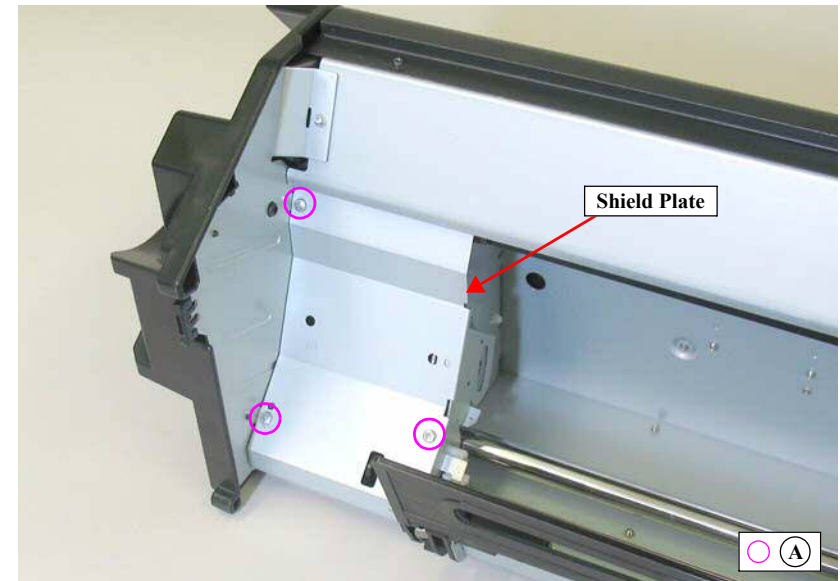


Figure 4-230. Removing the shield Plate

4. Remove the E-ring.
5. Pull out the shaft.
6. Remove the O-ring, and remove the Paper Pressing Unit.

**REASSEMBLY**

First align the markings on the gears on the left and the right side of the Paper Pressing Unit with the markings on the gears on the main body, then install the Paper Pressing Unit.

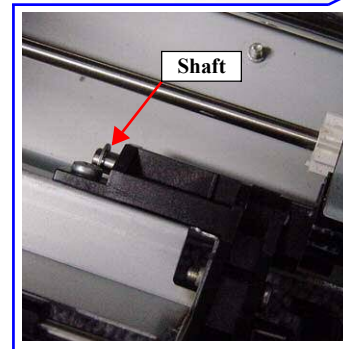
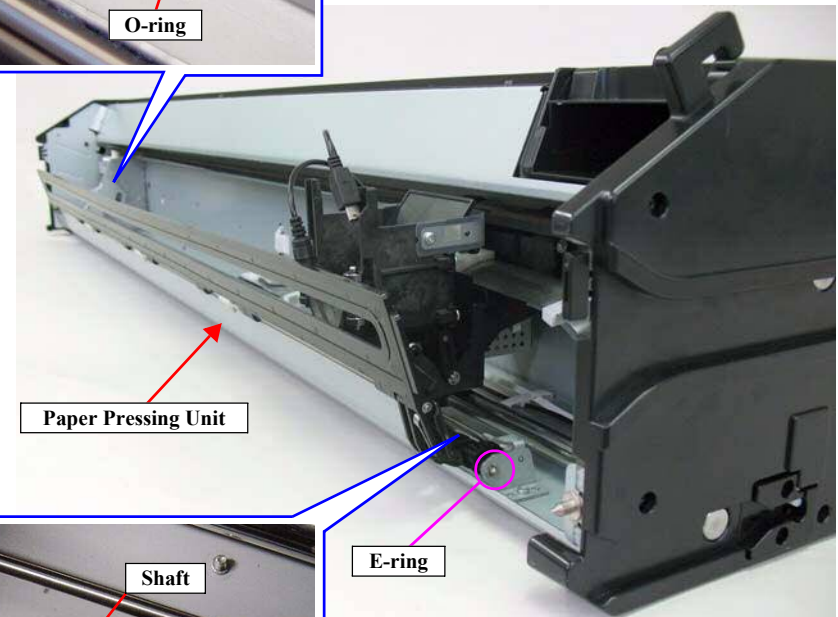
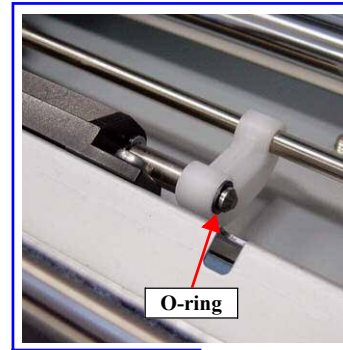
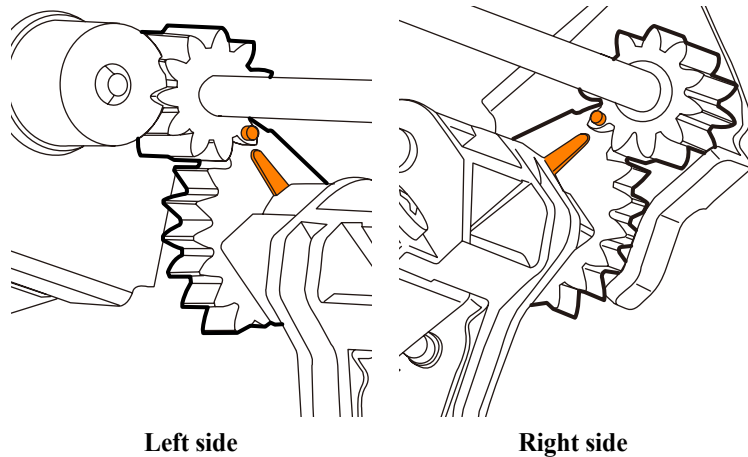


Figure 4-231. Removing the Paper Pressing Unit



CHAPTER

5

## ADJUSTMENT

## 5.1 Overview

---

This chapter describes the Service Program software utility and the adjustment procedures required after repairing or replacing certain parts.

### 5.1.1 Precautions

Always observe the following cautions whenever making an adjustment on the printer.



- Always refer to "5.1.2 Adjustment Items and the Order by Repaired Part" ([p.353](#)) and make sure to perform all the adjustments listed in the table in the given order.
- Always read and follow the precautions given in each section that explains each adjustment. Ignoring the precautions can result in malfunction of the printer.



Class	Parts	Adjustments																																													
		Tests								CR Related Adjustments												Head Related Adjustments												PF Related Adjustments					AID Related Adj.	Other Adjustments							
Network Communication Check (P. 428)	Suction Fan Operation Check (P. 428)	Color LCD Display Check (P. 429)	Button Operation Check (P. 429)	NVRAM Backup (P. 363)	NVRAM Restore (P. 363)	CR Timing Belt Tension Adj. (P. 364)	CR Encoder Sensor Adj. (P. 368)	Head PG Adjustment (P. 369)	Cleaning PG Adjustment (P. 372)	Head Rank ID (P. 374)	Head Cleaning (P. 376)	Nozzle Check (P. 377)	Printhead Slant Adj. (CR) (P. 378)	Printhead Slant Adj. (PF) (P. 381)	Auto Uni-D Adjustment (P. 383)	Auto Bi-D Adjustment (P. 384)	Colorimetric Calibration (Color ID) (P. 385)	Print Image (P. 360)	Absorber Position Check (P. 398)	Ink Mark Sensor Height Adj. (P. 399)	Ink Mark Sensor Adj. (P. 400)	Air Leak Check for Ink Supply Sys. (P. 401)	Initial Ink Charge Flag ON/OFF (P. 403)	PF Timing Belt Tension Adj. (P. 404)	Skew Check (P. 406)	Band Feed (P. 407)	T&B&S Adjustment (P. 409)	Paper Thickness Sensor Position Adj. (P. 411)	PF Encoder Sensor Adj. (P. 414)	Rear Sensor AD Adjustment (P. 415)	AID Function Check (P. 416)	Setting Destination (P. 418)	CR/PF Motor Current Input (P. 419)	RTC&USB ID (P. 420)	Installing Firmware (P. 421)	Input Serial Number (P. 423)	Input MAC Address (P. 424)	Cut Position Adjustment (P. 425)	Ink Holder Adjustment (P. 426)	Counter Clear (P. 427)							
Ink System Mechanism	INK SYSTEM UNIT									2																							3										1				
	PRINTHEAD							6		3	2	4	7	8	9	10	11	12															5											1			
	PRESSURIZING UNIT																																											1			
	INK CARTRIDGE HOLDER (R&L)																						3																		2		1				
	INK HOLDER BOARD ASSY (R&L)																																								1						
	AID BOARD								2																									3									1				
	INK MARK SENSOR															6	7			5	1	2				3		4														1					
	INK SELECTOR																																										1				
	INK TUBE (R&L)																							2																			1				
	Wiper Cleaner Assy																																												1		
SpectroProofer	Main Board					1	2																																								
	Cooling Fan 1/2																																											1			
	Paper Pressing Motor																																											1			
	Carriage Motor																																											1			

Note \*1: Input the current value of CR/PF Motor if necessary. For necessity of this input, see “4.1.4 Cautions when replacing the Main Board Assy/Power Supply Board Assy (p171)”.

\*2: The language setting of ASP's MAIN BOARD is English by default. Correct the LANGUAGE in Maintenance mode after setting the destination.

## 5.1.3 Description of Adjustments

The following table describes the general outline of the adjustments.

Note : The meanings of abbreviations in the “tool” column are as follows.

SP = Service Program

SM = Serviceman Mode

MECH = Mechanical Adjustment can be performed. (In some cases, a dedicated tool for the adjustment or a commercially available tool such as a tension gauge is necessary.)

Class		Adjustment	General Overview	Tool			Page
				SP	SM	MECH	
Tests		Network Test	Checks if the printer is available over a network.	√	—	—	<a href="#">p.428</a>
		Suction Fan Operation Check	Checks if Suction Fan is operated correctly.	—	√	—	<a href="#">p.428</a>
		Color LCD Display Check	Checks if there is no dot missing occurring on the Color LCD of the control panel.	—	√	—	<a href="#">p.429</a>
		Button Operation Check	Checks if buttons on the control panel are operated correctly.	—	√	—	<a href="#">p.429</a>
NVRAM backup and restore			Backs up parameters stored on the NVRAM on the previous board, and writes them into the NVRAM on a new board.	√	√	—	<a href="#">p.363</a>
Adjustments	CR Related Adjustments	CR Timing Belt Tension Adjustment	Adjusts the tension of the CR Timing Belt to a specified level.	—	√	√	<a href="#">p.364</a>
		CR Encoder Sensor Adjustment	This allows you to adjust the position of the CR Encoder Sensor to the CR Scale.	—	√		<a href="#">p.368</a>
		Head PG Adjustment	Adjusts the gap between the Printhead and the platen.	—	√	√	<a href="#">p.369</a>
		Cleaning PG Adjustment	Adjusts the gap between the Printhead and the wiper.	—	√	√	<a href="#">p.372</a>
	Head Related Adjustments	Head Rank ID	Allows inputting the Head Rank ID.	√	—	—	<a href="#">p.374</a>
		Head Cleaning	Cleans the Printhead.	—	√	—	<a href="#">p.376</a>
		Nozzle Check	Checks the nozzles for clogging.	√	√	—	<a href="#">p.377</a>
		Printhead Slant Adjustment (CR)	Prints an adjustment pattern to check if the Printhead is slanted in the CR direction and corrects the head angle.	—	√	√	<a href="#">p.378</a>
		Printhead Slant Adjustment (PF)	Prints an adjustment pattern to check if the Printhead is slanted in the PF direction and corrects the head angle.	—	√	√	<a href="#">p.381</a>
		Auto Uni-D Adjustment	Performs an automatic Uni-D adjustment using the Ink Mark Sensor.	—	√	—	<a href="#">p.383</a>
		Auto Bi-D Adjustment	Performs an automatic Bi-D adjustment using the Ink Mark Sensor.	—	√	—	<a href="#">p.384</a>
		Colorimetric Calibration (Color ID)	Adjusts the amount of ink droplets.	√	√	√	<a href="#">p.385</a>
		Print Image	Prints a sample image. Print quality can be checked.	√	√	—	<a href="#">p.360</a>
		Absorber Position Check	Checks the printing position for the borderless printing.	—	√	—	<a href="#">p.398</a>
		Ink Mark Sensor Height Adjustment	Adjusts the position of the Ink Mark Sensor to keep the proper distance from the platen.	—	√	√	<a href="#">p.399</a>
		Ink Mark Sensor Adjustment	Adjusts the sensitivity and the detecting position of the Ink Mark Sensor.	—	√	—	<a href="#">p.400</a>

Class		Adjustment	General Overview	Tool			Page
				SP	SM	MECH	
Adjustments	Head Related Adjustments	Air Leak Check for Ink Supply Sys.	Checks air leak status in the ink path when replacing ink tube, ink cartridge holder, damper or when adjusting ink cartridge holder and damper joint section.	–	√	√	<a href="#">p.401</a>
		Initial Ink Charge Flag ON/OFF	A flag for initial ink charge can be set or cleared as necessary after replacing the Main Board.	√	–	–	<a href="#">p.403</a>
	PF Related Adjustment	PF Timing Belt Tension Adjustment	Adjusts the tension of the PF Timing Belt to a specified level.	–	√	√	<a href="#">p.404</a>
		Skew Check	Feeds paper to check skew level of the paper.	–	√	–	<a href="#">p.406</a>
		Band Feed	Corrects a paper feeding amount.	–	√	–	<a href="#">p.407</a>
		T&B&S Adjustment	Adjusts the top, bottom and side margins.	–	√	–	<a href="#">p.409</a>
		Paper Thickness Sensor Position Adjustment	Adjusts the positions of Paper Thickness Sensor so as to detect the thickness of paper correctly.	–	√	√	<a href="#">p.411</a>
		PF Encoder Sensor Adjustment	Adjusts the position of the PF Encoder Sensor to the PF Scale.	–	–	√	<a href="#">p.414</a>
		Rear Sensor AD Adjustment	Acquires AD values of the newly attached Rear Sensor to store them onto the Main Board as a standard for reading operation of the sensor.	–	√	√	<a href="#">p.415</a>
	AID Related Adjustment	AID Function Check	Checks that the AID Function works correctly.	–	√	–	<a href="#">p.416</a>
	Other Adjustments	Setting Destination	Sets the destination of the Main Board.	√	√	–	<a href="#">p.418</a>
		Writing CR/PF Motor Characteristics	Writes characteristics of the CR and PF motor to the Main Board.	√	–	–	<a href="#">p.419</a>
		RTC&USB ID	Initializes the RTC and writes USB ID.	√	–	–	<a href="#">p.420</a>
		Installing Firmware	Installs the firmware for printers, network, color measurement device and take-up reel.	√	√	–	<a href="#">p.421</a>
		Input MAC Address	Input the MAC address.	√	–	–	<a href="#">p.424</a>
		Input Serial Number	Writes and reads the serial number.	√	–	–	<a href="#">p.423</a>
		Counter Clear	Clears the life counter of the periodic replacement parts.	√	√	–	<a href="#">p.427</a>
		Cut Position Adjustment	Adjusts the cutting position by the Auto Cutter.	–	√	–	<a href="#">p.425</a>
		Ink Holder Adjustment	Adjusts the necessary adjustment when replacing the Ink Holder.	√	√	–	<a href="#">p.426</a>

## 5.1.4 Tools for Adjustments

The table below shows the tools required for adjusting this printer.

**Table 5-1. Tools for Adjustments**

Type	Name	Part Number	Remarks
Hard Tool	P-Thick Sensor Position Jig	1424364	Use the tool for Epson Stylus Pro7880/9880.
	Paper Thickness Position Tool	1282355	Use the tool for Epson Stylus Pro4880.
	Standard Sheet (JETRAS JP-D300S)	1476228	---
	Sonic Tension Meter U-507	1294120	---
	Thickness Gauge (Thickness: 2.6 mm/2.7 mm)	---	Commercially available
	PG Height Adjustment Jig 1.55	1543007	---
	PG Height Adjustment Jig 1.65	1507506	---
	PG Height Adjustment Jig 1.75	1507277	---
	Cleaning PG Adjustment Jig	1507278	---
	INK LEAK CHECK CARTRIDGE	1493143	---
	High-precision ID adjustment tool	---	See <a href="#">p.393</a>
	Metal Ruler	---	Commercially available
	Ruler	---	Commercially available Can measure 1,000 mm
	Specified Paper*	---	Refer to each adjustment's description
Software	Drain Cartridge	1500853	---
	Cleaning Cartridge, 200	1500854	---
Software	Service Program	---	Supplies

Note \*: Use when make test prints for adjustment.



## 5.1.5 Service Program Basic Operations

This section describes the basic operations of the Service Program.

### CAUTION



- The Service Program includes some adjustment items which should not be performed at on-site service. Be sure not to perform any adjustments that are not described in this manual at on-site service.
- Save the Service Program on the desktop or directly under the C drive. If the storage location is deep in the hierarchy, some program tools may not work correctly.

### CHECK POINT



Adjustment items differ between Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908 and Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710 and Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910, but the used Service Program is the same. You can select and execute the adjustments for each model by selecting your printer from the model drop down selection list.

#### □ System Requirements

- OS: Windows XP, Vista
- Interface: USB, Network

#### □ Startup

1. When double-clicking the “ServProg.exe”, the screen asking if you want to carry out the NV-RAM BACKUP appears.
2. If Yes is selected, the NV-RAM BACKUP UTILITY will start up; If No is selected, the Service Program Menu screen will appear.
3. Select the printer you want to adjust from the model drop down selection list, and start the adjustment.

### CHECK POINT



When adjusting Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M, select “Epson Stylus 7700/7710” from the model drop down menu.

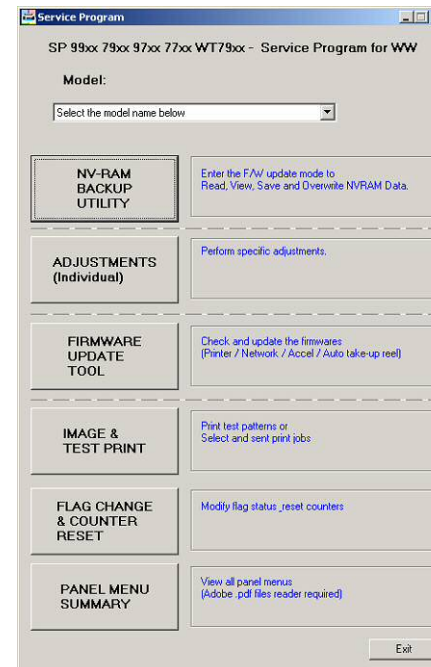


Figure 5-1. Service Program Menu

NV-RAM BACKUP UTILITY

The utility for backing up or restoring NV-RAM parameters is started up. It also has the function to check the read parameter.

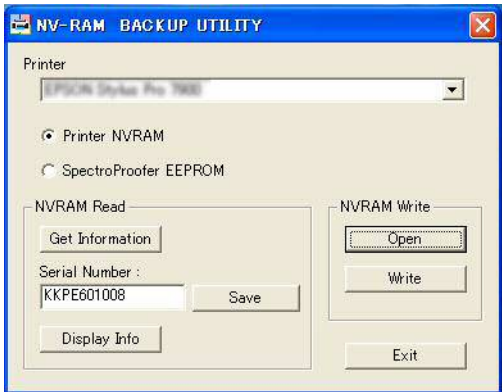


Figure 5-2. NV-RAM BACKUP UTILITY

ADJUSTMENTS INDIVIDUAL

This mode allows you to select and perform an adjustment individually.

*NOTE: The adjustment items differ between models.*

- 1. Highlight the target adjustment item and Click [OK].

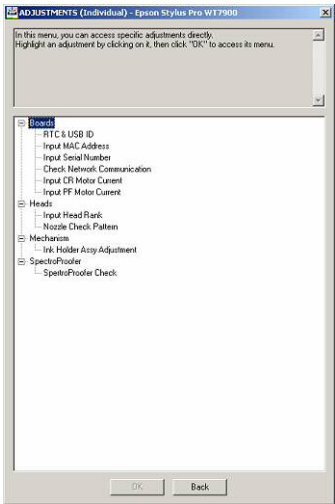


Figure 5-3. ADJUSTMENTS Individual

## FIRMWARE UPDATE TOOL

The utility for updating firmware is started up.

1. Highlight the target adjustment item and click [OK].

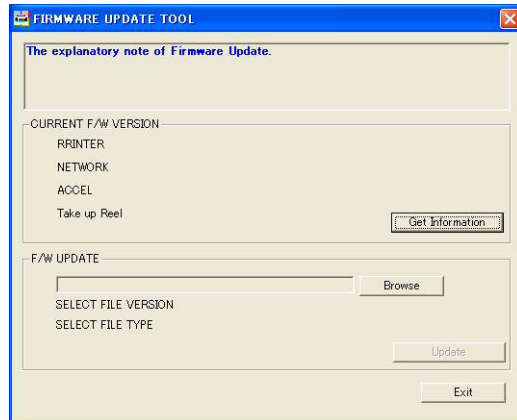


Figure 5-4. Firmware Update Tool

## PRINT IMAGE

Image data can be printed for quality check.

*NOTE: In the case of Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910, only the dedicated Prn file can be printed.*

- ☐ When printing an image
1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode. Turn the power on while pressing [Menu ►], [Paper Feed ▼] and [OK] button.
  2. Start the Service Program and select **PRINT IMAGE**.
  3. Click [Open] and select any one of the image files.
  4. Click [Print] to print the selected image.
  5. After checking the printed image, Click [Finish].

- ☐ When printing the test pattern
1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode. Turn the power on while pressing [Menu ►], [Paper Feed ▼] and [OK] button.
  2. Start the Service Program and select **PRINT IMAGE**.
  3. Click [TEST Print] to print the test pattern.

In the test pattern, the patterns for the following adjustments are printed.

- Alignment Check pattern
- Printhead Slant Adjustment (CR) pattern
- Printhead Slant Adjustment (PF) pattern
- Uni-D Check pattern
- Bi-D Check pattern

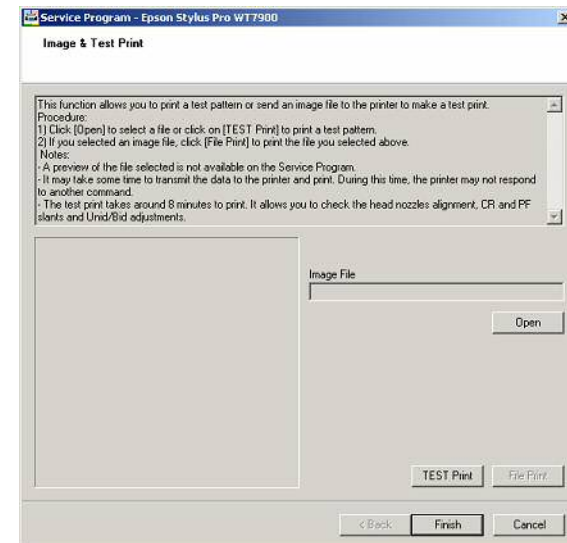


Figure 5-5. Print Image

FLAG CHANGE & COUNTER RESET

You can set various kinds of flags and reset various kinds of counters.

NOTE: The items of counter and flag differ between models.

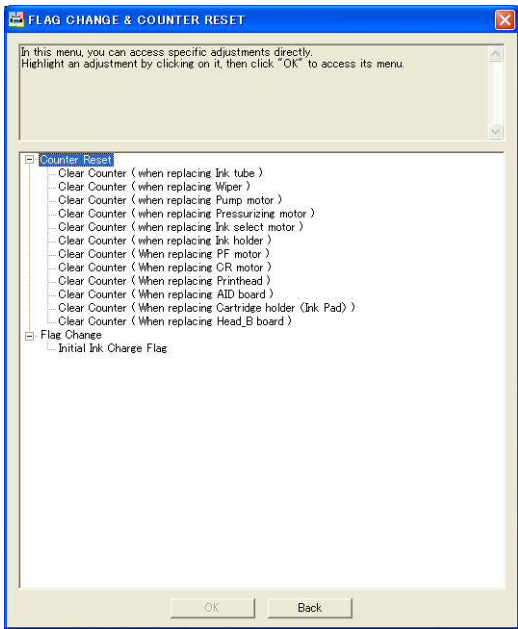


Figure 5-6. Flag Change & Counter Reset

PANEL MENU SUMMARY

This allows you to see a list of panel menu settings. Select “User Mode” or “Serviceman Mode” to open the corresponding pdf file (you must have a pdf document reader program installed to view it).

NOTE: The panel menu differs between models.

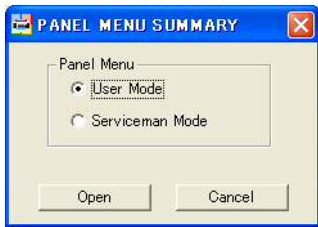


Figure 5-7. Panel Menu Summary



## 5.2 NV-RAM BACKUP UTILITY

Whenever the Main Board is replaced, parameters stored in the NVRAM on the previous board should be backed up and written onto the new board using this menu.



**When reading and writing the parameters, make sure to turn the printer on in the Serviceman Mode.**

### BACKUP PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode. Turn the power on while pressing [Menu ►], [Paper Feed ▼] and [OK] button.
2. Start the Service Program and select **NV-RAM BACKUP UTILITY**.
3. Select **Printer NVRAM** or **SpectroProofer EEPROM**.
4. Click [Get Information] to start reading the parameters.
5. When the back up is complete, click the [Save] button to save the file.
6. Tables showing NVRAM information will be displayed after clicking [Save]. (NVRAM Viewer) Click [Close] to exit the viewer.



**If the [Get Information] button is clicked, the NVRAM Viewer starts to display the NVRAM information without saving it.**

7. Turn the printer OFF.

### RESTORE PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode. Turn the power on while pressing [Menu ►], [Paper Feed ▼] and [OK] button.
2. Remove all the ink cartridges and maintenance tank(s).
3. Start the Service Program and select **NV-RAM BACKUP UTILITY**.
4. Select **Printer NVRAM** or **SpectroProofer EEPROM**.
5. Click [Open] to select and open the file which was saved in [Step 6](#) in the “Backup Procedure”.
6. Click [Write] to start writing the parameters.
7. When the writing is completed, exit out of the **NV-RAM BACKUP UTILITY**.
8. Turn the printer OFF.

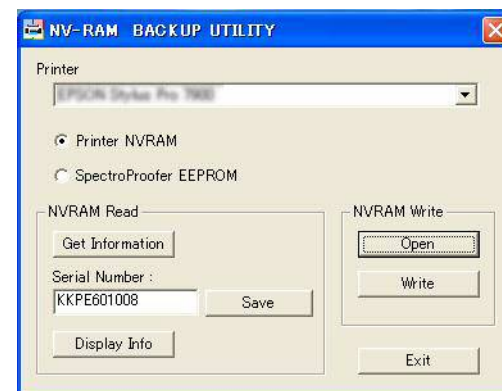


Figure 5-10. NV-RAM BACKUP UTILITY Screen

## 5.3 CR Related Adjustment

### 5.3.1 CR Timing Belt Tension Adjustment

This allows you to adjust the tension of the CR Timing Belt to a specified level. This is to execute after the CR Timing Belt has been loosened such as when removing the CR Motor.

#### REQUIRED TOOLS

- ☐ Sonic Tension Meter U-507
- ☐ Any tools to flip the timing belt

#### STANDARD VALUE

- ☐  $45 \pm 3\text{N}$

#### PROCEDURE

1. Remove the following parts in advance.
  - Control Panel
  - IC Cover R and IC Shaft Cover R
  - Maintenance Tank R
  - Right Cover
2. Install the following part after removing the Right Cover.
  - Control Panel
  - Maintenance Tank R
3. Switch the open/close detection switch on the Left Cover to make cover closed.

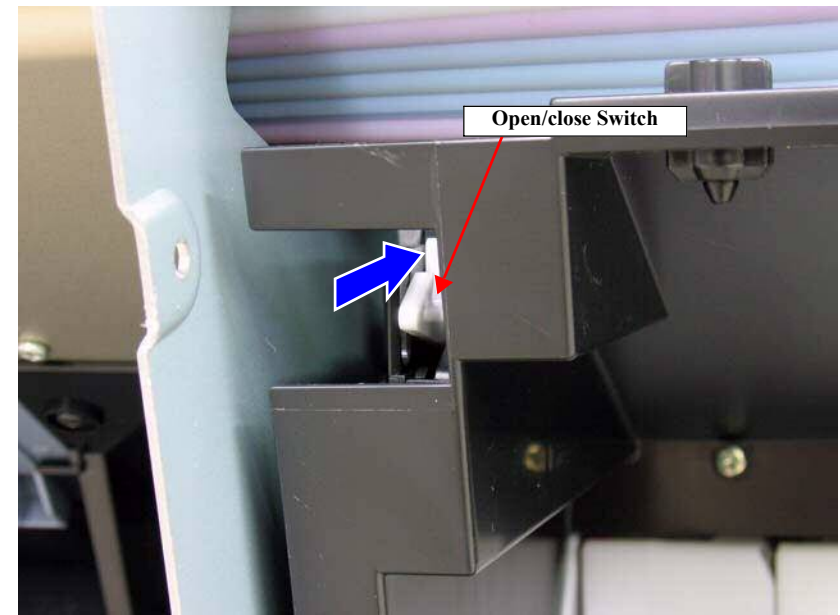


Figure 5-11. Switching the IC cover mode



4. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
5. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **CR Ageing**.
6. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Start** is displayed.  
The Carriage Unit goes and returns three times.
7. Check the CR Timing Belt behavior for the Driven pulley while the Carriage Unit is running.
  - The belt runs in the middle of the driven pulley: Go to [Step 12](#)
  - The belt does not run stably in the middle of the pulley or keeps running on one end of the pulley: Go to [Step 8](#)
8. Select **Mecha Adjustment** → **Temporary PG**.
9. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Un Cap** is displayed.  
The lock of the Carriage Unit is released.
10. Remove the screw A.
11. Adjust the Driven Pulley slant with the slant adjusting screw. After adjusting the slant, attach the screw A and return to [Step 5](#).
  - The belt leans to the upper side of the Driven Pulley: Rotate the screw in a clockwise.
  - The belt leans to the lower side of the Driven Pulley: Rotate the screw in a counterclockwise.

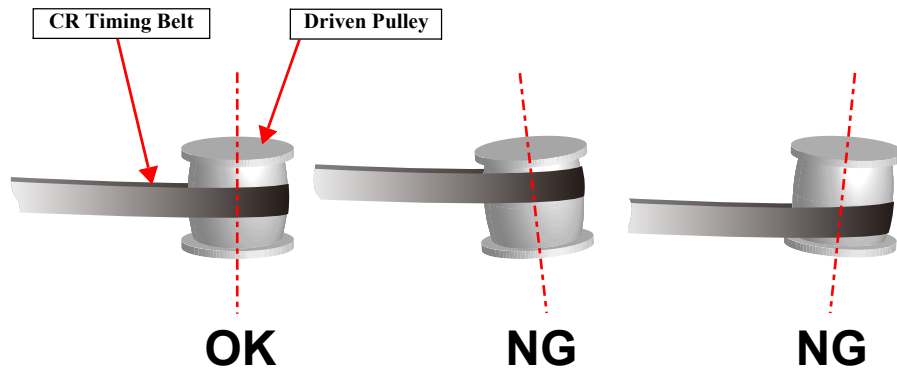


Figure 5-12. Slant Adjustment of Driven Pulley

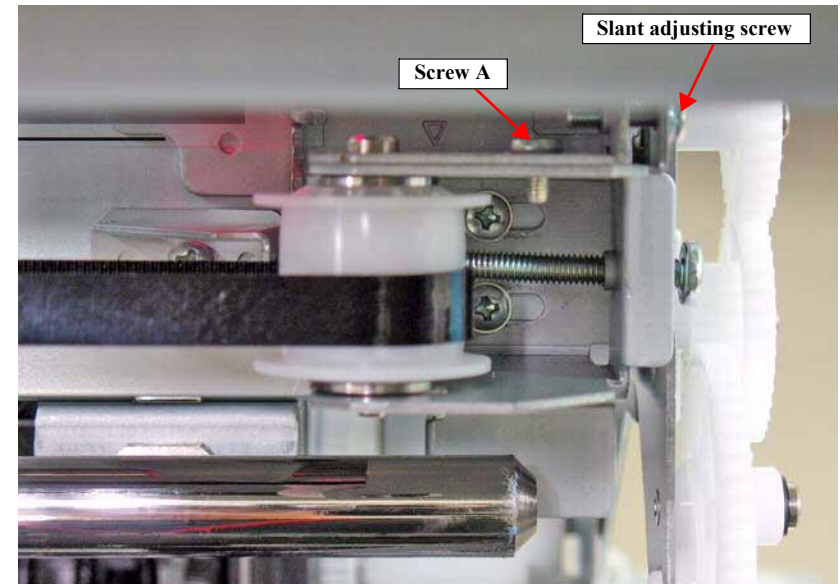


Figure 5-13. Slant Adjusting Screw

12. Select **Mecha Adjustment** → **Temporary PG**.
13. Press **[OK]** while **[Enter] Un Cap** is displayed.  
The carriage unit will be unlocked.  
This step is not necessary for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910.
14. Open the Front Cover (Middle).
15. Move the Carriage Unit to the belt tension measuring position manually.
  - Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908:  
Position as shown in the [Figure 5-14](#) below.
  - Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/7890/7908:  
Home position (Carriage is locked)

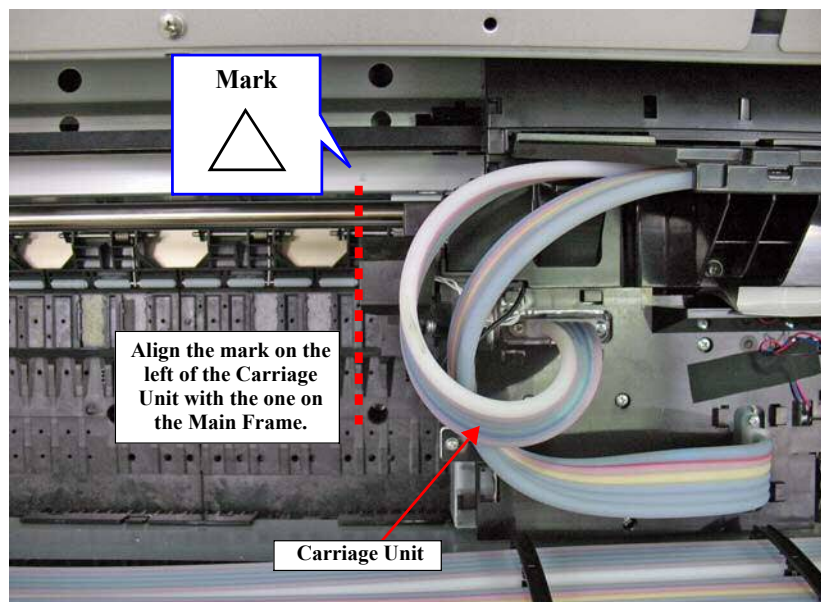


Figure 5-14. Belt Tension Measuring Position

16. Input the following values to the tension meter.

- MASS: 001.2 g/m
- WIDTH: 008.0 mm/R
- SPAN: 1170 mm

17. Bring the microphone of the Sonic Tension Meter U-507 closer to the center of the Timing Belt on the rear side.

**CAUTION**

Be sure to measure the tension of the belt on the rear side. If you measure the tension of the belt on the front side, the measuring value may be inaccurate.

**CHECK POINT**

Bring the microphone within 5mm from the Timing Belt but do not let it touch the belt.

18. Press **[MEASURE]** on the Sonic Tension Meter U-507 and flip the Timing Belt with tweezers or a similar tool.

**CAUTION**

- Flip the Timing Belt as weak as the Sonic Tension Meter U-507 can measure it.
- Be careful not to let the microphone touch the Timing Belt when flipping the belt.

- Within the standard value: Close the Front Cover (Middle) and press **[OK]** while **[Enter] Cap** is displayed to cap the printhead. After the printhead is secured, turn the printer OFF and finish the adjustment.
- Out of the range: Go to [Step 19](#).

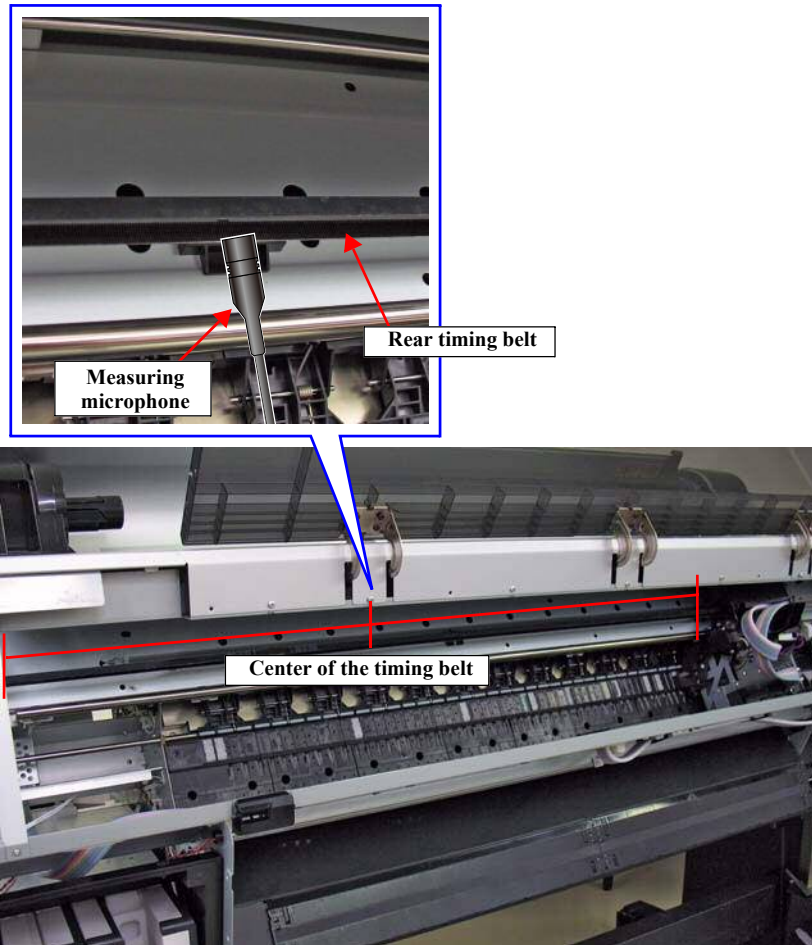


Figure 5-15. Measuring the Timing Belt Tension

19. Loosen the screws (x2) that secure the Driven Pulley Holder.
  20. Adjust the belt tension with the tension adjusting screw.  
After adjusting the tension, tighten the screws loosened in [Step 19](#), and then back to [Step 17](#).
- If larger than standard value: Turn the screw in a clockwise.
  - If smaller than standard value: Turn the screw in a counterclockwise.

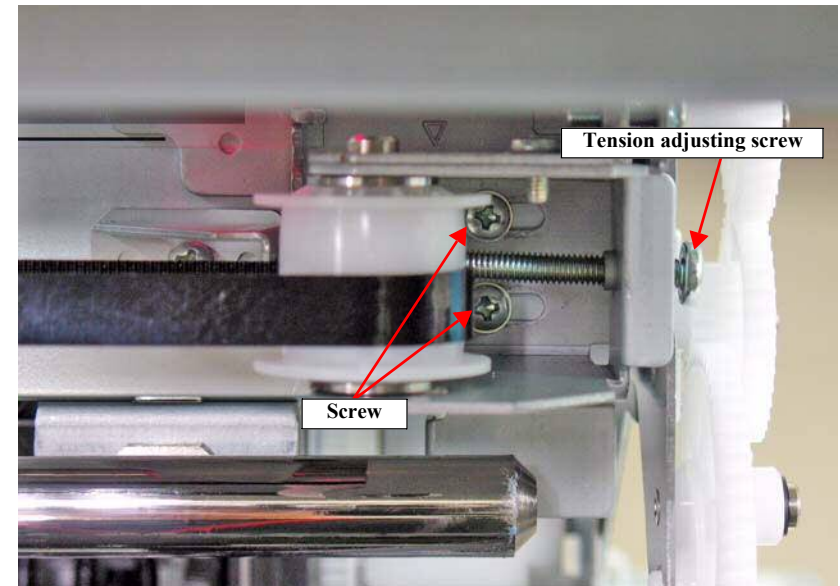


Figure 5-16. Tension Adjusting Screw

### 5.3.2 CR Encoder Sensor Adjustment

This allows you to adjust the position of the CR Encoder Sensor to the CR Scale.

---

#### PROCEDURE

---

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while holding down [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING**→**Mecha Adjustment**→**Temporary PG.**
3. Press [OK] while [Enter] Un Cap is displayed.  
The carriage unit will be unlocked.
4. Open the Front Cover (Middle).
5. Check the gap between the CR Encoder Sensor detecting part and the CR Scale.
  - If the CR Scale is in the center of the detector of the Sensor: Go to [Step 9](#)
  - If the CR Scale is not in the center of the detector of the Sensor: Go to [Step 6](#)
6. Loosen the screw that secures CR Encoder Sensor.
7. Move the CR Encoder Sensor to adjust the position of the sensor.  
After adjusting, tighten the screw and return to [Step 5](#).
8. Close the Front Cover (Middle).
9. Press [OK] while [Enter] Cap is displayed to cap the Printhead. Then turn the printer OFF to complete the adjustment.

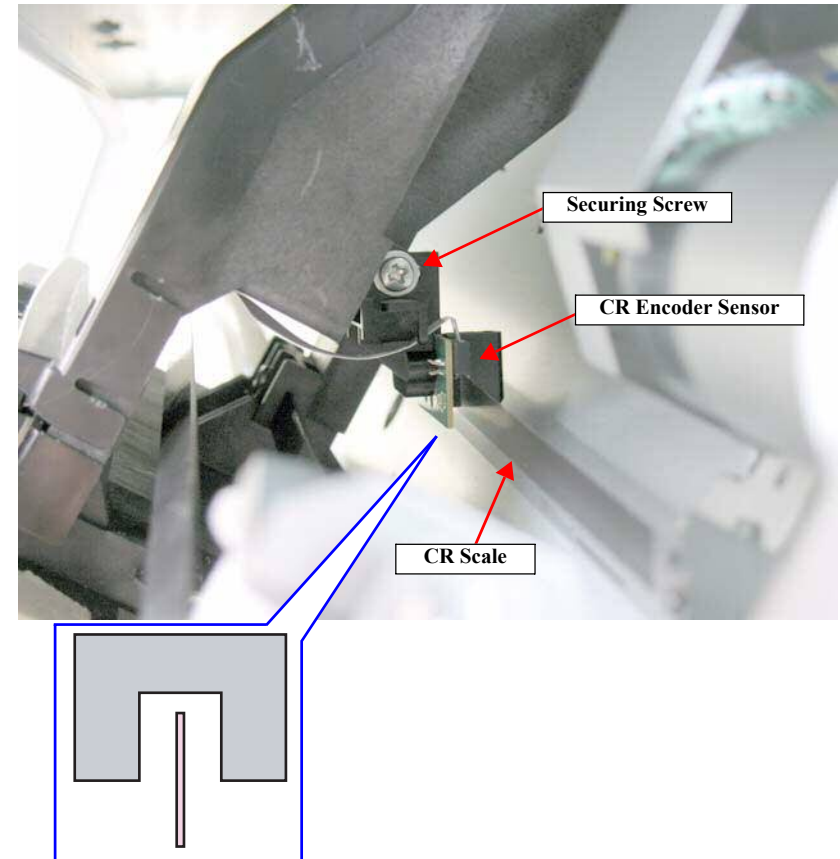


Figure 5-17. CR Encoder Sensor Adjustment

### 5.3.3 Head PG Adjustment

This is to adjust the gap between the Printhead and the platen.

#### REQUIRED TOOLS

- ☐ PG Height Adjustment Jig (1.55/1.65/1.75)
- ☐ Metal Ruler

#### STANDARD VALUE

- ☐ 1.55 pass
- ☐ 1.65 stop

#### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. When any paper is loaded, remove it.

*NOTE: A paper out error occurs at this time, but the adjustment can be continued.*

3. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **PG Adj.**
4. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Un Cap** is displayed.  
The carriage unit will be unlocked.



This adjustment should be done as follows.

1. **Right end (Home side):**  
Align the head height on the right and left sides, and also adjust PG.
2. **Middle:**  
Adjust PG.
3. **Left end (Full side):**  
Adjust PG.

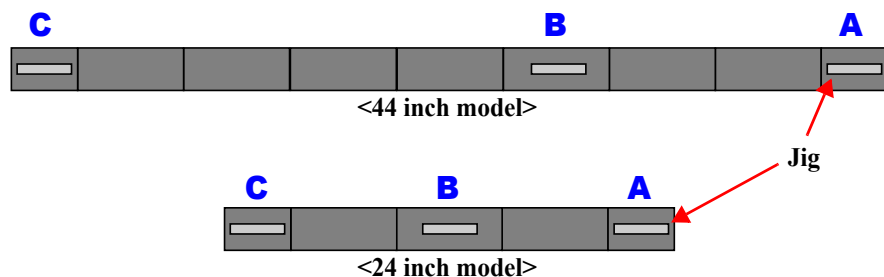
Because the head height on the right and left sides is aligned at the Home side first, for the adjustment in the middle and on the left side it is OK to confirm and adjust PG either on the right or left side of the Printhead.

#### <Checks and adjustments on the right side of the Platen>

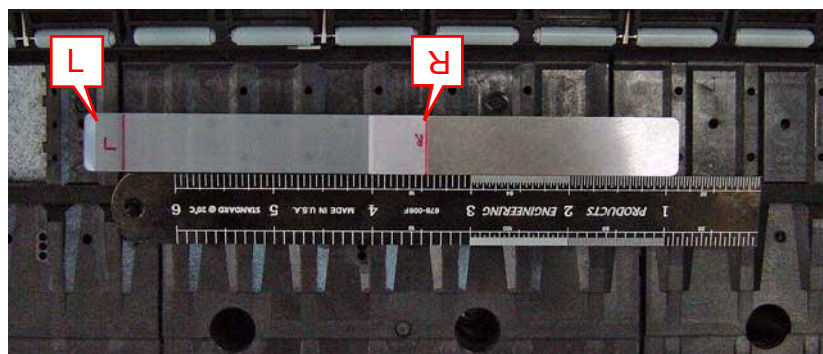
5. Open the Front Cover (Middle).
6. See [Figure 5-18](#) and secure the ruler on the Platen with the double-sided tape.
7. Place the jig on the ruler.

*NOTE: Make sure to set the Ruler and the jig on the position A as shown in [Figure 5-18](#).*





<To check the left side of the Carriage>



<To check the right side of the Carriage>

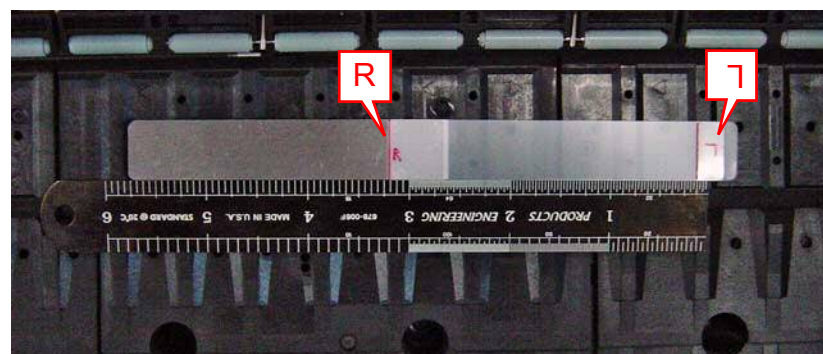


Figure 5-18. Position of the Adjustment jig

CHECK  
POINT

At the right end of the Platen, confirm and adjust the height of the Printhead on the right and left sides by changing the position of the Carriage and the thickness gauges.

8. Move the Carriage Unit slowly over the jig.
9. Check if the height of the Carriage Unit on both right and left sides of the Printhead falls within the standard.

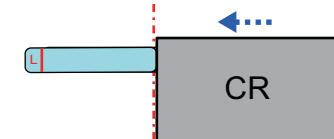
- Values on both sides are within the standard: Go to [Step 11](#)
- Out of the range: Go to [Step 10](#)

CHECK  
POINT

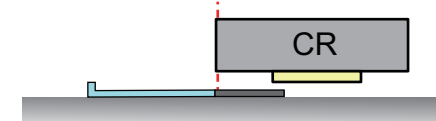
The conditions of the Printhead touching the thickness gauge can not be seen visually; therefore, refer to the following to verify it.

<If it does not touch the gauge>  
The thickness gauge does not move even when the edge of the CR Unit comes to the border between the metallic part and the plastic part of the jig.

<As seen from the top>

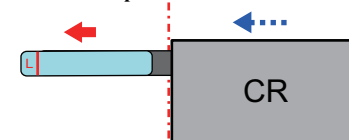


<Cross section view>

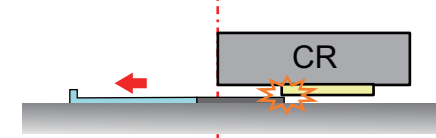


<If it touches the gauge>  
The thickness gauge moves before the edge of the CR Unit comes to the border between the metallic part and the plastic part of the jig.

<As seen from the top>



<Cross section view>



10. Loosen the adjustment screw and carry out the PG adjustment with the adjustment lever.  
After adjustment, secure the screw and return to [Step 8](#).

14. Press **[OK]** while **[Enter] Cap** is displayed to cap the Printhead. Then turn the printer OFF to complete the adjustment.

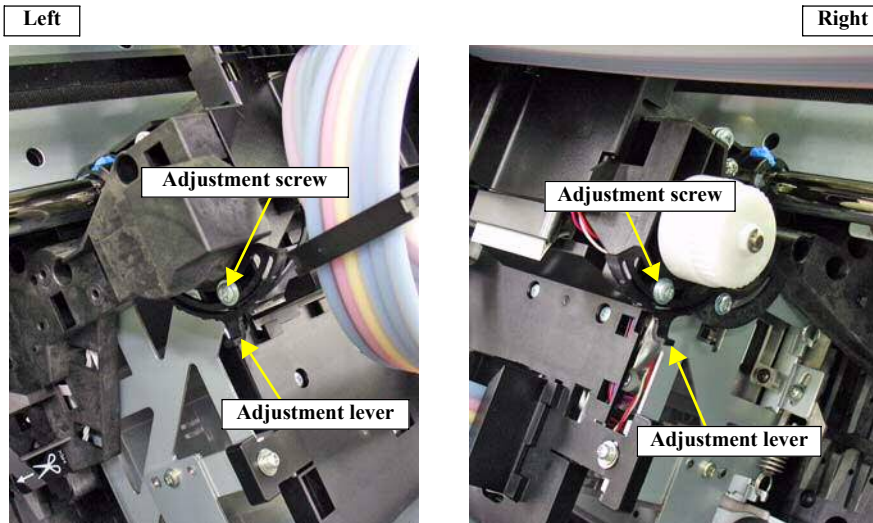


Figure 5-19. Adjustment Screw and Lever

<Check and adjustment in the middle and on the left side>

11. In the middle and at the left end of the Platen, check and adjust the PG either on the right or left side of the Printhead.  
If the 1.65 mm gauge does not stop the Carriage Unit in the middle and/or at the left end, it is OK if the 1.75 gauge stops the Carriage Unit.  
If the result is NG in the middle and/or at the left end, go back to [Step 8](#), and perform the same check and adjustment for the right end.

*NOTE: For the center, set the Ruler and Thickness Gauge on the position B shown in [Figure 5-48](#), and for the left side, set them on the position C shown in [Figure 5-48](#).*

12. When the check and adjustment for the right, middle and left sides, remove the jig and the ruler.  
13. Close the Front Cover (Middle).



### 5.3.4 Cleaning PG Adjustment

This allows you to adjust the gap between the Printhead and the wiper for cleaning with the wiper properly. This adjustment is a check only.

#### REQUIRED TOOL

- ☐ Cleaning PG Adjustment Jig

#### PROCEDURE

1. Remove the following parts in advance.
  - Control Panel
  - IC Cover R and IC Shaft Cover R
  - Maintenance Tank R
  - Right Cover
2. Install the following parts after removing the Right Cover.
  - Control Panel
  - Ink Cartridges
  - Maintenance Tank R
3. Switch the open/close detection switch on the IC Cover R to make the cover closed.

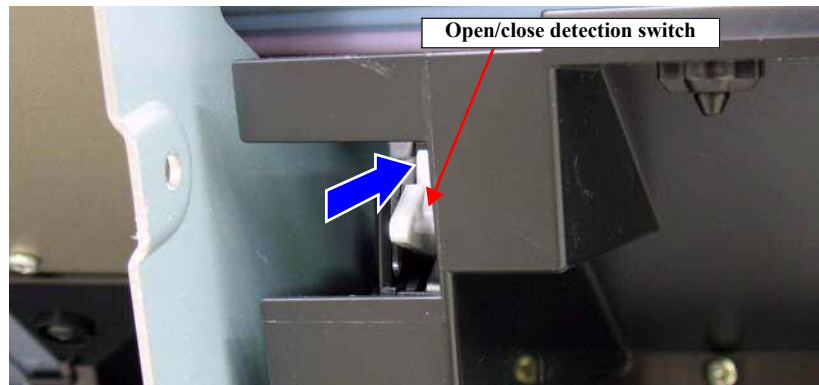


Figure 5-20. Switching the IC Cover Switch

4. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
5. When any paper is loaded, remove it.

*NOTE: A paper out error occurs at this time, but the adjustment can be continued.*

6. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Cleaning PG** → **Adjustment**.  
The carriage unit will be unlocked.
7. Open the Front Cover (Middle).
8. Move the Carriage Unit over the Platen.
9. Set the Cleaning PG Adjustment Jig to the position shown in [Figure 5-21](#).

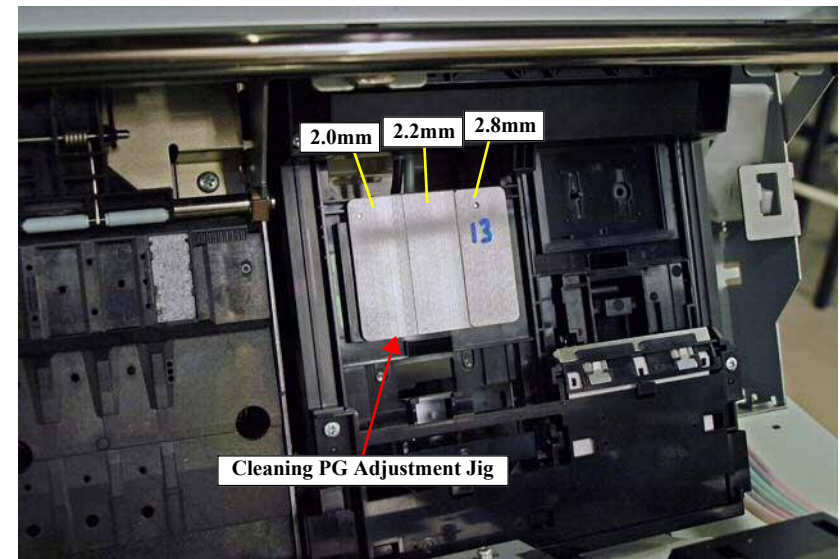


Figure 5-21. Position for the Jig

10. Move the Carriage Unit over the jig manually, and whether if the Printhead can touches or pass over the 2.2mm jig.



**When checking the contact point of the Printhead and the jig, move the Carriage Unit slowly and check it visually.**

11. Remove the adjustment jig.
12. Close the Front Cover (Middle).
13. Select checked result and press [OK].
- If it touches the jig: 2.2 stop
  - If it not touches the jig: 2.2 pass
14. Select **Cleaning PG** → **Check**.
15. Press [OK].
16. Open the Front Cover (Middle).
17. Move the Carriage Unit over the Platen.
18. Set the Cleaning PG Adjustment Jig to the position shown in [Figure 5-21](#).
19. Move the Carriage Unit over the jig manually, and whether if the Printhead can be passed or touched anywhere.
20. Remove the adjustment jig.
21. Close the Front Cover (Middle).
22. Select checked result and press [OK].
- If it touches 2.0: 2.0 stop
  - If it touches 2.2: 2.2 stop
  - If it touches 2.8: 2.8 stop
  - If it passes 2.8 (not touches to the jig): 2.8 pass

23. Press [Pause/Reset] while **OK** is displayed.



**Perform the following remedy if NG is displayed.**

- Confirm the assembling status of the Printhead and the Ink System Unit.
- Replace the Printhead and/or the Ink System Unit.

24. Turn the printer OFF.

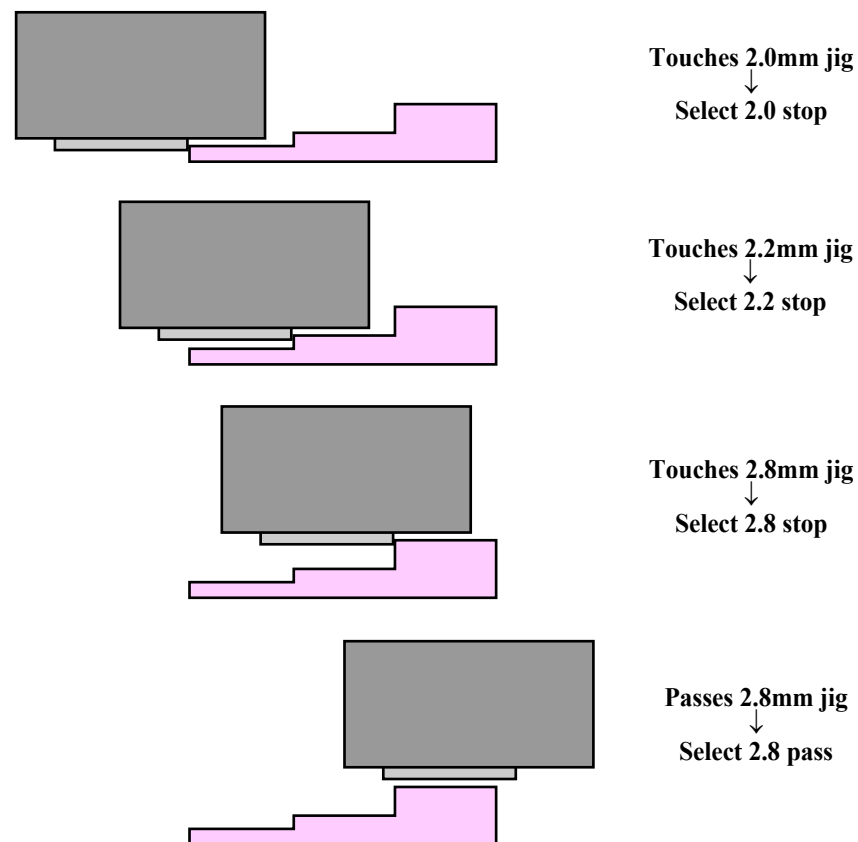


Figure 5-22. Contact point and the set values

## 5.4 Head Related Adjustments

### 5.4.1 Head Rank ID

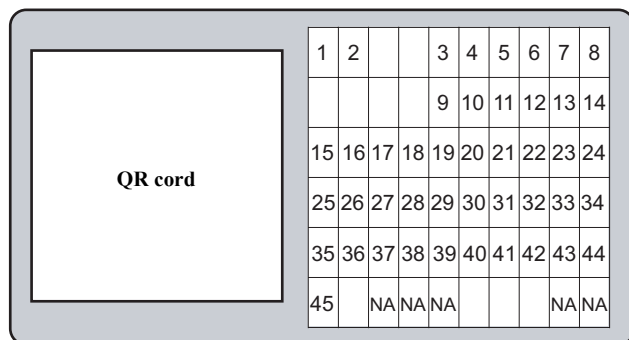
This adjustment is to input/set the unique information of the Printhead as the head rank so as to set the optimum drive voltage when replacing the Printhead. (Reading from/writing to files are available)

#### PROCEDURE FOR WRITING

1. Write down the Head Rank ID (QR code) from the ID label attached on the Printhead.



- A 50-digit alphanumeric character is written on the ID Label. Use the first 45 digits for the Head Rank ID. (the last five digits are not used.)
- The Head Rank ID (label) differs between Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910/9890/9908/7890/7908 and Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710. For the details, see "4.1.5 Differences of the parts/components between models" (p.172).



2. Assemble the printer.
3. Turn the printer ON.
4. Start the Service Program and select **Head Rank ID** from **ADJUSTMENTS (INDIVIDUAL)**.
5. Enter the 45-digit ID into the edit boxes in the same way as indicated on the label.

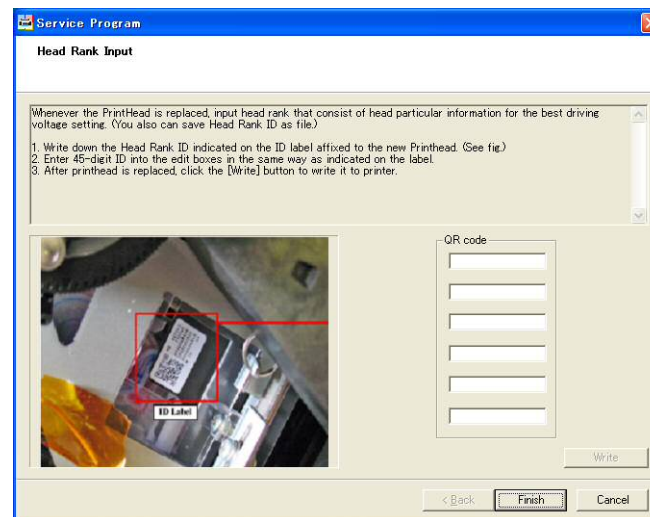


Figure 5-23. Head Rank ID screen

6. Click [Write].
7. Click [Finish].
8. Turn off the printer.



**Make sure to turn off the printer after clicking the [Finish] button. The setting of Head Rank ID becomes valid after the printer is restarted.**

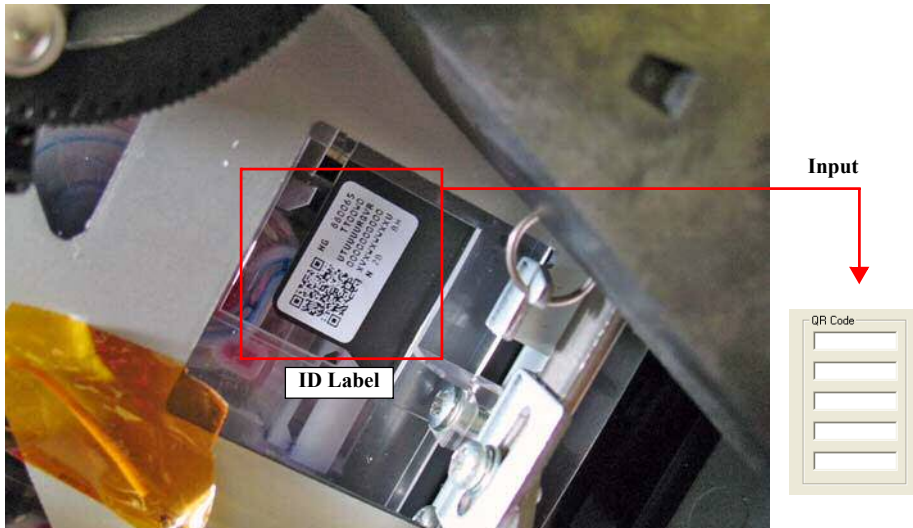


Figure 5-24. Head Rank ID

## 5.4.2 Head Cleaning

This is to clean the Printhead.

Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 has a refresh cleaning function to prevent the white ink in the ink tube, printhead, damper from becoming solidified.

---

### PROCEDURE FOR CLEANING

---

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode. Turn the power on while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] button simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Cleaning**.
3. Select the item you want to execute, and click [OK].  
Cleaning will be executed.
4. When the cleaning is completed, turn the printer OFF.

5.4.3 Nozzle Check

This allows you to check each nozzle is properly shooting ink. If an error occurs for ink discharging of the nozzles, clean the head and check again.

PAPER USED

- ☐ Size:
- A4 or larger sized cut sheet or roll paper
- ☐ Type:
- Any types can be used

PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON.
2. Press [Menu ►] to enter the panel setting mode.
3. Select **TEST PRINT** → **NOZZLE CHECK** and press [OK].  
The nozzle check pattern will be printed.
4. Check if there is any dot missing occurring or not from the nozzle check pattern.
5. If there is dot missing, execute the cleaning and print the check pattern for dot missing.



The nozzle check pattern can be printed from the utilities on the printer driver. For Mac OS X, use EPSON Printer Utility3.

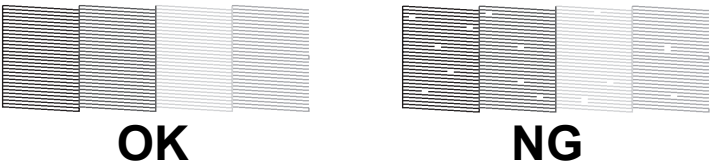


Figure 5-25. Judgment of Nozzle Check Pattern

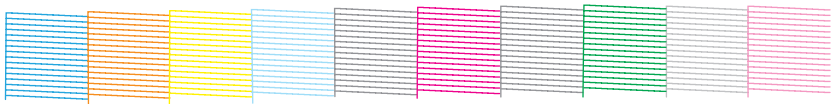


Figure 5-26. Nozzle Check Pattern (Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910)

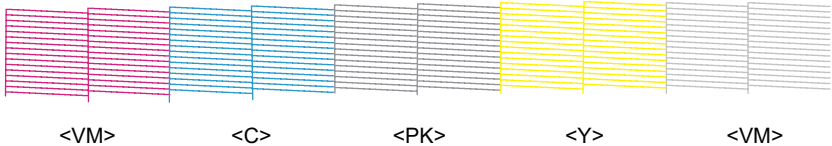


Figure 5-27. Nozzle Check Pattern (Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710)

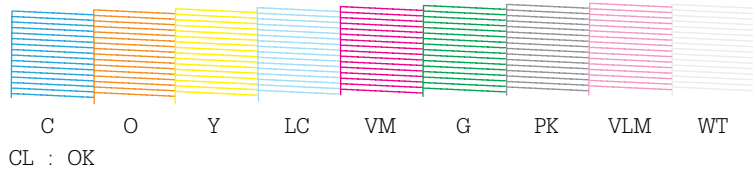


Figure 5-28. Nozzle Check Pattern (Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910)

NOTE: Because the cleaning liquid is transparent and clogging is hard to identify from the check patterns, the AID result of the cleaning liquid is printed below the check patterns as “OK/NG”.

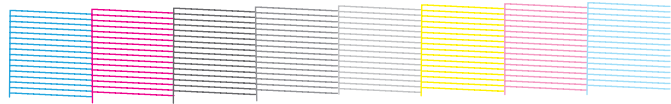


Figure 5-29. Nozzle Check Pattern (Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908)

## 5.4.4 Printhead Slant Adjustment (CR)

This allows you to adjust the Printhead angle in the CR direction.

### PAPER USED

- ☐ Size: 16 inches or more
- ☐ Type: Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)

### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **CR Head Slant**.
3. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Print** is displayed.  
The adjustment pattern will be printed.
4. Check the visual check blocks in the adjustment pattern.  
Check if lines of magenta and cyan are in line. If they are in line, finish the adjustment. If not, follow steps below to carry out the adjustment.

**NOTE:** The pattern is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910. The one for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710, Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908 differs in color.

Model Name : EPSON PX-HXXXX  
M/C No. : XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX ,RTC : XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX ,Bk : Xx  
Head-ID : XX  
USB-ID : XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

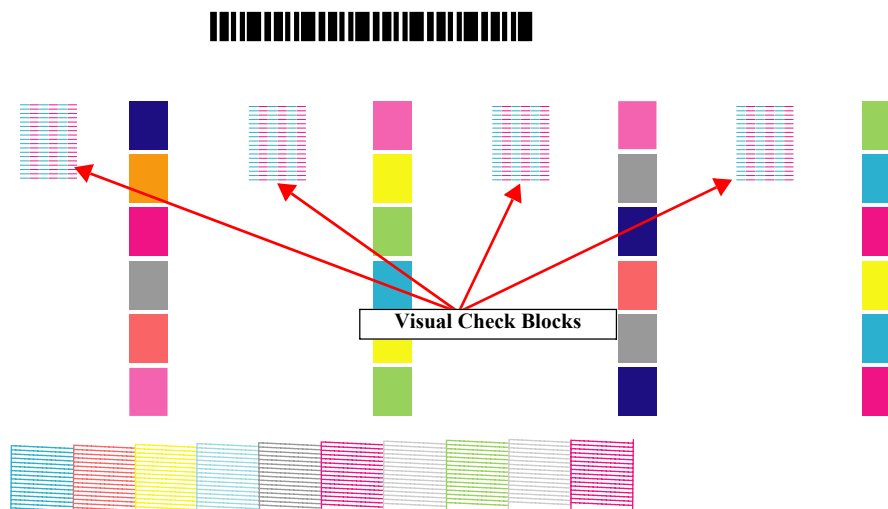


Figure 5-30. Adjustment Pattern



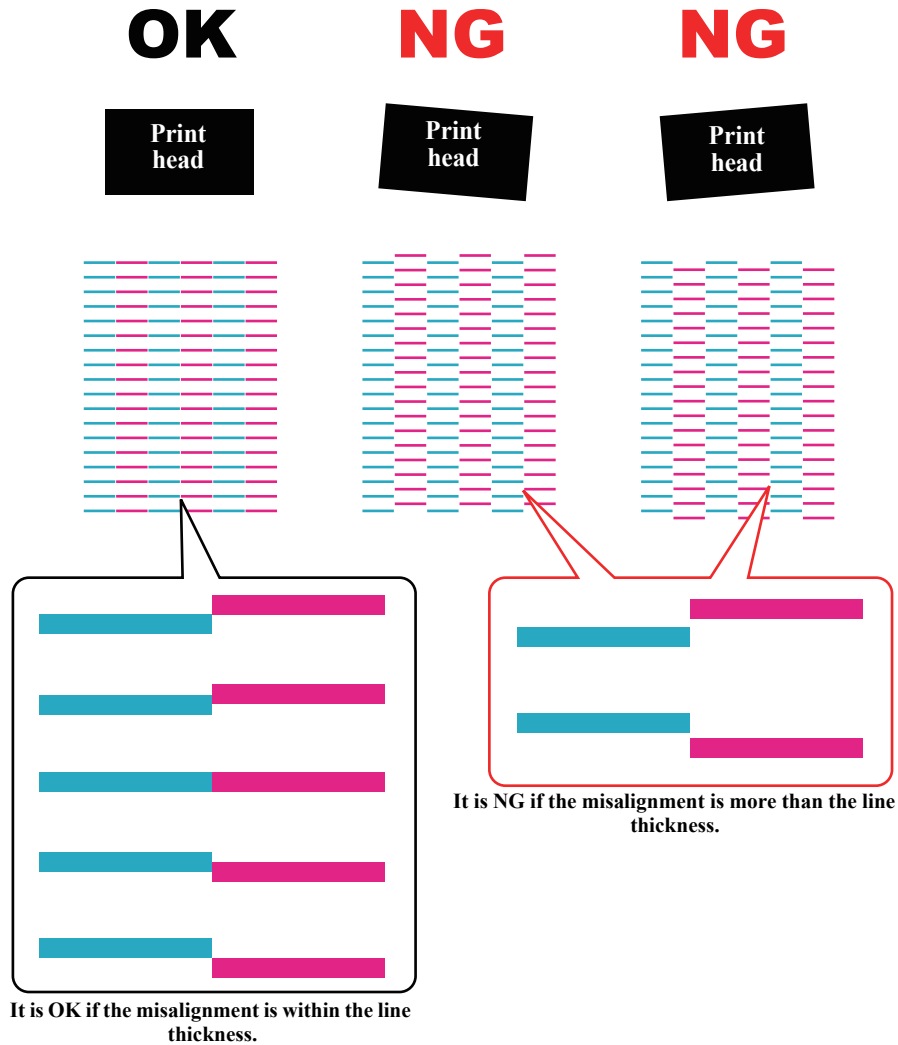


Figure 5-31. Determination of Visual Check Pattern

5. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Temporary PG.**
6. Press [OK] while [Enter] **Un Cap** is displayed.  
The carriage unit will be unlocked.
7. Open the Front Cover (Middle).
8. Loosen the screws (x6) shown in Figure 5-32.

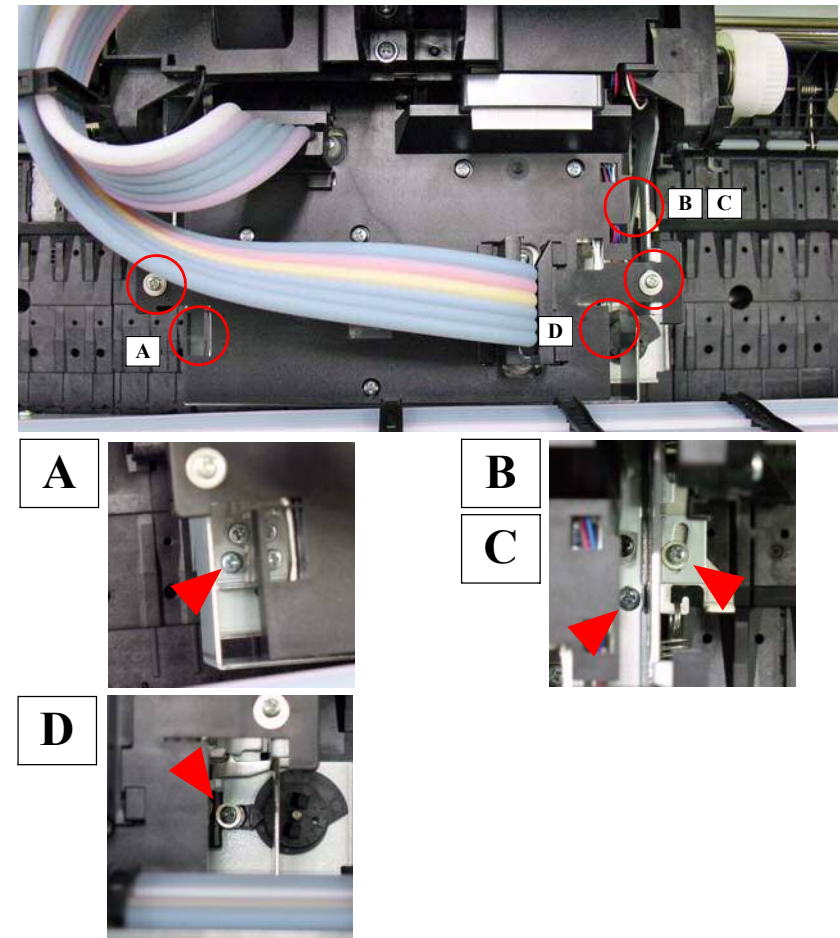


Figure 5-32. Adjustment Screws

9. Turn the adjustment dial to adjust the slant of the Printhead.

**CHECK  
POINT**

■ See the following for the direction of rotation.

**Paper Feed  
Direction**

**C line is below M line**  
Counterclockwise

**C line is above M line**  
Clockwise

■ When turning the dial by 15 to 20 notches, the pattern slides up or down by the line-height.

10. Tighten the screws (x6) loosened in [Step 8](#).

11. Close the Front Cover (Middle).

12. Print the adjustment pattern again and check the adjustment result.

13. Repeat [Step 4](#) to [Step 12](#) till the adjustment is finished.

14. After finishing the adjustment, press [OK] while [Enter] Cap is displayed to cap the Printhead. Then, turn the printer OFF and finish the adjustment.

Figure 5-33. Adjustment Dial

ADJUSTMENT

Head Related Adjustments

380

Confidential

## 5.4.5 Printhead Slant Adjustment (PF)

This allows you to adjust the Printhead angle in the PF direction.

### PAPER USED

- ☐ Size: 16 inches or more
- ☐ Type: Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)

### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **PF Head Slant**.
3. Press [OK] while [Enter] Print is displayed.  
The adjustment pattern will be printed.
4. Check the visual check blocks in the adjustment pattern.  
Check the pattern if the margin between the blocks become parallel. If they are in parallel, finish the adjustment. If not, follow steps below to carry out the adjustment.

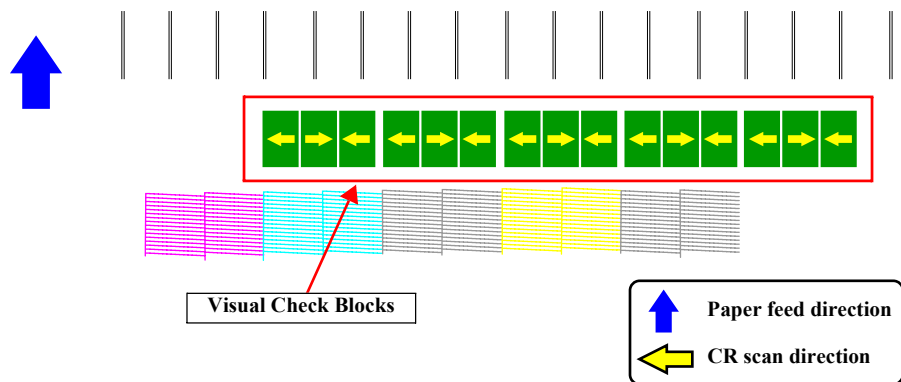


Figure 5-34. Adjustment Pattern

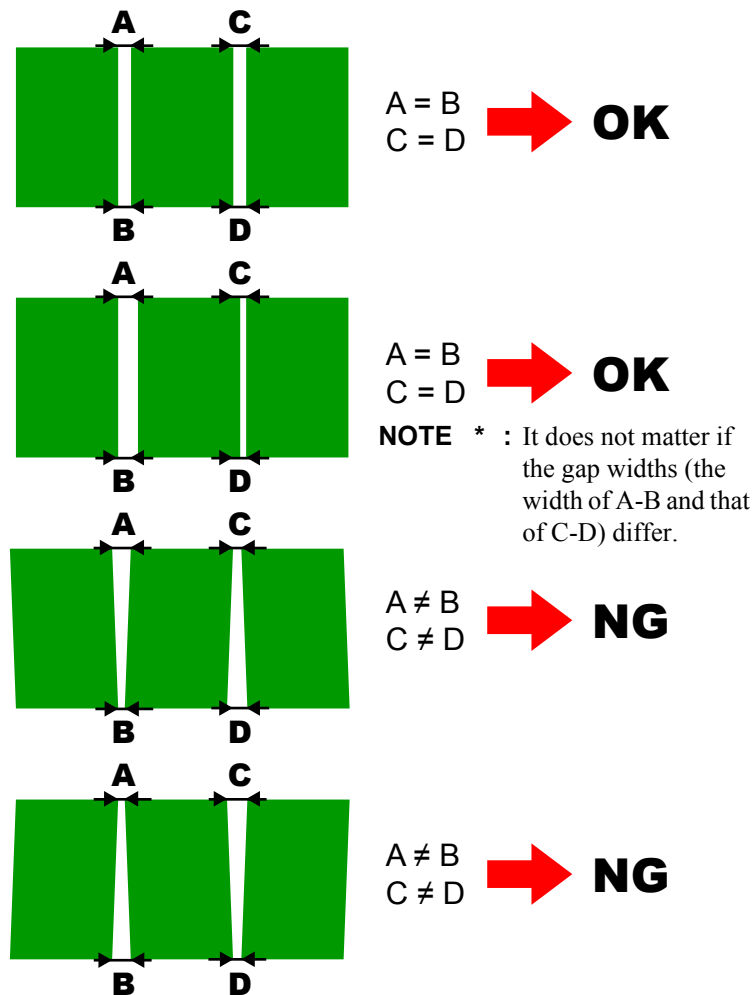
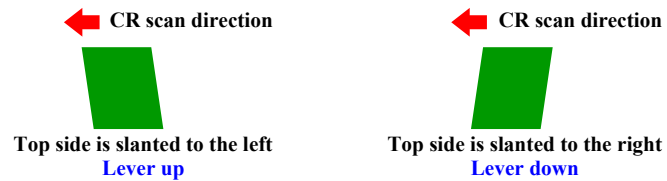


Figure 5-35. Judgment

NOTE: The pattern is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/WT7900/WT7910. The one for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710, Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908 differs in color.

5. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Temporary PG.**
6. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Un Cap** is displayed.  
The carriage unit will be unlocked.
7. Open the Front Cover (Middle).
8. Loosen the head tilt lever securing screw shown in [Figure 5-36](#).
9. Move the head tilt lever to up and down and adjust the slant of the Printhead.



10. Tighten the screws that loosened in [Step 8](#).
11. Close the Front Cover (Middle).
12. Print the adjustment pattern again and check the adjustment result.
13. Repeat [Step 4](#) to [Step 12](#) till the adjustment is finished.
14. After finishing the adjustment, press [OK] while **[Enter] Cap** is displayed to cap the Printhead. Then, turn the printer OFF and finish the adjustment.

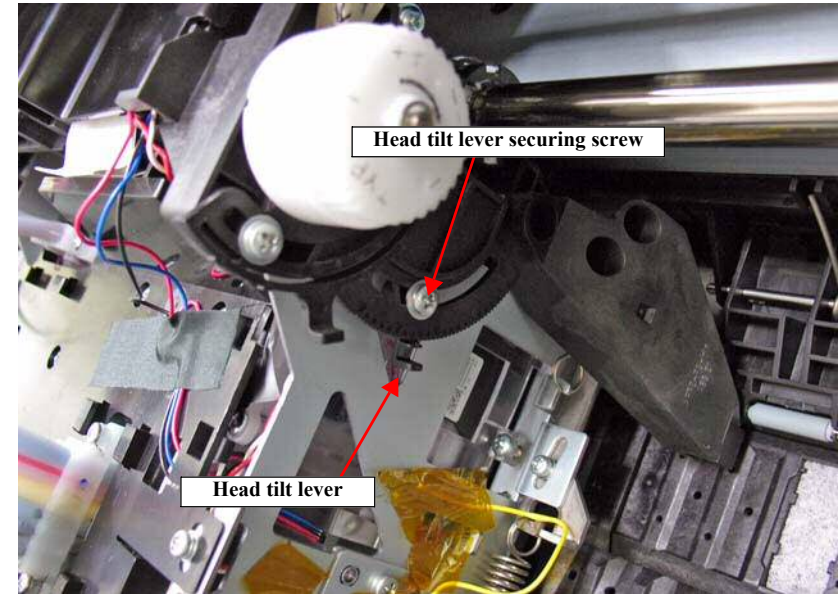


Figure 5-36. Head tilt lever

## 5.4.6 Auto Uni-D Adjustment

Use this to perform an automatic Uni-D adjustment using the Ink Mark Sensor. After adjustment pattern was printed, the printer will automatically scan the pattern and correct it.

### PAPER USED

☐ Size:

- Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908: 44 inches
- Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908:  
24 inches

☐ Type:

- Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908:  
Doubleweight Matte Paper
- Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910:  
Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)

### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Gap Adj** → **Auto Uni-D**.
3. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Print** is displayed.  
The adjustment pattern will be printed.
4. After the pattern was printed, printer will automatically scan the pattern and correct it (no need to adjust manually).
5. Turn the printer OFF.

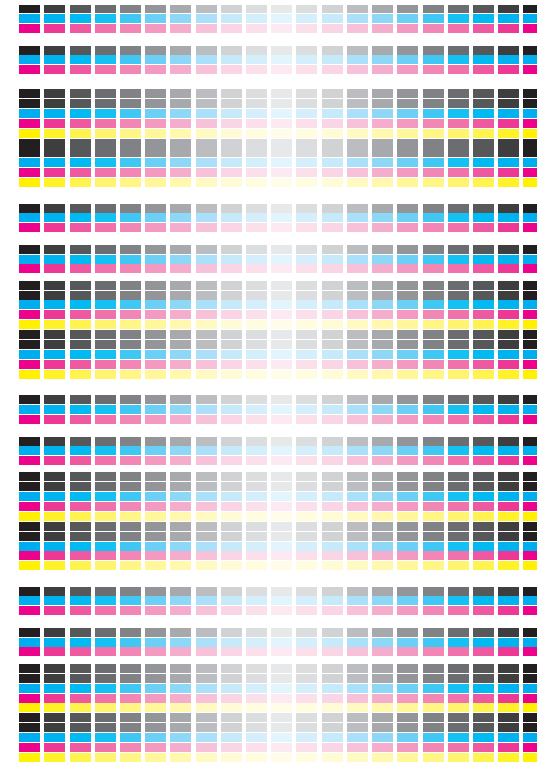


Figure 5-37. Adjustment Pattern

## 5.4.7 Auto Bi-D Adjustment

Use this to perform an automatic Bi-D adjustment using the Ink Mark Sensor. After adjustment pattern is printed, the printer will automatically scan the pattern and correct misalignment.

### PAPER USED

- Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908: 44 inches
- Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908:  
24 inches
- Type:
  - Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908:  
Doubleweight Matte Paper
  - Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910:  
Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)

### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Gap Adj** → **Auto Bi-D**.
3. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Print** is displayed.  
The adjustment pattern will be printed.
4. After the pattern was printed, the printer will automatically scan the pattern and correct misalignment (no need to adjust it manually).
5. Turn the printer OFF.

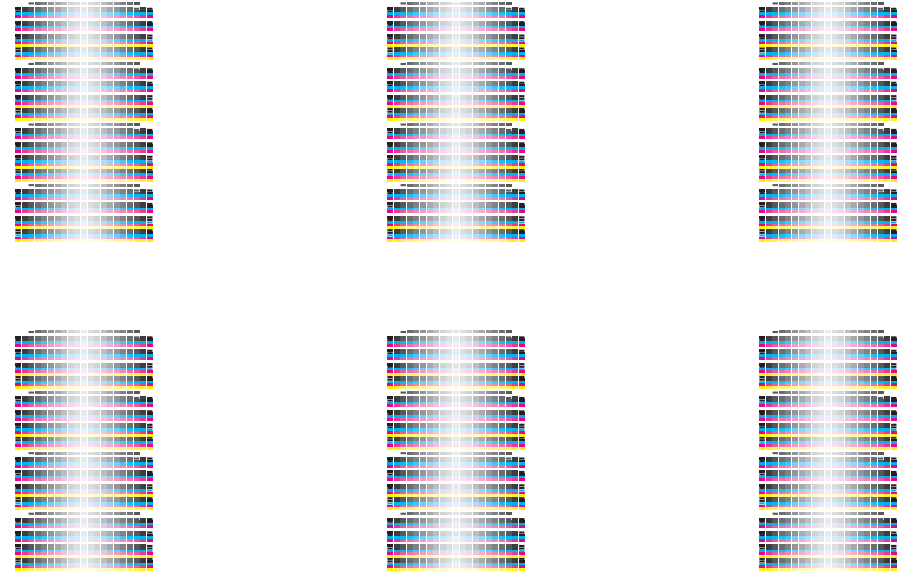


Figure 5-38. Adjustment Pattern

## 5.4.8 Colorimetric Calibration (Color ID) with SpectroProofer

*NOTE: This adjustment is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910 only.*



This adjustment is described in the same manner as other models. Therefore, the procedure is basically the same, but some actual steps or patterns may differ.

### 5.4.8.1 Adjustment Overview

This adjustment is required when the user asks to reduce the color gap between the printers after replacing any of the following parts.

- Printhead
- Main Board Assy
- Power Supply Board Assy

---

#### PURPOSE

---

By registering/controlling information concerning the ink droplets, this product improves calibration accuracy and ensures stable color quality. (Difference in color among individual products or each mode is reduced.)

---

#### PRINCIPLE

---

The calibration is performed by measuring a printed correction pattern with a calibrator. ID information that is calculated based on the acquired color values ( $L^*$ ,  $a^*$ ,  $b^*$ ) is transmitted to the printer driver, and the printer driver corrects the dot generation amount for each dot size x each color in the print data.



### 5.4.8.2 Adjusting Method

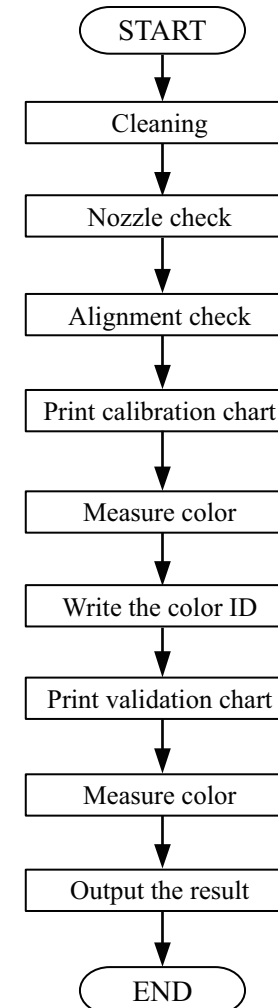
#### REQUIRED TOOLS

**Table 5-2. Tools Required**

Tool	Application/Specification
Plain Paper (A4)	For nozzle check
EPSON Enhanced (Archival) Matte Paper (A4)	For printing charts
Computer	Following drivers should be installed beforehand. Printer driver for this product USB driver for the calibrator
GretagMacbeth eye-one (i1) (Calibrator)	With UV filter
Calibration plate (White plate)	Accessory provided with the calibrator
Scanning ruler (Scale)	Accessory provided with the calibrator
USB cable	To connect the computer and the calibrator
Black sheet	Should be larger than A4
Clear file	Required when sending charts

#### ADJUSTMENT WORKFLOW

The workflow of the adjustment is explained in this section.



**Figure 5-39. Adjustment Workflow**

## ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer power on.
2. Start the Service Program, and select [Colorimetric Calibration Tool].
3. Click [Run] to start the “Colorimetric Calibration Tool”.
4. Select the printer model.

### CAUTION



When several drivers are installed for one printer, check that the backlight of the LCD panel on the printer flashes by selecting the printer model and click [Next].

5. Make sure that the “READY” message is displayed on the printer LCD, and click [Next].

### CHECK POINT



If the printer has not been used for more than two weeks, it is recommended to agitate the ink inside the cartridges to get an accurate result. Remove all the ink cartridges from the printer, and shake them gently for four or five times.

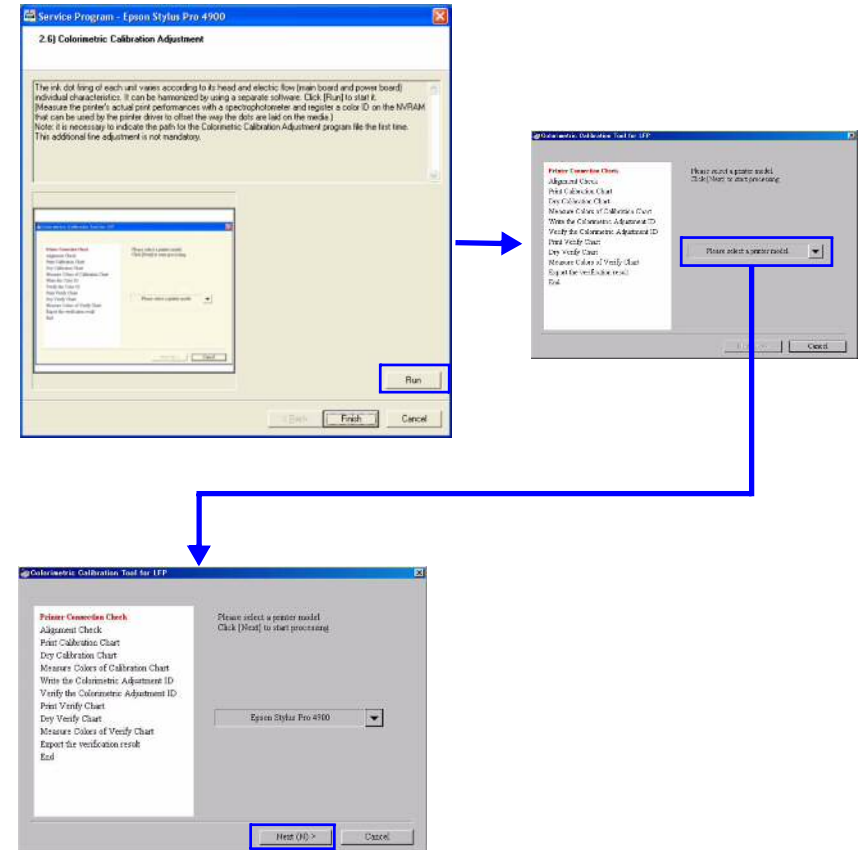


Figure 5-40. Colorimetric Calibration ID Startup Screen

6. Load an A4-sized paper vertically on the paper tray, click [Next] to start the nozzle check.
7. Check the nozzle pattern. If there is any defect, execute the cleaning using the Control Panel of the printer.  
If the check pattern is appropriate, click [Next].

**CAUTION**

**Make sure to confirm that there is no dot missing for all nozzles before executing Colorimetric Calibration Adjustment.**

8. Load an A4-sized Enhanced (Archival) Matte Paper vertically on the paper tray, and click [Next] to print the calibration chart.

**CAUTION**

**Make sure to leave the adjustment chart for 5 minutes to dry it out. Wait for the countdown to end.**

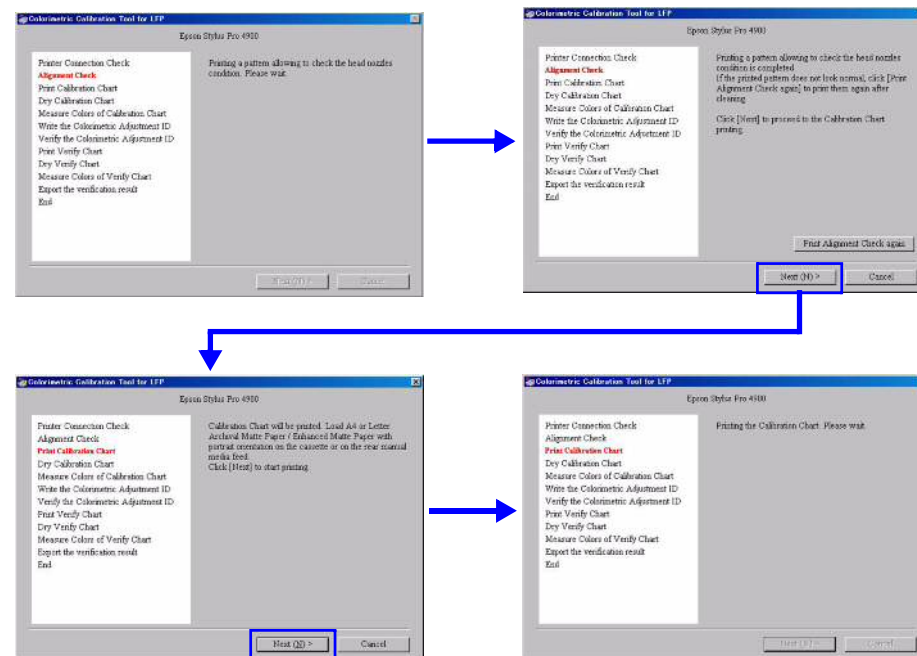


Figure 5-41. Entire Process Screen

9. Make sure there is no missing dots in the nozzle check pattern at the bottom of the calibration chart.  
If there are missing dots, click [Print Calibration Chart Again]. The calibration chart will be printed again after performing cleaning.  
If there are no missing dots, let the chart stand for five minutes until it dries out paying attention not to touch the chart.
10. When the calibration chart dries out (after five minutes), click [Next].
11. Connect a calibrator to the computer, and click [Measure].
12. Place the calibrator on the calibration base plate, and click [Calibrate]
13. Keep the calibrator remain set on the base plate, hold down the button on the side of the calibrator until it beeps.  
Once the calibration completed normally, following screen appears.



Figure 5-42. i1Calibrator



**Do not contaminate the white plate of the calibration base plate. If tainted, use alcohol to clean the plate.**

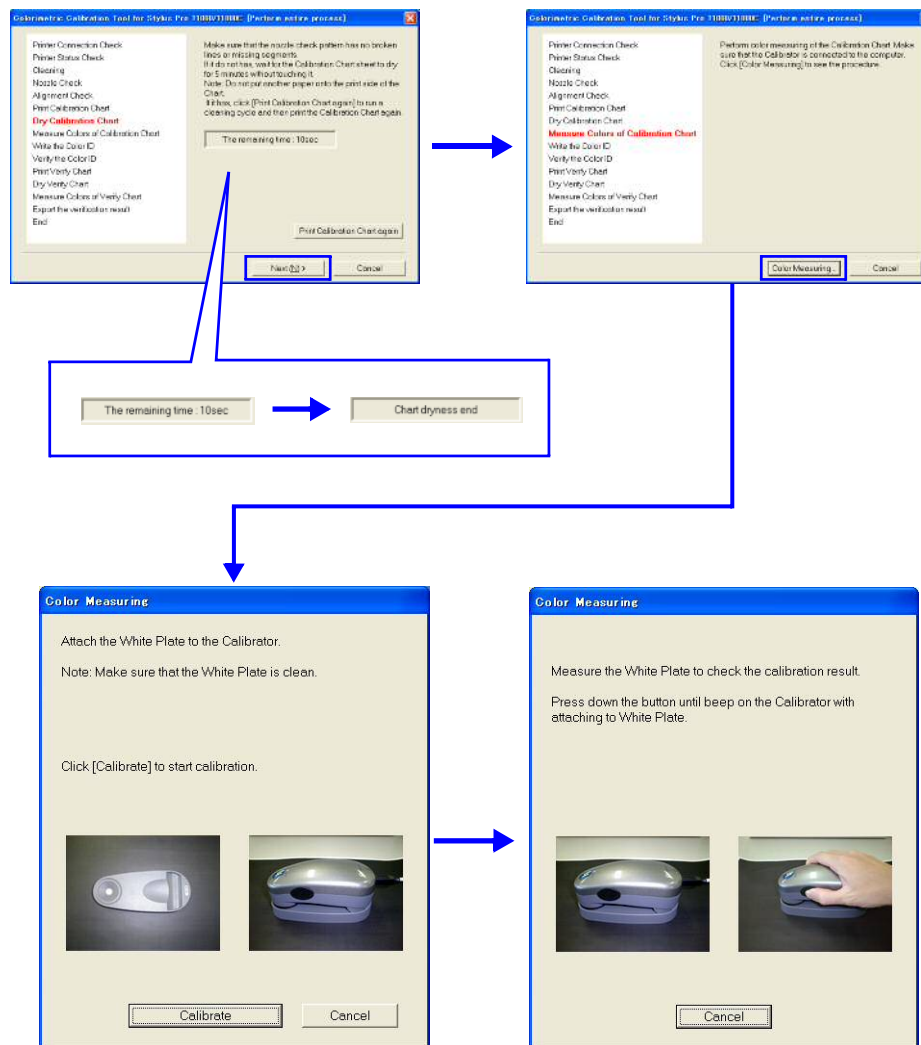


Figure 5-43. Entire Process Screen

14. Make sure that the date and time printed in the second line on the upper left of the chart (measurable time and date) is within the range displayed under the heading “GMT” on the lower screen. (If the date and time is not within the range, it is necessary to print the chart again.)
15. Refer to [Figure 5-45](#), lay the chart on the black paper (or sheet) with the upper part of the chart facing left side, and set the scanning ruler onto the bottom most patch line.

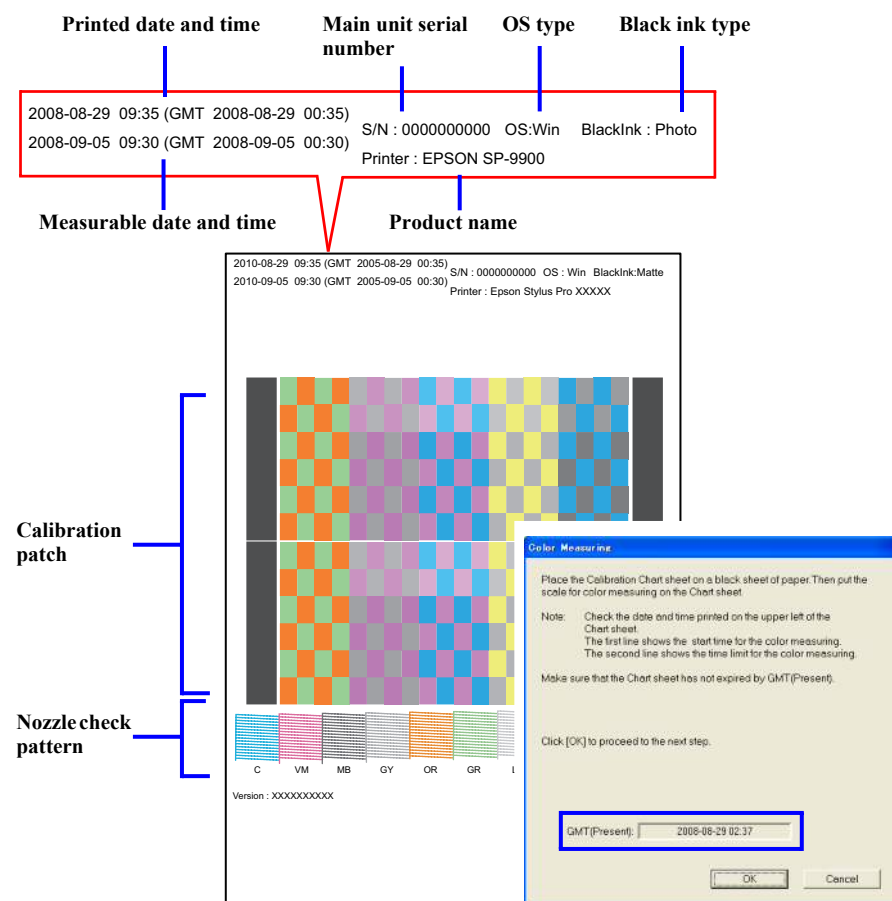
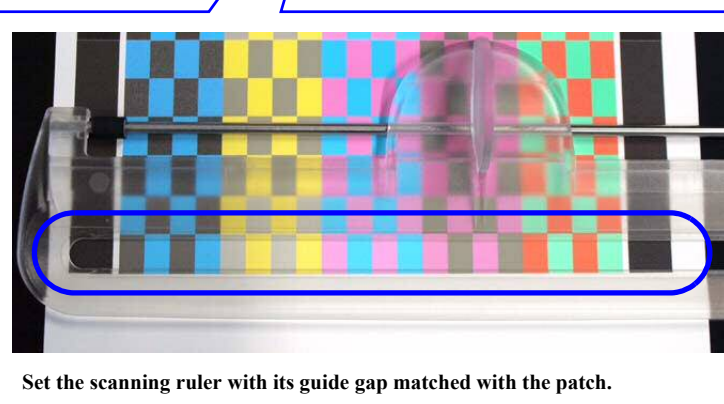


Figure 5-44. Measurable Time and Date Check



Set the scanning ruler with its guide gap matched with the patch.

Figure 5-45. Setting the Chart and the Scanning Ruler

16. Click [OK] and follow the instructions (following procedure) displayed on the screen to perform color measuring.
  1. Set the calibrator with its measuring part matched with measuring start position (margin) as shown in Figure 5-47.
  2. Press down the button on the side of the calibrator.
  3. When it beeps, keep holding down the button and scan the patch along the calibration guide to measuring end position (margin).
  4. Once the measuring is completed, release the button.
  5. Repeat Step 1 through 4 twice for the same patch line.
  6. Repeat Step 1 through 5 to measure the bottommost line to the top line. (The line that needs to be measured is displayed on the screen.)
17. Once all the lines (8 lines) are measured, click [OK].

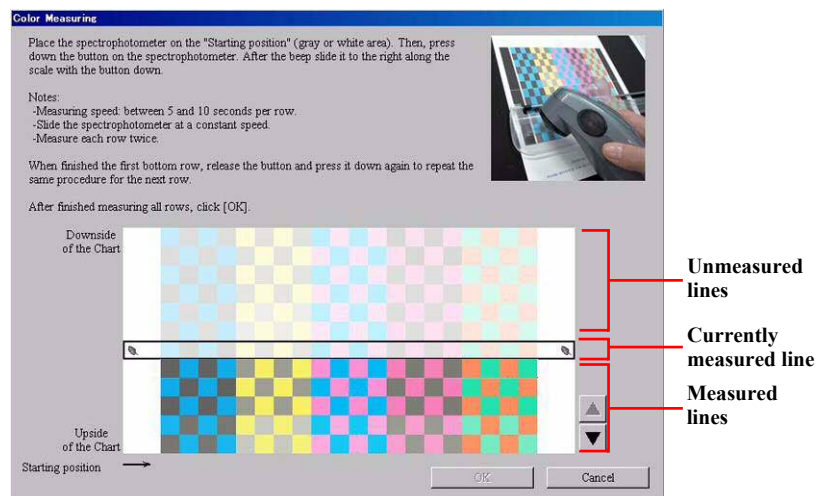


Figure 5-46. Color Measuring Screen



When measuring colors, pay attention to the instructions below.

- Scan one line between five to ten seconds.
- Keep the scan speed constant as possible.
- Measure each of the lines twice. (Measure the line as instructed on the program screen.)
- Place the chart on a flat surface. The calibrator and the ruler must be attached firmly to the chart in order to measure the colors accurately.
- Do not scan any places other than the one shown in Figure 5-47.
- If the measured values are completely out of the standards, a warning mark (⚠) appears. In this instance, check the instructions mentioned above and retry the color measuring again.
- If an error mark (✖) appears, check the instructions mentioned above and retry the color measuring again.



Start position in the color measuring

End position in the color measuring

Figure 5-47. Setting the Calibrator/Measuring Position





If measuring color fails, you should turn the chart 90 degrees (so that the nozzle check pattern comes on the right) and move the calibrator from front to rear.

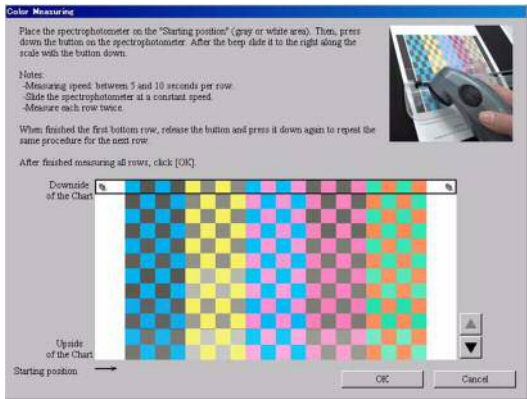
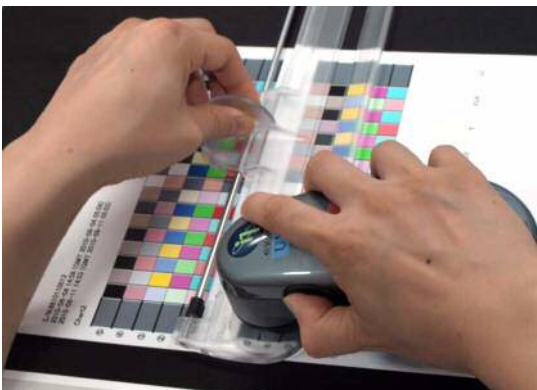


Figure 5-48. Color Measuring Screen

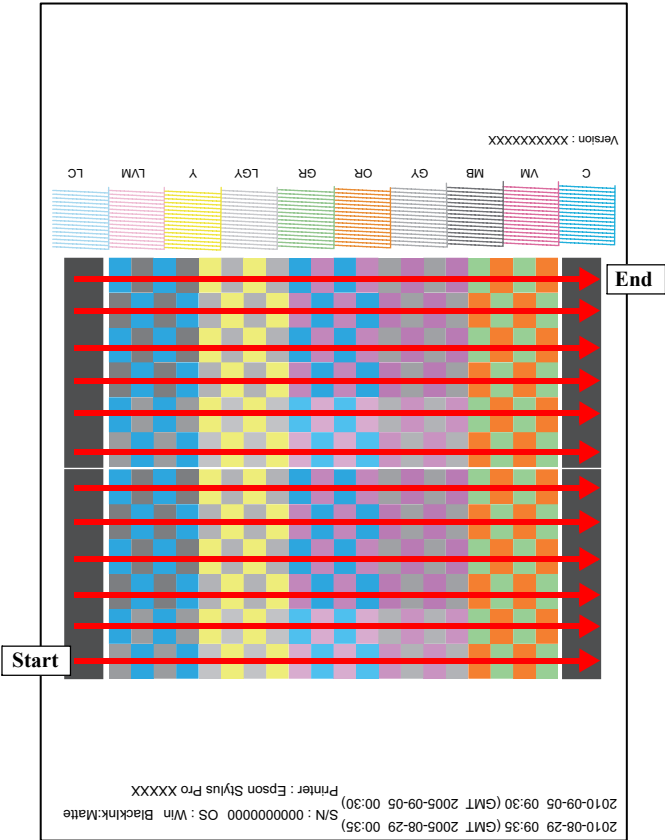


Figure 5-49. Color Measuring Order



18. Make sure that the “READY” message is displayed on the printer LCD panel, and click [Next] to turn OFF and reboot the printer automatically and write the “Color ID” to the printer main unit.
19. When the writing is completed, click [Next].

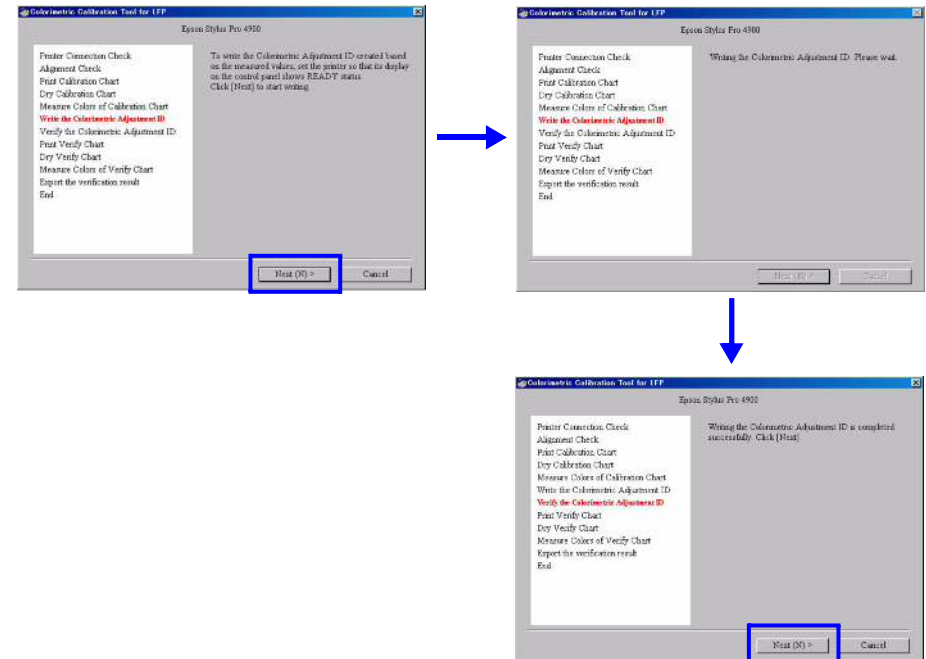


Figure 5-50. Entire Process Screen

20. Load an A4-sized Enhanced (Archival) Matte Paper vertically on the paper tray, and click [Next] to print the first page of the verify chart.



**Make sure to leave the adjustment chart for 5 minutes to dry it out. Wait for the countdown to end.**

21. Check the nozzle check pattern on the bottom of the verify chart to make sure that there is no missing dot.  
If there is any defect, click [Print Verify Chart Again]. The verify chart will be printed again after performing cleaning.  
If there are no missing dots, let the chart stand for five minutes until it dries out paying attention not to touch the chart.
22. When the verify chart dries out (after five minutes), click [Next].
23. Click [Measure].
24. Place the calibrator on the calibration base plate, and click [Calibrate].
25. Keep the calibrator remain set on the base plate, hold down the button on the side of the calibrator until it beeps.  
Once the calibration completed normally, following screen appears.

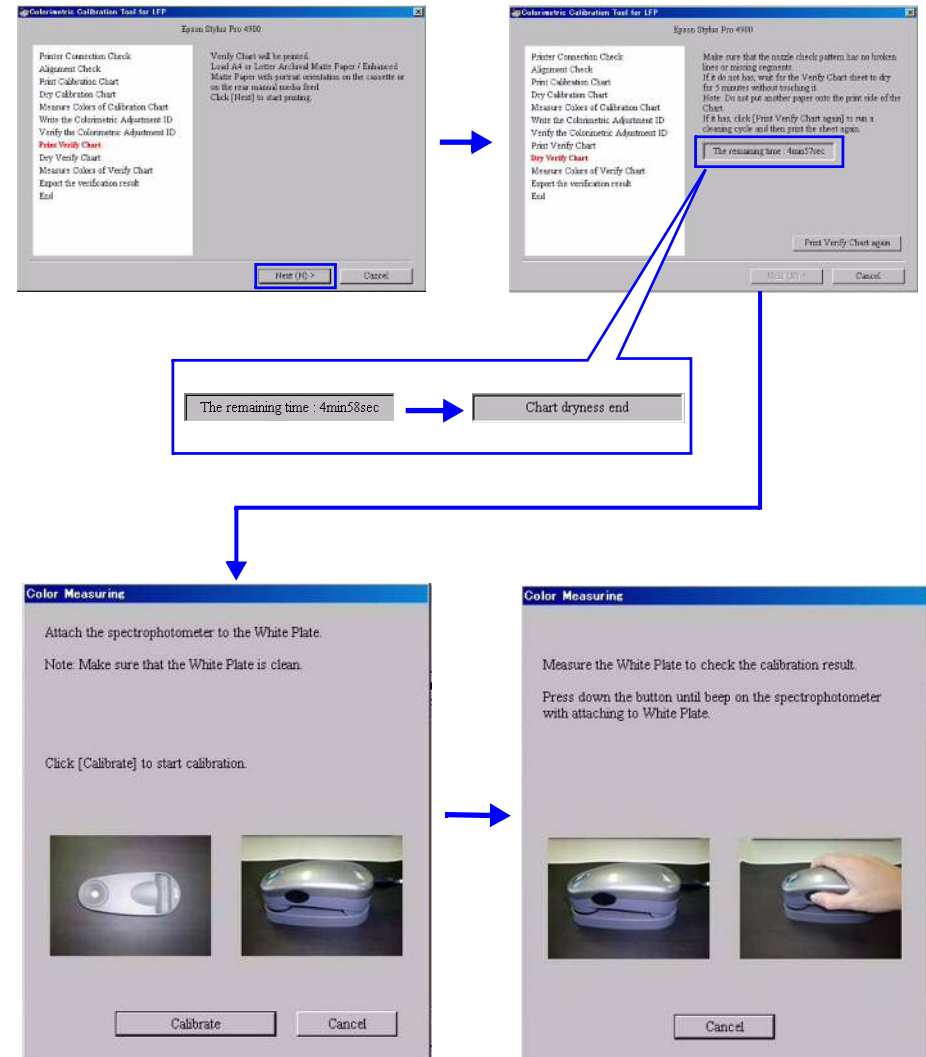


Figure 5-51. Screen

26. Make sure that the date and time printed in the second line on the upper left of the chart (measurable time and date) is within the range displayed under the heading "GMT" on the lower screen. (If the date and time is not within the range, it is necessary to print the chart again.)
27. Refer to [Figure 5-52](#), lay the chart on the black paper (or sheet) with the upper part of the chart facing left side, and set the scanning ruler onto the bottommost patch line.

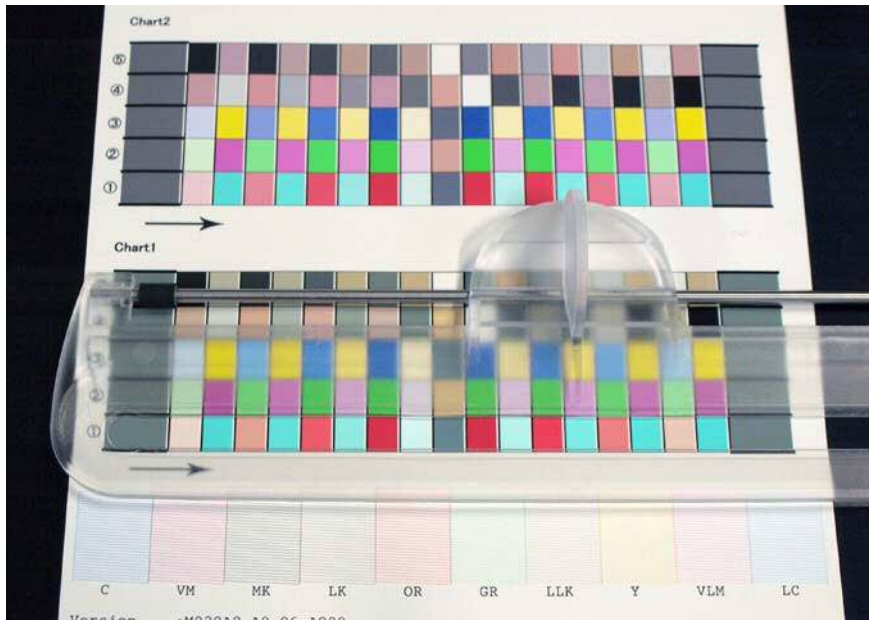


Figure 5-52. Setting the Chart and the Scanning Ruler

S/N : 0000000000 — Main unit serial number  
 2010-08-29 10:57 (GMT 2005-08-29 01:57) — Printed date and time  
 2010-09-05 10:52 (GMT 2005-09-05 01:52) — Measurable date and time

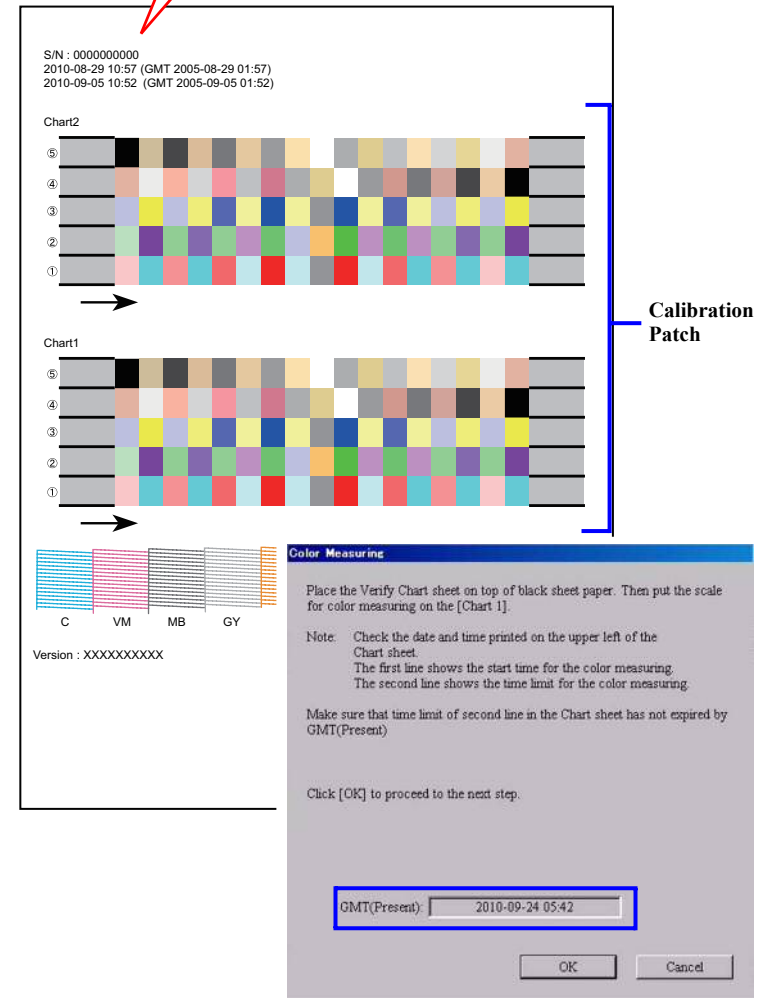
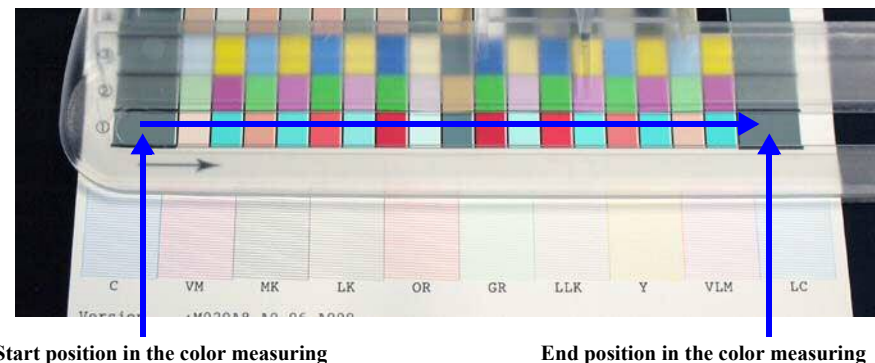


Figure 5-53. Measurable Date and Time Check

28. Click [OK] and follow the instructions (following procedure) displayed on the screen to perform color measuring.
1. Set the calibrator with its measuring part matched with measuring start position (gray part) as shown in [Figure 5-47](#).
  2. Press the button on the side of the calibrator.
  3. When it beeps, keep holding down the button and scan the patch along the scanning ruler to measuring end position (gray part).
  4. Once the measuring is completed, release the button.
  5. Repeat Step 1 through 4 twice for the same patch line.
  6. Repeat Step 1 through 5 to measure the bottommost line to the top line. (The line which needs to be measured is displayed on the screen.)
29. Once all the lines (5 lines) are measured, click [OK].
30. Measure Sheet 2 by following [step 26](#) through [step 29](#).



Start position in the color measuring

End position in the color measuring

Figure 5-55. Setting the Calibrator/Color Measuring Position

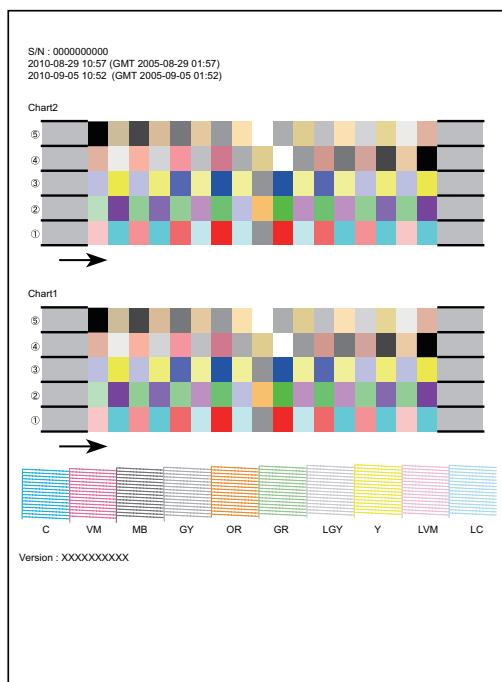


Figure 5-54. Color Measuring Order

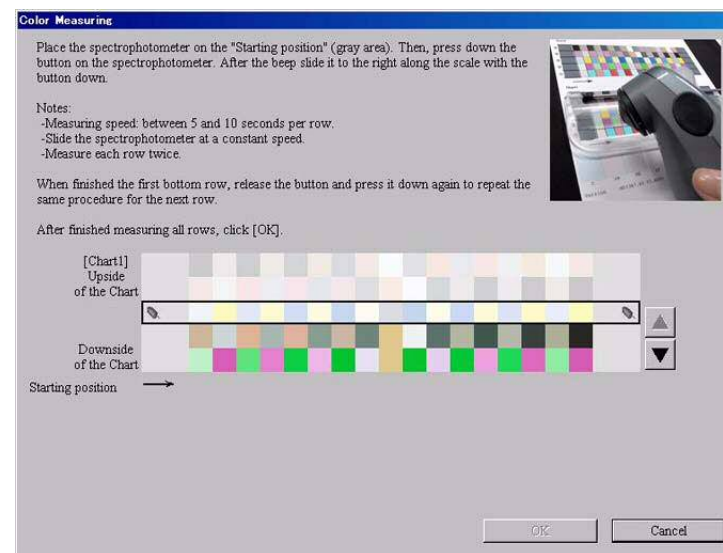


Figure 5-56. Color Measuring Screen

31. Click [Save] to save the result under a new file name (txt file).
32. Click [End].

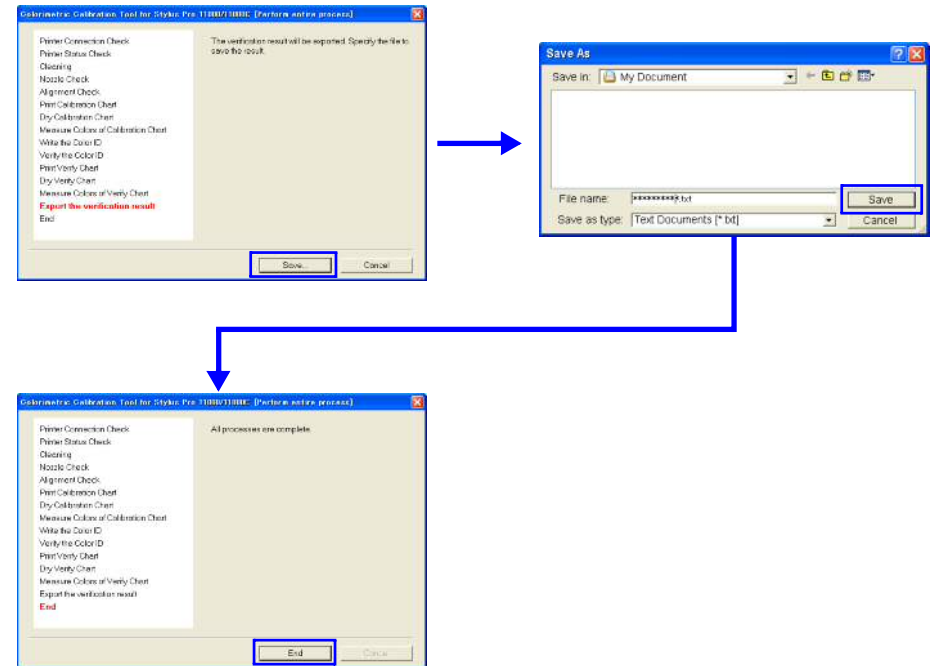


Figure 5-57. Entire Process Screen

## 5.4.9 Absorber Position Check

This allows you to adjust the print position to the absorber (waste ink pad) for borderless printing. (This is a check only)

*NOTE: This adjustment is not applied to Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910.*

### PAPER USED

- ☐ Size:
- Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908: 44 inches
  - Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/7890/7908: 24 inches
- ☐ Type: Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)

### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON.
2. Press [Menu ►] and enter the panel setting mode.
3. Select **PRINTER SETUP** → **PAPER SIZE CHECK** and change the setting to **OFF**.
4. Press [Paper Source ◀] to change the setting of cutting roll paper to **OFF**.
5. Turn the printer OFF.
6. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
7. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Pad Position**.
8. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Printing** is displayed.  
The adjustment pattern will be printed.
9. Press [Paper Cut] and cut off the adjustment pattern.
10. Open the Front Cover (Middle).

11. See [Figure 5-59](#) and check if the standard line for the Waste Ink Pad for the borderless printing is within the OK range.

- : 12 points
- Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/7890/7908: 8 points



**This adjustment is performed on the factory. It cannot be adjusted on the field.**

12. Close the Front Cover (Middle), and turn the printer OFF.

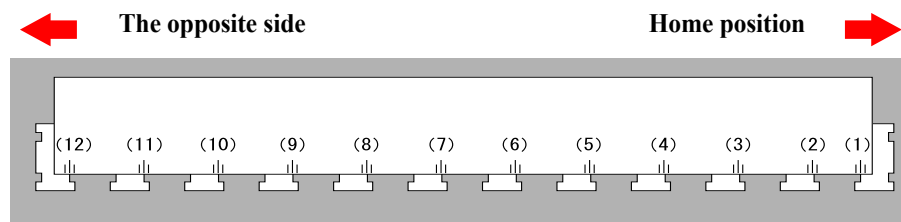


Figure 5-58. Adjustment pattern

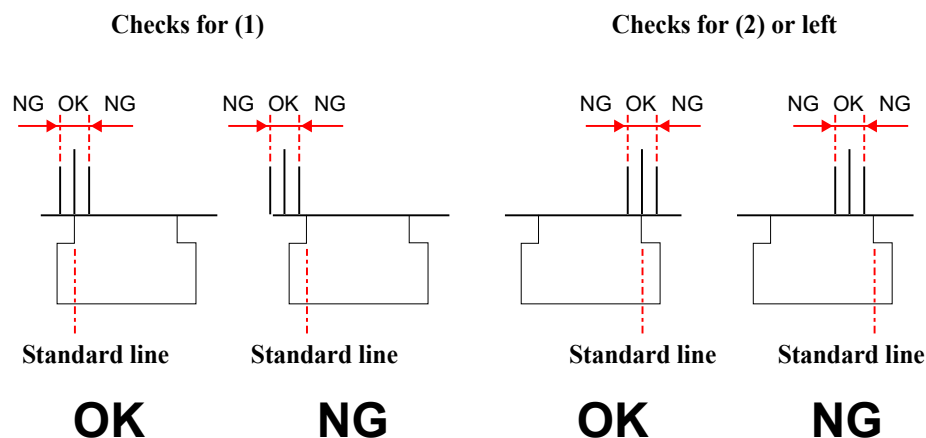


Figure 5-59. Adjustment pattern (zoom)



### 5.4.10 Ink Mark Sensor Height Adjustment

This allows you to adjust the position of the Ink Mark Sensor to make proper position to the platen.

#### REQUIRED TOOLS

- ☐ Thickness Gauge (2.6/2.7)
- ☐ Metal Ruler

#### STANDARD VALUE

- ☐ 2.6 pass
- ☐ 2.7 stop

#### PROCEDURE

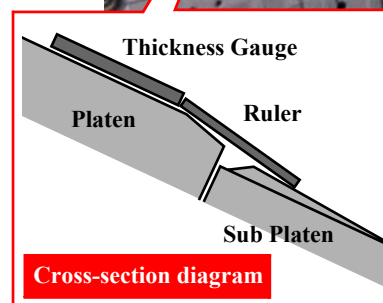
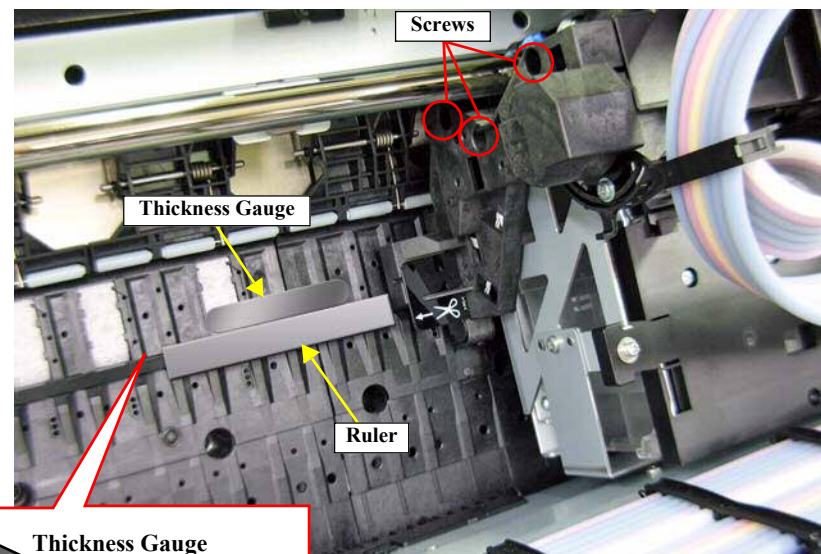
1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. When any paper is loaded, remove it.

*NOTE: A paper out error occurs at this time, but the adjustment can be continued.*

3. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **IM Sensor Gap**.
4. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Un Cap** is displayed.  
The carriage unit will be unlocked.
5. Open the Front Cover (Middle).
6. Secure the ruler with the double-sided tape on the position shown in [Figure 5-60](#).
7. Place the thickness gauge on the ruler. See [Figure 5-60](#) for the position.
8. Move the Carriage Unit slowly over the gauge.

9. Use the thickness gauge of 2.6 and 2.7 and check if the height of the Ink Mark Sensor is within the standard value.

- Within the standard value: Go to [Step 12](#)
- Out of the range: Go to [Step 10](#)



**Figure 5-60. Position for the ruler and gauge**

10. Loosen the screws (x3) that secure the Ink Mark Sensor Assy.
11. Slide the Ink Mark Sensor to up or down to adjust the height.  
After the adjustment, secure the screws and return to [Step 8](#).
12. Close the Front Cover (Middle) and press [OK] while **[Enter] Cap** is displayed.  
The Carriage Unit will be locked.
13. Turn the printer OFF.



### 5.4.11 Ink Mark Sensor Adjustment

This allows you to adjust the sensitivity and the detecting position of the Ink Mark Sensor by printing the specified patterns and scanning it with the Ink Mark Sensor. Scanning the pattern and adjusting is executed automatically.

#### PAPER USED

- ☐ Size: A4 or more
- ☐ Type:
  - Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908:  
Archival Matte Paper
  - Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910:  
Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)

#### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **IM Sensor**.
3. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Print** is displayed.  
The adjustment pattern will be printed.
4. See the printed pattern and check the pattern in the position shown in the [Figure 5-61](#).
  - If OK is printed: Go to [Step 5](#).
  - If NG is printed: Print the pattern again. If NG is still printed, replace the Ink Mark Sensor Assy.
5. Turn the printer OFF.

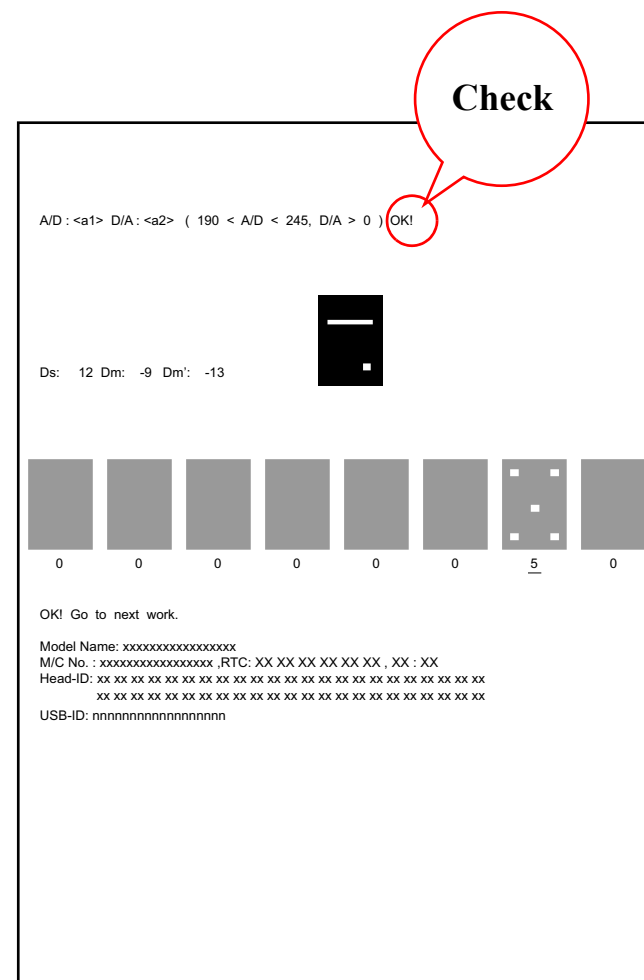


Figure 5-61. Adjustment Pattern

### 5.4.12 Air Leak Check for Ink Supply System

The ink supply path should be checked for air leaks whenever the Ink Tube, Ink Cartridge Holder or Dampers are replaced, or the joint of the Ink Cartridge Holder and the Damper is once loosened and retightened.

**CAUTION**


Do not touch or press the regulator located under the regulator protection plate.

#### REQUIRED TOOLS

- Ink Leak Measurement Jig (with digital pressure gauge GC66)  
(Battery type: 1 x CR2016 (3V))
- INK LEAK CHECK CARTRIDGE (1493143)

#### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer on.
2. Open the Ink Cartridge Cover.
3. Turn off the printer.
4. Remove the cap from the Ink Leak Measurement Jig.
5. Insert the tube of INK LEAK CHECK CARTRIDGE to the Ink Leak Measurement Jig.
6. Install the INK LEAK CHECK CARTRIDGE into the Ink Cartridge slot of the printer to check.

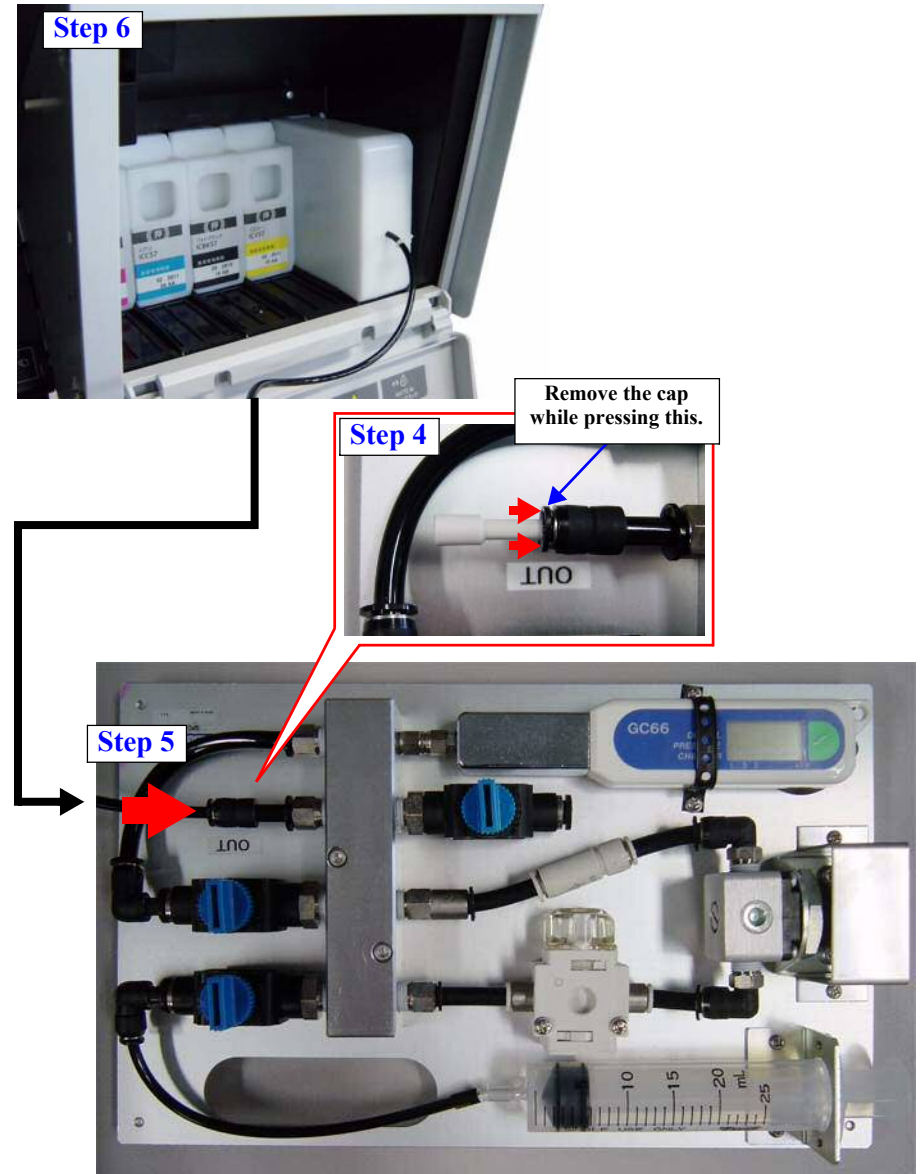
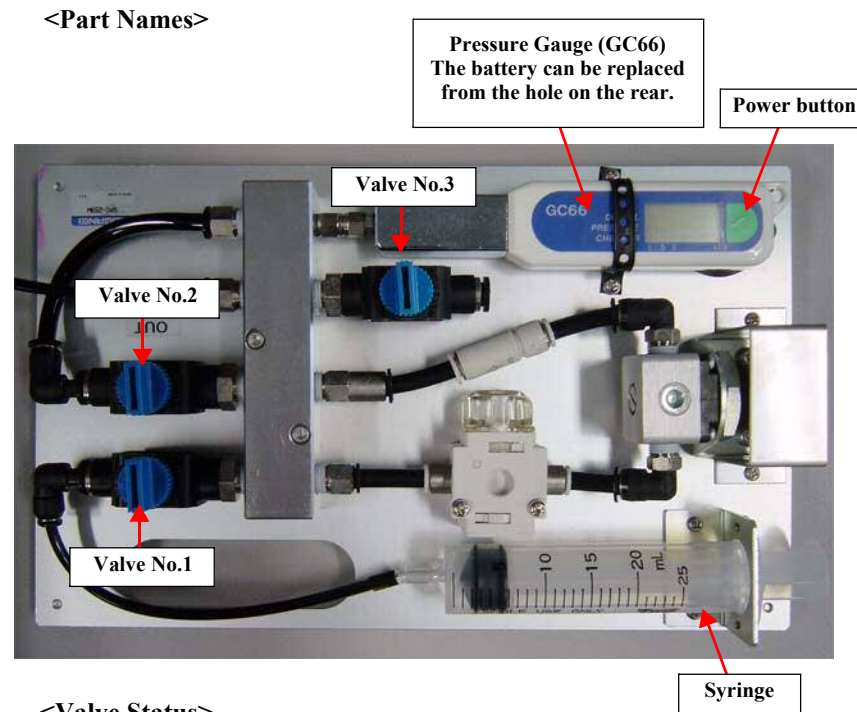


Figure 5-62. Preparation for Air Leak Check

7. Turn each valve of the Ink Leak Measurement Jig as follows:
  - Valve No.1: Closed
  - Valve No.2: Open
  - Valve No.3: Open
8. Press the power button of the Pressure Gauge.
9. Confirm the value on the Pressure Gauge is 0.0 kPa. Otherwise, restart the Pressure Gauge.
10. Close the Valve No.3, and pull the Syringe.
11. Open the Valve No.1, and push the Syringe.
12. Confirm the value on the Pressure Gauge is within 30 kPa to 48 kPa. Otherwise, repeat pulling/pushing the Syringe.
13. Close the Valve No.2.
14. Record the value displayed on the Pressure Gauge and wait for approx. three minutes.
15. After three minutes passes, check the value on the Pressure Gauge, and compare it with the recorded value.
  - Difference is within 0.4 kPa: No problem. Go to [Step 16](#).
  - Difference is more than 0.5 kPa: Air may leak. Check the joints of dampers for the connection status, and start the check again from [Step 7](#).
16. After the difference of the values falls within 0.4 kPa, open the valve No.3 to depressurize the jig.
17. After confirming the value on the Pressure Gauge is 0.0 kPa, remove the INK LEAK CHECK CARTRIDGE from the Ink Cartridge slot of the printer.
18. Repeat the procedure above for all the Ink Cartridge slots to check.
19. After checking all the Ink Cartridge slots to check, press the power button of the Pressure Gauge for about 4 to 5 seconds to turn off the printer.
20. Close the valves No.1, No.2, and No.3 to complete the operation.



<Valve Status>

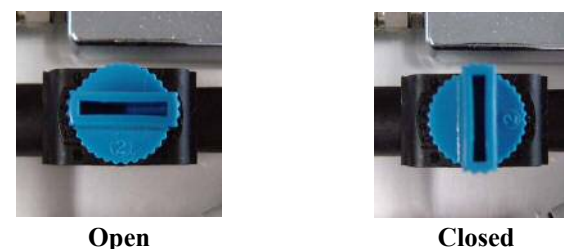


Figure 5-63. Operation of the Ink Leak Measurement Jig

### 5.4.13 Initial Ink Charge Flag ON/OFF

This allows you to set whether initial ink charging is executed or not when turning the power ON.

#### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON.
2. Start the Service Program and select **Initial Ink Charge Flag ON/OFF** from **Initial Ink Charge Flag**.
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**, and press [Run].
4. Turn the printer OFF.
5. If **ON** is selected, initial ink charge will be performed next time you start the printer.

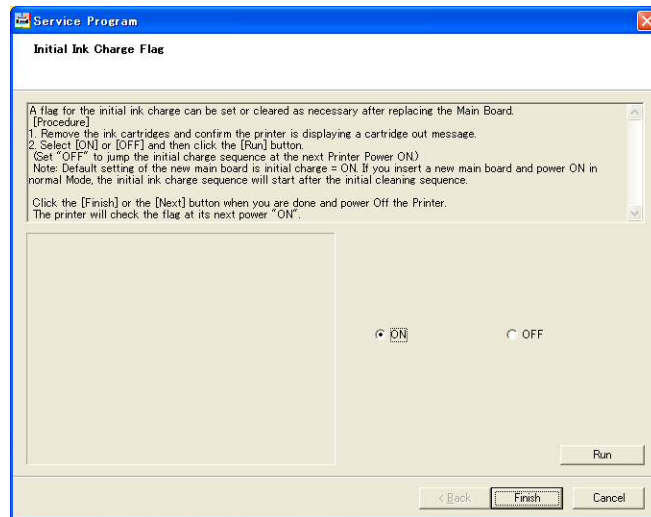


Figure 5-64. [Initial Ink Charge Flag ON/OFF] Screen

### 5.4.14 Initial Ink Charge

This is to execute the initial ink charge.



**Make sure to check the ink remaining level and if the remaining amount is less than 50%, replace the ink cartridge with a new one before starting this adjustment.**

#### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Cleaning** → **Init.Fill**.
3. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Start** is displayed.  
The initial ink charge sequence will be executed.

## 5.5 PF Related Adjustment

### 5.5.1 PF Timing Belt Tension Adjustment

This allows you to adjust the tension of the PF Timing Belt to a specified level. This is to execute after the PF Timing Belt has been loosened.

#### REQUIRED TOOLS

- ☐ Sonic Tension Meter U-507
- ☐ Any tools to flip the timing belt

#### STANDARD VALUE

- ☐  $10 \pm 2\text{N}$

#### PROCEDURE

1. Remove the following parts in advance.
  - IC Cover L and Shaft Cover L
  - Maintenance Tank L (Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910/9890/9908 only)
  - Left Cover
2. Install the following part after removing the Left Cover.
  - Maintenance Tank L (Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910/9890/9908 only)
3. Switch the open/close detection switch on the Left Cover to make cover closed.
4. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
5. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **PF Ageing** → **Ageing 12**.
6. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Start** is displayed.  
The PF Motor will be rolling.

7. Enter the following parameters to the Sonic Tension Meter U-507.

- MASS: 001.2 g/m
- WIDTH: 006.0 mm/R
- SPAN: 0065 mm

8. Bring the microphone of the meter closer to the position shown in [Figure 5-65](#) of the Timing Belt.



**Bring the microphone within 5mm from the Timing Belt but do not let it touch the belt.**

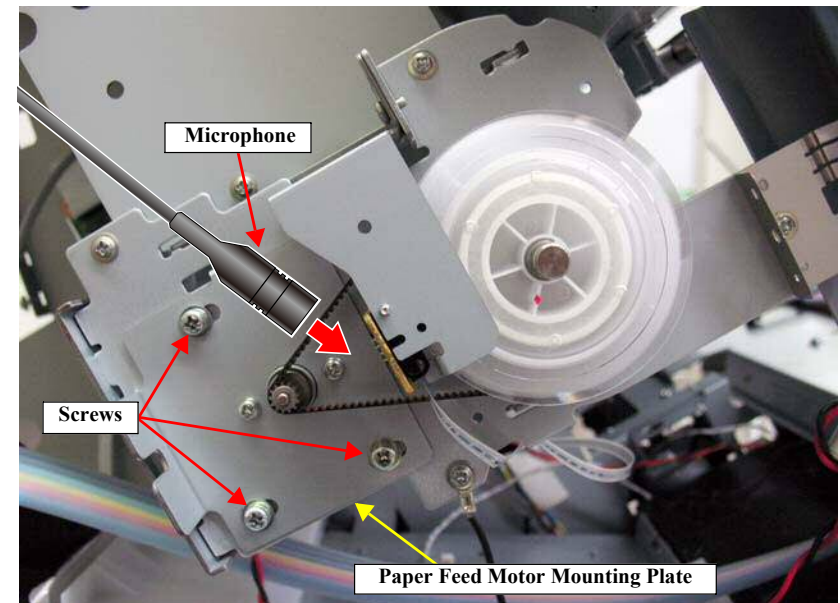


Figure 5-65. PF Timing Belt Tension Adjustment

9. Press [MEASURE] on the Sonic Tension Meter U-507 and flip the Timing Belt with tweezers in the direction of the arrow in [Figure 5-65](#).



- Flip the Timing Belt as weak as the Sonic Tension Meter U-507 can measure it.
- Be careful not to let the microphone touch the Timing Belt when flipping the belt.

- Within the standard value: Turn the printer OFF and finish the adjustment.
  - Out of the range: Go to [Step 10](#).
10. Loosen the screws (x3) that secure the Paper Feed Motor Mounting Plate.
11. Slide the plate and adjust the tension.  
After adjusting the tension, tighten the screw that loosened in [Step 10](#) and return to [Step 8](#).

## 5.5.2 Skew Check

This allows you to check the skew level of the paper and confirm if the paper feed is executed within the standard value.

### PAPER USED

- ☐ Size: 24 inches or more
- ☐ Type:
  - Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908: Doubleweight Matte Paper
  - Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910: Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)

### STANDARD VALUE

- ☐ A - B =  $\pm 0.8$  mm

### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Feed Adj** → **Printing**.
3. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Print** is displayed.  
The adjustment pattern will be printed.
4. Measure the distances of A and B as shown in [Figure 5-66](#).
5. Calculate differences of A and B, and check if the value is within the standard value.

Paper feeding direction

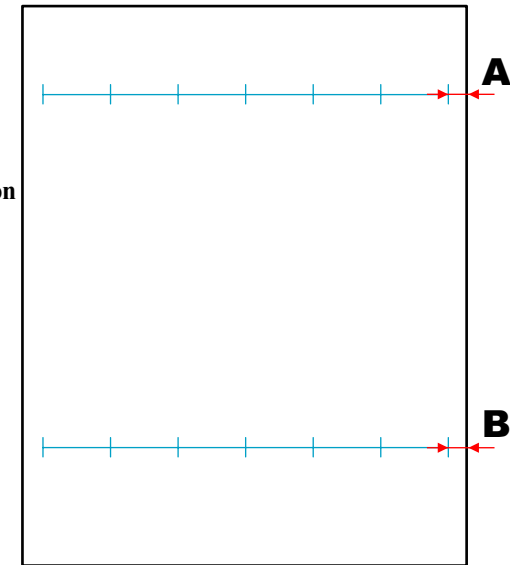


Figure 5-66. Adjustment Pattern

#### CAUTION



If the value is out of the specified range, load the paper again or adjust the roll paper tension.



### 5.5.3 Band Feed

This allows you to correct the paper feeding amount. If this adjustment is not executed properly, it may cause banding.

#### CAUTION



- Before performing this adjustment, install the latest firmware (p.421).
- Make sure to check skew (p.406) before executing this adjustment to make paper to be fed correctly.
- When performing this adjustment, make sure to use specified paper.

#### CHECK POINT



There are two methods in this adjustment. Select either of them according to the user's needs. (excluding Epson StylusPro WT7900/WT7910)

- **High precision adjustment:**  
For those users who take print quality very seriously.  
Consumes about 1,000mm of paper per adjustment.
- **Simplified adjustment:**  
For those users who do not take print quality so seriously. For this adjustment, consumes only about 500mm of paper per adjustment.

#### REQUIRED TOOL

- Ruler (can be measured up to 1,000mm)

#### PAPER USED

- Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908
  - Size: 24 inches or more
  - Type: Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)
- Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910
  - Size: 24 inches
  - Type: Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)

#### STANDARD VALUE

- Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908
  - High precision adjustment: 990.6mm ± 0.35mm
  - Simplified adjustment: 508.0mm ± 0.15mm
- Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910
  - 990.2mm ± 0.35mm

#### PROCEDURE

- Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908
  1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
  2. Select the adjustment item.
    - High precision adjustment:  
Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Feed Adj (1m)** → **Printing**.
    - Simplified adjustment:  
Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Feed Adj** → **Printing**.
  3. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Print** is displayed.  
The adjustment pattern will be printed.
  4. Measure the distance as shown in Figure 5-67.
    - Within the standard value: Turn the printer OFF and finish the adjustment.
    - Out of the range: Go to [Step 5](#).

#### CAUTION



When measuring the value, make sure to put the adjustment pattern on the horizontal surface.

5. Select **Feed Adj (1m)** (or **Feed Adj**) → **Input**.

6. Enter the following parameters that measured in [Step 4](#) and press [OK].  
Return to [Step 2](#).

☐ Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Feed Adj** → **Printing**.
3. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Print** is displayed.  
The adjustment pattern will be printed.
4. Measure the distance as shown in [Figure 5-67](#).
  - Within the standard value: Turn the printer OFF and finish the adjustment.
  - Out of the range: Go to [Step 5](#).

**CAUTION**



When measuring the value, make sure to put the adjustment pattern on the horizontal surface.

5. Select **Feed Adj** → **Input**.
6. Enter the following parameters that measured in [Step 4](#) and press [OK].  
Return to [Step 2](#).

Paper feeding direction

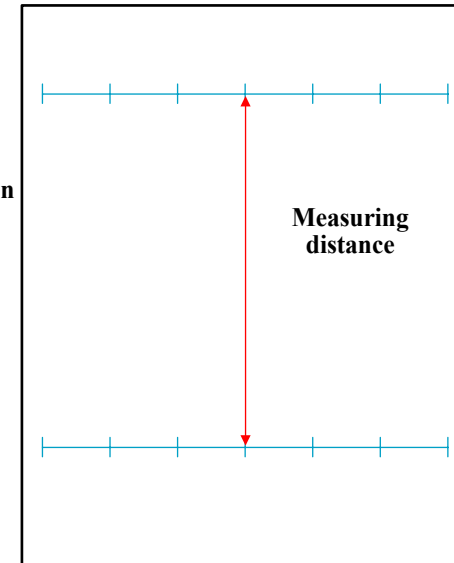


Figure 5-67. Adjustment Pattern

## 5.5.4 T&B&S Adjustment

This allows you to adjust the top, bottom and side margins for the paper.



Make sure to check skew [p.406](#) before executing this adjustment to make paper to be fed correctly.

### REQUIRED TOOL

- ☐ Ruler

### PAPER USED

- ☐ Size: A3
- ☐ Type:
  - Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908: Plain Paper
  - Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910: Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)

### STANDARD VALUE

- ☐ Top margin: 15 ± 0.4 mm
- ☐ Bottom margin: 14 ± 0.5 mm
- ☐ Side margin: 15 ± 0.4 mm

### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **TBS Pos** → **Printing**.

3. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Print** is displayed.  
The adjustment pattern will be printed.
4. Press [Pause/Reset] while **[Pause] End** is displayed.
5. Measure the distance as shown in [Figure 5-68](#).
  - Within the standard value: Turn the printer OFF and finish the adjustment.
  - Out of the range: Go to [Step 6](#).



When measuring the value, make sure to put the adjustment pattern on the horizontal surface.



For the top margin, measure both the left and the right to confirm the difference between them falls within 0.4mm. If not; since the paper is skewed, correct the skew and execute printing again. When the values are different, enter the smaller.

6. Select **TBS Pos** → **Input**.
7. Enter the following parameters that measured in [Step 5](#) and press [OK]. To change the items, press [Menu ►].  
Return to [Step 2](#).

Panel Display

- Top margin: Top Margin
- Bottom margin: Rear Sens. Pos
- Side margin: Side Home Margin

**NOTE:** There are two entries of the side margin (the one for the Home side (Side Home Margin) and the one the Full side (Side Full Margin)); however, enter the value in the Home side only.

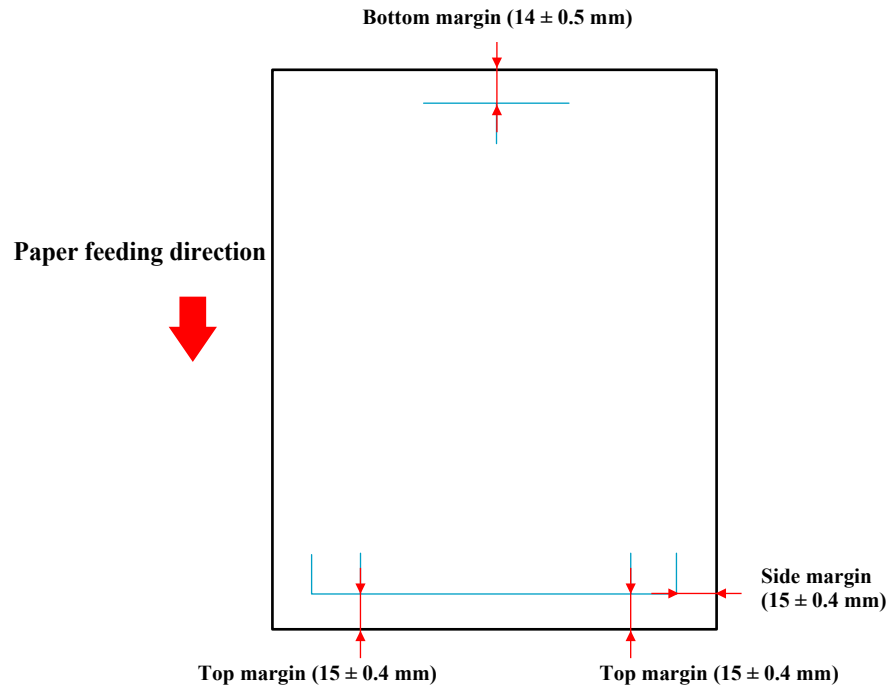


Figure 5-68. Adjustment Pattern

## 5.5.5 Paper Thickness Sensor Position Adjustment

This allows you to adjust the positions of Paper Thickness Sensor so as to detect the thickness of paper correctly.

### REQUIRED TOOL

- ☐ P-Thick Sensor Position Jig (use the one 0.5 in thickness only.)
- ☐ Paper Thickness Position Tool (use the ones 0.4/0.8/0.9 in thickness only.)

### STANDARD VALUE

Lever's status	Jig	Panel Display
Down	N/A	00
Down	0.4	00
Down	0.5	10
Down	0.8	10
Down	0.9	11
Up	N/A	01

### CHECKING PROCEDURE

- Remove the following parts in advance.
  - IC Cover (L/R) and IC Shaft Cover (L/R)
  - Maintenance Tank (L/R) (Maintenance Tank L is for Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910/9890/9908 only)
  - Control Panel
  - Left Cover
  - Right Cover
  - Top Cover
- Install the following parts after removing the Top Cover.
  - Maintenance Tank (L/R) (Maintenance Tank L is for Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910/9890/9908 only)
  - Control Panel
- Switch the open/close detection switch of the IC Cover (L/R) to make the cover closed. (See [Figure 5-11](#).)
- Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
- Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Paper** → **Paper Thick**.
- Press [Paper Set] to lock the paper presser.
- Check that “00” is displayed on the Control Panel.  
Carry out the adjustment if the displayed value is other than “00”.  
→ Go to [adjustment procedure](#)
- Press [Paper Set] to release the paper presser.
- Insert the adjustment jig (0.4) from the paper insertion opening, and set it to the position shown in [Figure 5-69](#), then press the [Paper Set] button.
- Check that “00” is displayed on the Control Panel.  
Carry out the adjustment if the displayed value is other than “00”.  
→ Go to [adjustment procedure](#)
- Press [Paper Set] to release the paper presser.
- Insert the adjustment jig (0.5) from the paper insertion opening, and set it to the position shown in [Figure 5-70](#), then press the [Paper Set] button.
- Check that “10” is displayed on the Control Panel.  
Carry out the adjustment if the displayed value is other than “10”.  
→ Go to [adjustment procedure](#)
- Press [Paper Set] to release the paper presser.
- Insert the adjustment jig (0.8) from the paper insertion opening, and set it to the position shown in [Figure 5-69](#), then press the [Paper Set] button.
- Check that “10” is displayed on the Control Panel.  
Carry out the adjustment if the displayed value is other than “10”.  
→ Go to [adjustment procedure](#)
- Press [Paper Set] to release the paper presser.
- Insert the adjustment jig (0.9) from the paper insertion opening, and set it to the position shown in [Figure 5-69](#), then press the [Paper Set] button.

19. Check that “11” is displayed on the Control Panel.  
Carry out the adjustment if the displayed value is other than “11”.  
→ Go to [adjustment procedure](#)
20. Press [Paper Set] to release the paper presser.
21. Check that “01” is displayed on the Control Panel while releasing the paper set.  
Carry out the adjustment if the displayed value is other than “01”.  
→ Go to [adjustment procedure](#)
22. After all the checking and adjustment, confirm all the values again.

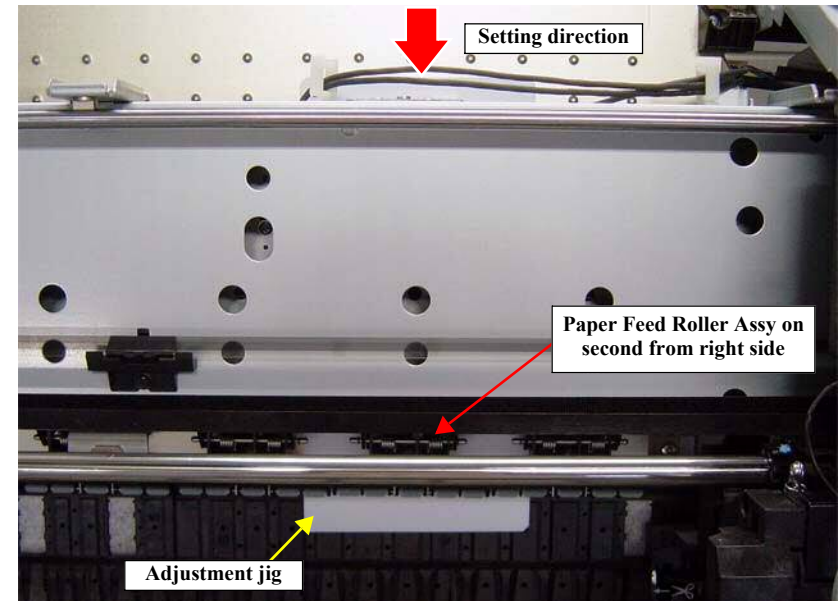


Figure 5-69. Position for the thickness tool (0.4/0.8/0.9 in thickness)

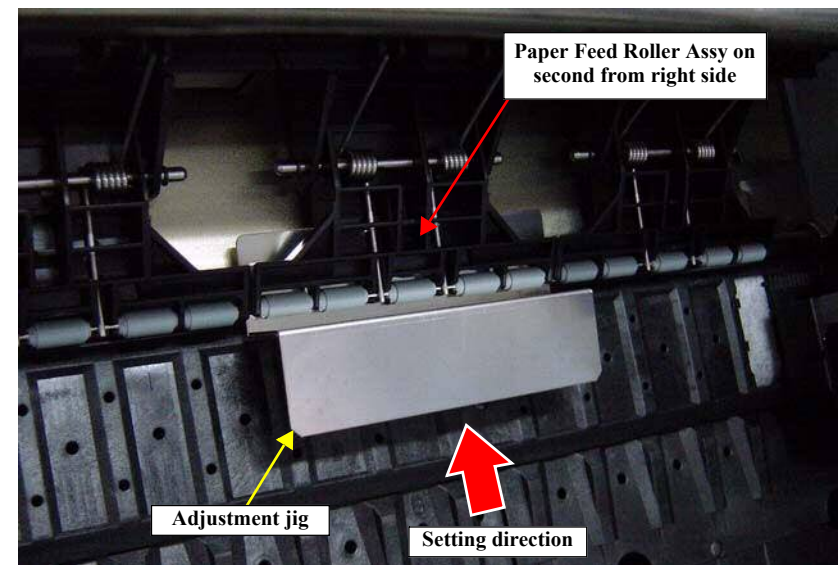


Figure 5-70. Position for the thickness tool (0.5 in thickness)

## ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE

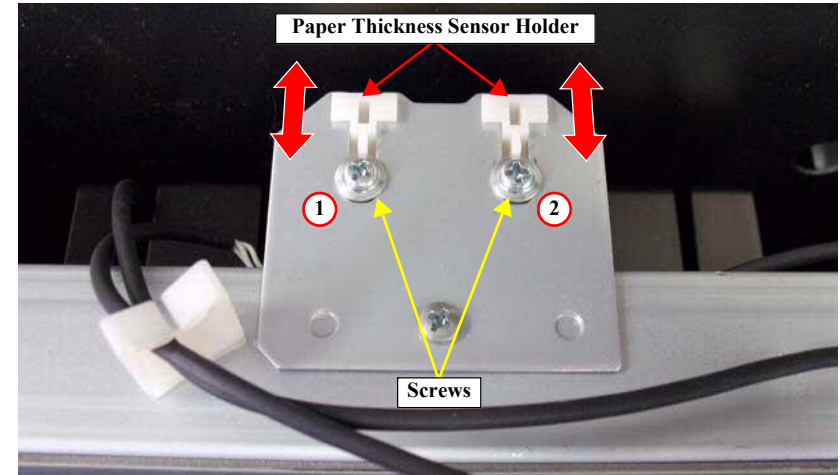
Adjust sensor (1) when using the paper thickness position tool 0.4/0.5, or when the paper pressure rollers are locked and no adjustment jigs are available. Adjust sensor (2) when using the paper thickness position tool 0.8/0.9, or when the paper pressure rollers are unlocked and no adjustment jigs are available.

1. Loosen the screws (1 each) that secure the Paper Thickness Sensor Holder.
2. Slide the Paper Thickness Sensor Holder back and forth while watching the value displayed on the panel. Stop the holder immediately after the target value is displayed.

**CHECK  
POINT**

**Slide the Paper Thickness Sensor Holder toward you to increase the value and slide it backward to decrease the value.**

3. Secure the holder by tightening the screw(s).



**Figure 5-71. Position Adjustment**



## 5.5.6 PF Encoder Sensor Adjustment

This allows you to adjust the position of the PF Encoder Sensor to the PF Scale.

---

### PROCEDURE

---

1. Remove the following parts in advance.
  - IC Cover L and IC Shaft Cover L
  - Maintenance Tank L (Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910/9890/9908 only)
  - Left Cover
2. Check the positional relation of the detector for the PF Encoder Sensor and PF Scale.
  - If the PF Scale is in the center of the detector of the PF Encoder Sensor:  
Go to [Step 5](#)
  - If the PF Scale is not in the center of the detector of the PF Encoder Sensor:  
Go to [Step 3](#)
3. Loosen the two screws that secure the PF Encoder Sensor Mounting Plate.
4. Move the plate and adjust the position of the sensor. Secure the screws after this adjustment, and return to [Step 2](#).
5. Install the removed parts.

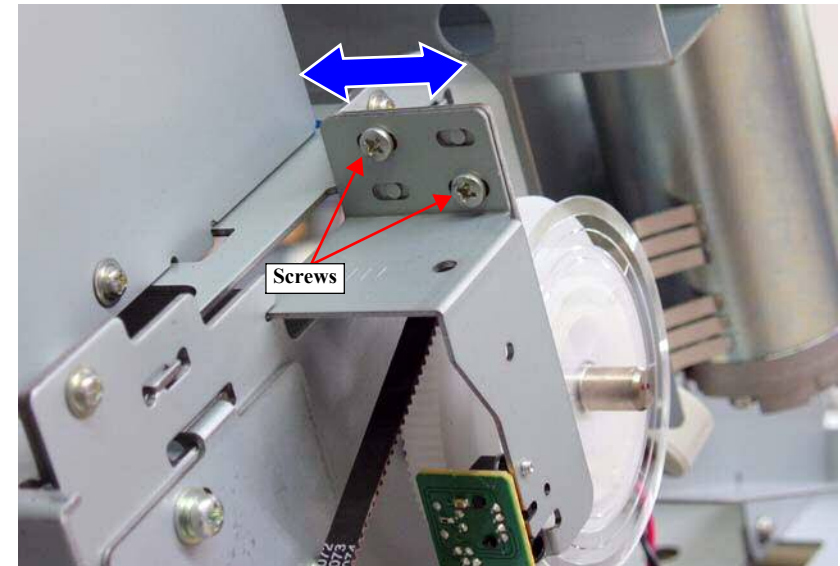


Figure 5-72. PF Encoder Sensor Adjustment

## 5.5.7 Rear Sensor AD Adjustment

This allows you to acquire AD values of the newly attached Rear Sensor to store them onto the Main Board as a standard for reading operation of the sensor.

### REQUIRED TOOL

- ☐ Standard Sheet (JETRAS JP-D300S)

### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **RearAD**.

#### CHECK POINT

Make sure to carry out procedure below without loading the standard sheet.

3. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Start** is displayed.  
Check if **Retry AD Adjust** is displayed on the Control Panel.
4. Press [Paper Source ◀] for several times and return to Top Menu.
5. Press [Paper Set] to release the paper presser.
6. Open the Front Cover (Middle).
7. Insert the Standard Sheet to the position shown in Figure 5-73 and press [Paper Set] to lock the paper presser.
8. Close the Front Cover (Middle).

*NOTE: A paper out error occurs at this time, but the adjustment can be continued.*

#### CAUTION



When executing procedure below, do not remove the external parts to acquire proper AD value.

9. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **RearAD** and press [OK] while **[Enter] Start** is displayed.  
Check if the 3 digits number is displayed on the Control Panel. If **Retry AD Adjust** is displayed, check if there is a defect (tears/rips, contamination, wrinkles) on the Standard Sheet, and execute obtaining AD value again.

#### CAUTION



If **Retry AD Adjust** is displayed again, the sensor is defective. Replace the sensor with a new one and carry out the adjustment again.

10. Press [Paper Source ◀] for several times and return to top menu.
11. Press [Paper Set] to release the paper presser.
12. Remove the Standard Sheet.
13. Turn the printer OFF.

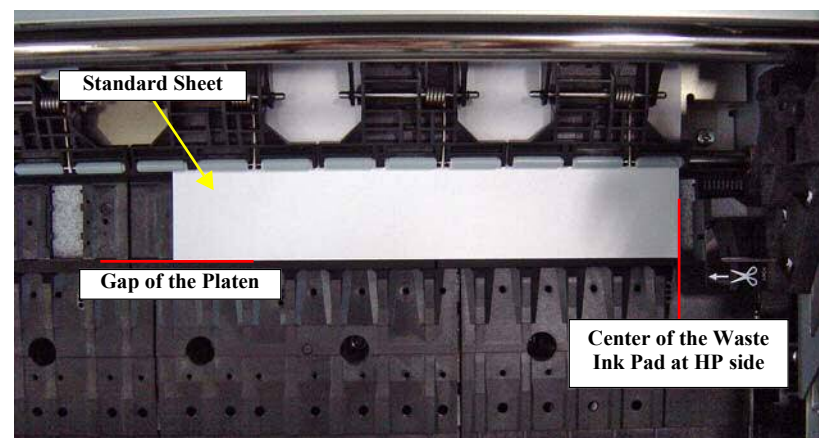


Figure 5-73. Position of the Standard Sheet

## 5.6 AID Related Adjustment

### 5.6.1 AID Function check

Use this to check that the AID function operates properly.



Before this check, make sure to enter the Head Rank ID (P. 374), and print the nozzle check pattern (P. 377) to confirm that ink is ejected normally.

#### PAPER USED

- ☐ Size:
  - Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908: 44 inches
  - Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/7890/7908: 24 inches
- ☐ Type:
  - Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908/7890/7908: Doubleweight Matte Paper
  - Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710: Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)

#### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Press [Pause] to release the paper presser.
3. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **AID Check**.
4. Press [OK] while [Enter] is displayed.  
The result will be displayed on the screen after a while.
5. Compare the result in the LCD with the items in the table below, and if abnormality is found on the result, carry out the corresponding remedy.

Fig.	Display	Cause	Remedy
A	OK	No error or abnormality.	
	NG	Dot missing occurs.	<input type="checkbox"/> Carry out a head cleaning. If the result is still NG after cleaning, replace the Ink System Unit with a new one. <input type="checkbox"/> Carry out a nozzle check. If dot missing occurs to a particular nozzle, replace the Printhead.
		AID Board failure	Replace the AID Board with a new one.
		Abnormal connection	<input type="checkbox"/> Check the connection from/to the Ink System Unit. <input type="checkbox"/> Replace the Ink System Unit.
B	OK	No error or abnormality.	
	NG	Dot missing occurs.	<input type="checkbox"/> Carry out a head cleaning. If the result is still NG after cleaning, replace the Ink System Unit with a new one. <input type="checkbox"/> Carry out a nozzle check. If dot missing occurs to a particular nozzle, replace the Printhead.
		AID Board failure	Replace the AID Board with a new one.
		Ink System Unit is not installed correctly.	Re-install the Ink System Unit.
		Noise from the Suction Fan	Disconnect the connector attached to the Suction Fan, and carry out the check again. If the value in G box is below 30, replace the Suction Fan with a new one.
C	OK	No error or abnormality.	
	NG	Result of E or F is NG.	See description of E or F.
D	OK	No error or abnormality.	
	NG	The voltage is leaking from the nozzle plate.	Check if the nozzle plate is contacting the Flushing Box due to some abnormality of the box. If so, replace the Ink System Unit.
		AID Board failure	Replace the AID Board with a new one.

Fig.	Display	Cause	Remedy
E	OK	No error or abnormality.	
	NG	Dot missing occurs.	<input type="checkbox"/> Carry out a head cleaning. If the result is still NG after cleaning, replace the Ink System Unit with a new one. <input type="checkbox"/> Carry out a nozzle check. If dot missing occurs to a particular nozzle, replace the Printhead.
		AID Board failure	Replace the AID Board with a new one.
		Ink System Unit is not installed correctly.	Re-install the Ink System Unit.
F	OK	No error or abnormality.	
	NG	AID Board failure	Replace the AID Board with a new one.
		Ink System Unit is not installed correctly.	Re-install the Ink System Unit.
		Noise from the Suction Fan	Disconnect the connector attached to the Suction Fan, and carry out the check again. If the value in G box is below 30, replace the Suction Fan with a new one.

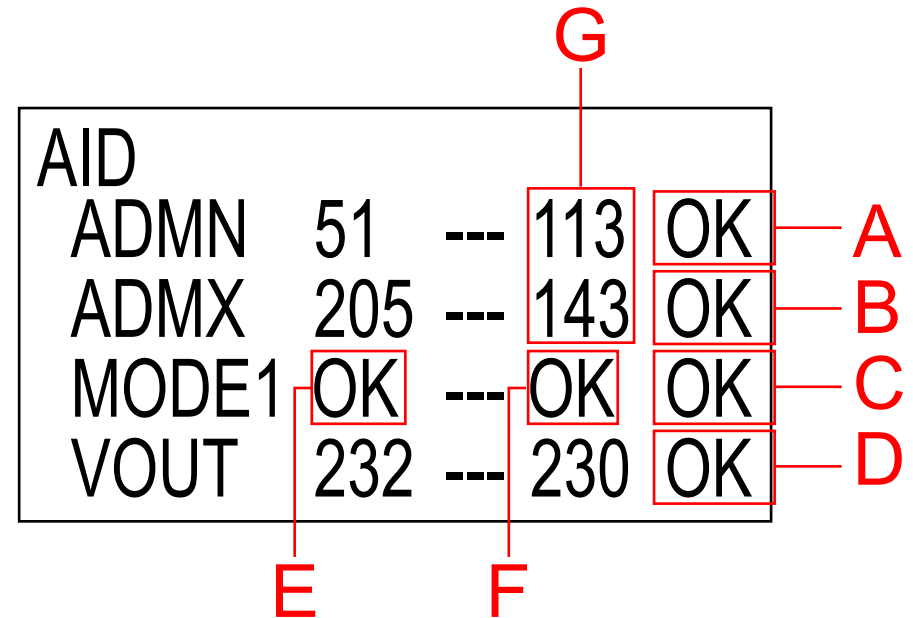


Figure 5-74. LCD Display Example

**CAUTION**

Sometimes the display of the judgment “NG” is displayed as “-”.

- NG: the result is abnormal.
- -: the check cannot be made. (the check is not available.)

Refer to the remedies and repeat checking and taking measures until all the display become “OK”.

## 5.7 Other Adjustment

### 5.7.1 Setting Destination

Save the destination to the Main Board.

#### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Start the Service Program.
3. Select the Printer Name.
4. Click the [ADJUSTMENTS (Individual)].
5. Click the [Back].
6. Click the [Exit] to shut down the program.
7. Turn the printer OFF.



**After clicking the [Exit] button, make sure to turn off the printer.  
The destination setting becomes valid after the printer is restarted.**

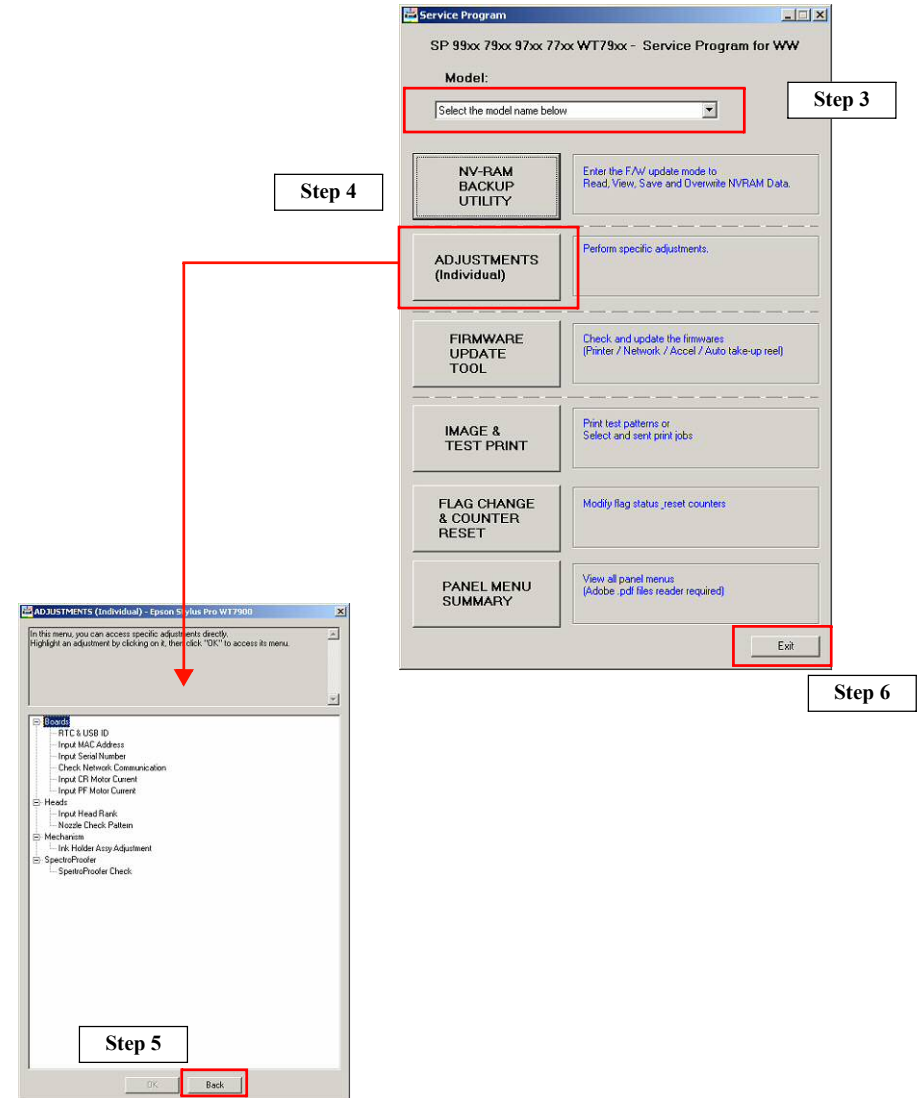


Figure 5-75. [Setting Destination] Screen

## 5.7.2 Input CR/PF Motor Current

Use this to write characteristics of the CR and PF motor to the Main Board. The appropriate current value is set to the motor for the constantly generated mechanical load.

### CAUTION



When performing this adjustment because of the replacement of the Main Board or the Power Supply Board, refer to "4.1.4 Cautions when replacing the Main Board Assy/Power Supply Board Assy" (p.171) and take extreme care in the combination of the replacing parts.

### PROCEDURE

1. Write down the values below from the motor characteristics label attached on the CR motor (or PF motor). Replace the CR motor (or PF motor), and assemble the printer.

- Fuka\_kc (Induced voltage [mV/rad/s])
- Fuka\_kd (Motor resistance [ $\Omega$ ])



Motor characteristic label

Figure 5-76. Motor characteristic label

2. Turn the printer ON.
3. Start the Service Program, and select **Input CR Motor Current** or **Input PF Motor Current** from **ADJUSTMENTS (INDIVIDUAL)**.
4. Enter the values that are written on **induced voltage** and **Motor resistance**.
5. Click [Write] button.
6. Click [Finish] button.
7. Turn the printer OFF.

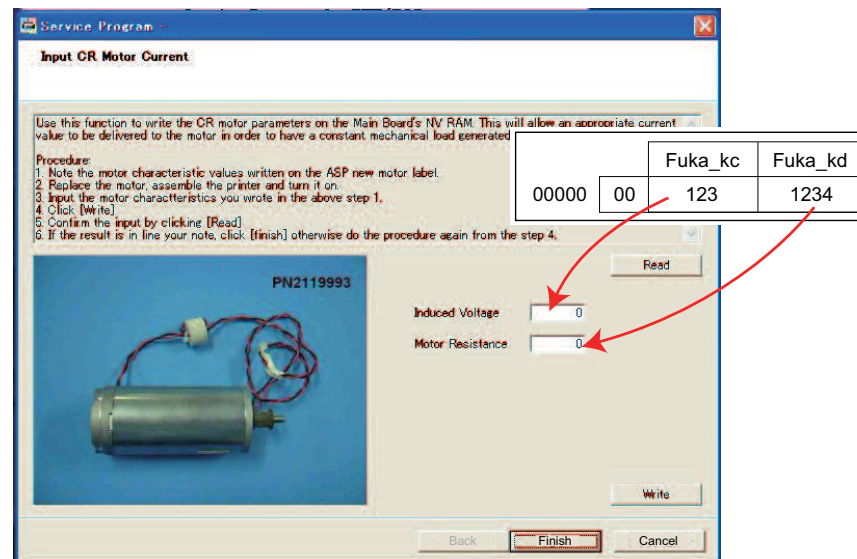


Figure 5-77. [Input CR Motor Current] Screen



### 5.7.3 RTC and USB ID

This allows you to reset the date and time of the RTC backup battery and to set the USB ID.

---

#### WRITING RTC PROCEDURE

---

1. Turn the printer ON.
2. Start the Service Program and select **RTC and USB ID** from **ADJUSTMENTS (INDIVIDUAL)**.
3. Verify or input the date and time.
4. Click [Write RTC] to input the RTC onto the NVRAM on the new Main Board.
5. Click [Next] to display a confirmation screen. The information written on the NVRAM is displayed on the screen. Confirm the information and click [OK].
6. Click [Finish].
7. Turn the printer OFF.

---

#### WRITING USB ID PROCEDURE

---

1. Turn the printer ON.
2. Start the Service Program and select **RTC and USB ID** from **ADJUSTMENTS (INDIVIDUAL)**.
3. Input the 10-digit serial number of the printer. USB ID is automatically created according to the serial number.
4. Click [Write USB ID] to input the USB ID onto the NVRAM on the new Main Board.
5. Click [Next] to display a confirmation screen. The information written on the NVRAM is displayed on the screen. Confirm the information and click [OK].
6. Click [Finish].
7. Turn the printer OFF.

#### CAUTION



If the printer is turned OFF and back ON after changing the USB ID, the computer (Windows) detects the USB port used to connect the printer as a new port and automatically copies the printer driver as xxxx (Printer Name). If you need to perform another adjustment using this tool, select the “copy x” driver next time.

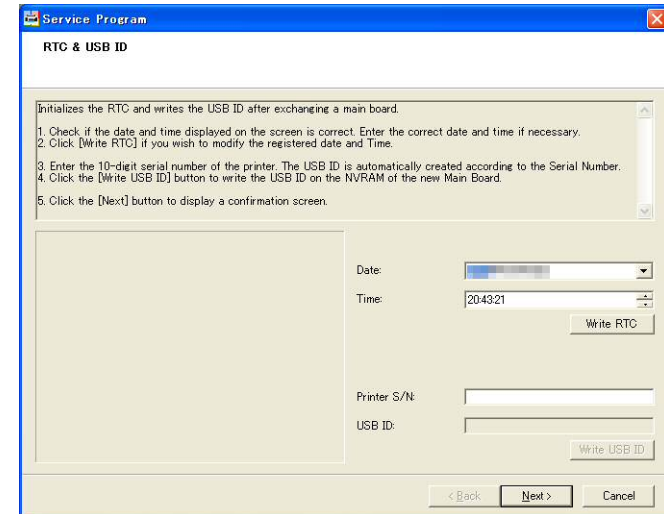


Figure 5-78. [RTC and USB ID] Screen



## 5.7.4 Installing Firmware

This section explains how to update the firmware. The firmware of this printer is written in the Flash ROM on the Main Board. If the main board is replaced or the firmware needs to be updated, follow the procedure below to write the firmware to the Flash ROM. Following four kinds of firmware are provided for the printer.

- Main firmware
- Network firmware
- Auto Take-up Reel Unit firmware
- Firmware for SpectroProofer
- EDM

### CAUTION



If the printer is turned ON for the first time after the main firmware is uploaded on the newly mounted Main Board which does not have any parameters at all, the printer automatically performs the initial ink charge. When the initial ink charge is not necessary, be sure to clear the flag. See "5.4.13 Initial Ink Charge Flag ON/OFF" (p.403).

### REQUIRED TOOL

- ☐ Firmware Update Tool
  - OS: Windows 2000, XP, VISTA
  - Interface: USB, Network

### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the power OFF of the printer and computer, and connect the printer to the computer with a USB or network cable.

### CHECK POINT



Select the interface to use for the update according to the kind of firmware as shown below.

- Main firmware: USB
- Network firmware: USB or Network
- Auto Take-up Reel Unit firmware: USB
- Firmware for SpectroProofer: USB
- EDM: Network

2. Turn the printer ON.

### CAUTION



Install the main firmware after starting the printer in the Firmware Update mode or in the Serviceman Mode. As for other firmware, install it in the Serviceman Mode or when the printer is in the "Ready" status.

- Firmware Update mode: Starting the printer while pressing down [Paper Source ◀] + [Paper Feed ▲] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [Menu ▶]
- Serviceman Mode: Starting the printer while pressing down [Menu ▶] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK]

3. Start the Service Program and select **Firmware Update Tool**.

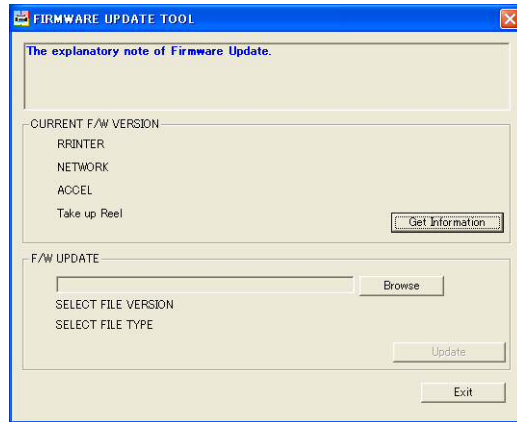


Figure 5-79. [Firmware Update Tool] Screen

4. Click [Browse], and select a firmware data.
5. Click [Update] to transfer the firmware data.



**When updating starts, a progress bar is displayed on the Control Panel of the printer. After updating is complete, the printer restarts automatically. Make sure not to turn off the printer until updating is complete. Otherwise, the printer may not operate normally afterward.**

6. When writing the firmware is completed, the printer should be rebooted.
7. Click [Exit].

## 5.7.5 Input Serial Number

Use this to write the printer serial number to the NVRAM, or to check the serial number written in the NVRAM.

---

### PROCEDURE

---

1. Turn the printer ON.
2. Start the Service Program, and select **Input serial number** from **ADJUSTMENTS (INDIVIDUAL)**.
3. Enter a 10-digit serial number of the printer, and click [Write].  
The serial number is written to the NVRAM on the Main Board.
4. When you click [Read], the serial number written on the NVRAM is automatically read and displayed on the screen.
5. Click [Finish].

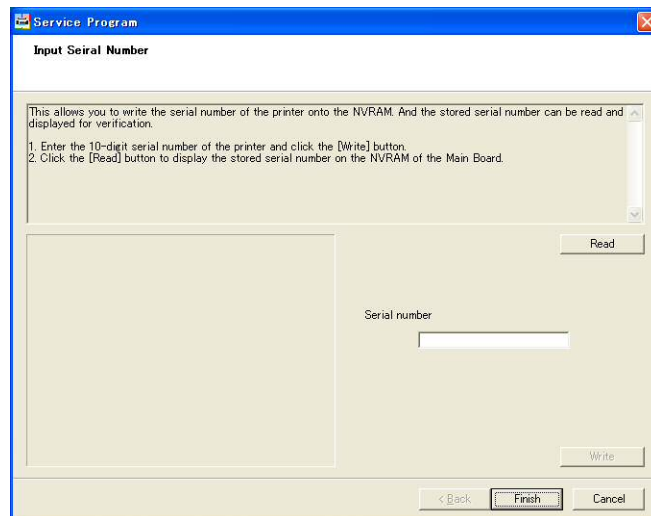


Figure 5-80. [Input Serial Number] Screen

## 5.7.6 Input MAC Address

The MAC address of this printer is recorded on the NVRAM of the Main Board. When replacing the board, make sure to write the MAC address to the new board as follows.

### PROCEDURE

1. Connect the printer and the computer with the USB cable and the network cable.
2. Turn the printer ON.
3. Start the Service Program, and select **Input MAC Address** from **ADJUSTMENTS (INDIVIDUAL)**.

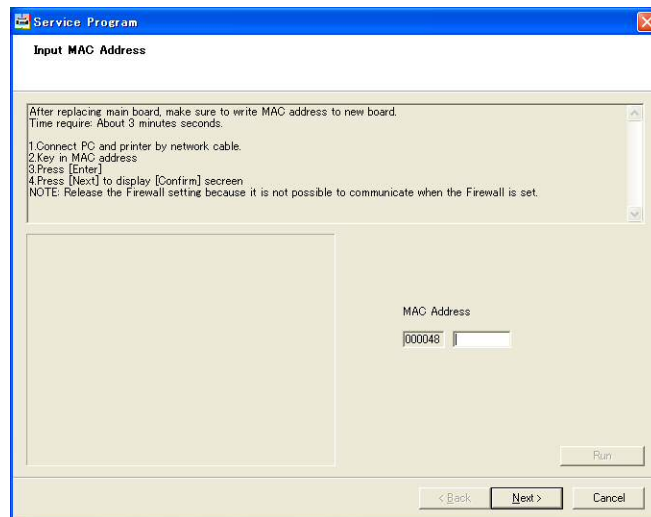


Figure 5-81. [Input MAC Address] Screen

4. Open the front cover and enter the MAC address written on the MAC address label attached inside the printer, then click the [Run] button.

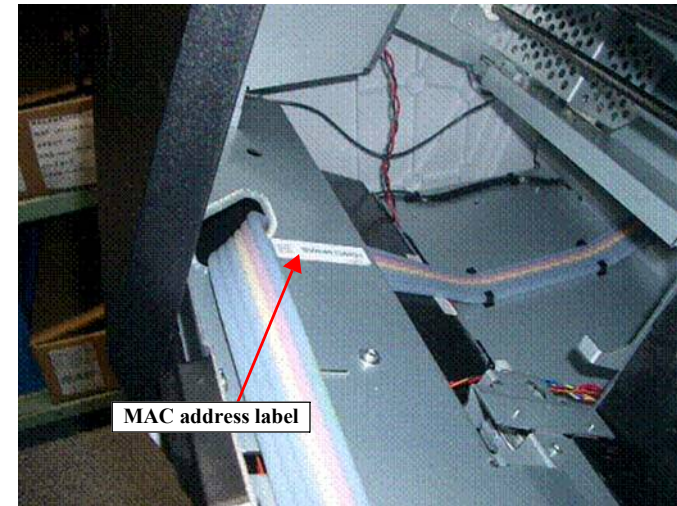


Figure 5-82. MAC address label



After the MAC address is set (after the [Run] button is pressed), it takes some time to restart the network F/W. Before performing the following procedure, make sure to wait about 90 seconds after the setting.

5. Click [Next] to display a confirmation screen. The information written on the NVRAM is displayed on the screen. Confirm the information and click [OK].
6. Click [Finish].

## 5.7.7 Cut Position Adjustment

Adjusts the paper position cut by the Auto Cutter.

### PAPER USED

- ☐ Size
  - Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908: 44 inches
  - Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/7890/7908: 24 inches
- ☐ Type: Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)

### STANDARD VALUE

- ☐  $15 \pm 0.3$  mm

### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Cutter** → **Printing**.
3. Press [OK] while **[Enter] Print** is displayed.  
The adjustment pattern will be printed.
4. Measure the distances of Home, Center and Full as shown in [Figure 5-83](#).
  - Within the standard value: Turn the printer OFF and finish the adjustment.
  - Out of the range: Go to [Step 5](#).
5. Select **Input**, and enter the maximum value and the minimum value in order among the values measured in [Step 4](#).
  - Maximum value: Select Cut Position Home and enter the value.
  - Minimum value: Select Cut Position Full and enter the value.
6. Return to [Step 2](#).

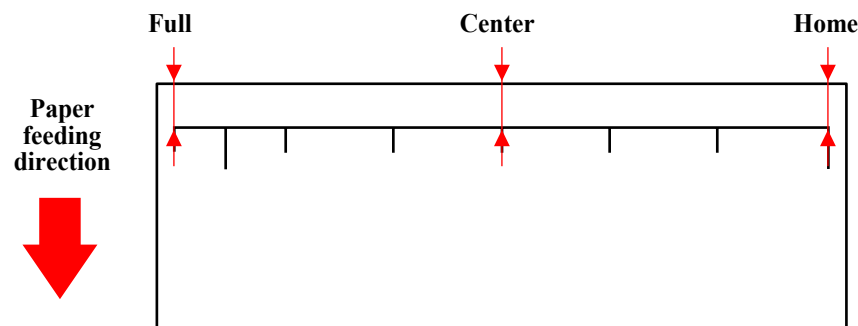


Figure 5-83. Adjustment Pattern

## 5.7.8 Ink Holder Adjustment

Adjusts the necessary adjustment when replacing the Ink Cartridge Holder or the Ink Holder Board Assy.

---

### PROCEDURE

---

**CAUTION**

After replacing the Ink Cartridge Holder, do not insert the ink cartridges before doing the adjustment.

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Start the Service Program, and select **Ink Holder Adjustment** from **ADJUSTMENTS (INDIVIDUAL)**.
3. Click the **[Run]** button.

## 5.8 Clear Counters

Whenever the parts/units which have life counter are replaced, the corresponding life counter must be reset. This is important to replace those parts/units at the correct timing.

### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Start the Service Program and select a target Counter Reset menu.
3. Click [Run] to reset the counter.
4. Click [Finish].



Figure 5-84. [Clear Counter] Screen

Table 5-3. Clear Counter Menu List

		Replaced Part/Unit	Menu Name	Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910	Pro 7700/7710/9700/9710	Pro WT7900/WT7910
Printer		INK TUBE L/R	When replacing Ink tube	√	√	√
		Wiper Cleaner Assy	When replacing Wiper	√	√	√
		INK SYSTEM UNIT (PUMP MOTOR)	When replacing Wiper	√	√	√
			When replacing Pump motor	√	√	√
		PRESSURIZING UNIT	When replacing Pressurizing motor	√	√	√
		INK SELECT MOTOR	When replacing Ink select motor	√	—	√
		INK HOLDER L/R	When replacing Cartridge holder (Ink Pad)	√	√	√
		PF MOTOR	When replacing PF motor	√	√	√
		CR MOTOR	When replacing CR motor	√	√	√
		PRINTHEAD	When replacing Printhead	√	√	√
SpectroProofer		AID BOARD	When replacing AID board	√	√	√
		Carriage Motor	When replacing CR Motor	√	—	√
		Paper Pressing Motor	When replacing Paper Pressing Motor	√	—	√
		Cooling Fan 1/2	When replacing Fans	√	—	√



- Take care when using **All Counter Clear** in Counter Reset. This function clears all the counters such as the total operating time or the like including the parts to be replaced mentioned above.
- Make sure to perform a Clear Counter for the SpectroProofer after confirming that the SpectroProofer is in the ready state (when the LED is on). If it is performed in the OFF or sleep state, the counter is not reset correctly.
- Clear Counters can be done in Serviceman Mode though, make sure to perform this function using the Service Program.



## 5.9 Tests

### 5.9.1 Network Communication Check

Use this to check if the printer can communicate with the computer via a network.

#### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON.
2. Start the Service Program and select **Check Network Communication** menu.
3. Enter the IP address of the printer, and press [Run].  
When the network communication is available, a status sheet is printed automatically.
4. Click [Finish].

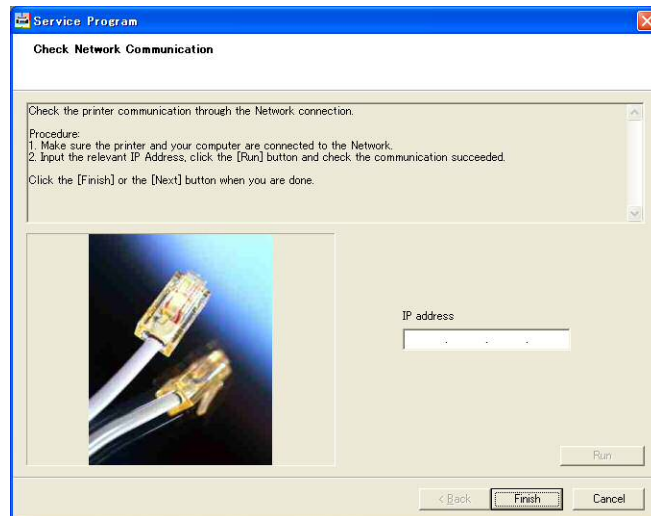


Figure 5-85. [Check Network Communication] Screen

### 5.9.2 Suction Fan Operation Check

This allows you to check if Suction Fan is operated correctly.

#### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Test** → **FAN**.
3. Select the fan you want to operate and press [Menu], the Suction Fan starts operating.
4. If you want to stop the fan, press [Pause/Reset].

*NOTE: If you want to change the suction power, change the value from **Paper (Duty)**.*

### 5.9.3 Color LCD Display Check

This allows you to check if there is any dot missing occurring or not on the Color LCD.

#### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **LCD RGB Check**.
3. Select each color (Red, Green, Blue) in order, and press [Menu ►].  
The selected color will be displayed on the LCD. Check if there is no dot missing.
4. To select the next color, press [Pause/Reset] or [Paper Source ◀].

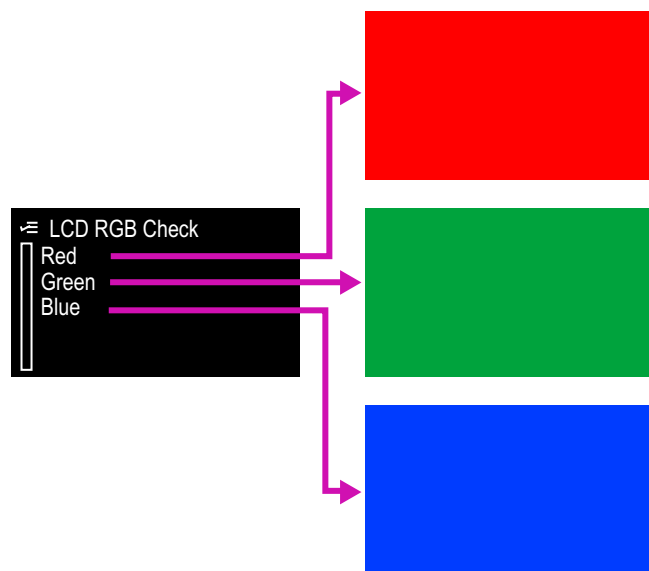


Figure 5-86. Color LCD Display Check

### 5.9.4 Button Operation Check

This allows you to check if buttons on the control panel function correctly.

#### PROCEDURE

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Panel Check**.
3. Press the button you want to check the function, and check if the button name you pressed matches the name on the Panel displayed.

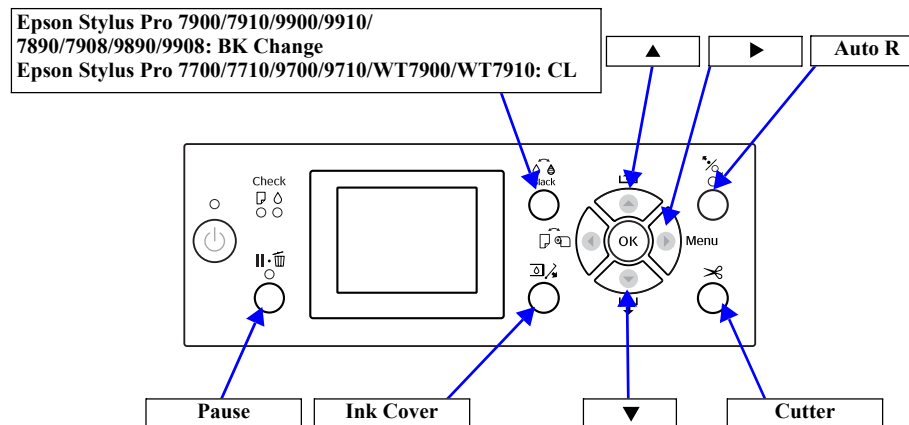


Figure 5-87. Button and Panel Display

## 5.9.5 Inspection of the SpectroProofer

This inspection checks each part and function of the SpectroProofer operates normally.

### INSPECTION CONTEXT



Each inspection item can be executed separately; however, it is recommended to execute them all in the order given in the table below.

Table 5-4. Check Items

Category	Order	Item	Content	Ref.
MOUNTER ONLY TESTS	1	Sensors check	Check if Mount Sensor and Thermistor are operating normally.	p. 431
	2	Fan check	Check if Cooling Fan is operating normally.	p. 433
	3	CR move	Check if Carriage is operating normally.	p. 434
MOUNTER + ILS TESTS	4	Calibration check	Check if calibration was successful at the start-up.	p. 436
	5	Paper holder check	Check if Paper Pressing Plate is operating normally.	p. 437
	6	Tile position check	Check if the white calibration tile is installed in the correct attachment location, or is contaminated.	p. 439
	7	Colorimetry CR Inspection	Check if the Color Measurement Device is operating normally in CR direction.	p. 440
	8	Colorimetry PF Inspection	Check if the Color Measurement Device is operating normally in PF direction.	p. 441
	9	Take-up Reel USB host check	Check if Auto Take-up Reel Unit and Mounter are correctly connected.	p. 442

Note : The program for this inspection is the English version only. The above table uses the names displayed on the program.

### PROCEDURE TO START THE INSPECTION PROGRAM

1. Start the Service Program.
2. Select **ADJUSTMENTS (Individual)**.
3. Select **Checking SpectroProofer**.
4. Click “RUN” to start the program. (The 24 or 44 inches version of the program is applied automatically according to the model selection of the main menu.)



- The OS supporting the inspection program are Windows 2000 and Windows XP only.
- If the red screen (NG screen) appears while inspecting, press [Alt] + [E] keys on the computer’s keyboard to return to the menu screen.
- Confirm that STATUS is **READY** on the start screen for each inspection. If it does not become **READY**, an error is occurring in the printer or the connection is faulty.
- Save the Service Program on the desktop or directly under the C drive. If the storage location is deep in the hierarchy, some program tools may not work correctly.



Figure 5-88. Inspection Program Start Screen

## MOUNTER ONLY TEST'S PROCEDURE

### □ Preparation

1. Start the inspection program.
2. Connect the mouter to the computer with a USB cable.
3. Turn on the mouter.

**NOTE:** When the computer recognizes the mouter a wizard screen is displayed, click on the [Cancel] button.

4. Select **MOUNTER ONLY TEST** from the inspection program.

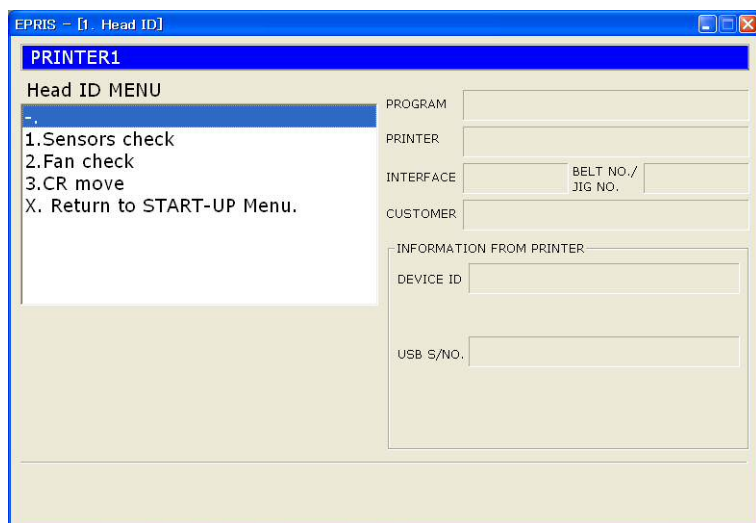


Figure 5-89. [MOUNTER ONLY TEST] Menu Screen

### □ Sensors check

1. Select **Sensors check** from the inspection program.
2. When the following screen appears, remove the mouter from the printer.  
(It is OK to detach the right side of the mouter from the printer slightly.)

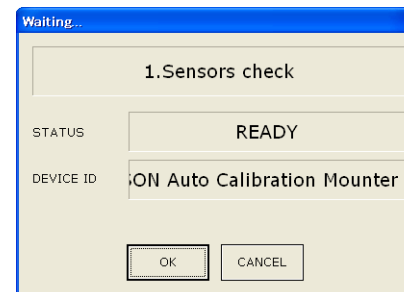


Figure 5-90. [Sensor check] Screen

3. Click on the [OK] button.
4. Confirm the blue screen appears, click on the [OK] button.

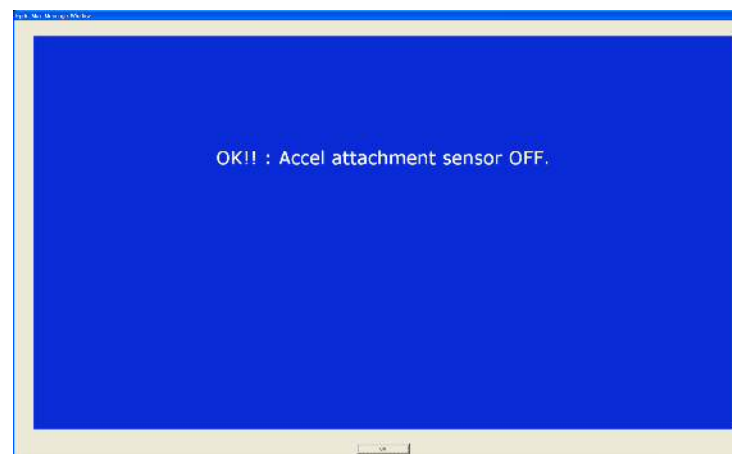


Figure 5-91. Confirmation Screen

- 5. Install the mounter on the printer.
- 6. Click on the [OK] button.

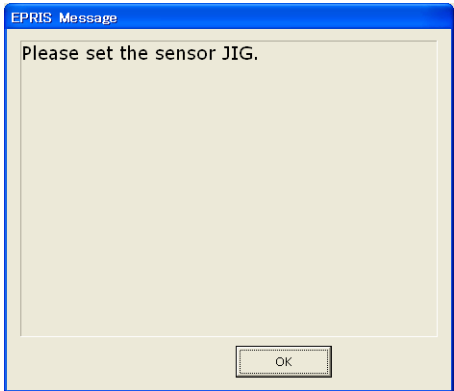


Figure 5-92. Mount Sensor Check Screen

- 7. Confirm the blue screen appears, click on the [OK] button.

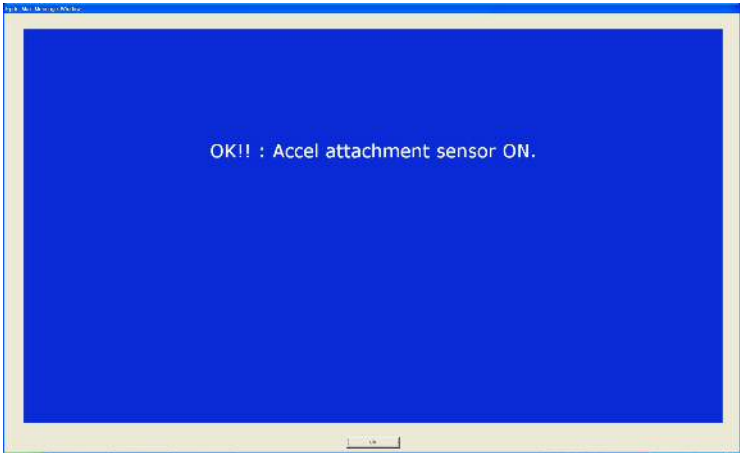


Figure 5-93. Confirmation Screen

- 8. Enter the temperature around the printer and click on the [OK] button.

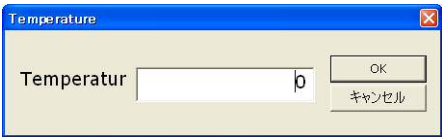


Figure 5-94. Temperature Input Screen

- 9. Take a measure according to the color of displayed screen.

Screen color	Description	Remedy
Blue	No abnormality Thermistor is operating normally.	Click on the [OK] button
Orange	Detected temperature differs slightly from entered temperature. Or the correct value cannot be obtained from the Thermistor.	Re-enter the temperature. If not improved, replace the Thermistor. (p. 337)
Yellow		
Red	Detected temperature differs considerably from entered temperature. The thermistor might be broken.	Replace the Thermistor. (p. 337)

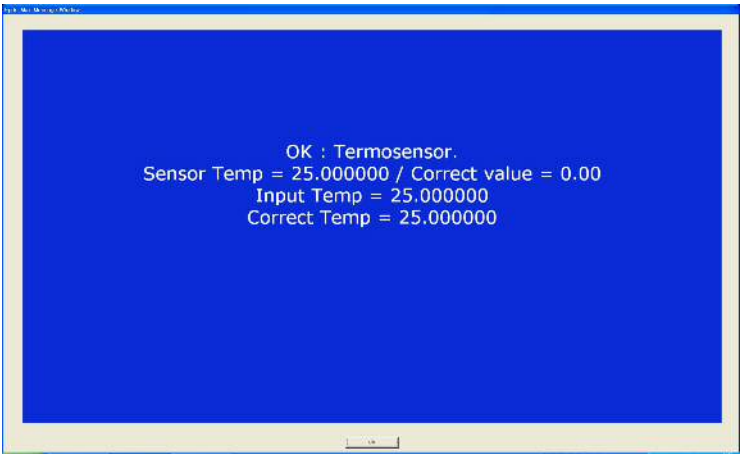


Figure 5-95. Confirmation Screen

❑ Fan Check

- 1. Select **Fan check**.
- 2. If the following screen appears, click on the [OK] button.

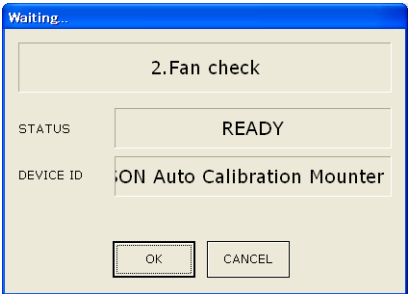


Figure 5-96. [Fan check] Screen

- 3. If the following screen appears, click on the [OK] button to start the Cooling Fans.

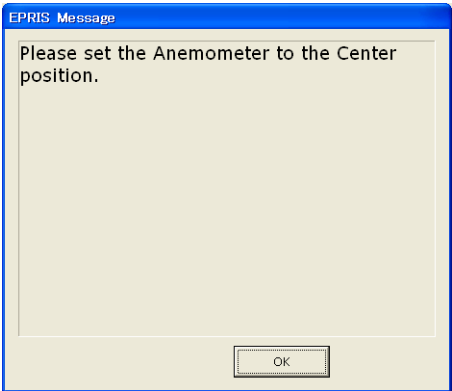


Figure 5-97. [Fan check] Start Screen

- 4. Confirm that the air blows normally by inserting your hand from the bottom of the mounter. The fans will operate for 30 seconds. If the air does not blow, follow the instruction below.

Symptom	Remedy
No air blows.	Check the connection of Cooling Fans.
	Replace the Cooling Fan(s). (p. 342, p. 342)
Abnormal noise	Check the Cooling Fan(s) for attachment of foreign material.



Figure 5-98. Check point for Cooling

- 5. If the following screen appears, click on the [OK] button.



Figure 5-99. Confirmation Screen

❑ CR move



Perform this check while the mounter is installed on the printer, or placed on a flat location.

- 1. Select **CR move**.
- 2. If the following screen appears, click on the [OK] button.  
The Paper Pressing Plate starts operating, then the carriage starts moving.



Figure 5-100. [CR move] Screen

- 3. Confirm that the carriage operates normally.  
If not, follow the instruction below.

Symptom	Remedy
Paper Pressing Plate does not operate.	Check the installation status of Paper Pressing Plate. (p. 349)
Carriage does not operate normally.	Check the drive transmission path of the Carriage Motor, and if any abnormality is found, correct it.
	Check the status of the Carriage Motor, and if any abnormality is found, correct it. (p. 347)
	Check the status of the timing belt, and if any abnormality is found, correct it.
	Check the status of the CR HP Sensor, and if any abnormality is found, correct it. (p. 336)

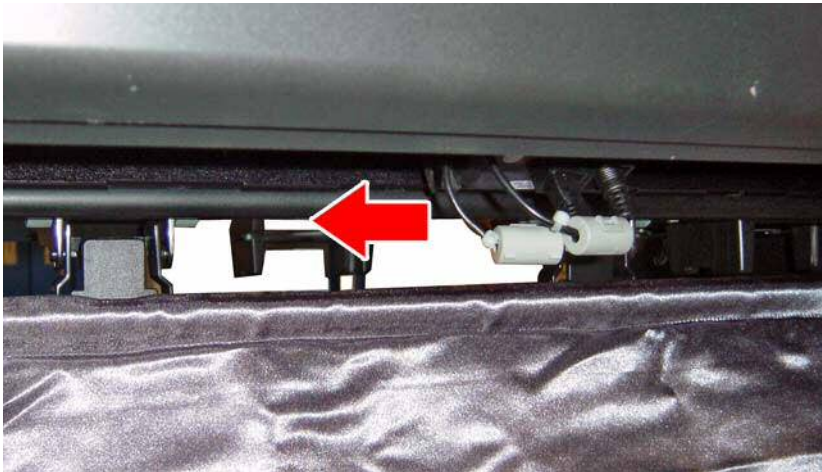


Figure 5-101. Carriage Operation Check



## MOUNTER + ILS TEST PROCEDURE

### □ Preparation

1. Start the inspection program.
2. Install the Color Measurement Device, the white calibration tile holder, and the black backing.
3. Connect the Color Measurement Device to the printer with a USB cable.
4. Connect the printer to the computer with a USB cable.
5. Turn on the mounter.
6. Turn on the printer.
7. Wait until the printer becomes ready to print.

**NOTE:** *If an error related to the Color Measurement Device is occurring, the message for it appears on the LCD of the control panel.*

8. Select **MOUNTER + ILS TESTS** from the inspection program.

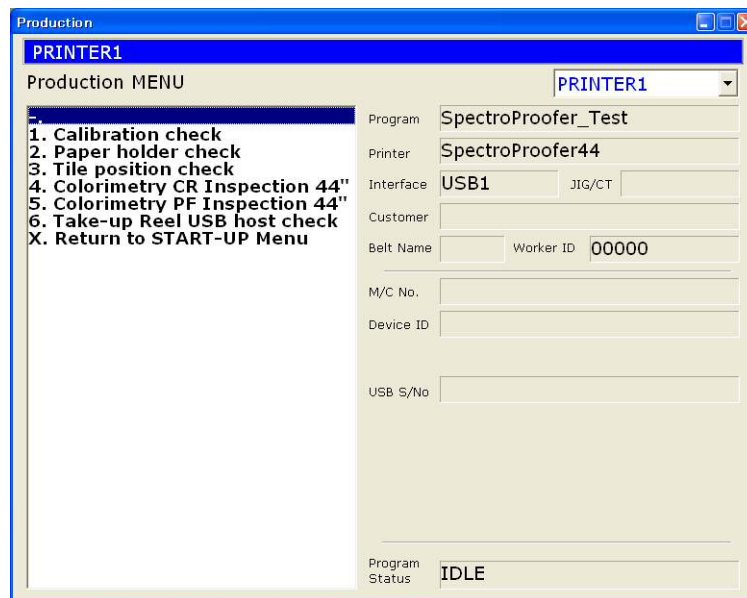


Figure 5-102. [MOUNTER + ILS] Menu Screen

❑ Calibration check

1. Select **Calibration check**.
2. If the following screen appears, click on the [OK] button.

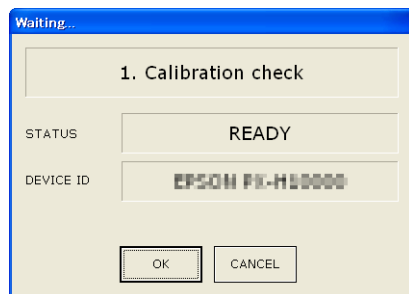


Figure 5-103. [Calibration check] Screen

3. Take a measure according to the color of displayed screen.

Screen color	Description	Remedy
Blue	No abnormality Operating normally.	Click on the [OK] button.
Red	White calibration tile failure	Install the white calibration tile holder to the correct attachment location. If the tile is contaminated, clean it. If the cleaning does not improve it, replace the white calibration tile holder.
	Color Measurement Device connection error	Check the connection, and if any abnormality found, correct it.
	Lamp failure of Color Measurement Device	If the lamp does not light, replace the Color Measurement Device
	Color Measurement Device failure	Replace the Color Measurement Device.
	Carriage failure	See the inspection item for CR move check. (p. 434)
	Backing failure	Install the backing.



After taking the above measure, make sure to restart the printer before re-checking.

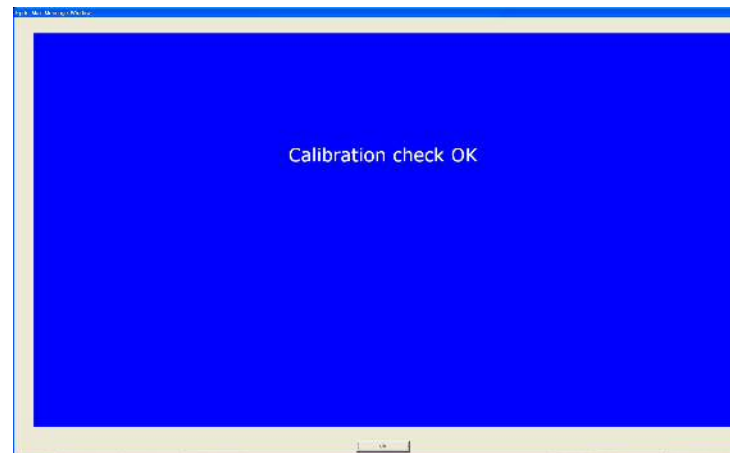


Figure 5-104. Confirmation Screen

- ❑ Paper holder check
1. Select **Paper holder check**.

2. If the following screen appears, click on the [OK] button.

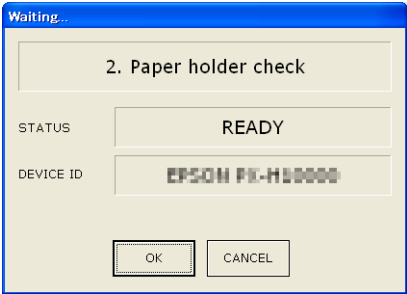


Figure 5-105. [Paper holder check] Screen

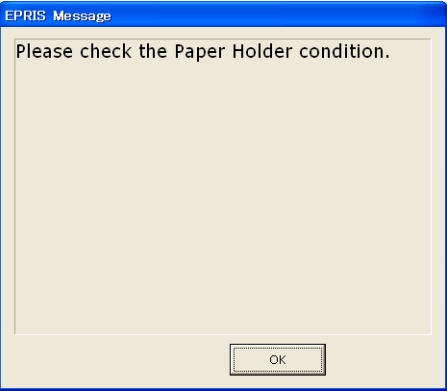


Figure 5-106. Confirmation Screen

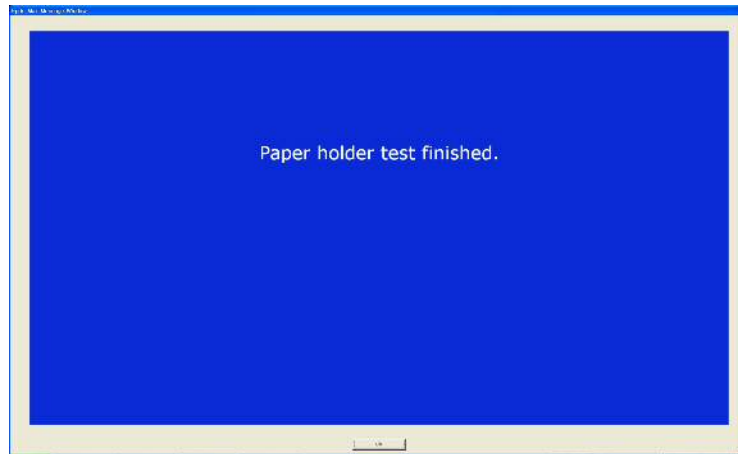
3. While the following screen is displayed, check the status of Paper Pressing Plate. Confirm the whole Paper Pressing Plate is touching the backing without any gap. If any abnormality is found, check the following.

Symptom	Remedy
Paper Pressing Plate does not operate.	Check the installation status of Paper Pressing Plate. (p. 349)
	Check the status of Paper Pressing Motor, and if any abnormality found, correct it.
	Check the status of Paper Pressing Encoder, and if any abnormality found, correct it.
	Check the Paper Pressing Plate Sensor, and if any abnormality found, correct it.
	Install the backing if not installed.



Figure 5-107. Check Point

4. Confirm the blue screen appears, click on the [OK] button.



**Figure 5-108. Confirmation Screen**

- ❑ Tile position check
1. Select **Tile position check**.

2. If the following screen appears, click on the [OK] button to start the check.

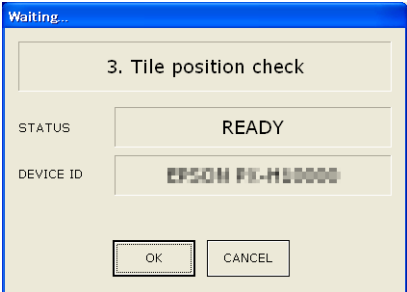


Figure 5-109. [Tile position check] Screen

3. Confirm the lamp of the Color Measurement Device lights. If not, replace the Color Measurement Device.

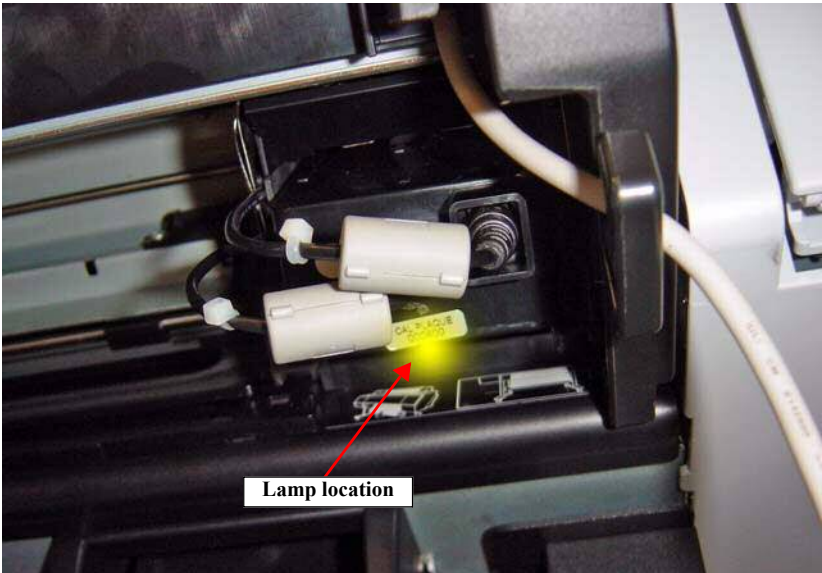


Figure 5-110. Check Point

4. Take a measure according to the color of displayed screen.

Screen color	Description	Remedy
Blue	No abnormality Operating normally.	Click on the [OK] button.
Red	White calibration tile failure	Install the white calibration tile holder to the correct attachment location. If the tile is contaminated, clean it. If the cleaning does not improve it, replace the white calibration tile holder.
	Color Measurement Device connection error	Check the connection, and if any abnormality is found, correct it.
	Lamp failure of Color Measurement Device	If the lamp does not light, replace the Color Measurement Device.
	Color Measurement Device failure	Replace the Color Measurement Device.
	Carriage failure	See the inspection item for CR move check. (p. 434)

Note : Five points on the tile are sensed in this inspection. Even one point of them cannot be sensed correctly, an error occurs.



Figure 5-111. Confirmation Screen

□ Colorimetry CR Inspection



**Use the black backing for this inspection. If the white backing is used, the colorimetry check cannot be performed correctly.**

1. Set the following media to the printer.
  - Size:
    - Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910/9890/9908: 44 inches
    - Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910: 24 inches
  - Type: Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)
2. Select **Colorimetry CR Inspection**.
3. If the following screen appears, click on the [OK] button to print the pattern and calibration automatically.

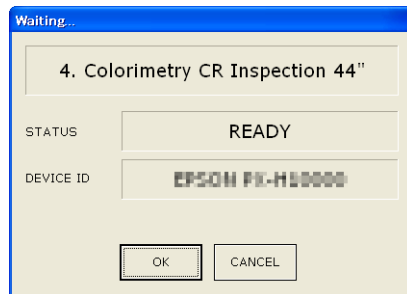


Figure 5-112. [Colorimetry CR Inspection] Screen

4. Take a measure according to the color of displayed screen.

Screen color	Description	Remedy
Blue	No abnormality Operating normally.	Click on the [OK] button.
Red	Media error	Check if the media is contaminated. If contaminated, replace the media.
	Backing error	Use the black backing.
	Color Measurement Device connection error	Check the connection, and if any abnormality is found, correct it.
	Lamp failure of Color Measurement Device	If the lamp does not light, replace the Color Measurement Device.
	Color Measurement Device failure	Replace the Color Measurement Device.
	Carriage failure	See the inspection item for CR move check. (p. 434)

□ Colorimetry PF Inspection



**Use the black backing for this inspection. If the white backing is used, the colorimetry check cannot be performed correctly.**

1. Set the following media to the printer.
  - Size:
    - Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910/9890/9908: 44 inches
    - Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/WT7900/WT7910: 24 inches
  - Type: Premium Glossy Photo Paper (250)
2. Select **Colorimetry PF Inspection**.
3. If the following screen appears, click on the [OK] button to print the pattern and calibration automatically.

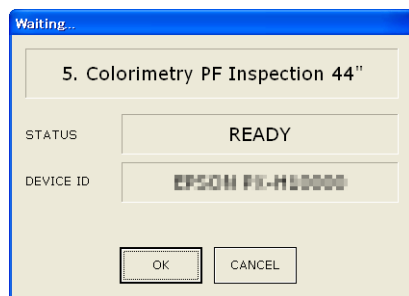


Figure 5-113. [Colorimetry PF Inspection] Screen

4. Take a measure according to the color of displayed screen.

Screen color	Description	Remedy
Blue	No abnormality Operating normally.	Click on the [OK] button.
Red	Media error	Check if the media is contaminated. If contaminated, replace the media.
	Backing error	Use the black backing.
	Color Measurement Device connection error	Check the connection, and if any abnormality is found, correct it.
	Setting error	Apply initial setting to the Color Measurement Device from the user menu.
	Lamp failure of Color Measurement Device	If the lamp does not light, replace the Color Measurement Device.
	Color Measurement Device failure	Replace the Color Measurement Device.
	Carriage failure	See the inspection item for CR move check. ( <a href="#">p. 434</a> )
	Paper feed error	Replace the defective part, and perform adjustments related to paper feeding.



- ❑ Take-up Reel USB host check
1. Select **Take-up Reel USB host check**.

2. If the following screen appears, click on the [OK] button.

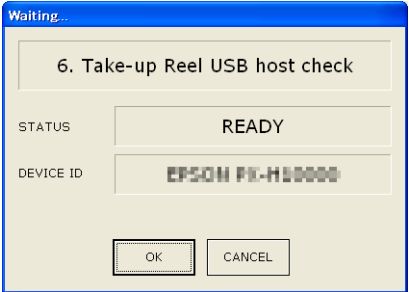


Figure 5-114. [Colorimetry CR Inspection] Screen

3. Take a measure according to the color of displayed screen.

Screen color	Description	Remedy
Blue	No abnormality Operating normally.	Click on the [OK] button.
Red	Connection failure	Check the destination. An error also occurs if a device other than Take-up Reel Unit is connected.
	Broken USB cable	Replace the USB cable.

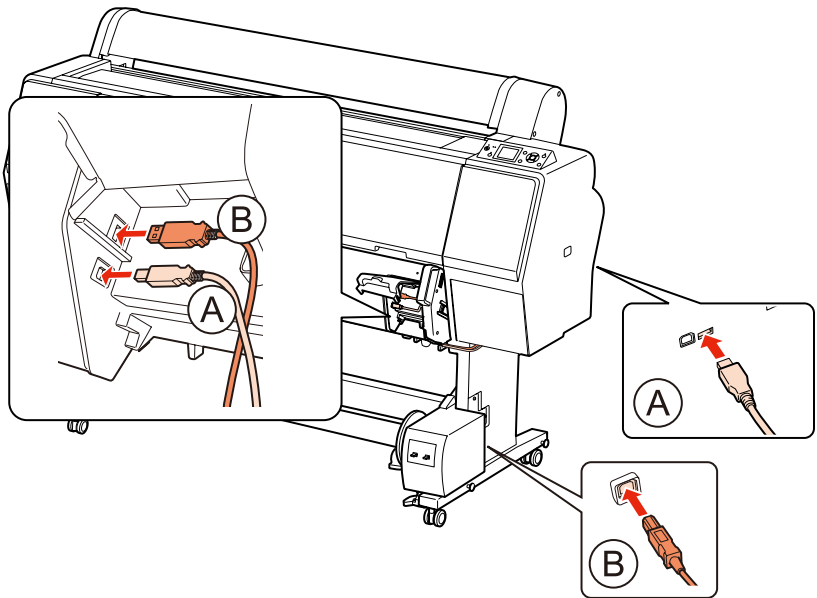


Figure 5-115. Connection between Auto Take-up Reel and Mounter

## 5.10 Check Adjustments Results

This allows you to print all the adjustment values.

### PAPER USED

- ☐ Size: A3
- ☐ Type: Plain Paper

### PROCEDURE

- Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
- Select **SELF TESTING** → **Mecha Adjustment** → **Print Adj. Variable** → **Printing**.
- Press [OK] while **[Enter] Print** is displayed.  
The adjustment values will be printed.

Model Name:EPSON FX-H10000																																																	
M/C No.: BC600000NQ8726004																				Serial No.:0002012044																													
F/W Version :H90218B																				Network F/W Version :1.11																													
RTC :00 00 09 12 04 37																				EDM :01																													
USB-ID :0002012044A9GID000																																																	
Head-ID :01 06 08 0D 00 00 06 05 2D 32 00 00 33 32 32 31 33 33 33 33 32 31 32 32 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00																																																	
00 00 37 32 34 33 32 33 32 31 32 31 07																																																	
Rear AD = 3A																				Fan Duty:Fan1 = FC% Fan2 = FC% Fan3 = FC%																													
Measurement																				Ave_Ti_CR = 009C										Ave_Ti_APG = 032B										Ave_Ti_PRS = 0577									
																				Ave_Ti_FF = 03A3										Ave_Ti_RLS = 041F										Ave_Ti_PUMP = 04CC									
																				Ave_Ti_CUT = 03F3										Ave_Ti_CUT2 = 0128										Ave_Ti_WIP = 038F									
																				AveSPD_Lc_ROLL = 00FF										MinSPD_Lc_ROLL = 00E0										Ave_Ti_CAP = 011D									
																				AveSPD_Hi_ROLL = 0369										MinSPD_Hi_ROLL = 0351																			
Sensor																				DA_standby = 003A										UVL_standby = 0098										Bot = 0050									
																				HM_TLU = 0B										HM_VHU = 0B										HM_XLU = FA									
																				HM_XHU = FA										HM_XHD = FA																			
IMS Level:A/D = E9																				D/A = 47										IMS Position:Ds = FF										Dm = F6									
CL PG = 04																				VOUTini : D1										dVave : 0F										Ds' = F4									
Uni-d VSD1 User(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J) BackUp(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J)																																																	
PG 0.8mm										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00																			
PG 1.2mm										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00																			
PG 1.6mm										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00																			
PG 2.1mm										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00																			
PG 2.6mm										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00										02 01 02 01 01 FF FE FE FD 00																			
Uni-d VSD3 User(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J) BackUp(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J)																																																	
PG 0.8mm										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00																			
PG 1.2mm										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00																			
PG 1.6mm										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00																			
PG 2.1mm										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00																			
PG 2.6mm										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00										03 04 03 02 03 00 FF 00 FF 00																			
Uni-d VSD4 User(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J) BackUp(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J)																																																	
PG 0.8mm										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00																			
PG 1.2mm										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00																			
PG 1.6mm										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00																			
PG 2.1mm										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00																			
PG 2.6mm										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00										04 03 03 02 02 01 00 FF FE FE 00																			
Uni-d VSD5 User(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J) BackUp(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J)																																																	
PG 0.8mm										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00																			
PG 1.2mm										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00																			
PG 1.6mm										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00																			
PG 2.1mm										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00																			
PG 2.6mm										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00										03 FF 02 01 01 FE FD FD FD 00																			
Bi-d VSD1 User(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J) BackUp(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J)																																																	
PG 0.8mm										FD FE FE FE FE FD 00 00 01										FD FE FE FE FE FD 00 00 01										FD FE FE FE FE FD 00 00 01																			
PG 1.2mm										0A 0B 0A 09 0A 0A 0B 0B 0C										0A 0B 0A 09 0A 0A 0B 0B 0C										0A 0B 0A 09 0A 0A 0B 0B 0C																			
PG 1.6mm										15 16 15 14 15 14 15 15 16										15 16 15 14 15 14 15 15 16										15 16 15 14 15 14 15 15 16																			
PG 2.1mm										23 24 23 22 23 21 22 22 25 23										23 24 23 22 23 21 22 22 25 23										23 24 23 22 23 21 22 22 25 23																			
PG 2.6mm										32 33 31 30 31 2E 2F 2F 30										32 33 31 30 31 2E 2F 2F 30										32 33 31 30 31 2E 2F 2F 30																			
Bi-d VSD3 User(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J) BackUp(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J)																																																	
PG 0.8mm										FA FB FB FB FB FB FB FB FC FC										FA FB FB FB FB FB FB FB FC FC										FA FB FB FB FB FB FB FB FC FC																			
PG 1.2mm										04 04 04 04 04 04 04 05 05										04 04 04 04 04 04 04 05 05										04 04 04 04 04 04 04 05 05																			
PG 1.6mm										0C 0D 0C 0C 0D 0D 0D 0D 0D										0C 0D 0C 0C 0D 0D 0D 0D 0D										0C 0D 0C 0C 0D 0D 0D 0D 0D																			
PG 2.1mm										17 18 17 17 18 18 18 18 18										17 18 17 17 18 18 18 18 18										17 18 17 17 18 18 18 18 18																			
PG 2.6mm										23 24 21 21 24 24 24 24 22										23 24 21 21 24 24 24 24 22										23 24 21 21 24 24 24 24 22																			
Bi-d VSD4 User(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J) BackUp(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J)																																																	
PG 0.8mm										FA FB FA FB FC FC FC FD FD FD										FA FB FA FB FC FC FC FC FD FD FD										FA FB FA FB FC FC FC FC FD FD FD																			
PG 1.2mm										03 04 03 03 04 04 05 05 05										03 04 03 03 04 04 05 05 05										03 04 03 03 04 04 05 05 05																			
PG 1.6mm										0B 0C 0B 0C 0C 0C 0C 0D 0D										0B 0C 0B 0C 0C 0C 0C 0D 0D										0B 0C 0B 0C 0C 0C 0C 0D 0D																			
PG 2.1mm										16 17 16 15 16 16 18 15 17										16 17 16 15 16 16 18 15 17										16 17 16 15 16 16 18 15 17																			
PG 2.6mm										20 21 20 1F 20 20 22 1F 21										20 21 20 1F 20 20 22 1F 21										20 21 20 1F 20 20 22 1F 21																			
Bi-d VSD5 User(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J) BackUp(A,B,C,D,E,F,G,H,I,J)																																																	
PG 0.8mm										FD FE FE FE FE FE FE FF 00 00 01										FD FE FE FE FE FE FE FE FF 00 00 01										FD FE FE FE FE FE FE FE FF 00 00 01																			
PG 1.2mm										09 0A 0A 0A 0A 0A 0B 0C 0B 0C										09 0A 0A 0A 0A 0A 0B 0C 0B 0C										09 0A 0A 0A 0A 0A 0B 0C 0B 0C																			
PG 1.6mm										15 15 15 15 16 15 16 17 16 17										15 15 15 15 16 15 16 17 16 17										15 15 15 15 16 15 16 17 16 17																			
PG 2.1mm										23 24 23 23 23 23 24 25 24 25										23 24 23 23 23 23 24 25 24 25										23 24 23 23 23 23 24 25 24 25																			
PG 2.6mm										33 32 32 32 34 32 33 34 32 33										33 32 32 32 34 32 33 34 32 33										33 32 32 32 34 32 33 34 32 33																			
Color ID Ver.02																																																	
Small										Middle										Large																													
VSD1 75 7C 7E 82 83 7C 7B 88 86 7D										75 7E 6F 82 82 7C 7B 81 86 81										77 82 6C 82 85 79 7B 84 81 82																													
VSD3 77 8B 79 82 80 78 84 89 82 83										75 7E 7B 85 83 7D 82 8B 87 81										79 7D 72 83 83 7C 7D 88 86 80																													
PF Adjust = 00002709 Cut Position = FFFFFE3B																																																	
Lower_PW										LV5 = 5A LV_Clip = 5A										DA_cnt = 82																													
TOP = 0B										Bottom = 50										Side = FA																													
Active Dumper 240cps Home to Full 300cps Home to Full																																																	
Gain										0 0 0 2 0 0 0 0										0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0										0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0																			
Phase										0 208 244 227 0 0 32 32 32 16										0 160 16 208 0 0 0 0 16 64 224																													
Mechs Tube Counter : 00004377 Ink Change Counter : 0020																																																	
T/S Pump Counter : 0003985A																																																	
Ink Hang Counter : 1=0002 2=0002 3=0001 4=0001 5=0000 6=0000 7=0001 8=0001 9=0001 10=0001 11=0001																																																	
Service Call : 3000 3000 3000 D155 IAS1 D155																																																	
Normal Error : 001D 0010 0010 0010 0010 0010																																																	

CHAPTER

6

# MAINTENANCE

## 6.1 Overview

This chapter provides information on how to maintain the printer in its optimum operating condition.

Basically, servicing on the printer should be performed on-site. Be sure to strictly observe the following precautions when servicing to avoid an accident or injury causing the user trouble.

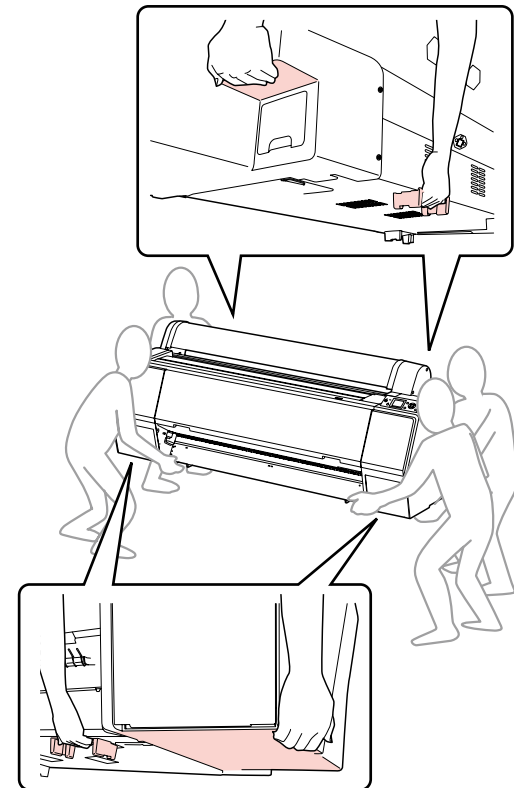


- The power switch is installed on the secondary side of the power circuit, so power is always supplied to the power supply circuit even when the switch is OFF unless the power cord is unplugged from the wall power outlet. Unless otherwise stated (for printing or operation checks), be sure to unplug the power cord from the wall outlet before disassembling or assembling the printer to prevent electric shock and damage to the circuit.
- The Front Sensor provided for detecting open/close status of the Printer Cover also acts as a safety interlock switch. Never disable the switch function to prevent possible injury.
- A lithium battery is mounted on the Main Board (control circuit) for memory backup. Be sure to observe the following precautions when handling the lithium battery.
  - Be careful not to short the electrode of the battery.
  - When replacing the battery, make sure to insert it in correct orientation.
  - Never heat the battery or plunge it into the flames.
  - Do not put the Main Board directly on conductive materials.
- Be extremely careful not to get the ink into your eye or let it come into contact with your skin. If it happens, wash out your eye or skin with water immediately. If any abnormality is found, contact a physician.

### CAUTION



- Ensure sufficient work space for servicing.
- Locate the printer on a stable and flat surface.
- Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910/9890/9908 weighs approx. 135kg, Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/7890/7908 weighs approx. 101kg, Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710 weighs approx. 120kg and Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M weighs approx. 90kg and Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 weighs approx. 100kg. When the printer needs to be moved, make sure to lift or carry the printer with four people, holding the printer by its holding positions as shown below.



- When using compressed air products; such as air duster, for cleaning during repair and maintenance, the use of such products containing flammable gas is prohibited.

**CAUTION**

- Be sure to spread a sheet of paper or cloth on the work space before removing any ink-path-related parts or components to keep the space from being soiled with leaked ink.
- Do not touch electrical circuit boards with bare hands as the elements on the board are so sensitive that they can be easily damaged by static electricity. If you have to handle the boards with bare hands, use static electricity discharge equipment such as anti-static wrist straps.
- When the printer has to be operated with the covers removed, take extra care not to get your fingers or clothes caught in moving parts such as the drive gear unit or carriage unit.
- The cutter blade is razor-sharp. Be especially careful when handling the cutter.
- Carbide blade employed as the cutter blade is hard but brittle. Be careful not to hit it against metal parts of the printer since it can be easily damaged.
- When the printer needs to be repacked for transportation after being used, make sure to follow the steps below after turning the power OFF.
  1. Check that the Printhead is capped properly.
  2. Remove all the ink cartridges.
  3. Repack the printer using the packaging box, cushioning materials and protective equipment indicated in the unpacking guide.

## 6.2 Setting Up/Storing the Printer

### 6.2.1 Setting Up

Make sure to open up the following installation room for the printer so as to maintain appropriate operation and usability.

**CAUTION**


**When installing the Epson Film Basket to Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910, more space is needed in front of the printer.**

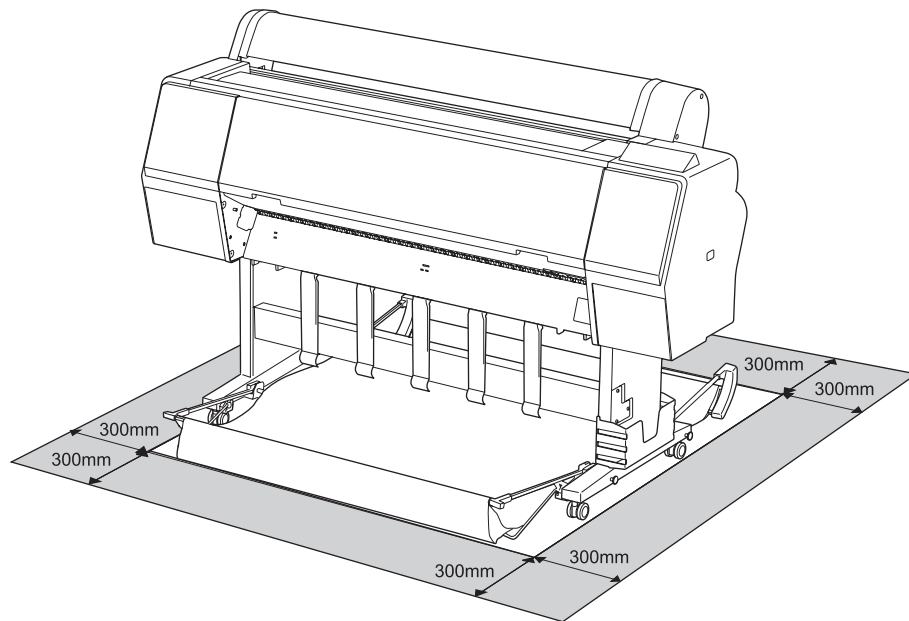


Figure 6-1. Installation Room Requirement

### 6.2.2 Storing the Printer and Cleaning the Ink Path

When storing the printer, make sure to leave the ink cartridges installed and place it on a horizontal surface, and also inform the user on the following cautions.

- ☐ When storing the printer for a long time
  - Print regularly to prevent clogging of the nozzles.
  - Turn on the printer at least once a month, and leave it on for a few minutes.
  - Leave all the ink cartridges installed in the slots.
  - Remove the paper.
- ☐ If it is not used for more than six months
 

Make sure to print a nozzle check pattern and check for clogging of the printhead. If any clogging can be seen, carry out head cleaning.

If it is not improved after performing head cleaning three times, carry out Power cleaning.

**CHECK POINT**


- When activating “Auto Nozzle Check” in the panel settings, the printer will carry out head cleaning automatically.
- After performing the head cleaning a few times, try turning off the printer and leaving it overnight or longer, so that the ink may dissolve and the clogging might be improved.

When storing the product for a long time, perform the cleaning of the ink path following the procedure below.



Cleaning of the ink path is made in the following procedure. For the time required for each process, see the following (The required time below is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910):

1. Charging cleaning fluid → discharging it (approx. 20min.)
2. Charging cleaning fluid → discharging it (approx. 40min.)

For 1, cleaning fluid is charged/discharged to all the rows simultaneously; for 2, it is charged/discharged to each row respectively.

---

## THINGS TO PREPARE

---

- ☐ Cleaning Cartridge
- ☐ Drain Cartridge



Make sure to use a brand-new Cleaning Cartridge and Maintenance Tank R (at the home side).

---

## PROCEDURE

---

1. Turn the printer ON in the Serviceman Mode.  
Turn the power ON while pressing [Menu ►] + [Paper Feed ▼] + [OK] simultaneously.
2. Select **SELF TESTING** → **Cleaning** → **ServicemanCL**.
3. Replace the cartridges following the messages displayed on the Control Panel.



After performing the cleaning, the initial charge flag is automatically set. The next time turning the power on, the initial ink charge sequence starts.



## 6.3 Transportation

**CAUTION**

- Make sure to keep the ink cartridge installed so as to prevent ink from leaking or the printhead from drying.
- Do not touch any parts other than those must be repaired to avoid any damage to the printer.

### PREPARATION FOR TRANSPORTATION

1. Turn off the printer, and remove all the cables such as the power cord after confirming the printer is off.
2. Remove the roll paper, roll media adapter and the paper basket if attached to the printer.
3. Remove the optional Auto Take-up Reel Unit or SpectroProofer Mounter if they are installed.
4. Open the front cover and install the protective material for fixing the printhead, and then close the cover.

### MOVING/TRANSPORTING THE PRINTER

When you transport the printer, be sure to repack the printer using the original box and packing materials.

**CAUTION**

- When moving or transporting the printer, keep it flat. Do not tilt it or turn it upside down to prevent ink from leaking.
- When moving or transporting the printer on a bumpy surface, make sure to lift the printer and carry it.
- After moving the printer with the stand attached, tighten all the screws securing the stand once again.

### SETTING UP THE PRINTER AFTER TRANSPORTATION

1. Make sure that the installation site is proper.
2. Connect the power cord, and turn the printer on.
3. Perform a nozzle check.
4. Perform the gap adjustment as explained on the user's guide.

## 6.4 Cleaning

### CLEANING BY FEEDING PAPER

When dirt on some roller is attached on the printed paper, make sure to clean the soiled roller by feeding/ejecting plain paper as follows.

1. Turn on the printer, and set the roll paper. (Set the roll paper of 44-inch width for Epson Stylus Pro 9700/9710/9900/9910/9890/9908, and 24-inch width for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/7900/7910/7890/7908.)
2. Press the [Paper Feed (Forward)] button to feed the paper.
3. Repeat feeding until the paper is not soiled with ink.

### CLEANING THE PLATEN

If the back of the printed paper is smeared, make sure to clean the platen as follows.

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Open the front cover and use a soft clean cloth to clean away any dust or dirt in the direction of the arrow.

If there is a serious problem of dirt, clean it using a soft, clean cloth dampened with a mild detergent. Then, wipe the platen with a dry, soft cloth.

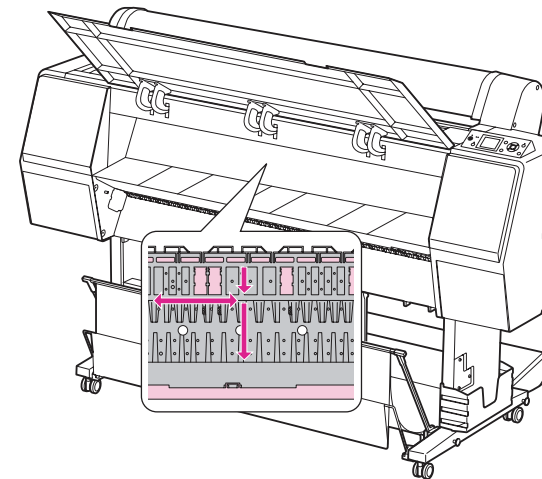


Figure 6-2. Cleaning the platen

**CAUTION**



Do not touch the feed rollers or waste ink pads (the parts marked with pink in Figure 6-2).

---

## CLEANING THE PLATEN'S SUCKING HOLES

---

If the paper feeding is unstable (if some floating or skewing of the paper can be seen), check the sucking holes on the platen for paper dust clogging there. If there are some clogging, clean the holes as follows.

1. Turn off the printer.
2. Push in the accumulated foreign material such as paper dust into the holes using something like a toothpick.

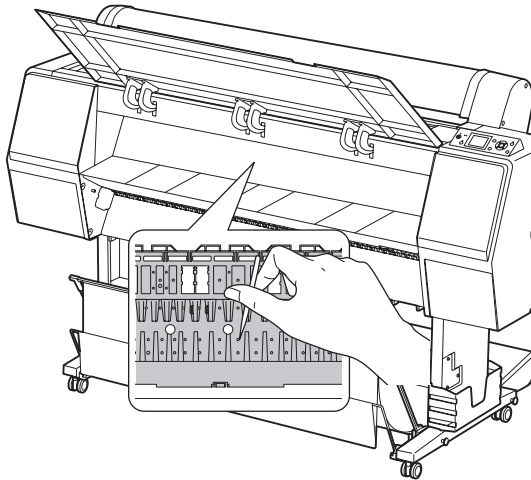


Figure 6-3. Cleaning the sucking holes

## 6.5 Lubrication

### LUBRICATION

This section describes necessary lubrication to maintain the functions and performance of this printer. Make sure to properly lubricate the parts/units specified in this section as necessary when replacing or maintaining them.

**CAUTION**


- **Make sure to perform the lubrication following the specified lubrication points, lubricants, and amount. Otherwise, the printer may not operate normally.**
- **When lubricating the originally installed parts, first wipe off the old lubricant completely.**

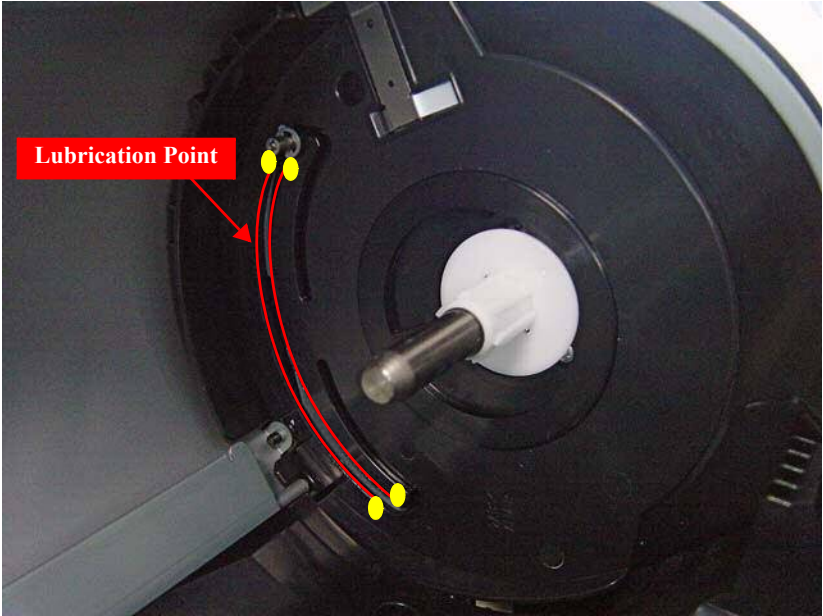
### LUBRICATION POINTS LIST

Lubrication No.	Corresponding Part	Name of Lubricant	Reference
1	Roll Cover Assy (home side)	Part name: G-45 Part code: 1033657	<a href="#">p.453</a>
2	Roll Cover Assy (full side)	Part name: G-45 Part code: 1033657	<a href="#">p.453</a>
3	Mounting Plate and Roll Cover Assy (home side)	Part name: G-45 Part code: 1033657	<a href="#">p.454</a>
4	Sub Frame L	Part name: G-45 Part code: 1033657	<a href="#">p.454</a>
5	Roll Cover Assy (full side)	Part name: G-45 Part code: 1033657	<a href="#">p.455</a>
6	Carriage Unit (PG Cam)	Part name: G-71 (BLUE) Part code: 1480655	<a href="#">p.455</a>
7	Carriage Unit (CR Slider)	Part name: G-84 Part code: 1516265	<a href="#">p.456</a>
8	Carriage Unit	Part name: G-84 Part code: 1516265	<a href="#">p.456</a>
9	CR Guide Shaft (Home)	Part name: G-84 Part code: 1516265	<a href="#">p.457</a>

Lubrication No.	Corresponding Part	Name of Lubricant	Reference
10	CR Guide Shaft (Full)	Part name: G-84 Part code: 1516265	<a href="#">p.457</a>
11	Roll Paper Guide Rail	Part name: G-74 Part code: 1409257	<a href="#">p.458</a>

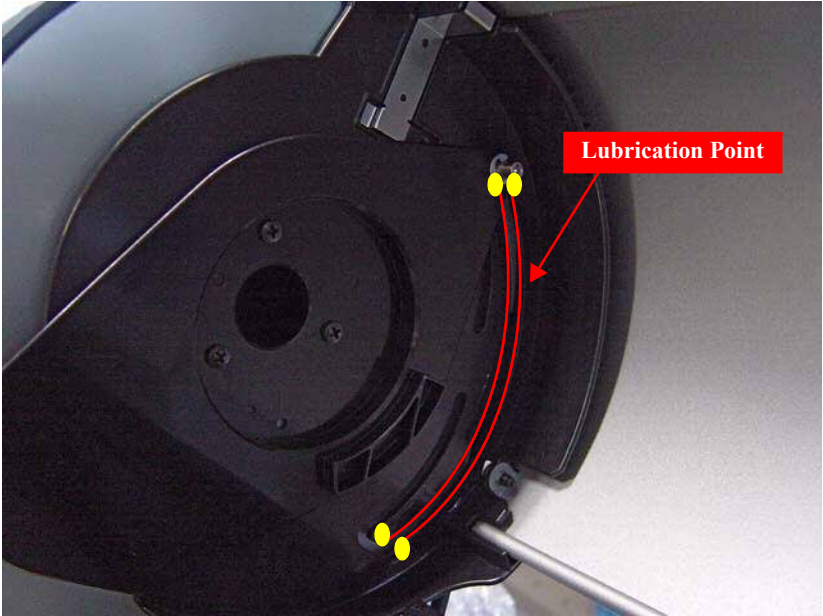
[Lubrication 1]

Part Name	Roll Cover Assy (home side)
Lubrication Point	On the sliding parts of the guide pin of the Roll Cover Assy
Lubricants	G-45
Amount	φ 2 x 3 mm x 4 points
Note	Apply the grease to the four points, and spread it evenly on the sliding parts of the guide pin (red part).



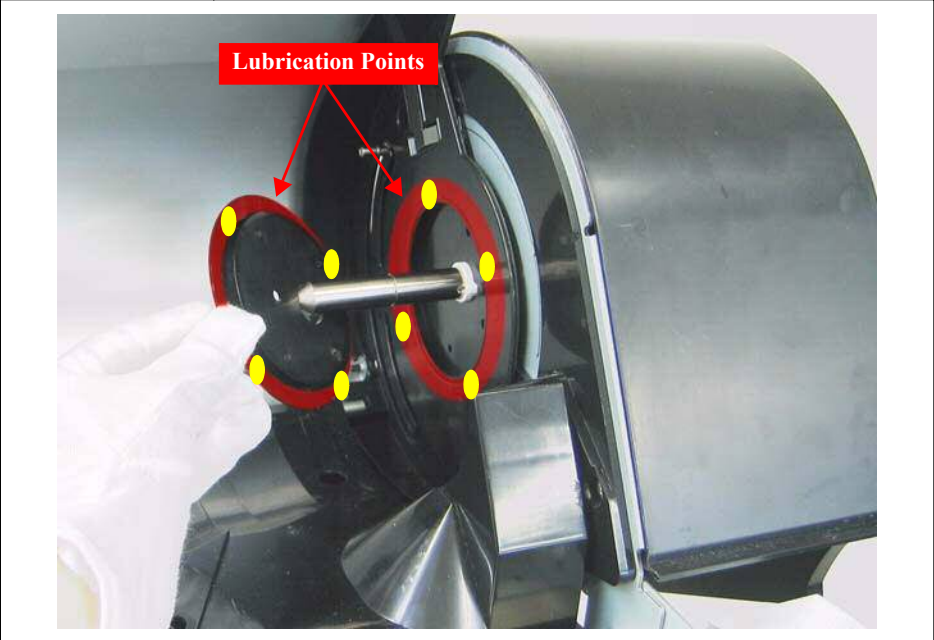
[Lubrication 2]

Part Name	Roll Cover Assy (full side)
Lubrication Point	On the sliding parts of the guide pin of the Roll Cover Assy
Lubricants	G-45
Amount	φ 2 x 3 mm x 4 points
Note	Apply the grease to the four points, and spread it evenly on the sliding part of the guide pin (red part).



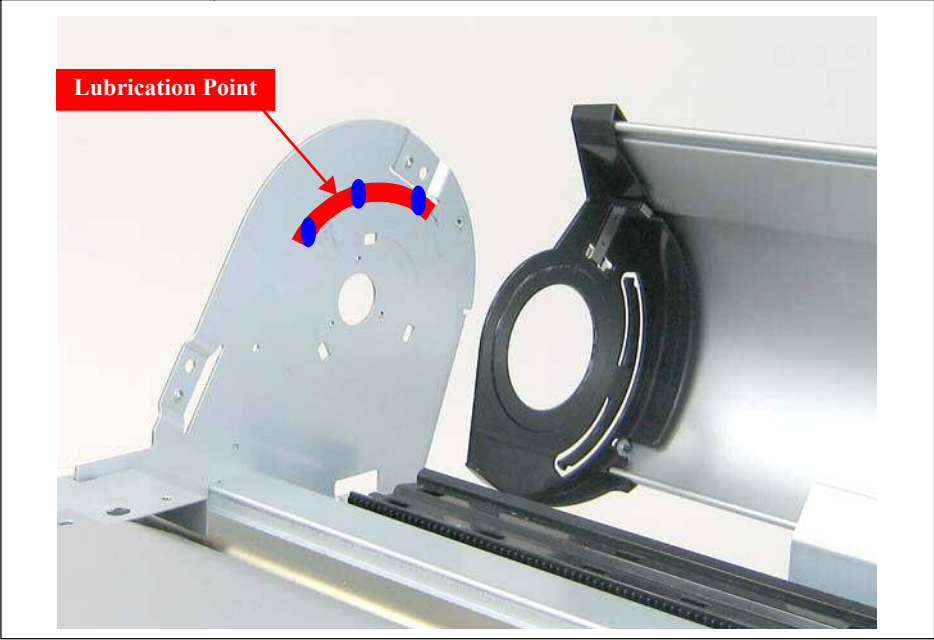
[Lubrication 3]

Part Name	Roll Cover Assy (home side)
Lubrication Point	On the contact points of the mounting plate with the Roll Cover Assy
Lubricants	G-45
Amount	φ 2 x 3 mm x 8 points
Note	Apply the grease to the eight points, and spread it evenly over the area (in red) shown below.



[Lubrication 4]

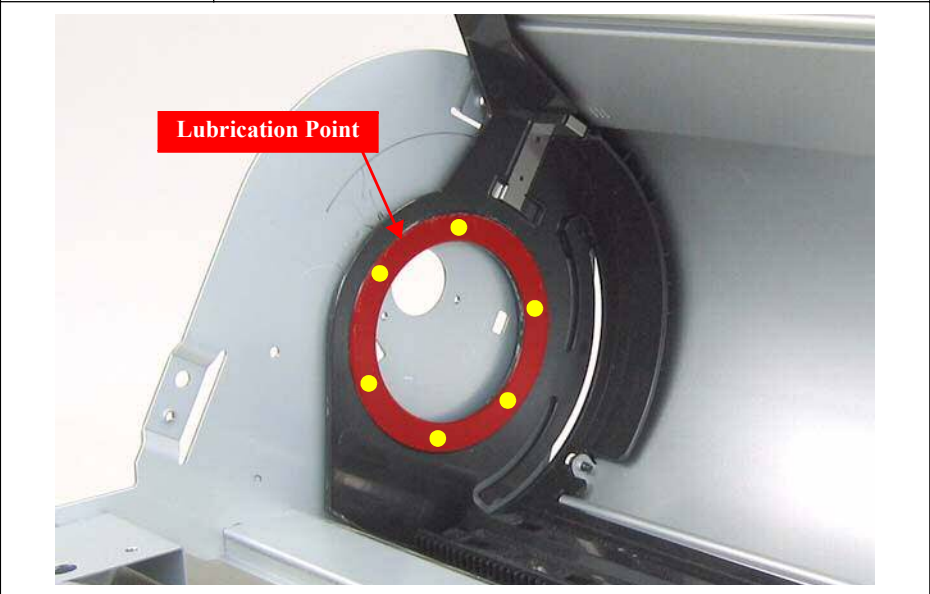
Part Name	Sub Frame L
Lubrication Point	On the contact point of the Sub Frame L with the Roll Cover Assy
Lubricants	G-45
Amount	φ 2 x 3 mm x 3 points
Note	Apply the grease to the three points, and spread it evenly over the area (in red) shown below.





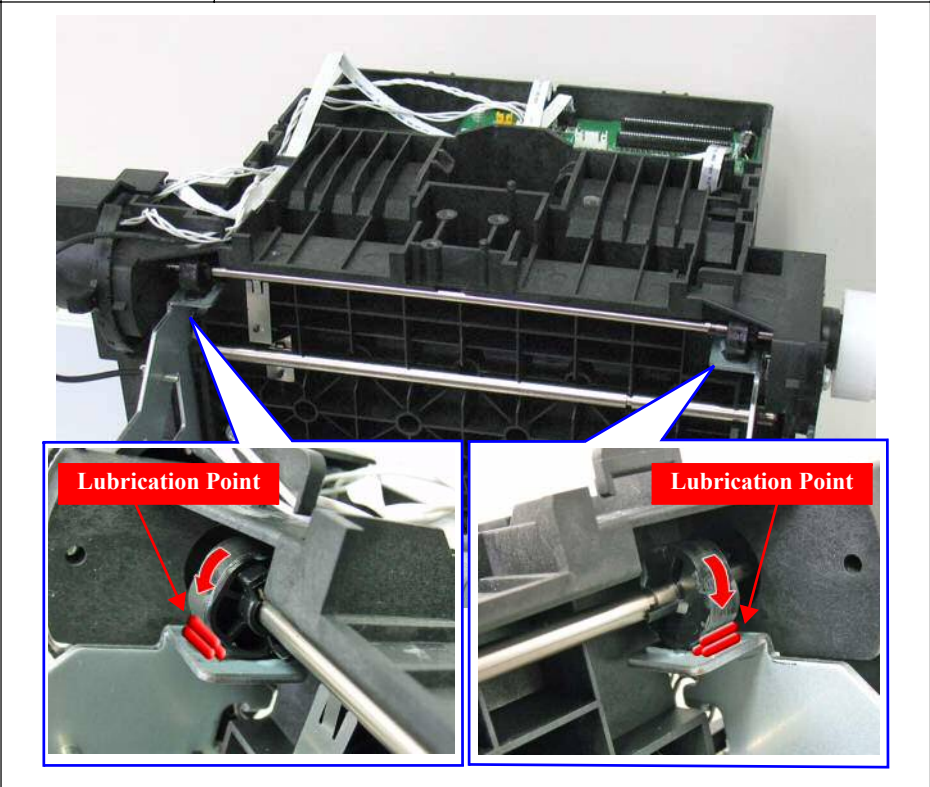
[Lubrication 5]

Part Name	Roll Cover Assy (full side)
Lubrication Point	On the contact point of the Roll Cover Assy with the mounting plate
Lubricants	G-45
Amount	φ 2 x 3 mm x 6 points
Note	Apply the grease to the six points, and spread it evenly over the area (in red) shown below.



[Lubrication 6]

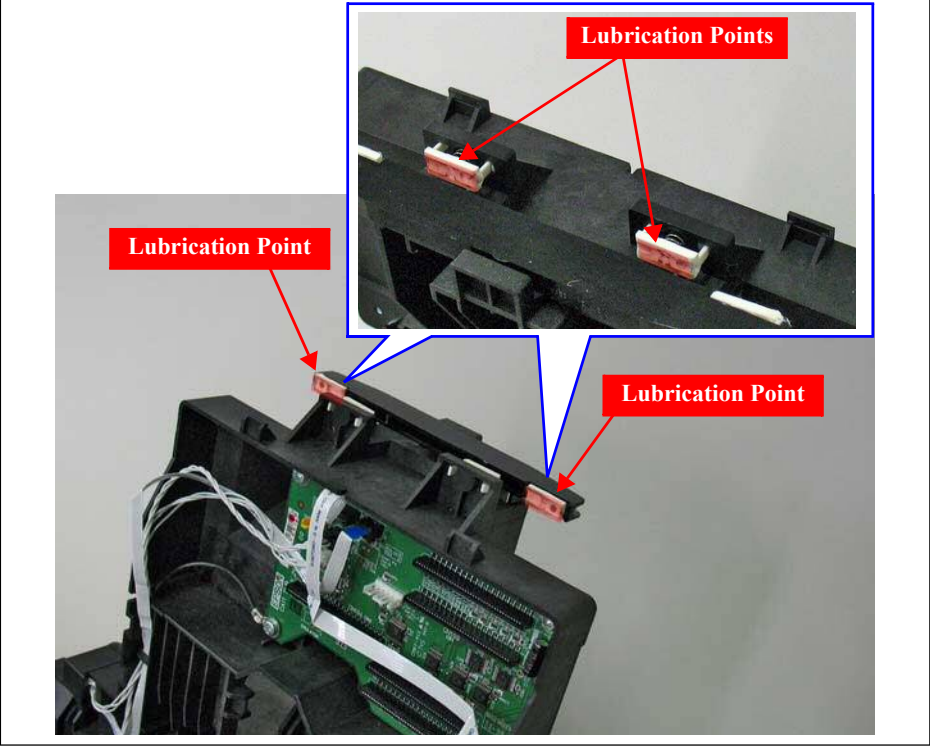
Part Name	Carriage Unit
Lubrication Point	On the contact point of the PG Cam with the Shield plate
Lubricants	G-71
Amount	φ 2 x 3 mm (3 times each)
Note	Apply the grease of the amount above three times each on the left and the right sides at the points. Be careful not to apply it out of the width of the cam.





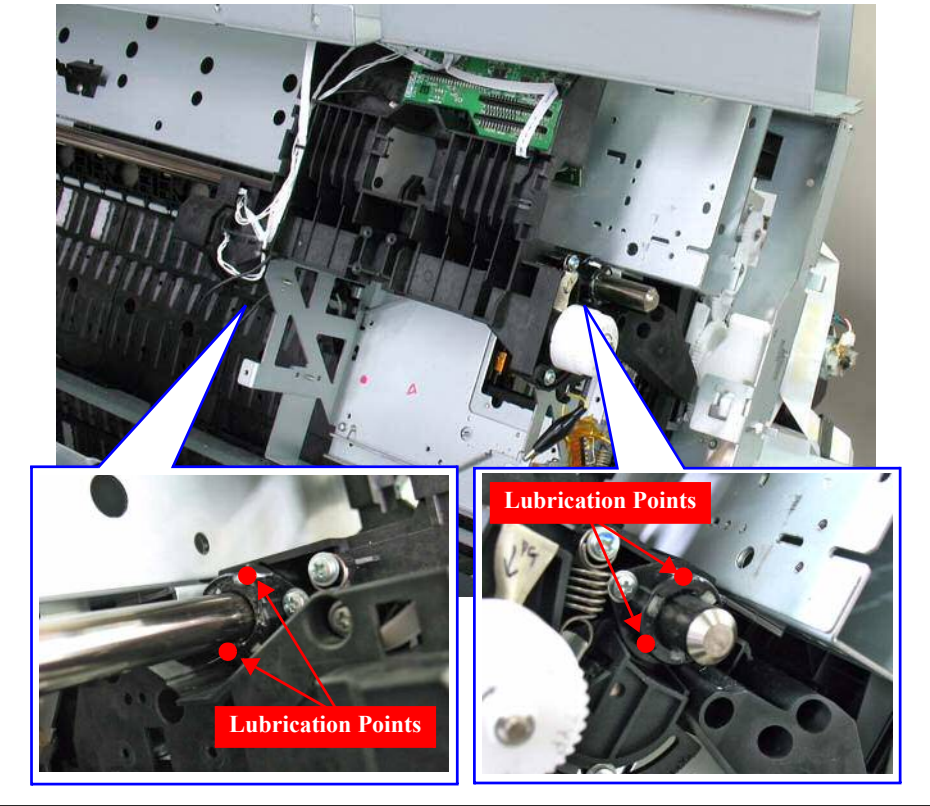
[Lubrication 7]

Part Name	Carriage Unit
Lubrication Point	On the contact point of the CR Slider with the CR Guide Shaft
Lubricants	G-84
Amount	φ 2 x 3 mm x 4 points
Note	Apply the grease to the points (in red) shown below.



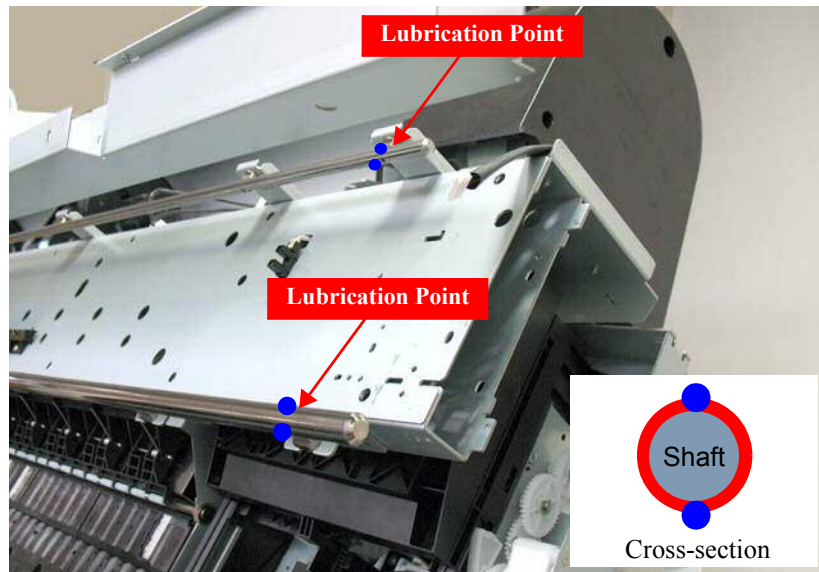
[Lubrication 8]

Part Name	Carriage Unit
Lubrication Point	The holes (4 places) at both ends of the CR Unit rear side
Lubricants	G-84
Amount	1.5 ± 0.1cc x 4 points (Right: x 2, Left: x 2)
Note	Apply the grease to the points (in red) shown below. Wipe off the grease after the lubrication so as not to let it flow.



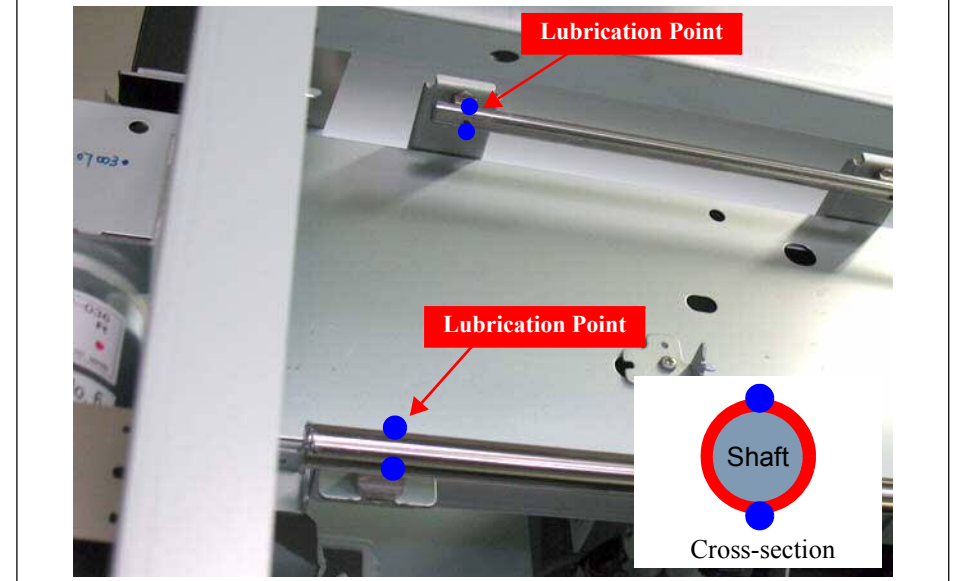
## [Lubrication 9]

Part Name	CR Guide Shaft
Lubrication Point	On the contact point of the CR Guide Shaft (home side) with the CR Unit
Lubricants	G-84
Amount	$\phi$ 2 x 3 mm x 4 points (Main shaft: x 2, Secondary shaft: x 2)
Note	Apply the grease to the points (two points on each shaft), and spread it evenly around the shaft (in red).



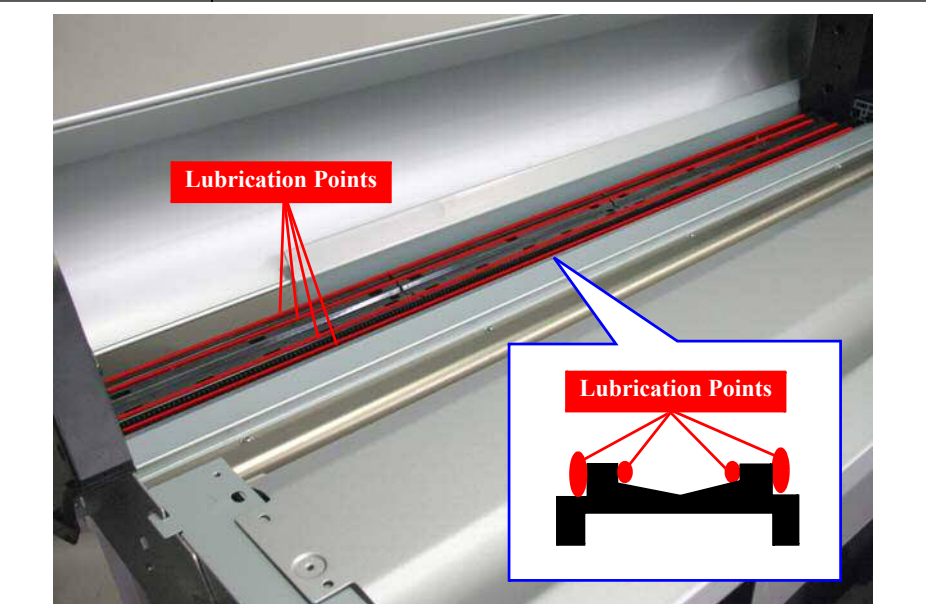
## [Lubrication 10]

Part Name	CR Guide Shaft
Lubrication Point	On the contact point of the CR Guide Shaft (full side) with the CR Unit
Lubricants	G-84
Amount	$\phi$ 2 x 3 mm x 4 points (Main shaft: x 2, Secondary shaft: x 2)
Note	Apply the grease to the points (two points on each shaft), and spread it evenly around the shaft (in red).



[Lubrication 11]

Part Name	Roll Paper Guide Rail
Lubrication Point	On the contact point of the Roll Paper Guide Rail with the Roll Paper Guide
Lubricants	G-74
Amount	Apply the grease all over the rail.
Note	Apply the grease to the four points, and spread it evenly over the areas (in red) shown below.



CHAPTER

7

## **Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M (Copy Mode)**

## 7.1 Overview

---

Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M offers the copy function with the scanner (GT-2500) connected. This chapter provides information on the copy function of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M. For the details about the GT-2500, refer to its service manual.

- ☐ Print specification of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M  
Refer to “[PRODUCT DESCRIPTION \(p15\)](#)”.
- ☐ Operating principles of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M  
Refer to “[OPERATING PRINCIPLES \(p94\)](#)”.
- ☐ Troubleshooting of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M  
Refer to “[TROUBLE SHOOTING \(p105\)](#)”.
- ☐ Disassembly & assembly of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M  
Refer to “[DISASSEMBLY & ASSEMBLY \(p166\)](#)”.
- ☐ Adjustment of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M  
Refer to “[ADJUSTMENT \(p351\)](#)”.
- ☐ Maintenance of Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M  
Refer to “[MAINTENANCE \(p444\)](#)”.

## 7.2 Basic Specifications

**CAUTION**


The copy function is not available under any of the following conditions.

- A scanner other than GT-2500 is connected.
- The scanner is not directly connected to the printer.
- The scanner is network-connected to the printer using the option card.

### 7.2.1 Scanning Specifications

Item	Specification
Setting of original document	Document glass or ADF
Document sizes	A4/ B5/A5/4x6*/letter
Scanning resolution	177 to 779 dpi
Copy mode	Color / Black & White (B&W) Draft / Normal / Fine
Copy density	Variable ( $\pm 2$ )
Interface	USB2.0 Hi-speed (Device)

Note \*: The ADF is not available for 4 x 6 sized paper.

## 7.3 Printing Specifications

**CAUTION**


Enlarged copy cannot be made on cut sheets.

Item	Specification
Copy size	A1 / B2 / A2 / A0* <sup>1</sup> / 17" width / 24" width
Print resolutions	360x720 dpi / 720x720 dpi / 720x1440 dpi
Copy paper	Roll paper
Copy paper type	<input type="checkbox"/> Plain paper <input type="checkbox"/> Matte paper: Singleweight Matte Paper, Doubleweight Matte Paper, Enhanced Matte Paper <input type="checkbox"/> Photo paper: Premium Glossy Photo Paper (170)
Multiple copies	Available (1 to 10 copies can be specified)* <sup>2</sup>
Borderless print	Available* <sup>3</sup> (only on A1, B2, 17" width, or 24" width paper)
Interface	USB2.0 Hi-speed (Device)

Note\*1 : A0 sized copy is available by copying half lengthwise of original on the size of A0-length by A2-width one by one, and sticking the two sheets together.

\*2 : Selection is limited when using the ADF.

\*3 : Borderless printing is not available on plain paper.

## 7.4 Copy Mode

### MODE SWITCHING

When the pause button is pressed while the printer is in the idle state, “GO TO PRINTER MODE”, “PAUSE CANCEL” and “JOB CANCEL” menus are displayed. Each press of the pause button switches between the three menus and pressing the OK button executes the selected menu (changes the mode).

#### CAUTION



- While the printer is in the print mode, the copy start button on the scanner is disabled. To use the copy function, the printer must be in the copy mode.
- The copy function is not available when the printer is not idling such as in an error state.

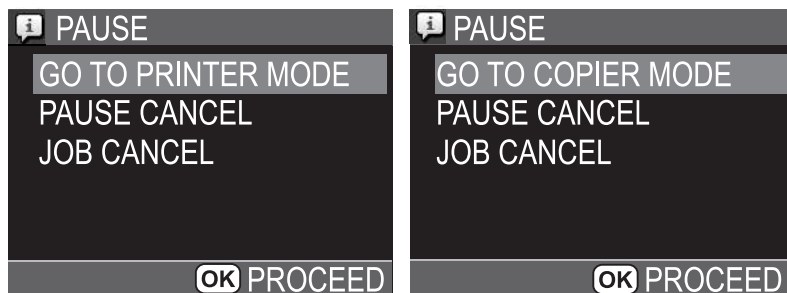


Figure 7-1. Mode Switch Screen

### THE NUMBER OF COPIES SETTING

The number of copies can be specified on the top screen of the copy mode. Pressing the [OK] button starts copying. While the copy mode top screen is displayed, printing from a PC is possible.

#### CHECK POINT



The printer can perform print jobs sent from a PC while it is displaying the copy mode top screen.

#### CAUTION



When multiple number of copies is specified with all the following settings made, the document is scanned for each print.

- Color/Monochrome: Color
- Copy paper size: Larger than A1
- Copy paper type: Photo paper

Do not remove the document from the document glass until the last scanning is complete.

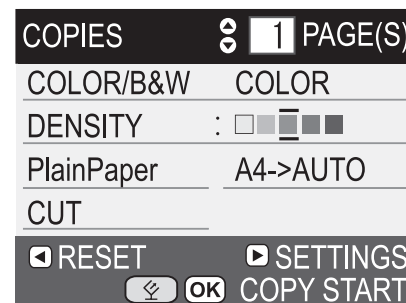


Figure 7-2. The Number of Copies Setting Screen



## COPY SETTINGS

The following copy settings can be made.

- ☐ Copy color (Color or B&W)
- ☐ Quality (Draft, Normal, Fine)
- ☐ Size (enlarge setting and with border/borderless setting)
- ☐ Density (0,  $\pm$  2)
- ☐ Paper type (Plain paper, Singleweight Matte, Doubleweight Matte, Enhanced Matte, Premium Glossy 170)
- ☐ Auto cut setting (Enable or Disable)

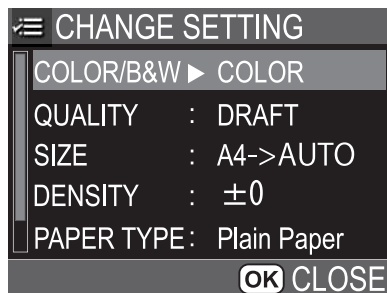


Figure 7-3. Copy Settings

The “XX -> AUTO” in the size setting enlarges the original image to fit in any of the following paper sizes or widths depending on the detected size of loaded paper.

- A2 (420 mm)
- B2 (515 mm)
- A1 (594 mm)
- 17” (432 mm)
- 24” (610 mm)

When any size other than the above is loaded, the original is enlarged to fit in the any one of the above size closest to the detected size of loaded paper. Therefore, margins like shown in [Figure 7-4](#) (the gray portion) will appear.

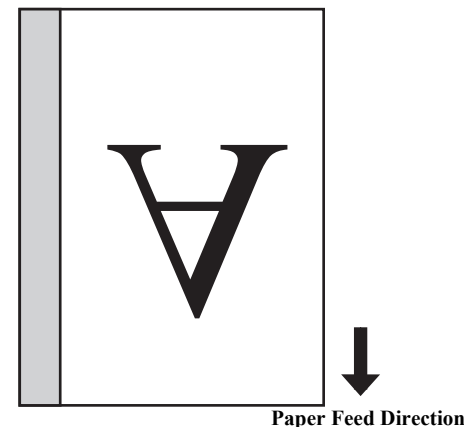


Figure 7-4. Automatically Enlarged Printed Image



- The paper type setting can be made in both the copy mode and print mode. Changing the setting in the print mode also changes the setting in the copy mode.
- When copying on paper whose size is not listed in the SIZE menu, such as 17” and 24” width, “XX -> AUTO” must be selected in the SIZE setting.



The copy function does not work with the following settings.

- With the paper width detection disabled in the print mode, “XX -> AUTO” is specified in the SIZE setting.
- The following settings when using the ADF
  - SIZE: “XX -> A0”, “4x6 -> XX”, or “XX -> AUTO (BANNER)”
  - PAPER TYPE: “Premium Glossy 170”

## PANEL SETTING LIST

Table 7-1. Panel Setting Menu List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (Shaded cell: default setting)	Description
CHANGE SETTING	COLOR/ B&W	<b>COLOR</b>	Specifies color or B&W copy.
		B&W	
	QUALITY	<b>DRAFT</b>	Specifies copy quality. The setting items change depending on the selected paper type.
		NORMAL	
		FINE	
	SIZE	<b>A4-&gt;AUTO</b>	Specifies enlarge setting. The left side of the arrow indicates the original paper size, and the right side shows the copy size. When “XX->AUTO” is selected, the copy size is determined according to the loaded paper size detected by the PW sensor on the printer. After this SIZE setting is made, “WITH BORDER / BORDERLESS” setting screen is displayed.
		B5->AUTO	
		A5->AUTO	
		LTR->AUTO	
		4X6->AUTO	
		A4/2->BANNER(AUTO)	
		A4->A1	
		A4->B2	
		A4->A2	
		A4->A0 (2SHEETS)	
		B5->A1	
		B5->B2	
		B5->A2	
		B5->A0 (2SHEETS)	
		A5->A1	
		A5->B2	
		A5->A2	
		A5->A0 (2SHEETS)	
		LTR->A1	
		LTR->B2	
		LTR->A2	
		LTR->A0 (2SHEETS)	

Table 7-1. Panel Setting Menu List

Top Menu	Menu Item	Settings (Shaded cell: default setting)	Description
CHANGE SETTING	SIZE	4X6->A1	Specifies enlarge setting. The left side of the arrow indicates the original paper size, and the right side shows the copy size. When “XX->AUTO” is selected, the copy size is determined according to the loaded paper size detected by the PW sensor on the printer. After this SIZE setting is made, “WITH BORDER / BORDERLESS” setting screen is displayed.
		4X6->B2	
		4X6->A2	
		4X6->A0 (2SHEETS)	
	DENSITY	<input type="checkbox"/>	Specifies the copy density.
		<input type="checkbox"/>	
		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
		<input type="checkbox"/>	
		<input type="checkbox"/>	
	PAPER TYPE	Plain Paper	Specifies the copy paper type.
		Singleweight Matte	
		Doubleweight Matte	
		Enhanced Matte	
		Premium Glossy 170	
	AUTO CUT	ENABLE	Specifies whether to cut or not cut the paper after printing.
		DISABLE	

CHAPTER

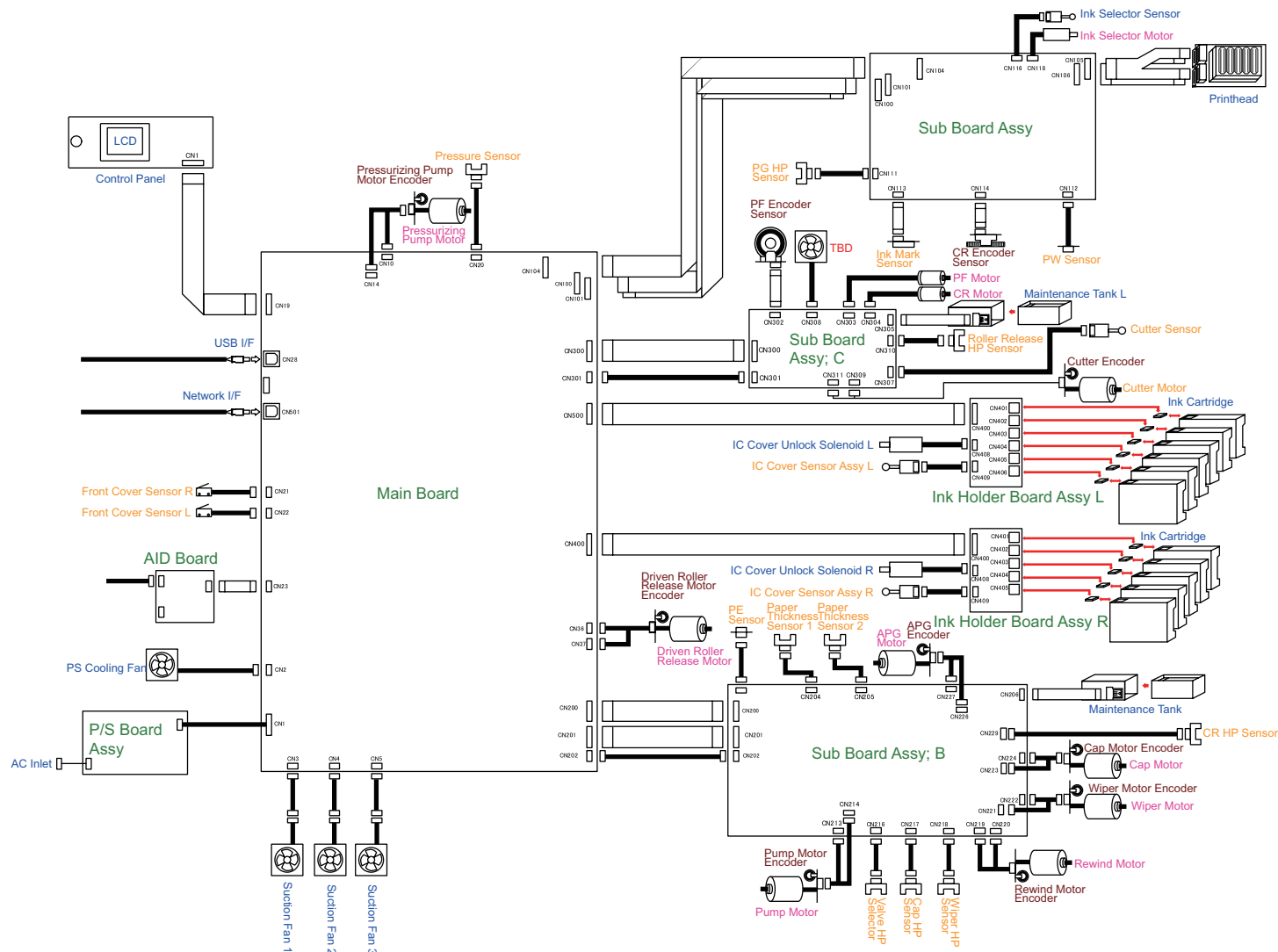
8

APPENDIX

## 8.1 Block Wiring Diagram

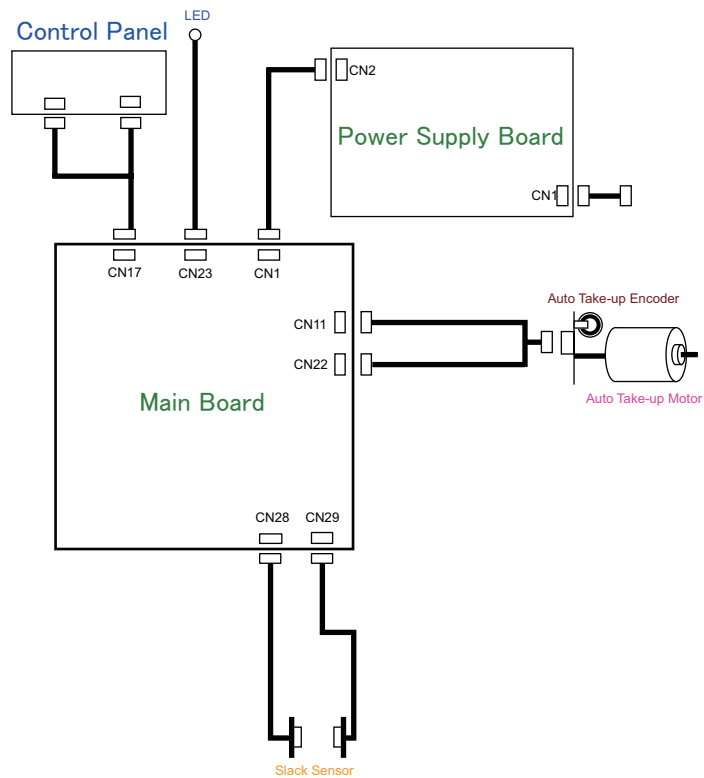
**NOTE** : This Block diagram is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910. Some of the parts differ from Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710, Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910 and Epson Stylus Pro 9890/9908/7890/7908.

### 8.1.1 Main Body

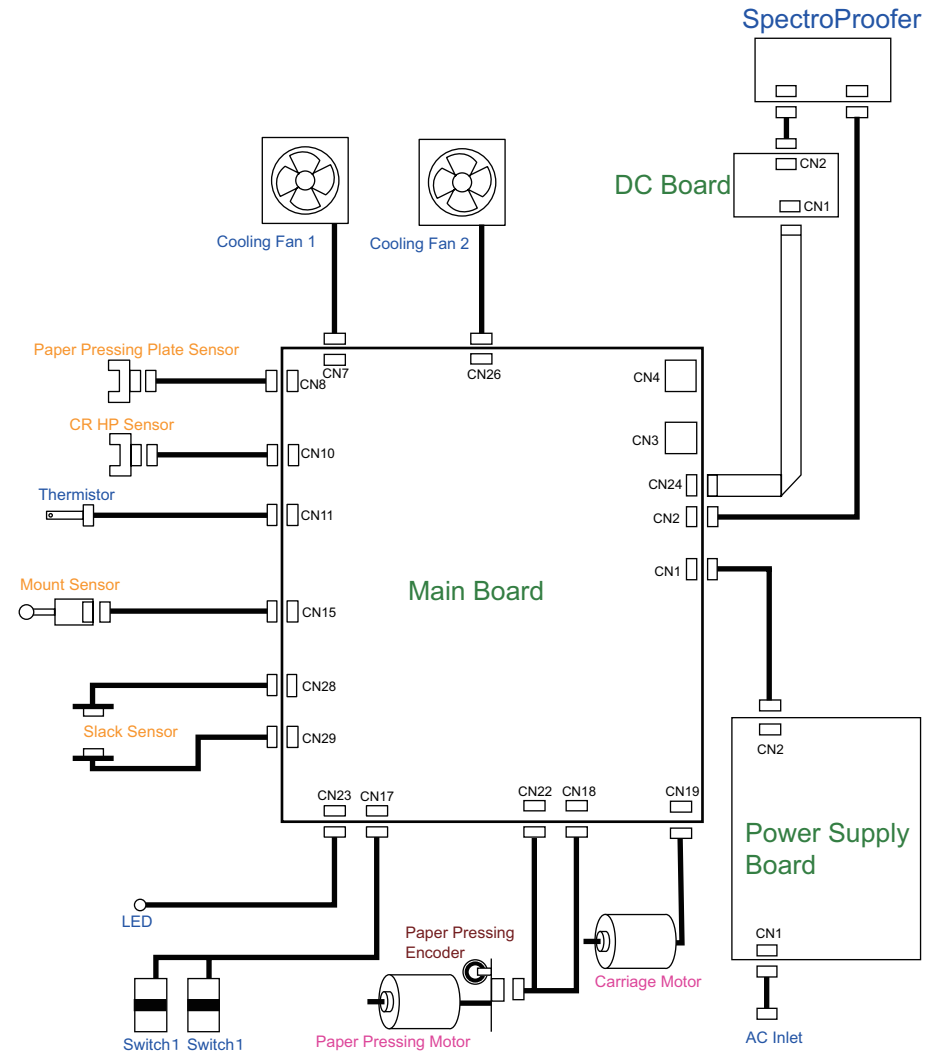


## 8.1.2 Auto Take-up Reel

**NOTE** : Not for Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710/WT7900/WT7910/7890/7908.



## 8.1.3 SpectroProofer



## **8.2 Panel Menu Map**

---

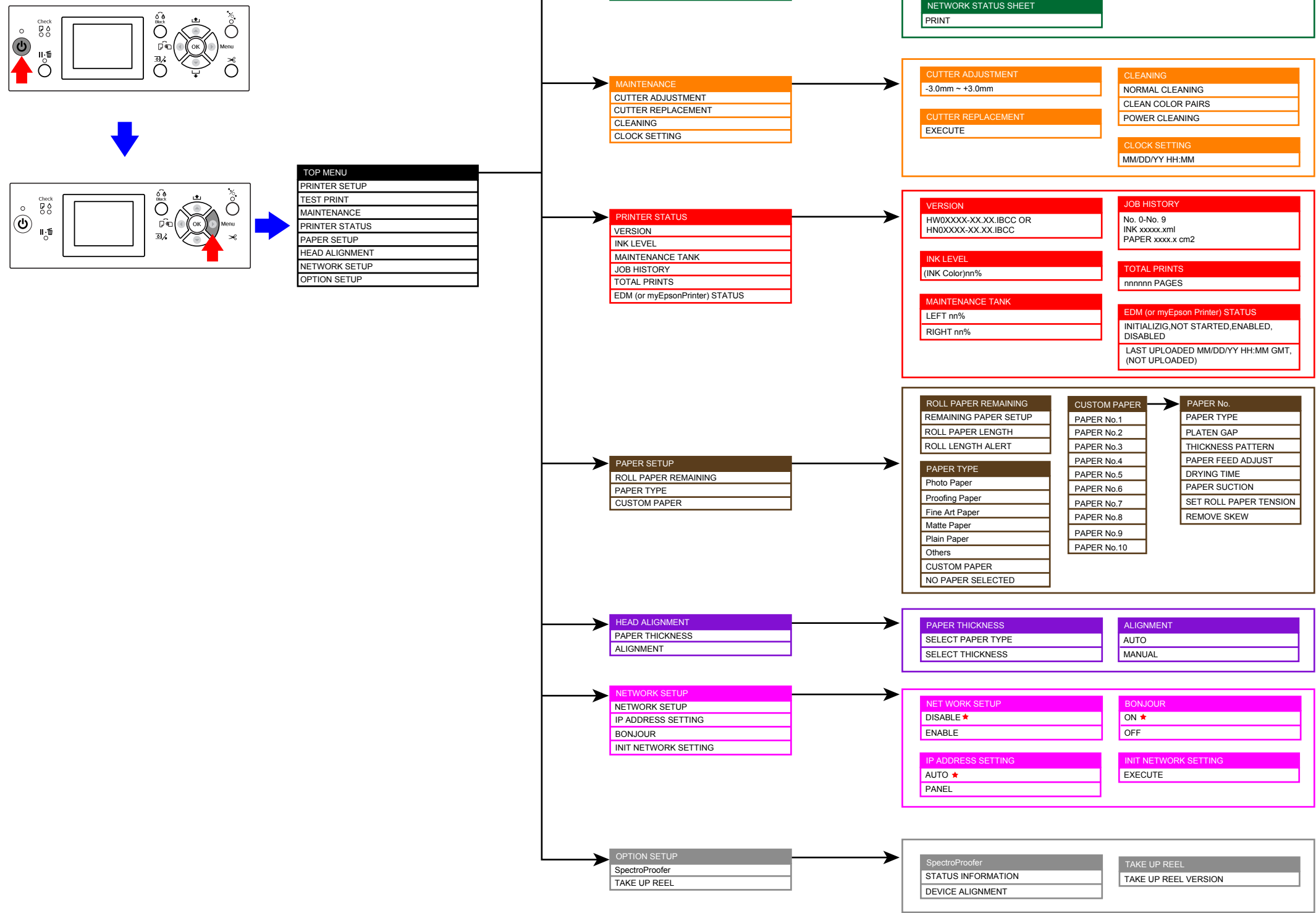
This section provides the map of executable menus on the Control Panel.

### **8.2.1 Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/7890/7908/ 9890/9908**

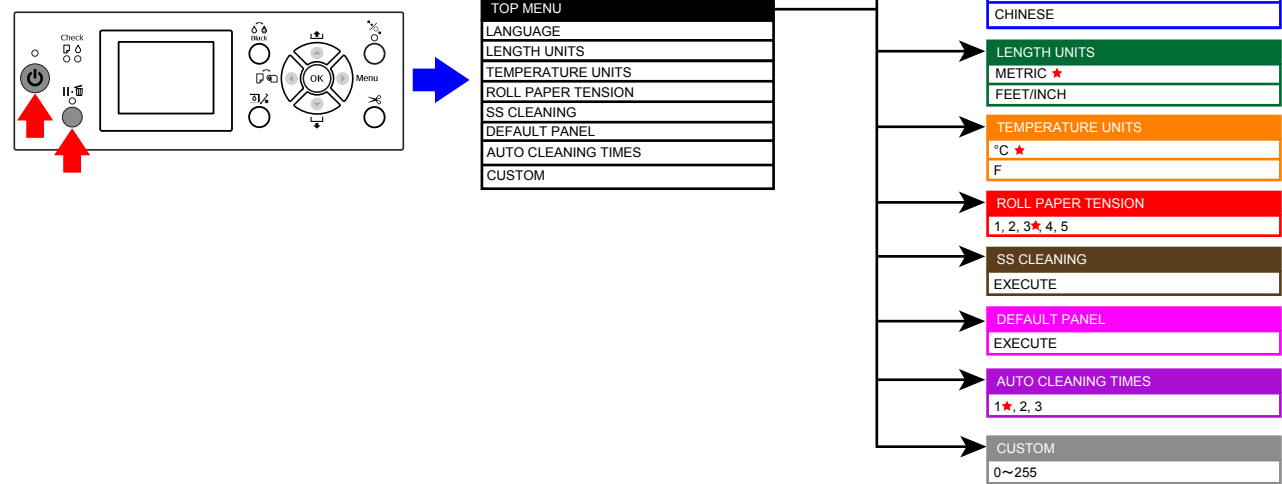
# Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/7890/7908/9890/9908

## User Menu Map

★: Default setting



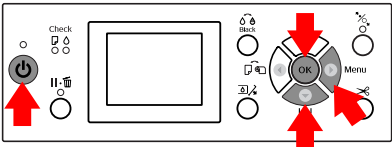
## Maintenance Mode





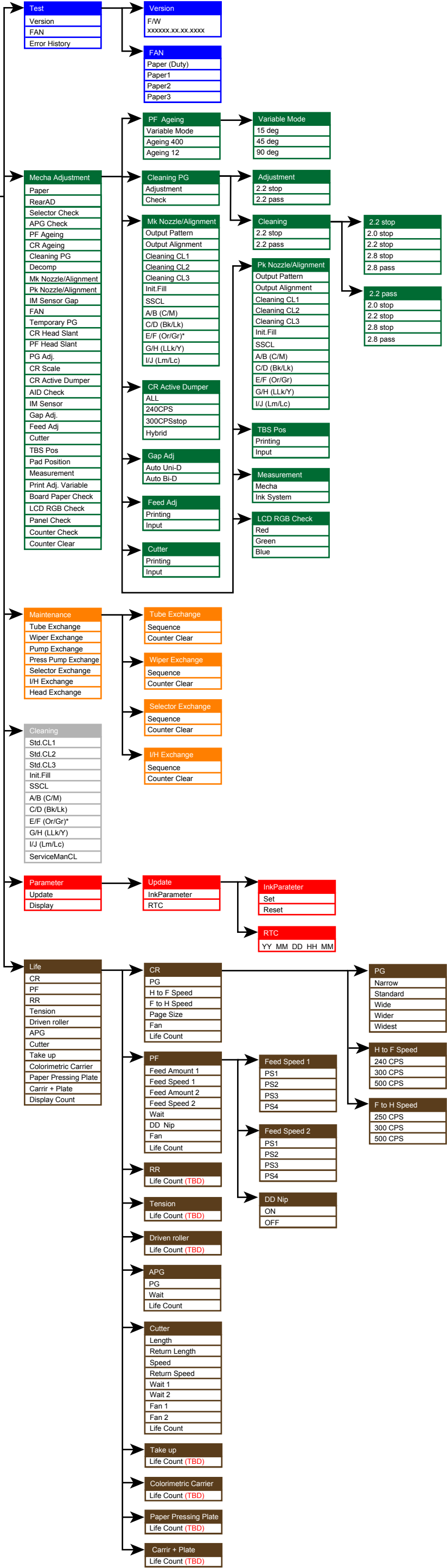
Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910/7890/7908/9890/9908

Serviceman Mode Map



SELF TESTING

SELF TESTING
TEST
Mecha Adjustment
Maintenance
Cleaning
Parameter
Life



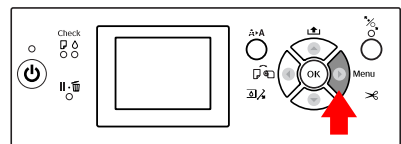
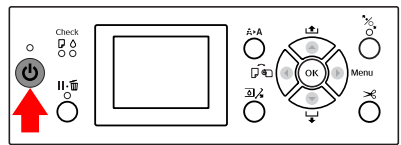
\*Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910 only.

## **8.2.2 Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710**

# Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710

## User Menu Map

★:Default setting



TOP MENU
PRINTER SETUP
TEST PRINT
MAINTENANCE
PRINTER STATUS
PAPER SETUP
HEAD ALIGNMENT
NETWORK SETUP
OPTION SETUP

PRINTER SETUP
PLATEN GAP
PAGE LINE
ROLL PAPER MARGIN
PAPER SIZE CHECK
PAPER SKEW CHECK
REFRESH MARGIN
AUTO NOZZLE CHECK
PRINT NOZZLE PATTERN
INITIALIZE SETTINGS

<table><tr><th>PLATEN GAP</th></tr><tr><td>NARROW</td></tr><tr><td>STANDARD ★</td></tr><tr><td>WIDE</td></tr><tr><td>WIDER</td></tr><tr><td>WIDEST</td></tr></table>	PLATEN GAP	NARROW	STANDARD ★	WIDE	WIDER	WIDEST	<table><tr><th>PAPER SKEW CHECK</th></tr><tr><td>ON ★</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td></tr></table>	PAPER SKEW CHECK	ON ★	OFF		
PLATEN GAP												
NARROW												
STANDARD ★												
WIDE												
WIDER												
WIDEST												
PAPER SKEW CHECK												
ON ★												
OFF												
<table><tr><th>PAGE LINE</th></tr><tr><td>ON ★</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td></tr></table>	PAGE LINE	ON ★	OFF	<table><tr><th>REFRESH MARGIN</th></tr><tr><td>ON ★</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td></tr></table>	REFRESH MARGIN	ON ★	OFF					
PAGE LINE												
ON ★												
OFF												
REFRESH MARGIN												
ON ★												
OFF												
<table><tr><th>ROLL PAPER MARGIN</th></tr><tr><td>DEFAULT ★</td></tr><tr><td>TOP/BOTTOM 15mm</td></tr><tr><td>TOP 35/ BOTTOM 15mm</td></tr><tr><td>TOP 45/ BOTTOM 15mm</td></tr><tr><td>3mm</td></tr><tr><td>15mm</td></tr></table>	ROLL PAPER MARGIN	DEFAULT ★	TOP/BOTTOM 15mm	TOP 35/ BOTTOM 15mm	TOP 45/ BOTTOM 15mm	3mm	15mm	<table><tr><th>AUTO NOZZLE CHECK</th></tr><tr><td>ON: PERIODICALLY ★</td></tr><tr><td>ON: EVERY JOB</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td></tr></table>	AUTO NOZZLE CHECK	ON: PERIODICALLY ★	ON: EVERY JOB	OFF
ROLL PAPER MARGIN												
DEFAULT ★												
TOP/BOTTOM 15mm												
TOP 35/ BOTTOM 15mm												
TOP 45/ BOTTOM 15mm												
3mm												
15mm												
AUTO NOZZLE CHECK												
ON: PERIODICALLY ★												
ON: EVERY JOB												
OFF												
	<table><tr><th>PRINT NOZZLE PATTERN</th></tr><tr><td>OFF ★</td></tr><tr><td>ON: EVERY PAGE</td></tr><tr><td>ON: EVERY 10 PAGES</td></tr></table>	PRINT NOZZLE PATTERN	OFF ★	ON: EVERY PAGE	ON: EVERY 10 PAGES							
PRINT NOZZLE PATTERN												
OFF ★												
ON: EVERY PAGE												
ON: EVERY 10 PAGES												
<table><tr><th>PAPER SIZE CHECK</th></tr><tr><td>ON ★</td></tr><tr><td>OFF</td></tr></table>	PAPER SIZE CHECK	ON ★	OFF	<table><tr><th>INITIALIZE SETTINGS</th></tr><tr><td>EXECUTE</td></tr></table>	INITIALIZE SETTINGS	EXECUTE						
PAPER SIZE CHECK												
ON ★												
OFF												
INITIALIZE SETTINGS												
EXECUTE												

TEST PRINT
NOZZLE CHECK
STATUS SHEET
NETWORK STATUS SHEET
JOB INFORMATION
CUSTOM PAPER

<div>NOZZLE CHECK</div> <div>PRINT</div>	<div>JOB INFORMATION</div> <div>PRINT</div>
<div>STATUS SHEET</div> <div>PRINT</div>	<div>CUSTOM PAPER</div> <div>PRINT</div>
<div>NETWORK STATUS SHEET</div> <div>PRINT</div>	

MAINTENANCE
CUTTER ADJUSTMENT
CUTTER REPLACEMENT
CLEANING
CLOCK SETTING

CUTTER ADJUSTMENT	CLEANING
-3.0mm ~ +3.0mm	NORMAL CLEANING
	CLEAN COLOR PAIRS
	POWER CLEANING
CUTTER REPLACEMENT	
EXECUTE	CLOCK SETTING
	YY/MM/DD HH:MM

PRINTER STATUS
VERSION
INK LEVEL
MAINTENANCE TANK
JOB HISTORY
TOTAL PRINTS
EDM (or myEpsonPrinter) STATUS

<table><tr><th>VERSION</th></tr><tr><td>KW0XXXX-XX.XX.IBCC OR KN0XXXX-XX.XX.IBCC</td></tr></table>	VERSION	KW0XXXX-XX.XX.IBCC OR KN0XXXX-XX.XX.IBCC	<table><tr><th>JOB HISTORY</th></tr><tr><td>No. 0-No. 9 INK xxxxx.xml PAPER xxx.x cm2</td></tr></table>	JOB HISTORY	No. 0-No. 9 INK xxxxx.xml PAPER xxx.x cm2		
VERSION							
KW0XXXX-XX.XX.IBCC OR KN0XXXX-XX.XX.IBCC							
JOB HISTORY							
No. 0-No. 9 INK xxxxx.xml PAPER xxx.x cm2							
<table><tr><th>INK LEVEL</th></tr><tr><td>(INK Color)nn%</td></tr></table>	INK LEVEL	(INK Color)nn%	<table><tr><th>TOTAL PRINTS</th></tr><tr><td>nnnnnn PAGES</td></tr></table>	TOTAL PRINTS	nnnnnn PAGES		
INK LEVEL							
(INK Color)nn%							
TOTAL PRINTS							
nnnnnn PAGES							
<table><tr><th>MAINTENANCE TANK</th></tr><tr><td>LEFT nn%</td></tr><tr><td>RIGHT nn%</td></tr></table>	MAINTENANCE TANK	LEFT nn%	RIGHT nn%	<table><tr><th>EDM (or myEpson Printer) STATUS</th></tr><tr><td>INITIALIZING,NOT STARTED,ENABLED, DISABLED</td></tr><tr><td>LAST UPLOADED MM/DD/YY HH:MM GMT, (NOT UPLOADED)</td></tr></table>	EDM (or myEpson Printer) STATUS	INITIALIZING,NOT STARTED,ENABLED, DISABLED	LAST UPLOADED MM/DD/YY HH:MM GMT, (NOT UPLOADED)
MAINTENANCE TANK							
LEFT nn%							
RIGHT nn%							
EDM (or myEpson Printer) STATUS							
INITIALIZING,NOT STARTED,ENABLED, DISABLED							
LAST UPLOADED MM/DD/YY HH:MM GMT, (NOT UPLOADED)							

PAPER SETUP
ROLL PAPER REMAINING
PAPER TYPE
CUSTOM PAPER

<table><tr><th>ROLL PAPER REMAINING</th></tr><tr><td>REMAINING PAPER SETUP</td></tr><tr><td>ROLL PAPER LENGTH</td></tr><tr><td>ROLL LENGTH ALERT</td></tr></table>	ROLL PAPER REMAINING	REMAINING PAPER SETUP	ROLL PAPER LENGTH	ROLL LENGTH ALERT	<table><tr><th>CUSTOM PAPER</th></tr><tr><td>PAPER No.1</td></tr><tr><td>PAPER No.2</td></tr><tr><td>PAPER No.3</td></tr><tr><td>PAPER No.4</td></tr><tr><td>PAPER No.5</td></tr><tr><td>PAPER No.6</td></tr><tr><td>PAPER No.7</td></tr><tr><td>PAPER No.8</td></tr><tr><td>PAPER No.9</td></tr><tr><td>PAPER No.10</td></tr></table>	CUSTOM PAPER	PAPER No.1	PAPER No.2	PAPER No.3	PAPER No.4	PAPER No.5	PAPER No.6	PAPER No.7	PAPER No.8	PAPER No.9	PAPER No.10	<table><tr><th>PAPER No.</th></tr><tr><td>PAPER TYPE</td></tr><tr><td>PLATEN GAP</td></tr><tr><td>THICKNESS PATTERN</td></tr><tr><td>PAPER FEED ADJUST</td></tr><tr><td>DRYING TIME</td></tr><tr><td>PAPER SUCTION</td></tr><tr><td>SET ROLL PAPER TENSION</td></tr><tr><td>REMOVE SKEW</td></tr></table>	PAPER No.	PAPER TYPE	PLATEN GAP	THICKNESS PATTERN	PAPER FEED ADJUST	DRYING TIME	PAPER SUCTION	SET ROLL PAPER TENSION	REMOVE SKEW
ROLL PAPER REMAINING																										
REMAINING PAPER SETUP																										
ROLL PAPER LENGTH																										
ROLL LENGTH ALERT																										
CUSTOM PAPER																										
PAPER No.1																										
PAPER No.2																										
PAPER No.3																										
PAPER No.4																										
PAPER No.5																										
PAPER No.6																										
PAPER No.7																										
PAPER No.8																										
PAPER No.9																										
PAPER No.10																										
PAPER No.																										
PAPER TYPE																										
PLATEN GAP																										
THICKNESS PATTERN																										
PAPER FEED ADJUST																										
DRYING TIME																										
PAPER SUCTION																										
SET ROLL PAPER TENSION																										
REMOVE SKEW																										
<table><tr><th>PAPER TYPE</th></tr><tr><td>Photo Paper</td></tr><tr><td>Matte Paper</td></tr><tr><td>Plain Paper</td></tr><tr><td>Others</td></tr><tr><td>CUSTOM PAPER</td></tr><tr><td>NO PAPER SELECTED</td></tr></table>	PAPER TYPE	Photo Paper	Matte Paper	Plain Paper	Others	CUSTOM PAPER	NO PAPER SELECTED																			
PAPER TYPE																										
Photo Paper																										
Matte Paper																										
Plain Paper																										
Others																										
CUSTOM PAPER																										
NO PAPER SELECTED																										

HEAD ALIGNMENT
PAPER THICKNESS
ALIGNMENT

<table><tr><th>PAPER THICKNESS</th></tr><tr><td>SELECT PAPER TYPE</td></tr><tr><td>SELECT THICKNESS</td></tr></table>	PAPER THICKNESS	SELECT PAPER TYPE	SELECT THICKNESS	<table><tr><th>ALIGNMENT</th></tr><tr><td>AUTO</td></tr><tr><td>MANUAL</td></tr></table>	ALIGNMENT	AUTO	MANUAL
PAPER THICKNESS							
SELECT PAPER TYPE							
SELECT THICKNESS							
ALIGNMENT							
AUTO							
MANUAL							

NETWORK SETUP
NETWORK SETUP
IP ADDRESS SETTING
BONJOUR
INIT NETWORK SETTING

NET WORK SETUP

DISABLE ★

ENABLE

BONJOUR

ON ★

OFF

IP ADDRESS SETTING

AUTO ★

PANEL

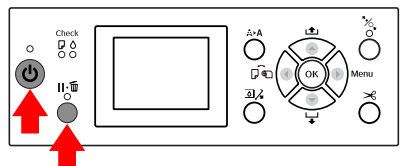
INIT NETWORK SETTING

EXECUTE

OPTION SETUP
TAKE UP REEL

<table><tr><th>TAKE UP REEL</th></tr><tr><td>TAKE UP REEL VERSION</td></tr></table>	TAKE UP REEL	TAKE UP REEL VERSION
TAKE UP REEL		
TAKE UP REEL VERSION		

## Maintenance Mode



TOP MENU
LANGUAGE
LENGTH UNITS
TEMPERATURE UNITS
ROLL PAPER TENSION
SS CLEANING
DEFAULT PANEL
AUTO CLEANING TIMES
CUSTOM

LANGUAGE
JAPANESE
ENGLISH ★
FRENCH
ITALIAN
GERMAN
POUTUGUE
SPANISH
DUTCH
KOREAN
CHINESE

LENGTH UNITS
METRIC ★
FEET/INCH

TEMPERATURE UNITS
°C ★
F

ROLL PAPER TENSION
1, 2, 3★ 4, 5

SS CLEANING
EXECUTE

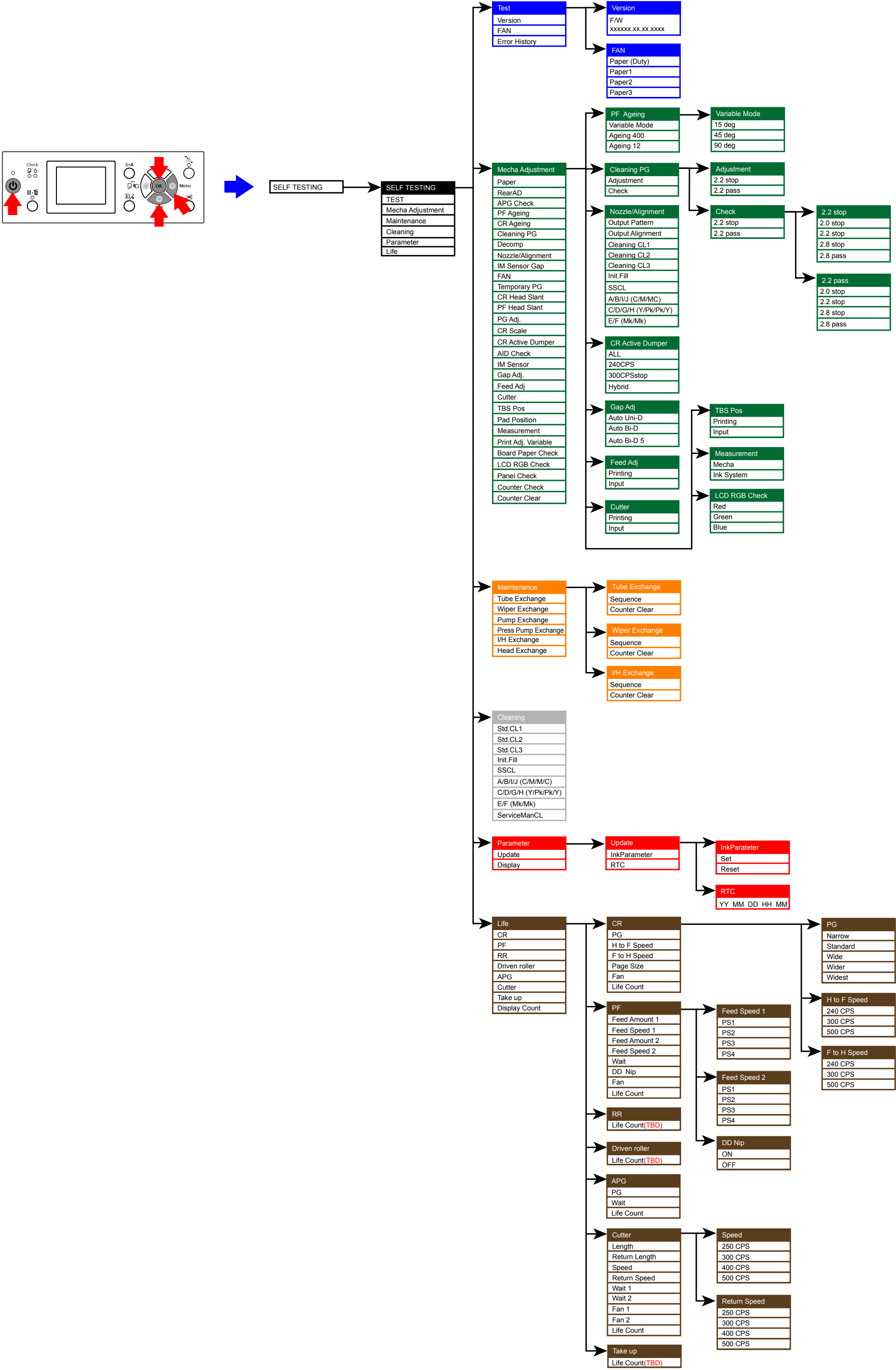
DEFAULT PANEL
EXECUTE

AUTO CLEANING TIMES
1★, 2, 3

CUSTOM
0~255

Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710

Serviceman Mode Map

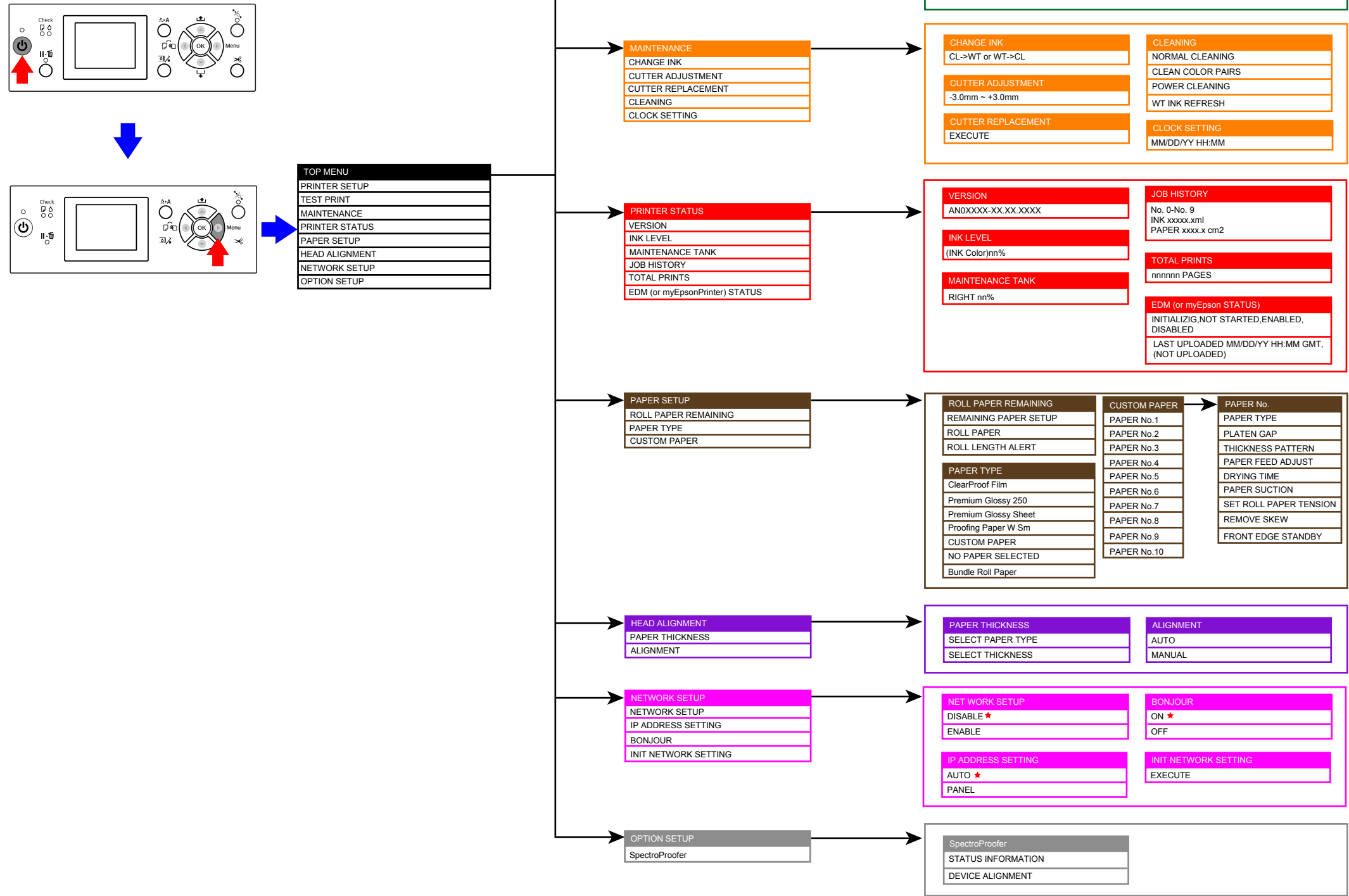


### **8.2.3 Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910**

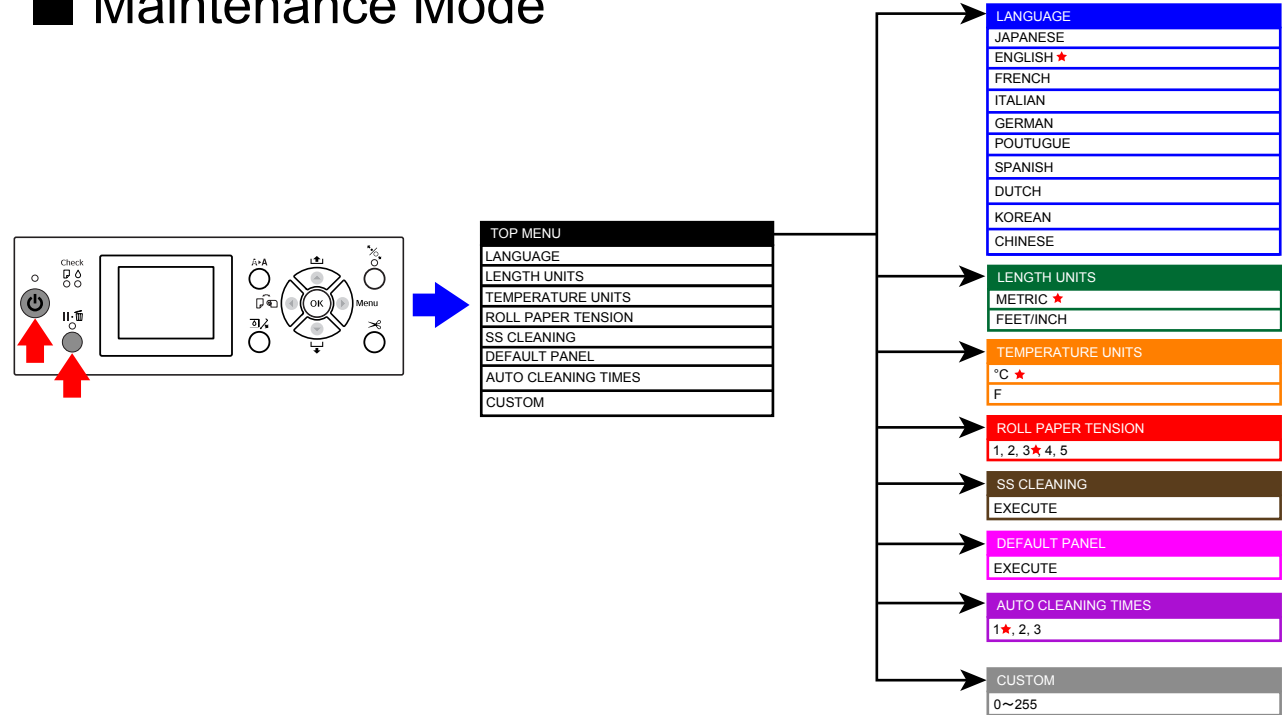
# Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910

## User Menu Map

★:Default setting

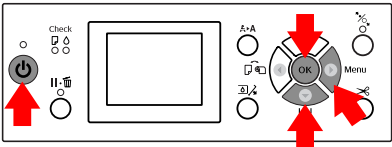


## Maintenance Mode



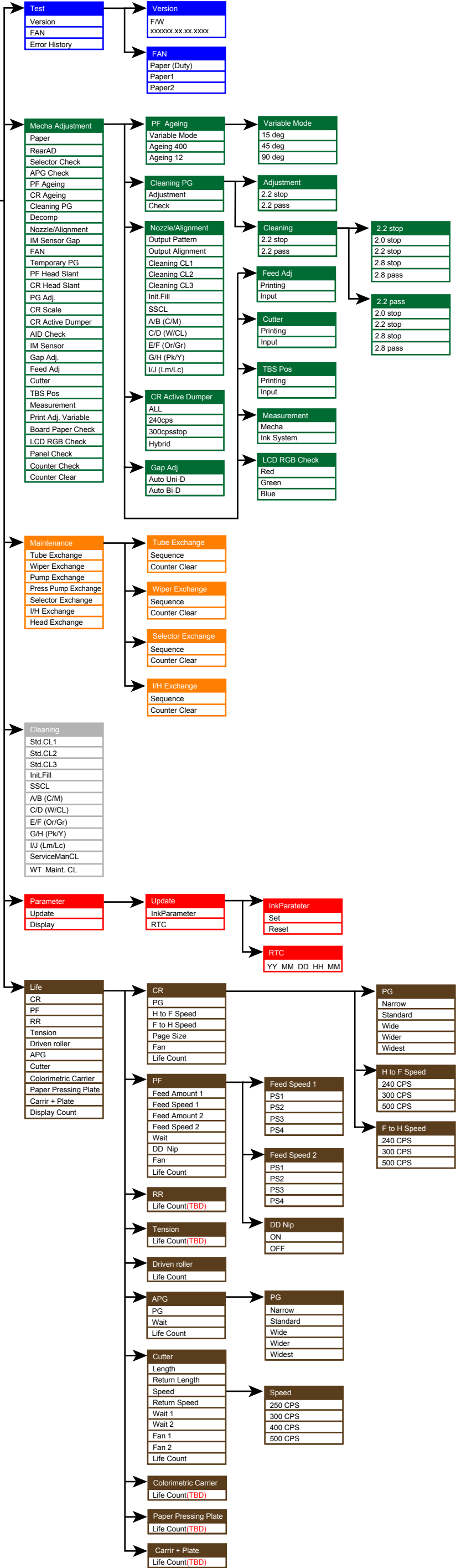
Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910

Serviceman Mode Map



SELF TESTING

SELF TESTING
TEST
Mecha Adjustment
Maintenance
Cleaning
Parameter
Life





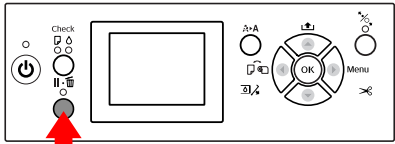
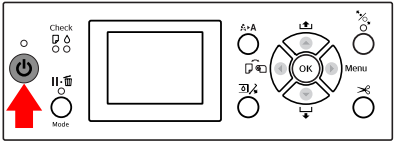
## 8.2.4 Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M (Copy Mode)

**NOTE** : See “[Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710 \(p471\)](#)” for information on the user interface menus and service mode menus.

# Epson Stylus Pro 7700M/7710M

## Copy Mode Map

★: Default setting



TOP MENU  
CHANGE SETTING

CHANGE SETTING  
COLOR/B&W  
QUALITY  
SIZE  
DENSITY  
PAPER TYPE  
AUTO CUT



<div>COLOR/B&amp;W</div> <div>COLOR</div> <div>B&amp;W ★</div>	<div>DENSITY</div> <div>-2,-1,0 ★, 1, 2</div>
<div>QUALITY</div> <div>DRAFT ★</div> <div>NORMAL</div> <div>FINE</div>	<div>PAPER TYPE</div> <div>PlainPaper ★</div> <div>Singleweight Matte</div> <div>Doubleweight Matte</div> <div>Enhanced Matte</div> <div>Premium Glossy 170</div>
<div>SIZE</div> <div>A4-&gt;AUTO ★</div> <div>B5-&gt;AUTO</div> <div>A5-&gt;AUTO</div> <div>LTR-&gt;AUTO</div> <div>4x6-&gt;AUTO</div> <div>A4/2-&gt;BANNER(AUTO)</div> <div>A4-&gt;A1</div> <div>A4-&gt;B2</div> <div>A4-&gt;A2</div> <div>A4-&gt;A0(2SHEETS)</div> <div>B5-&gt;A1</div> <div>B5-&gt;B2</div> <div>B5-&gt;A2</div> <div>B5-&gt;A0(2SHEETS)</div> <div>A5-&gt;A1</div> <div>A5-&gt;B2</div> <div>A5-&gt;A2</div> <div>A5-&gt;A0(2SHEETS)</div> <div>LTR-&gt;A1</div> <div>LTR-&gt;B2</div> <div>LTR-&gt;A2</div> <div>LTR-&gt;A0(2SHEETS)</div> <div>4x6-&gt;A1</div> <div>4x6-&gt;B2</div> <div>4x6-&gt;A2</div> <div>4x6-&gt;A0(2SHEETS)</div>	<div>AUTO CUT</div> <div>ENABLE ★</div> <div>DISABLE</div>

## 8.3 Part names used in this manual

To make it easier to locate the target part from its part name, this manual uses the part names different from the ASP part names. The table below shows the conversion of the part names used in this manual and the corresponding ASP part names.

**Table 8-1. Conversion Table**

Part name used in this manual		ASP part name	Ref. (Ch4 sec.No.)
Main Body	Control Panel	PANEL,UNIT,ESL,ASP	4.4.2.1
	IC Cover R	COVER,FRONT,RIGHT,ASP	4.4.2.2
	IC Cover L	COVER,FRONT,LEFT,ASP	4.4.2.2
	IC Shaft Cover R	SHAFT,COVER,IC,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP	4.4.2.3
	IC Shaft Cover L	SHAFT,COVER,IC,LEFT,UNIT,ESL,ASP	4.4.2.3
	Front Cover R	COVER,FRONT,RIGHT,ASP	4.4.2.5
	Front Cover L	COVER,FRONT,LEFT,ASP	4.4.2.5
	Maintenance Tank	N/A	4.4.2.6
	Right Cover	COVER,FRONT,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP	4.4.2.7
	Left Cover	COVER,SIDE,LEFT,SUPPORT,UNIT,ESL,ASP	4.4.2.8
	Front Cover (Middle)	COVER FRONT,ASP	4.4.2.9
	Top Cover	N/A	4.4.2.9
	Spindle Cover R	COVER,SIDE,ROLL,RIGHT	4.4.2.11
	Spindle Cover L	COVER,SIDE,ROLL,LEFT	4.4.2.12
	Roll Cover Assy	COVER ROLL ASSY. ASP	4.4.2.13
	Rear Left Cover	COVER,REAR,LEFT,ASP	4.4.2.14
	Rear Cover	N/A	4.4.2.15
	Front Cover Sensor R	SENSOR,COVER,FRONT,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP	4.4.2.16
	Front Cover Sensor L	SENSOR,COVER,FRONT,LEFT,UNIT,ESL,ASP	4.4.2.17
	Cartridge Cover Sensor R	PLUNGER,ASSY,ASP	4.4.2.18
	Cartridge Cover Sensor L	PLUNGER,ASSY,ASP	4.4.2.19
	Main Board Assy	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN	4.4.3.1

**Table 8-1. Conversion Table**

Part name used in this manual		ASP part name	Ref. (Ch4 sec.No.)
Main Body	Power Supply Board Assy	POWER SUPPLY UNIT	4.4.3.2
	Sub Board Assy	BOARD ASSY.,SUB	4.4.3.3
	Sub Board Assy; B	BOARD ASSY.,SUB	4.4.3.4
	Sub Board Assy; C	BOARD ASSY.,SUB	4.4.3.5
	CR Scale	SCALE,CR,ASP	4.4.4.1
	CR Encoder Sensor	BOARD ASSY., ENCODER	4.4.4.2
	CR HP Sensor	PHOTO INTERRUPTER,TLP1243(C8)	4.4.4.3
	Driven Pulley Unit	PULLEY,DRIVEN,UNIT,44,ESL,ASP (PULLEY,DRIVEN,UNIT,24,ESL,ASP)	4.4.4.4
	CR Motor	MOTOR ASSY.,CR	4.4.4.5
	APG Motor	MOTOR ASSY., RELEASE, ASP	4.4.4.6
	APG Unit	APG,UNIT,ESL,ASP	4.4.4.7
	PG HP Sensor	PHOTO INTERRUPTER,TLP1243(C8)	4.4.4.8
	Carriage Unit	CR,UNIT,ESL,ASP	4.4.4.9
	Paper Thickness Sensor	DETECTOR,PAPER THICKNESS,UNIT,ESL,ASP	4.4.5.1
	PW Sensor	DETECTOR, PW	4.4.5.2
	Driven Roller Release Motor	MOTOR ASSY., RELEASE, ASP	4.4.5.3
	Roller Release HP Sensor	PHOTO INTERRUPTER,TLP1243(C8)	4.4.5.4
	Rewind Unit	REWIND,UNIT,ESL,ASP	4.4.5.5
	Cutter Unit	FRAME,RAIL,CUTTER,UNIT,44,ESL,ASP	4.4.5.6
	Suction Fan	FAN ASSY.,ASP	4.4.5.7
	PF Encoder Sensor	BOARD ASSY.,ENCODER,PF	4.4.5.8
	PF Motor	MOTOR ASSY.,PF,ASP	4.4.5.9
	Ink System Unit	PUMP,CAP,ASSY,ESL,ASP	4.4.6.1
	Wiper Cleaner Assy	WIPER,ASSY,ASP	4.4.6.2

Table 8-1. Conversion Table

Part name used in this manual		ASP part name	Ref. (Ch4 sec.No.)
Main Body	Printhead	PRINTHEAD	4.4.6.3
	Pressurizing Unit	PUMP ASSY.,PRESSURIZING,UNIT ,ESL,ASP	4.4.6.4
	Ink Cartridge Holder R	HOLDER,ASSY.,IC,RIGHT,E SL,ASP	4.4.6.5
	Ink Cartridge Holder L	HOLDER,ASSY.,IC,LEFT,ES L,ASP	4.4.6.6
	AID Board	BOARD ASSY.,SUB	4.4.6.9
	Ink Mark Sensor	BOARD ASSY.,INK MARK	4.4.6.10
	Ink Selector	SELECTOR,UNIT,ESL,ASP	4.4.6.11
	Ink Tube R	TUBE ASSY.,SUPPLY,INK,B,ASP	4.4.6.12
	Ink Tube L	TUBE ASSY.,SPPLY,INK,A,ASP	4.4.6.13
Auto Take-up Reel	Take-up Reel Cover	COVER,WINDER,DRIVE	4.4.7.1
	Take-up Reel Sensor	DETECTOR,WINDER	4.4.7.2
	Take-up Reel LED	INDICATOR,WINDER	4.4.7.3
	Take-up Reel Switch	SW,WINDER	4.4.7.4
	Power Supply Board	BOARD ASSY.,POWER SUPPLY	4.4.7.5
	Take-up Reel Motor	MOTOR ASSY.,REWIND	4.4.7.6
	Main Board Assy	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN	4.4.7.7
SpectroProofer	Color Measurement Device	N/A	4.4.8.1
	Mounter	N/A	4.4.8.2
	Right Cover	HOUSING,RIGHT,ASP	4.4.8.3
	Left Cover	HOUSING,LEFT,ASP	4.4.8.4
	I/F Cover	COVER,USB,ASP	4.4.8.5
	Front Cover	N/A	4.4.8.6
	Main Board	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN	4.4.8.7
	Power Supply Board	BOARD ASSY.,POWER SUPPLY	4.4.8.8
	Paper Pressing Plate Sensor	PHOTO INTERUPTER,TLP1243(C8)	4.4.8.9

Table 8-1. Conversion Table

Part name used in this manual		ASP part name	Ref. (Ch4 sec.No.)
SpectroProofer	CR HP Sensor	PHOTO INTERUPTER,TLP1243(C8)	4.4.8.10
	Thermistor	THERMISTOR,SPM,ASP	4.4.8.11
	Mount Sensor	DETECTOR,LEAF,B2	4.4.8.12
	LED	CABLE,LED,ASP	4.4.8.13
	Paper Pressing Encoder	BOARD ASSY.,ENCORDER,SC;B	4.4.8.14
	Cooling Fan 1	FAN,HEATER,ASP	4.4.8.15
	Cooling Fan 2	FAN,HEATER,ASP	4.4.8.16
	Paper Pressing Motor	MOTOR ASSY,DRIVE,PAPER PRESSING,UNIT,ASP	4.4.8.17
	Carriage Motor	MOTOR ASSY.,CR,SPM,ASP	4.4.8.18
	Paper Pressing Unit	PAPER PRESSING,UNIT,44,ASP	4.4.8.19

## 8.4 Parts List

**NOTE** : This Parts List is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910. Some of the items differ from Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710/WT7900/WT7910/9890/9908/7890/7908, therefore refer to Service Parts Information as necessary.

### Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910

**Table 8-2. Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910**

Ref No	Part Name
1	PIPE,BASKET,CENTER,ASP
2	ARM,BASKET,ASP
3	BASKET ASSY,ASP
4	POWER CABLE
5	PAPER GUIDE BOTTOM,ASP
6	BOX,MANUAL,ASP
7	STAND RIGHT UNIT,ASP
8	STAND LEFT UNIT,ASP
9	STAY STAND ASSY,ASP
10	SHAFT,BASKET,ASSY.
11	CASTER,P-60-HT
12	CASTER,P-60-HTS
13	JOINT,PIPE,BASKET,FRONT,ASP
14	PIPE,BASKET,FRONT,SIDE,ASP
15	PIPE,BASKET,UPPER,ASP
16	JOINT,PIPE,BASKET,REAR,LEFT,ASP
17	JOINT,PIPE,BASKET,REAR,RIGHT,ASP
18	HOLDER,PIPE,BASKET,FRONT
19	HOLDER,PIPE,BASKET,REAR
20	PAD,CR
21	MOUNTING PLATE,PAPER GUIDE,BOTTOM
22	SCREW ASSY.,ASP
24	STAND,UNIT,44,ESL,ASP
100	SHAFT,COVER,IC,LEFT,UNIT,ESL,ASP

**Table 8-2. Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910**

Ref No	Part Name
101	SHAFT,COVER,IC,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
102	STOPPER,COVER,FRONT
103	GROUNDING PLATE,ROLL
104	COVER,FRONT,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
105	COVER,FRONT,LEFT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
107	COVER ROLL ASSY. ASP
108	COVER,IC,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
109	COVER,IC,LEFT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
110	LABEL,ROLL PAPER SET,PAPER GUIDE LOWER
111	COVER FRONT,ASP
112	LOGO PLATE,86.5X21.6
113	CATCH,STRIKER
114	STRIKER,SENSOR
115	COVER,FRONT,RIGHT,ASP
116	COVER,FRONT,LEFT,ASP
117	COVER,REAR,LEFT,ASP
118	COVER,SIDE,ROLL,LEFT
119	COVER,SIDE,ROLL,RIGHT
120	COVER,TOP,BASE,SUPPORT,RIGHT
121	COVER,ROLL,SUPPORT,RIGHT,ASP
122	COVER,ROLL,SUPPORT,LEFT,ASP
137	LABEL,ULTRA CHROME INK,HDR
138	LABEL,MODEL NAME;B
139	HANDLE
140	COVER,TOP,BASE,ASP
200	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN
201	BOARD ASSY.,SUB
202	BOARD ASSY.,SUB
203	BOARD ASSY.,SUB
204	BOARD ASSY.,SUB
300	POWER SUPPLY UNIT,B,ASP
301	HARNESS,ASP

Table 8-2. Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910

Ref No	Part Name
302	FAN ASSY.,ASP
501	GUIDE ROLL PAPER,L,UNIT,B,ESL,ASP
502	MOUNTING PLATE COVER ROLL PAPER LEFT,ASP
503	REWIND,UNIT,ESL,ASP
504	RAIL GUIDE ROLL PAPER,ASP
505	SENSOR,PE.,UNIT,ESL,ASP
506	PHOTO INTERRUPTER,TLP1243(C8)
507	CABLE,DETECTOR,HP,CR,ASP
508	DETECTOR,PAPER THICKNESS,UNIT,ESL,ASP
509	PANEL,UNIT,ESL,ASP
510	HARNESS,PANEL,ASP
511	GUIDE,ROLL,PAPER,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
512	PULLEY,DRIVEN,UNIT,44,ESL,ASP
513	SCALE,CR,ASP
514	MOTOR ASSY.,CR.,ASP
515	HOLDER,ASSY.,IC,RIGHT,ESL,ASP
516	HOLDER,ASSY.,IC,LEFT,ESL,ASP
517	PLUNGER,ASSY,ASP
518	HARNESS,RELAY,HEAD,RIGHT,ASP
519	HARNESS,RELAY,HEAD,LEFT,ASP
520	CR,UNIT,B;ESL,ASP
521	BOARD ASSY.,INK MARK
522	COVER,CR,MAIN
523	PRINT HEAD
524	HARNESS,HEAD,A,ASP
525	HARNESS,HEAD,B,ASSY,ASP
526	SELECTOR,UNIT,ESL,ASP
527	VALVE ASSY.,HEAD,ASP.
528	SENSOR,COVER,FRONT,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
529	SENSOR,COVER,FRONT,LEFT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
530	CLAMP,TUBE
531	HOLDER TUBE,ASP

Table 8-2. Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910

Ref No	Part Name
532	HARNESS,DRV,RIGHT,UPPER,ASP
533	HARNESS,CR,ASP
534	HARNESS,DRV,RIGHT,LOWER,ASP
535	TUBE ASSY.,SUPPLY,INK;B,ASP
536	TUBE ASSY.,SPPLY,INK,A,ASP
537	HOLDER,WHEEL,EJ,LOWER,UNIT,ESL,ASP
538	COVER,CUTTER,UNIT,ESL,ASP
539	CATCH
540	PAPER,EJECTION,ROLLER,PE,UNIT,ESL,ASP
541	FRAME,RAIL,CUTTER,UNIT,44,ESL,ASP
542	CABLE CLAMP
543	GUIDE,COVER,ROLL PAPER,SUPPORT
544	CLUMP,TUBE,DUCT
545	CLIP,DUCT,INK EJECT,LARGE
546	CLIP,DUCT,INK EJECT,SMALL
547	POROUS PAD,PLATEN
548	CABLE,FAN,RIGHT,ASP
549	CABLE,FAN,MIDDLE,ASP
550	HARNESS,MAINTENANCE TANK,RIGHT,ASP
551	PUMP ASSY.,PRESSURIZING,UNIT,ESL,ASP
552	TUBE,PRESSURIZING,RIGHT,ASP
553	TUBE,PRESSURIZING,LEFT,44,ASP
554	LEAF SPRING,LOCK
555	EJECT,GUIDE,UNIT,ESL,ASP
556	POROUS PAD ASSY.,INK EJECT,A,ASP
557	MOTOR ASSY., RELEASE, ASP
558	CABLE,MOTOR,RELEASE,ASP
559	HARNESS,ASP
560	APG,UNIT,ESL,ASP
561	CABLE,MOTOR,APG,ASP
562	HARNESS,RELAY,SUB,B,UPPER,ASP
563	HARNESS,RELAY,SUB,B,LOWER,ASP

Table 8-2. Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910

Ref No	Part Name
564	HARNESS,ASP
565	HARNESS,RELAY,SUB,C,ASP
566	HARNESS,RELAY,AID,ASP
567	PUMP,CAP,ASSY,B,ESL,ASP
568	WIPER,ASSY,ASP
569	HARNESS
570	CABLE,SENSOR,RELEASE,ASP
571	COMBINATION GEAR,29,59.2,ASP
572	COMBINATION GEAR,23.2,48.8,ASP
573	COMBINATION GEAR,18.4,37.6,ASP
574	COMBINATION GEAR,26,12.8,ASP
575	SPUR GEAR,43,ASP
576	PROTECTION PLATE FFC,ASP
577	EDGE SADDLE
578	PULLEY PF,ASP
579	MOTOR ASSY.,PF.,ASP
580	CABLE,GROUNDING,PF,ASP
581	BOARD ASSY.,ENCODER,PF
582	HARNESS,ENCODER,PF,ASP
583	SCALE,PF,UNIT,ESL,ASP
584	TIMING BELT,PF
585	FLAT CLAMP,FCR-35
586	FLAT CLAMP,FCR-15 V0
587	FLAT CLAMP,FCR-45 V0
589	EDGE SADDLE,EDS-1208U
590	E-RING,3,F/UC-3C
591	PALALLEL PIN,1.5
592	HOLDER,SPRING,APG
593	DETECTOR,PW
594	PHOTO INTERRUPTER,TLP1243(C8)
595	BOARD ASSY.,ENCODER
596	SEAL RUBBER,JOINT,ASP

Table 8-2. Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910

Ref No	Part Name
701	CABLE,FAN,LEFT,ASP
702	HARNESS,MAINTENANCE TANK,LEFT,ASP
703	P.W.,4.3X0.8X8,F/ZN-3C



## Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910

Table 8-3. Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910

Ref No	Part Name
1	PIPE,BASKET,CENTER,24,ASP
2	ARM,BASKET,24,ASP
3	BASKET ASSY.,24,ASP
4	POWER CABLE
5	PAPER GUIDE BOTTOM,ASP
6	BOX,MANUAL,ASP
7	STAND RIGHT UNIT,ASP
8	STAND LEFT UNIT,ASP
9	STAY STAND ASSY.,24,ASP
10	SHAFT,BASKET,ASSY.
11	CASTER,P-60-HT
12	CASTER,P-60-HTS
13	JOINT,PIPE,BASKET,FRONT,ASP
14	PIPE,BASKET,FRONT,SIDE,ASP
15	PIPE,BASKET,UPPER,24,ASP
18	HOLDER,PIPE,BASKET,FRONT
19	HOLDER,PIPE,BASKET,REAR
20	PAD,CR
21	MOUNTING PLATE,PAPER GUIDE,BOTTOM
22	SCREW ASSY.,ASP
24	STAND,UNIT,24,ESL,ASP
100	SHAFT,COVER,IC,LEFT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
101	SHAFT,COVER,IC,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
102	STOPPER,COVER,FRONT
103	GROUNDING PLATE,ROLL
104	COVER,FRONT,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
105	COVER,FRONT,LEFT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
107	COVER ROLL ASSY.,24,ASP
108	COVER,IC,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
109	COVER,IC,LEFT,UNIT,ESL,ASP

Table 8-3. Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910

Ref No	Part Name
110	LABEL,ROLL PAPER SET,PAPER GUIDE LOWER
111	COVER,FRONT,24,ASP
112	LOGO PLATE,86.5X21.6
113	CATCH,STRIKER
114	STRIKER,SENSOR
115	COVER,FRONT,RIGHT,ASP
116	COVER,FRONT,LEFT,ASP
117	COVER,REAR,LEFT,ASP
118	COVER,SIDE,ROLL,LEFT
119	COVER,SIDE,ROLL,RIGHT
120	COVER,TOP,BASE,SUPPORT,RIGHT
121	COVER,ROLL,SUPPORT,RIGHT,ASP
122	COVER,ROLL,SUPPORT,LEFT,ASP
135	COVER,MAINTENANCE,BOX
137	LABEL,ULTRA CHROME INK,HDR
138	LABEL,MODEL NAME;E
139	HANDLE
140	COVER,TOP,BASE,24,ASP
200	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN
201	BOARD ASSY.,SUB
202	BOARD ASSY.,SUB
203	BOARD ASSY.,SUB
204	BOARD ASSY.,SUB
300	POWER SUPPLY UNIT,B,ASP
301	HARNESS,ASP
302	FAN ASSY.,ASP
501	GUIDE ROLL PAPER,L,UNIT,B,ESL,ASP
502	MOUNTING PLATE COVER ROLL PAPER LEFT,ASP
503	REWIND,UNIT,ESL,ASP
504	RAIL GUIDE ROLL PAPER,ASP
505	SENSOR,PE.;UNIT,ESL,ASP
506	PHOTO INTERRUPTER,TLP1243(C8)

Table 8-3. Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910

Ref No	Part Name
507	CABLE,DETECTOR,HP,CR,ASP
508	DETECTOR,PAPER THICKNESS,UNIT,ESL,ASP
509	PANEL,UNIT,ESL,ASP
510	HARNESS,PANEL,ASP
511	GUIDE,ROLL,PAPER,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
512	PULLEY,DRIVEN,UNIT,24,ESL,ASP
513	SCALE,CR,24,ASP
514	MOTOR ASSY.,CR.,ASP
515	HOLDER,ASSY.,IC,RIGHT,ESL,ASP
516	HOLDER,ASSY.,IC,LEFT,ESL,ASP
517	PLUNGER,ASSY,ASP
518	HARNESS,RELAY,HEAD,RIGHT,ASP
519	HARNESS,RELAY,HEAD,LEFT,24,ASP
520	CR,UNIT,B,ESL,ASP
521	BOARD ASSY.,INK MARK
522	COVER,CR,MAIN
523	PRINT HEAD
524	HARNESS,HEAD,A,ASP
525	HARNESS,HEAD,B,ASSY,ASP
526	SELECTOR,UNIT,ESL,ASP
527	VALVE ASSY.,HEAD,ASP.
528	SENSOR,COVER,FRONT,RIGHT,UNIT,ESL,ASP
529	SENSOR,COVER,FRONT,LEFT,UNIT,24,ESL,ASP
530	CLAMP,TUBE
531	HOLDER TUBE,ASP
532	HARNESS,DRV,RIGHT,UPPER,ASP
533	HARNESS,CR,ASP
534	HARNESS,DRV,RIGHT,LOWER,ASP
535	TUBE ASSY.,SUPPLY,INK,B,ASP
536	TUBE ASSY.,SPPLY,INK,A,24,ASP
537	HOLDER,WHEEL,EJ,LOWER,UNIT,ESL,ASP
538	COVER,CUTTER,UNIT,ESL,ASP

Table 8-3. Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910

Ref No	Part Name
539	CATCH
540	PAPER,EJECTION,ROLLER,PE,UNIT,ESL,ASP
541	FRAME,RAIL,CUTTER,UNIT,24,ESL,ASP
542	CABLE CLAMP
543	GUIDE,COVER,ROLL PAPER,SUPPORT
544	CLUMP,TUBE,DUCT
545	CLIP,DUCT,INK EJECT,LARGE
546	CLIP,DUCT,INK EJECT,SMALL
547	POROUS PAD,PLATEN
548	CABLE,FAN,RIGHT,ASP
549	CABLE,FAN,MIDDLE,ASP
550	HARNESS,MAINTENANCE TANK,RIGHT,ASP
551	PUMP ASSY.,PRESSURIZING,UNIT,ESL,ASP
552	TUBE,PRESSURIZING,RIGHT,ASP
553	TUBE,PRESSURIZING,LEFT,24,ASP
554	LEAF SPRING,LOCK
555	EJECT,GUIDE,UNIT,ESL,ASP
556	POROUS PAD ASSY.,INK EJECT,A,ASP
557	MOTOR ASSY., RELEASE, ASP
558	CABLE,MOTOR,RELEASE,24,ASP
559	HARNESS,ASP
560	APG,UNIT,ESL,ASP
561	CABLE,MOTOR,APG,ASP
562	HARNESS,RELAY,SUB,B,UPPER,ASP
563	HARNESS,RELAY,SUB,B,LOWER,ASP
564	HARNESS,ASP
565	HARNESS,RELAY,SUB,C,24,ASP
566	HARNESS,RELAY,AID,ASP
567	PUMP,CAP,ASSY,B,ESL,ASP
568	WIPER,ASSY,ASP
569	HARNESS,ASP
570	CABLE,SENSOR,RELEASE,ASP

Table 8-3. Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910

Ref No	Part Name
571	COMBINATION GEAR,29,59.2,ASP
572	COMBINATION GEAR,23.2,48.8,ASP
573	COMBINATION GEAR,18.4,37.6,ASP
574	COMBINATION GEAR,26,12.8,ASP
575	SPUR GEAR,43,ASP
576	PROTECTION PLATE FFC,ASP
577	EDGE SADDLE
578	PULLEY PF,ASP
579	MOTOR ASSY.,PF.,ASP
580	CABLE,GROUNDING,PF,ASP
581	BOARD ASSY.,ENCODER,PF
582	HARNESS,ENCODER,PF,ASP
583	SCALE,PF,UNIT,ESL,ASP
584	TIMING BELT,PF
585	FLAT CLAMP,FCR-35
586	FLAT CLAMP,FCR-15 V0
587	FLAT CLAMP,FCR-45 V0
589	EDGE SADDLE,EDS-1208U
590	E-RING,3,F/UC-3C
591	PALALLEL PIN,1.5
592	HOLDER,SPRING,APG
593	DETECTOR,PW
594	PHOTO INTERRUPTER,TLP1243(C8)
595	BOARD ASSY.,ENCODER
596	SEAL RUBBER,JOINT,ASP
601	HOLDER,WHEEL,EJ,LOWER,24,ASSY,ASP

---

**AUTO TAKE-UP REEL**


---

**Table 8-4. Auto Take-up Reel**

Ref No.	Part Name
1001	WINDER FLANGE L,UNIT,ESL,ASP
1002	WINDER FLANGE R,UNIT,ESL,ASP
1003	SPUR GEAR,72
1004	COMBINATION GEAR,19,60.8
1005	COMBINATION GEAR,21.6,37.5
1006	COVER,WINDER,DRIVE
1007	PANEL,SW
1008	COVER,PANEL,SW
1009	SW,WINDER
1010	INDICATOR,WINDER
1011	ARM COVER B
1012	CABLE,DETECTOR,WINDER,EMIT
1013	CABLE,DETECTOR,WINDER,RECEIVE
1014	BUSHING,12.035
1015	HARNESS,ASP
1016	GROUNDING WIRE,SHAFT,DRIVE
1017	DETECTOR,WINDER
1018	BRAKE FULCRUM PLATE,UNIT,ESL,ASP
1019	CABLE,MOTOR,WINDER
1020	MOTOR ASSY.,REWIND
1023	HARNESS,ASP
1024	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN
1025	BOARD ASSY.,POWER SUPPLY
1027	CAP,LEVER,BRAKE

## SpectroProofer for Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910

Table 8-5. SpectroProofer for Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910

Ref No	Part Name
1	BACKING,WHITE,UNIT,ASP
2	BACKING,BLACK,UNIT,ASP
3	GUIDE,HOUSING
4	H.S.C.BOLT,4X8,F/ZB-3C
5	HEXAGON SOCKET SCREW KEYS,3
6	HOLDER,CARIB TILE,UPPER,UNIT,ASP
7	LOCKING WIRE,SADDLE,LWS-5S-2W
101	HOUSING,RIGHT,ASP
102	HOUSING,LEFT,ASP
103	HOUSING,USB,ASP
104	COVER,USB,ASP
105	LABEL,ACL,INSTALLATION;B
106	LABEL,ACL,ROLL PAPER SET
200	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN
201	HARNESS,ASP
202	HARNESS,ASP
203	BOARD ASSY.,ENCORDER,SC;B
300	BOARD ASSY.,POWER SUPPLY
401	INTERFACE CABLE;USB2.0
501	MOTOR ASSY,DRIVE,PAPER PRESSING,UNIT,ASP
502	PAPER PRESSING,UNIT,44,ASP
503	CABLE,LED,ASP
504	THERMISTOR,SPM,ASP
505	FOOT,SADDLE
506	HOOK,LOCATE,SPM;B
507	DETECTOR,LEAF,B2
508	HOOK,LOCATE,SPM
509	POLY SLIDER,STW-FT40,t=0.5
510	BEARING,CR
511	BELT,CR,SPM

Table 8-5. SpectroProofer for Epson Stylus Pro 9900/9910

Ref No	Part Name
512	CABLE CLAMP
513	FLAT CLAMP,FCR-15 V0
514	HOLDER,PULLEY,DRIVEN
515	EDGE SADDLE,EDS-1208U
516	MOTOR ASSY.,CR,SPM,ASP
517	PULLEY,DRIVE,CR,SPM,ASP
518	FAN,HEATER,ASP
519	PHOTO INTERRUPTER,TLP1243(C8)
520	CABLE,CR,ASP
521	CABLE,MOUNT,SPM,ASP
522	CABLE,ENCODER,PAPER PRESSING,ASP
523	CABLE,PAPER PRESSING,ASP
524	CABLE,FAN,INTERMIT,ASP
525	CABLE,PAPER PRESSING;B,ASP
526	CABLE,MOTOR,CR,ASP
527	COMBINATION GEAR,9.1,25.6,ASP
528	COMBINATION GEAR,8.8,26.4.,ASP
529	COMBINATION GEAR,9.6,24,ASP
530	SPUR GEAR,10.01,ASP
531	SHAFT,TRANSMISSION,PAPER PRESSING,ASP
532	CUT WASHER,LLC-0306-05
533	PULLEY,DRIVEN,ASSY.,ESL,ASP
534	CABLE,FAN,INTERMIT;B,ASP

## SpectroProofer for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910

Table 8-6. SpectroProofer for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910

Ref No	Part Name
1	BACKING,WHITE,UNIT,ASP
2	BACKING,BLACK,UNIT,ASP
3	GUIDE,HOUSING
4	H.S.C.BOLT,4X8,F/ZB-3C
5	HEXAGON SOCKET SCREW KEYS,3
6	HOLDER,CARIB TILE,UPPER,UNIT,ASP
7	LOCKING WIRE,SADDLE,LWS-5S-2W
101	HOUSING,RIGHT,ASP
102	HOUSING,LEFT,ASP
103	HOUSING,USB,ASP
104	COVER,USB,ASP
105	LABEL,ACL,INSTALLATION;B
106	LABEL,ACL,ROLL PAPER SET
200	BOARD ASSY.,MAIN
201	HARNESS,ASP
202	HARNESS,ASP
203	BOARD ASSY.,ENCORDER,SC;B
300	BOARD ASSY.,POWER SUPPLY
401	INTERFACE CABLE;USB2.0
501	MOTOR ASSY,DRIVE,PAPER PRESSING,UNIT,ASP
502	PAPER PRESSING,UNIT,24,ASP
503	CABLE,LED,ASP
504	THERMISTOR,SPM,ASP
505	FOOT,SADDLE
506	HOOK,LOCATE,SPM;B
507	DETECTOR,LEAF,B2
508	HOOK,LOCATE,SPM
509	POLY SLIDER,STW-FT40,t=0.5
510	BEARING,CR
511	BELT,CR,SPM,24

Table 8-6. SpectroProofer for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910

Ref No	Part Name
512	CABLE CLAMP
513	FLAT CLAMP,FCR-15 V0
514	HOLDER,PULLEY,DRIVEN
515	EDGE SADDLE,EDS-1208U
516	MOTOR ASSY.,CR,SPM,ASP
517	PULLEY,DRIVE,CR,SPM,ASP
518	FAN,HEATER,ASP
519	PHOTO INTERRUPTER,TLP1243(C8)
520	CABLE,CR,ASP
521	CABLE,MOUNT,SPM,ASP
522	CABLE,ENCORDER,PAPER PRESSING,24,ASP
523	CABLE,PAPER PRESSING,24,ASP
524	CABLE,FAN,INTERMIT,24,ASP
525	CABLE,PAPER PRESSING;B,24,ASP
526	CABLE,MOTOR,CR,24,ASP
527	COMBINATION GEAR,9.1,25.6,ASP
528	COMBINATION GEAR,8.8,26.4.,ASP
529	COMBINATION GEAR,9.6,24,ASP
530	SPUR GEAR,10.01,ASP
531	SHAFT,TRANSMISSION,PAPER PRESSING,24,ASP
532	CUT WASHER,LLC-0306-05
533	PULLEY,DRIVEN,ASSY.,ESL,ASP

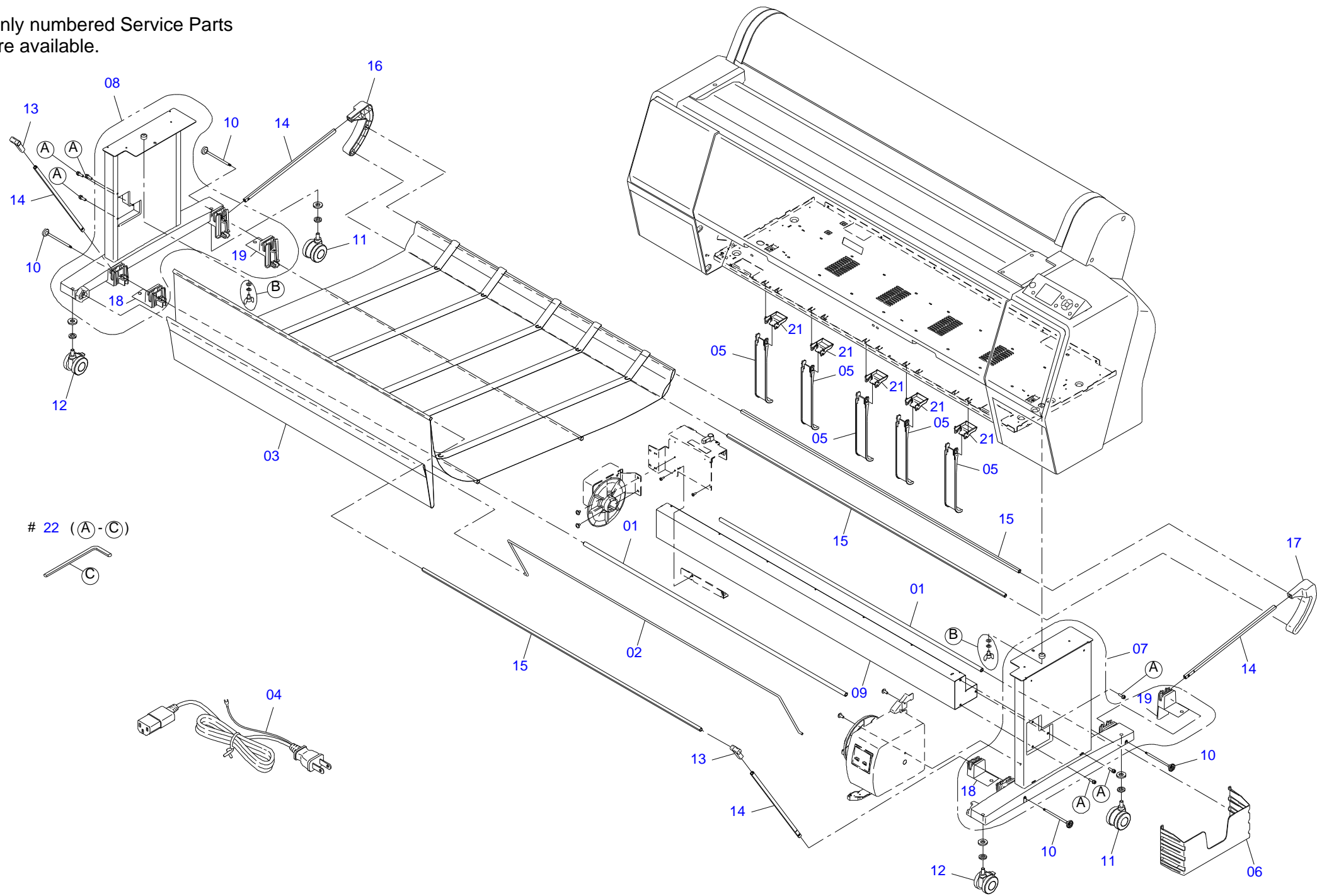
## 8.5 Exploded Diagram

---

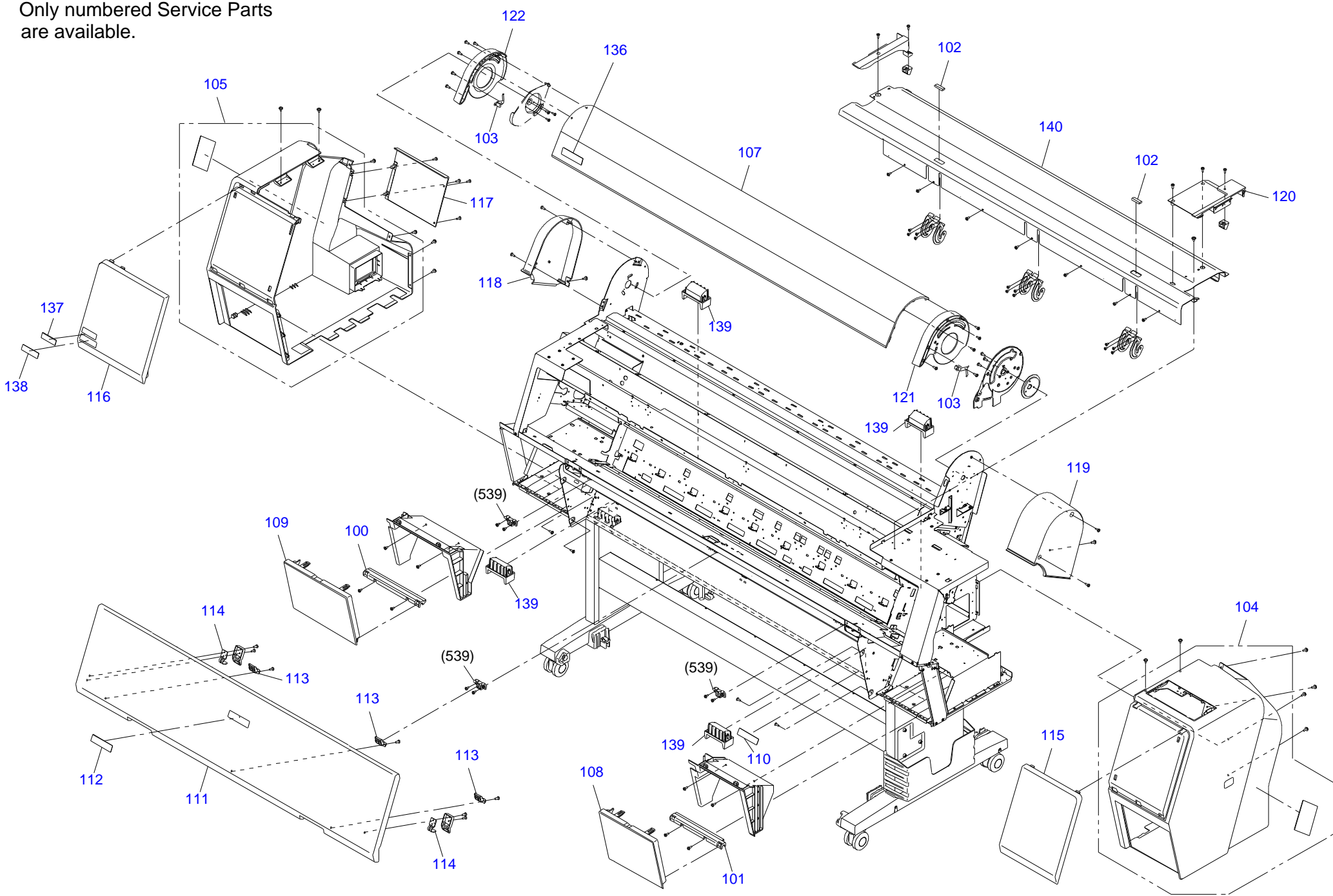
**NOTE** : This Exploded Diagram is for Epson Stylus Pro 7900/7910/9900/9910. Some of the items differ from Epson Stylus Pro 7700/7710/7700M/7710M/9700/9710, Epson Stylus Pro WT7900/WT7910, Epson Stylus Pro 7890/7908/9890/9908 therefore refer to Service Parts Information as necessary.



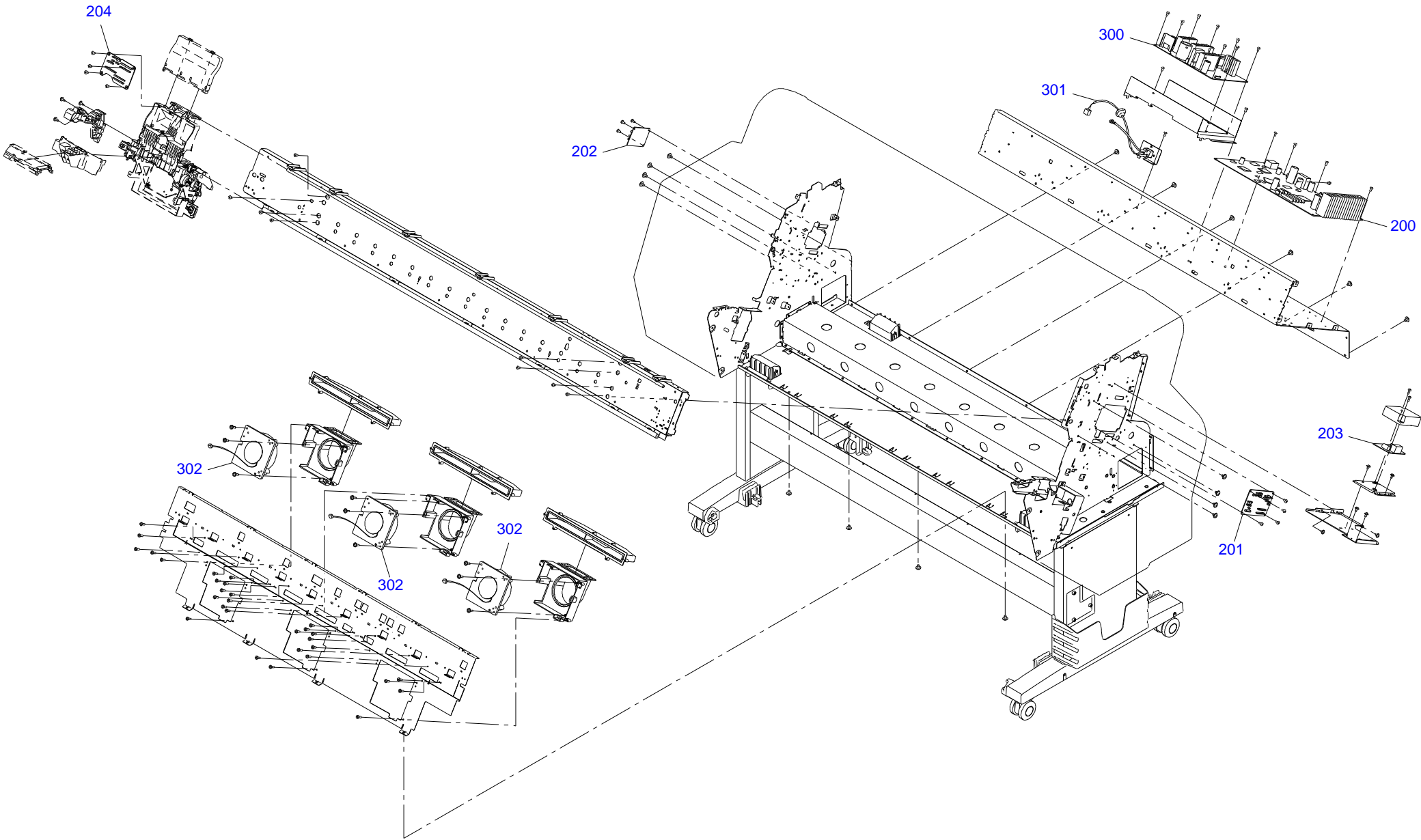
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



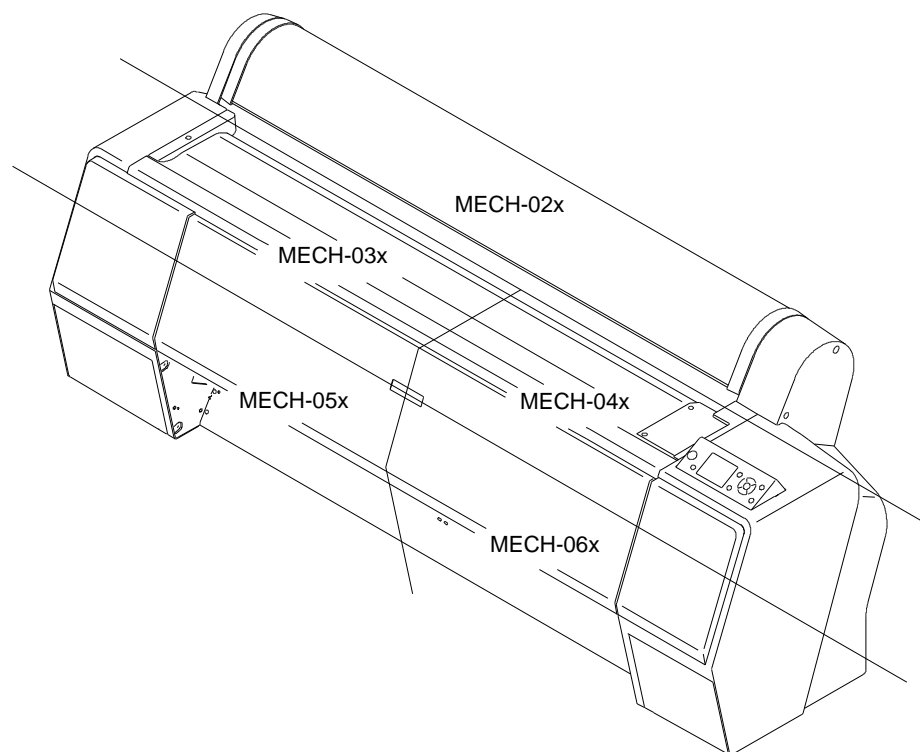
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



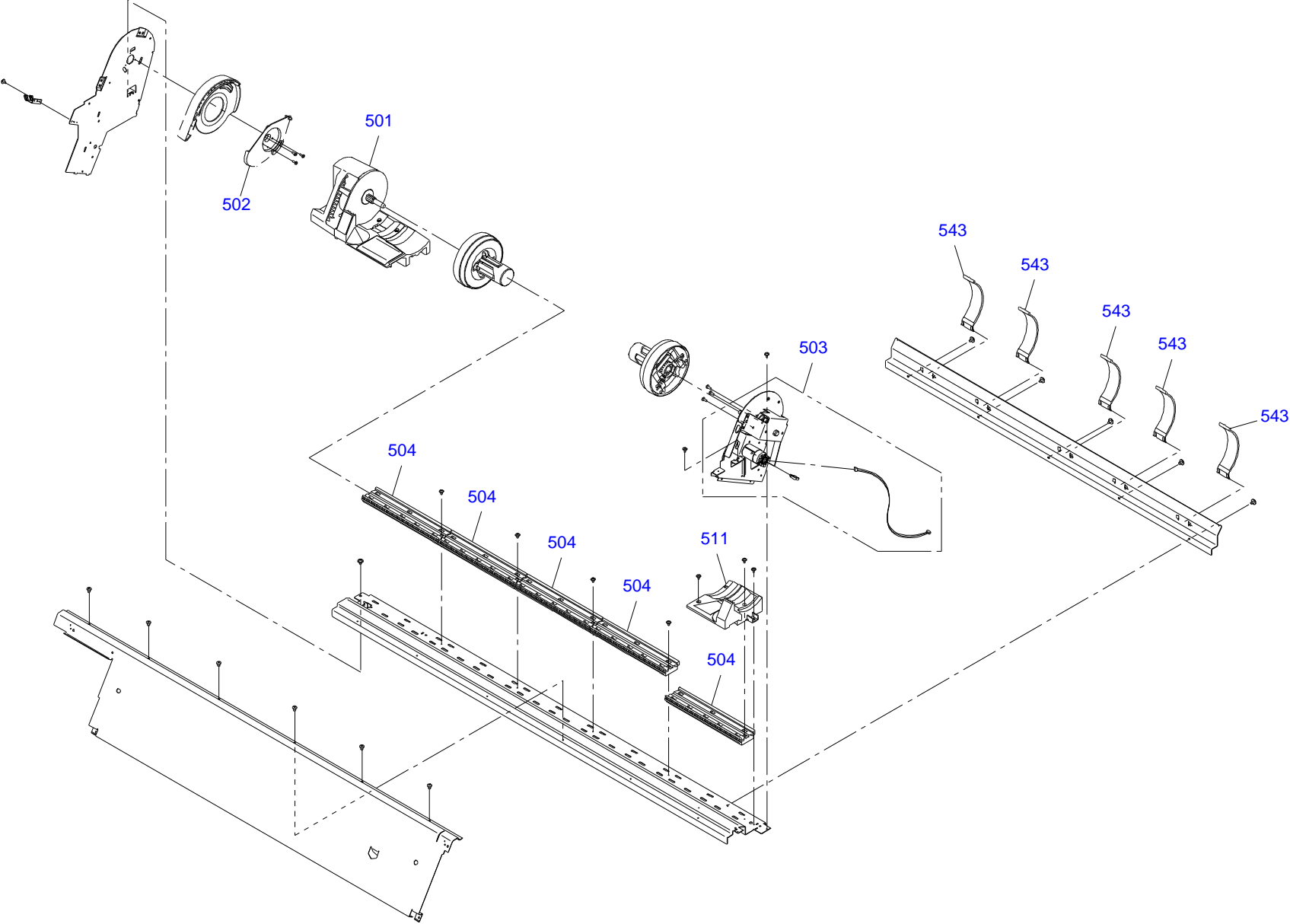
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



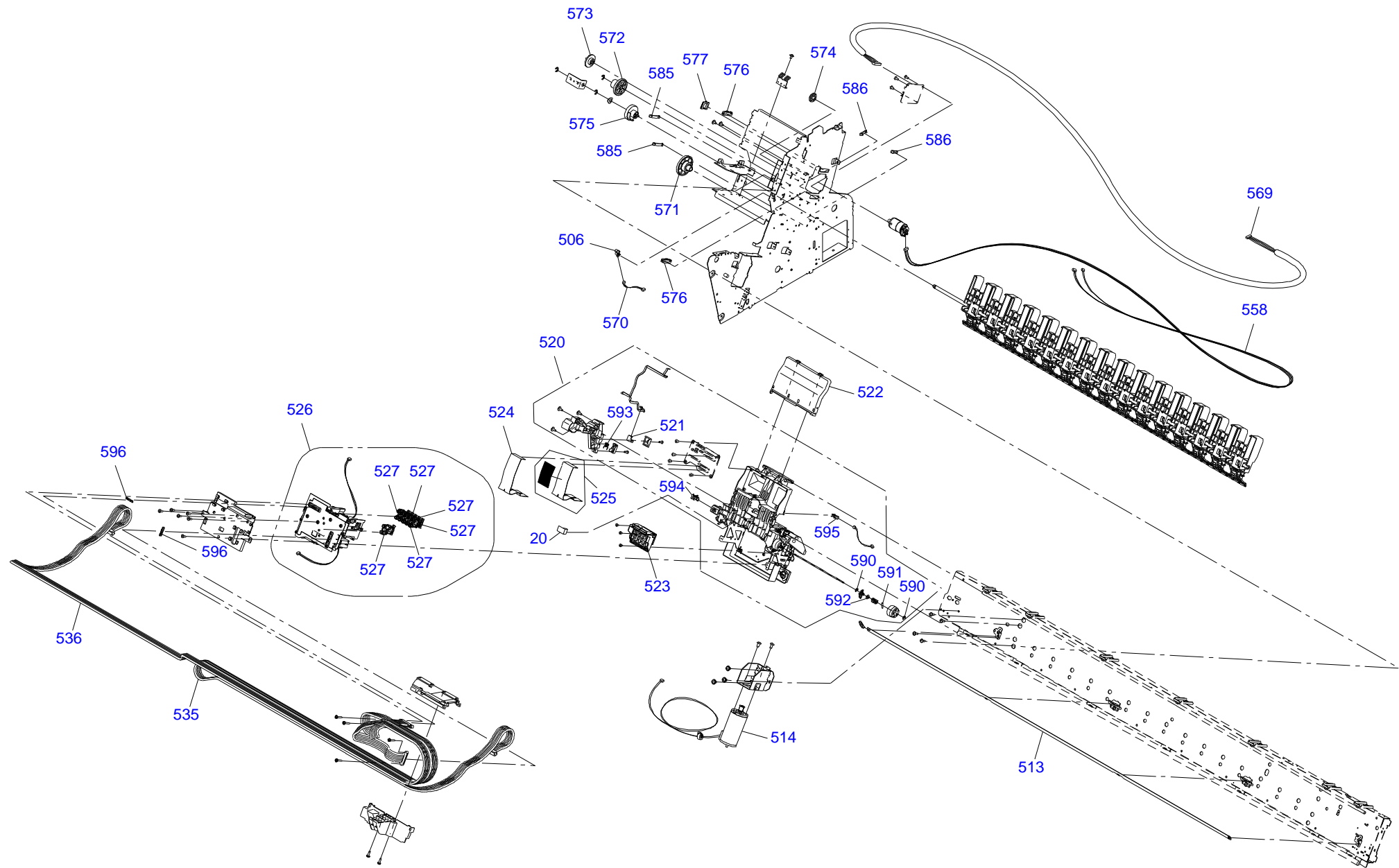
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.

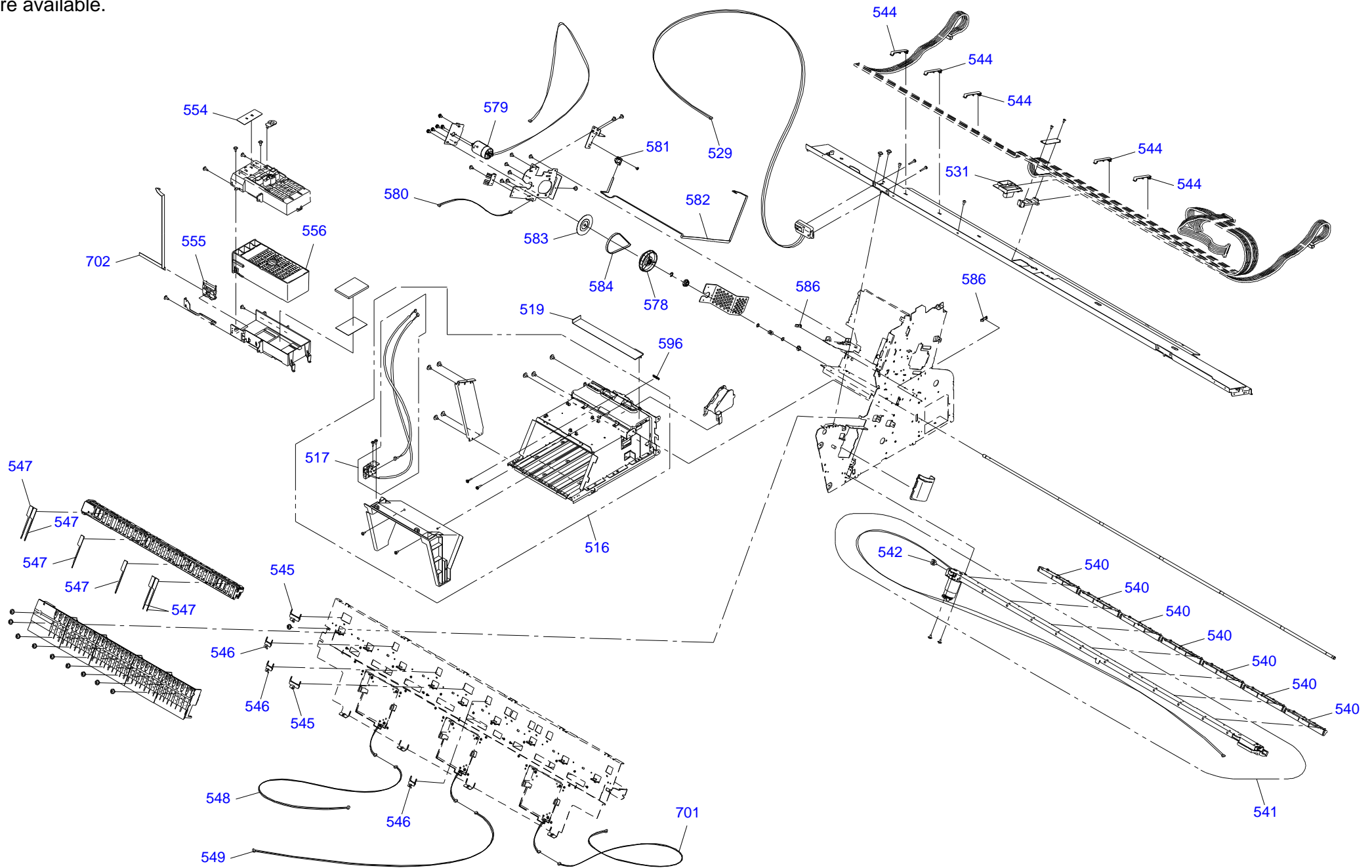


This exploded view diagram illustrates the assembly of a vehicle interior component, likely a center console or seat base. The diagram shows the following parts and their assembly sequence:

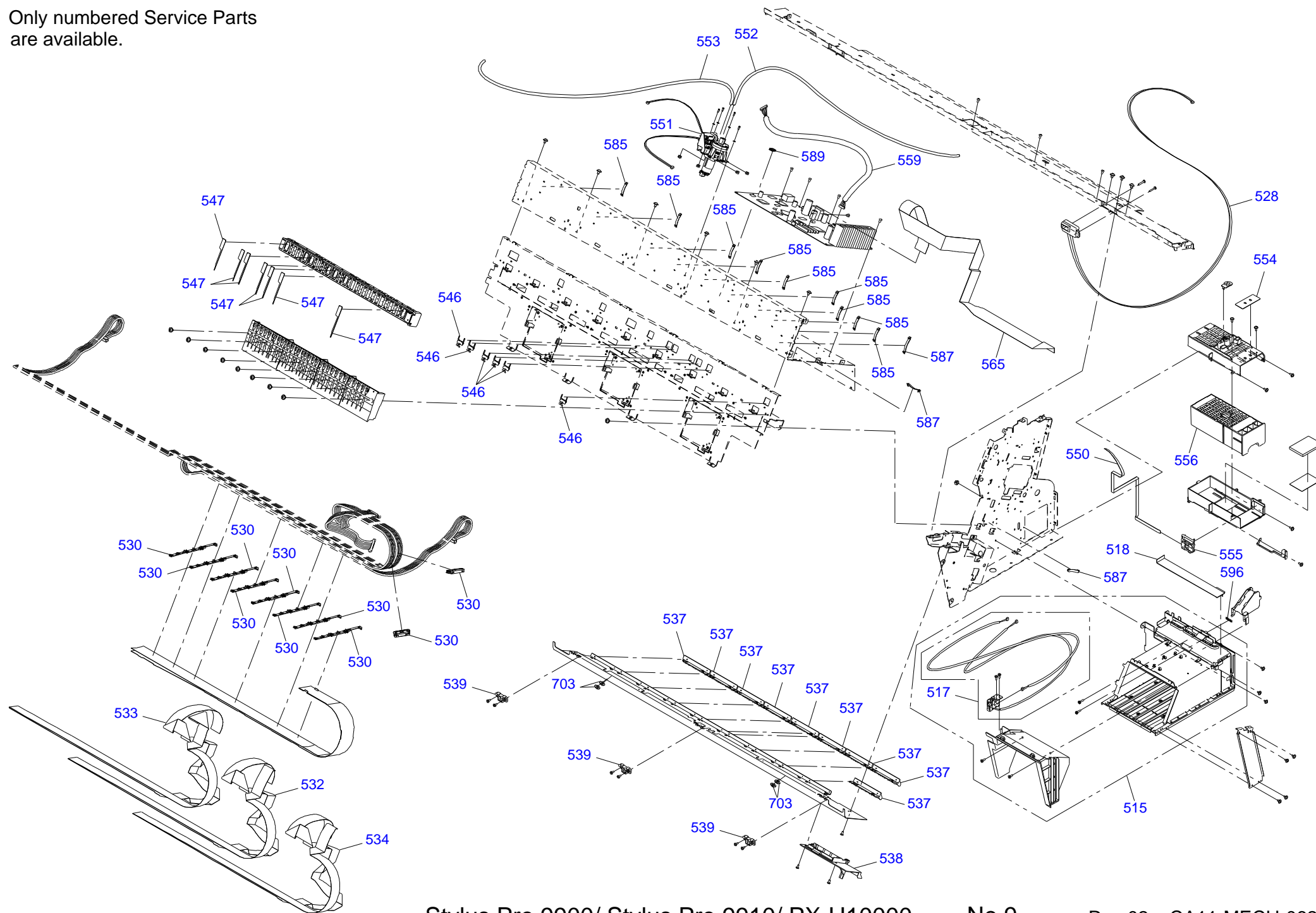
- 505**: A long, narrow structural rail or beam.
- 506**: A bracket or connector that fits onto the rail.
- 507**: A cable or wiring harness connected to the assembly.
- 508**: A small electronic component or sensor.
- 509**: A control unit or module with a display screen.
- 510**: A bracket or support structure for the control unit.
- 512**: A mounting bracket or connector.
- 520**: The main structural frame or housing.
- 521**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 522**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 523**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 524**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 525**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 526**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 527**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 528**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 529**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 530**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 531**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 532**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 533**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 534**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 535**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 536**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 537**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 538**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 539**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 540**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 541**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 542**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 543**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 544**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 545**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 546**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 547**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 548**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 549**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 550**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 551**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 552**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 553**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 554**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 555**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 556**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 557**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 558**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 559**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 560**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 561**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 562**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 563**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 564**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 565**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 566**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 567**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 568**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 569**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 570**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 571**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 572**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 573**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 574**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 575**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 576**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 577**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 578**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 579**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 580**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 581**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 582**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 583**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 584**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 585**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 586**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.
- 587**: A bracket or support structure for the main frame.



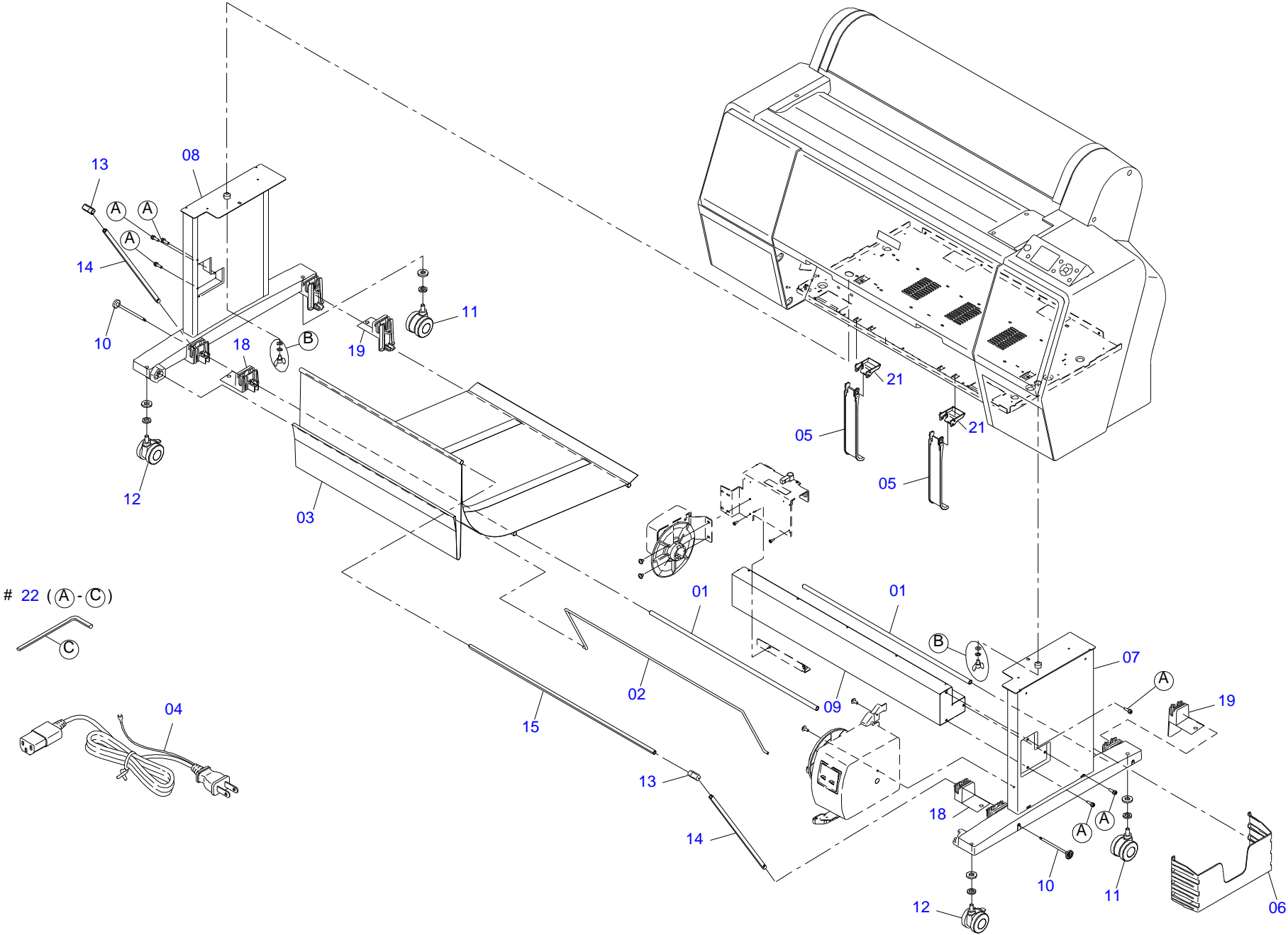
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



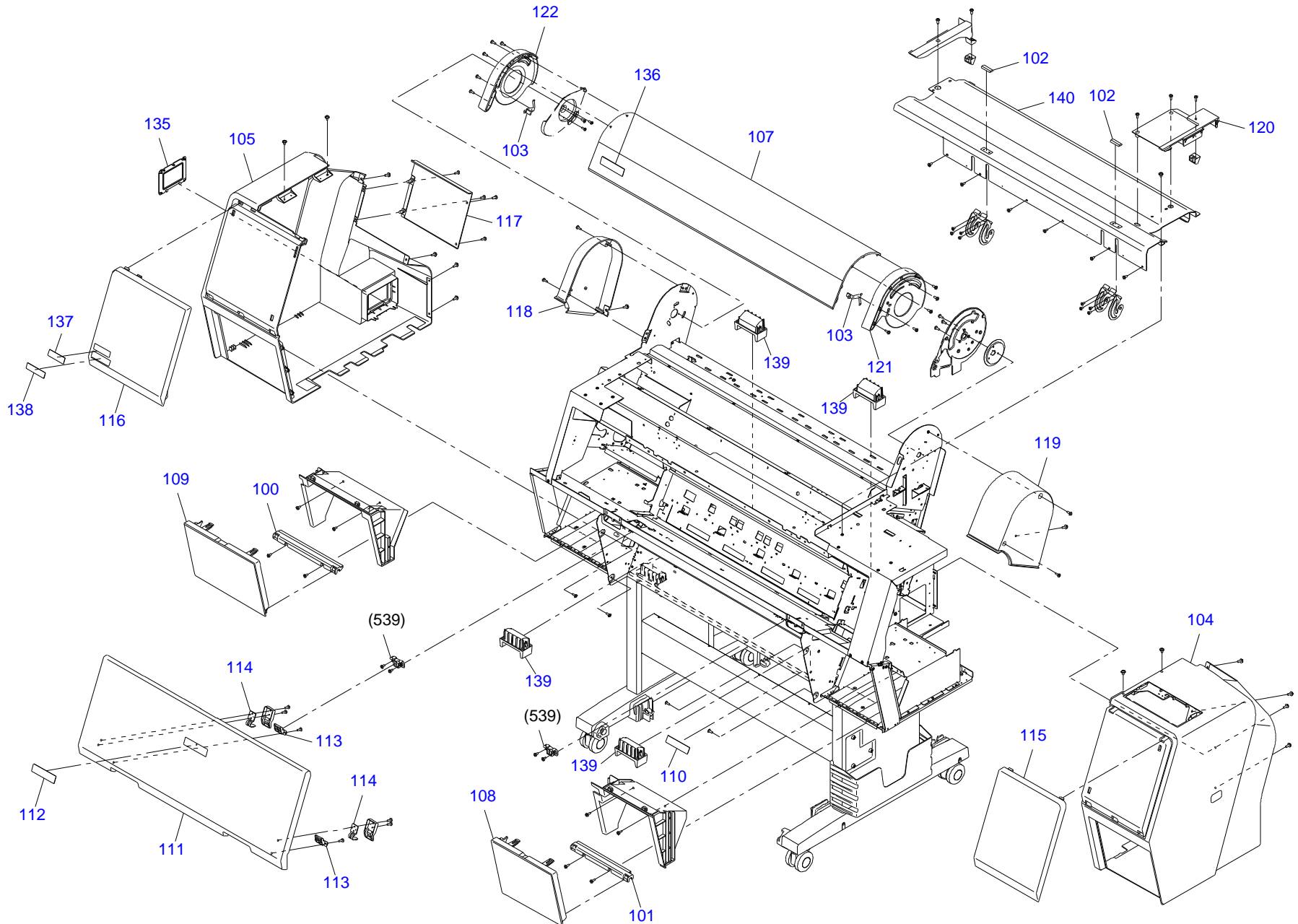
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



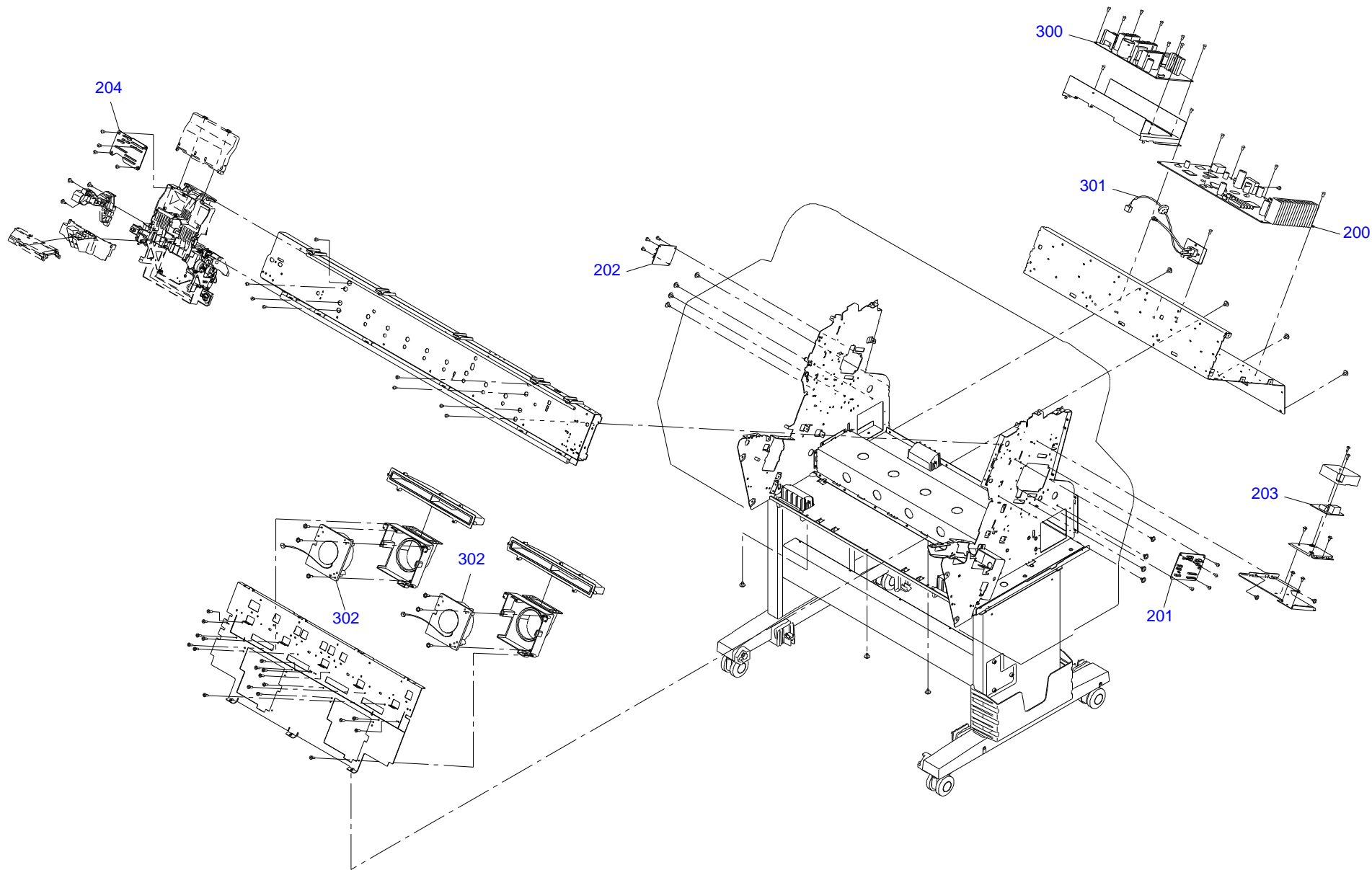
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



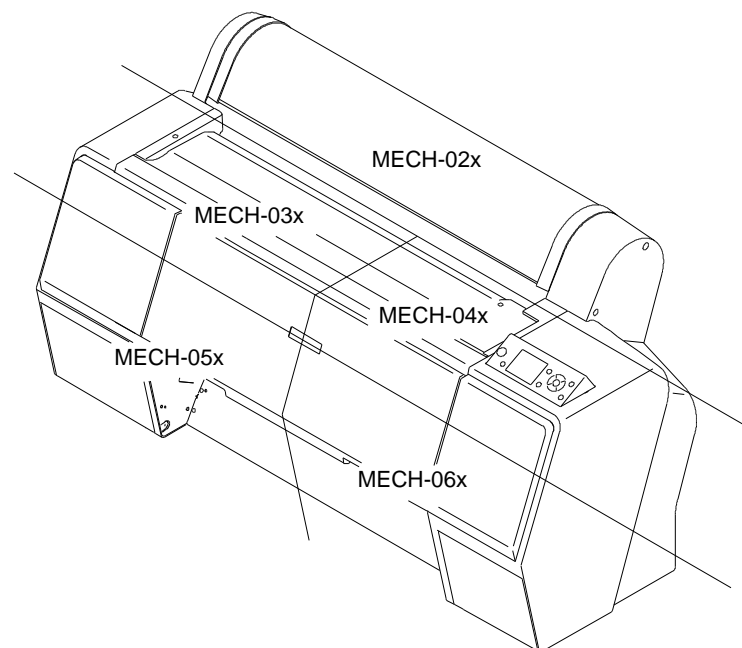
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



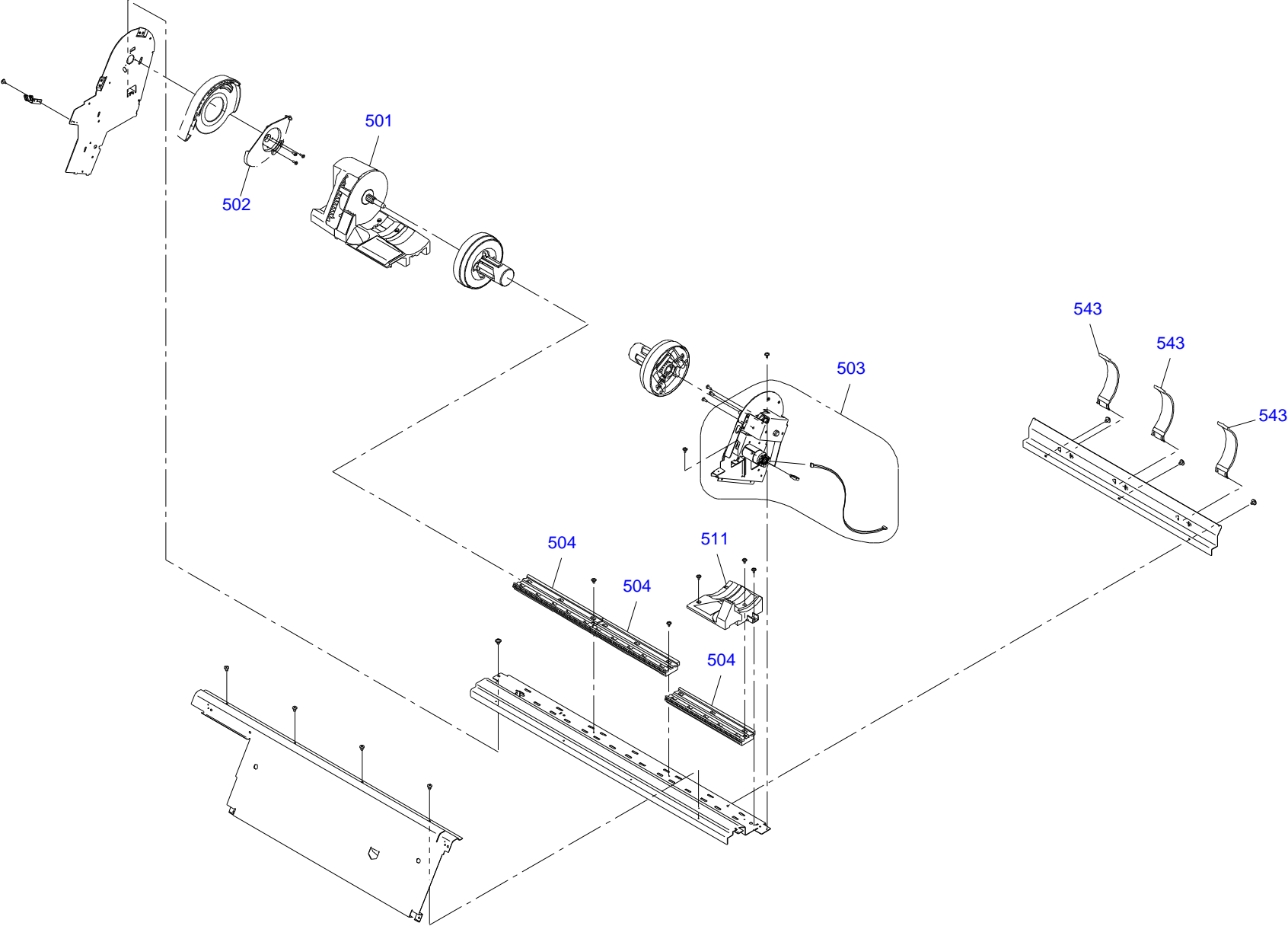
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.

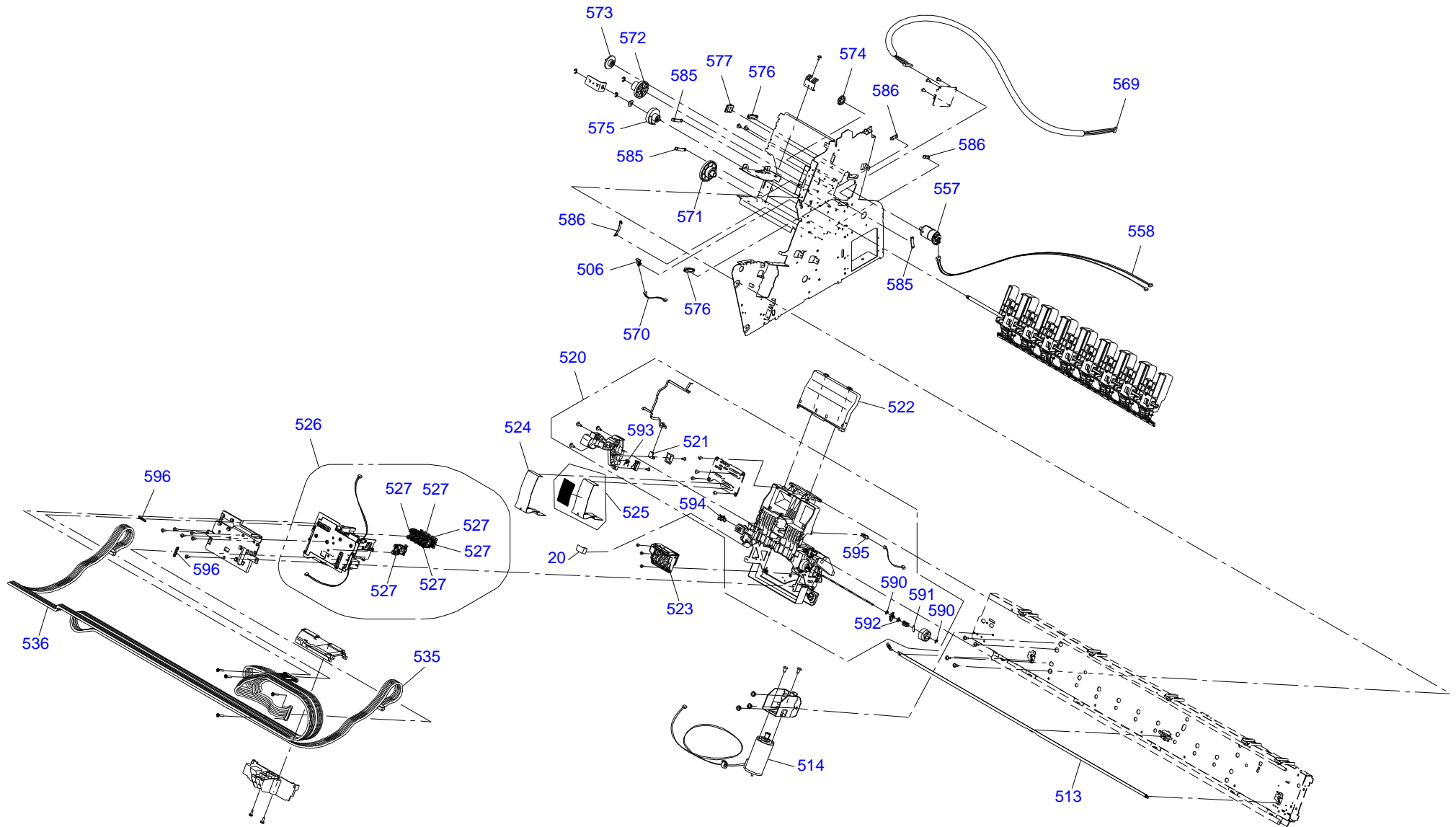


Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.

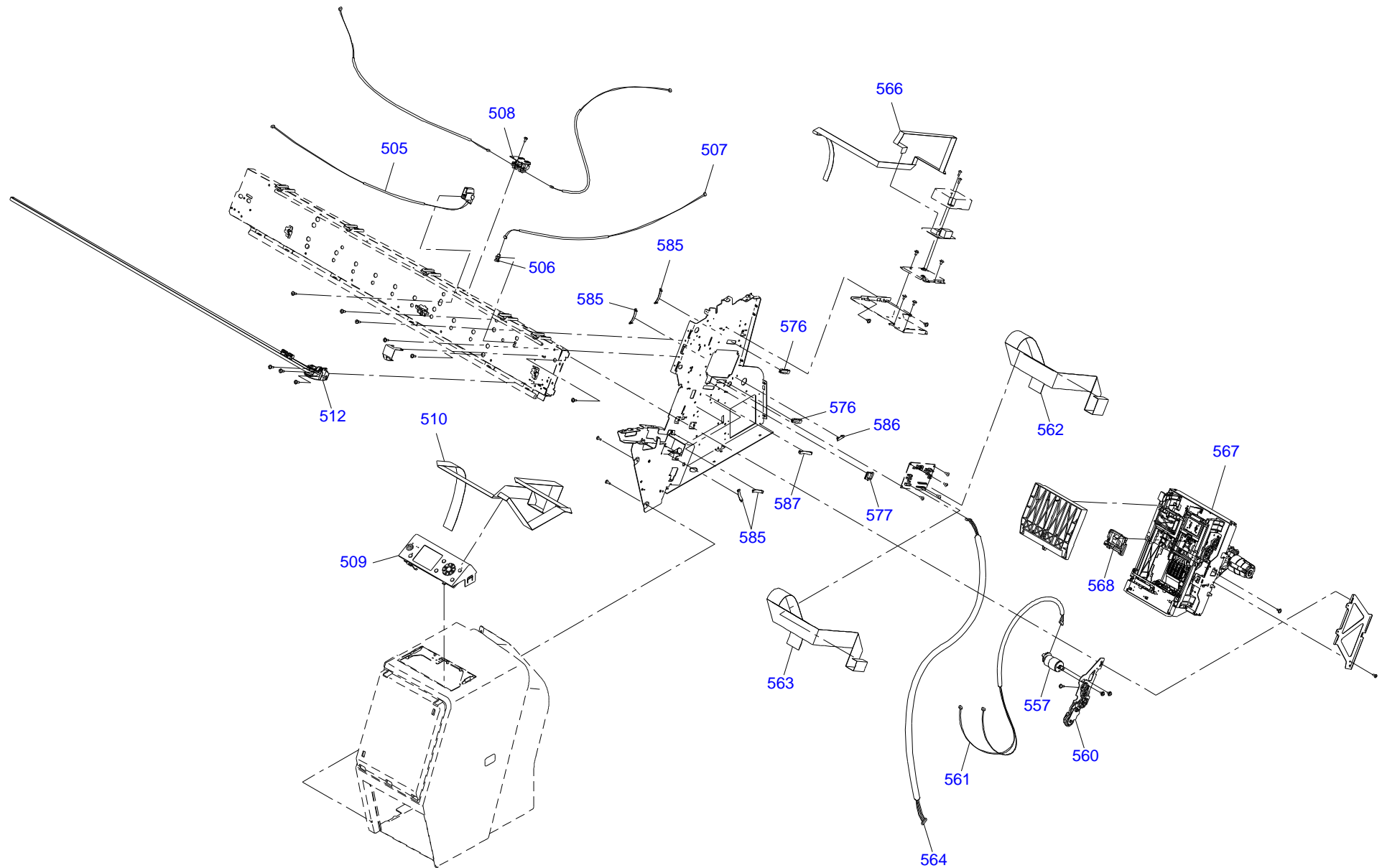




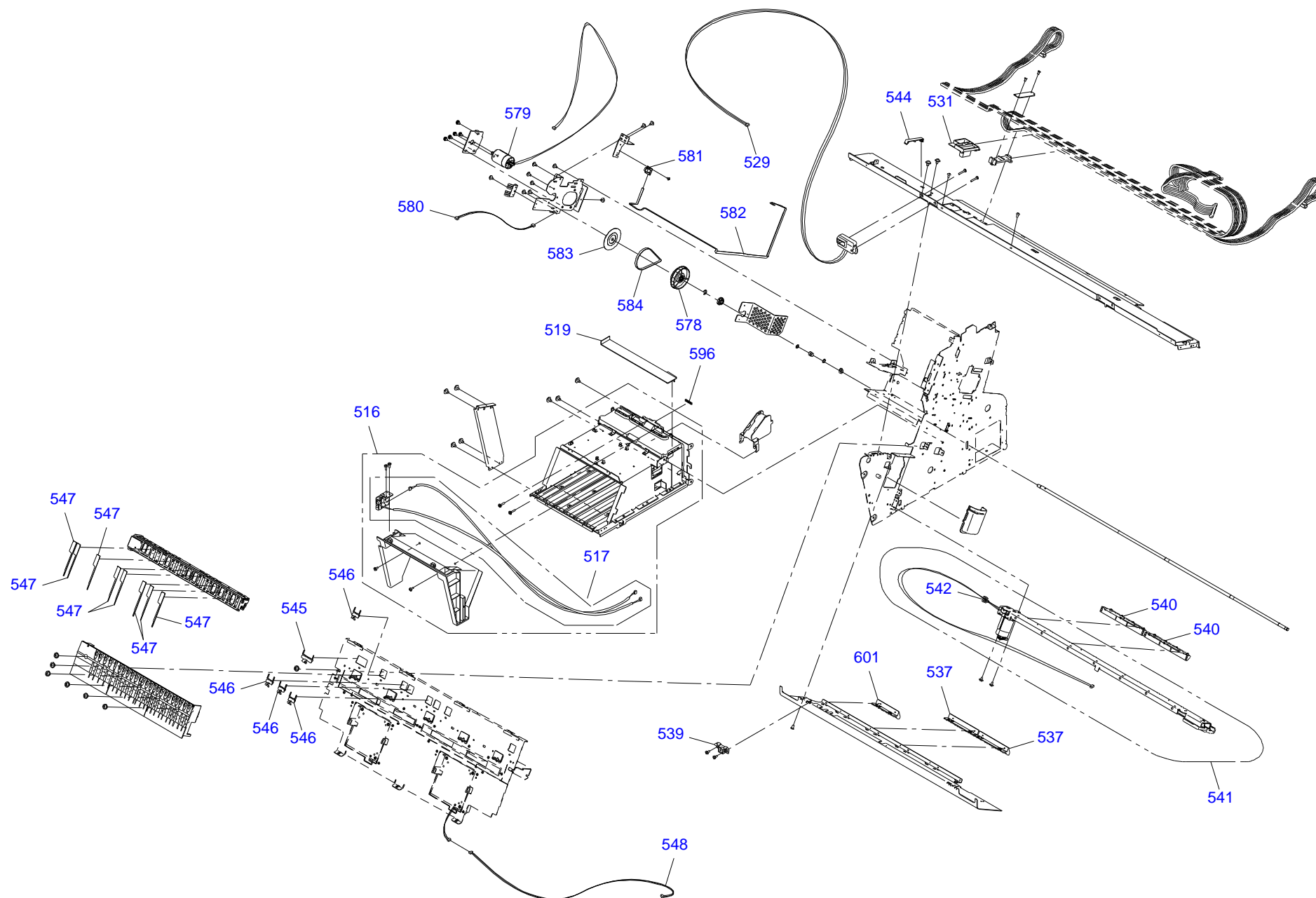
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



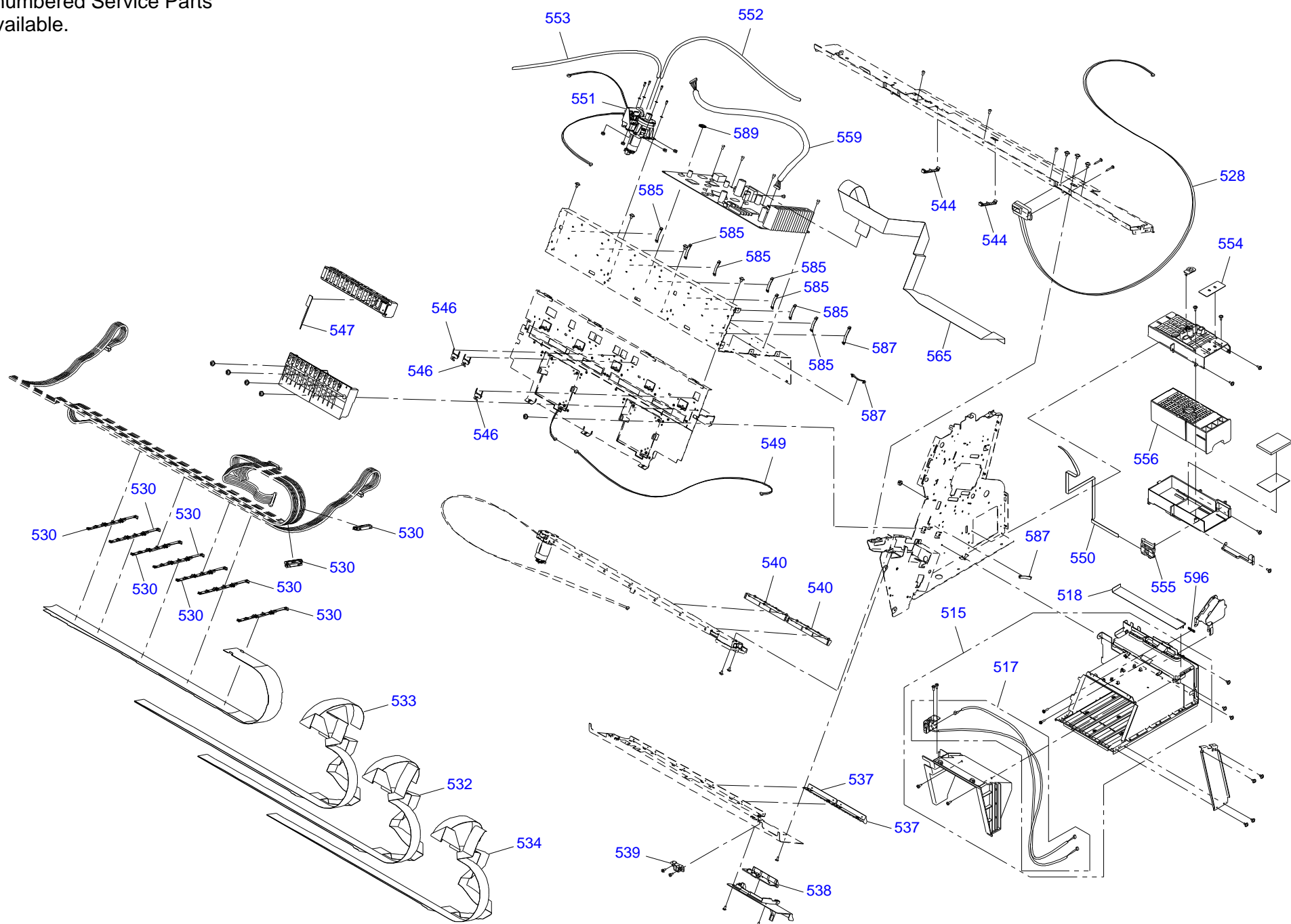
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



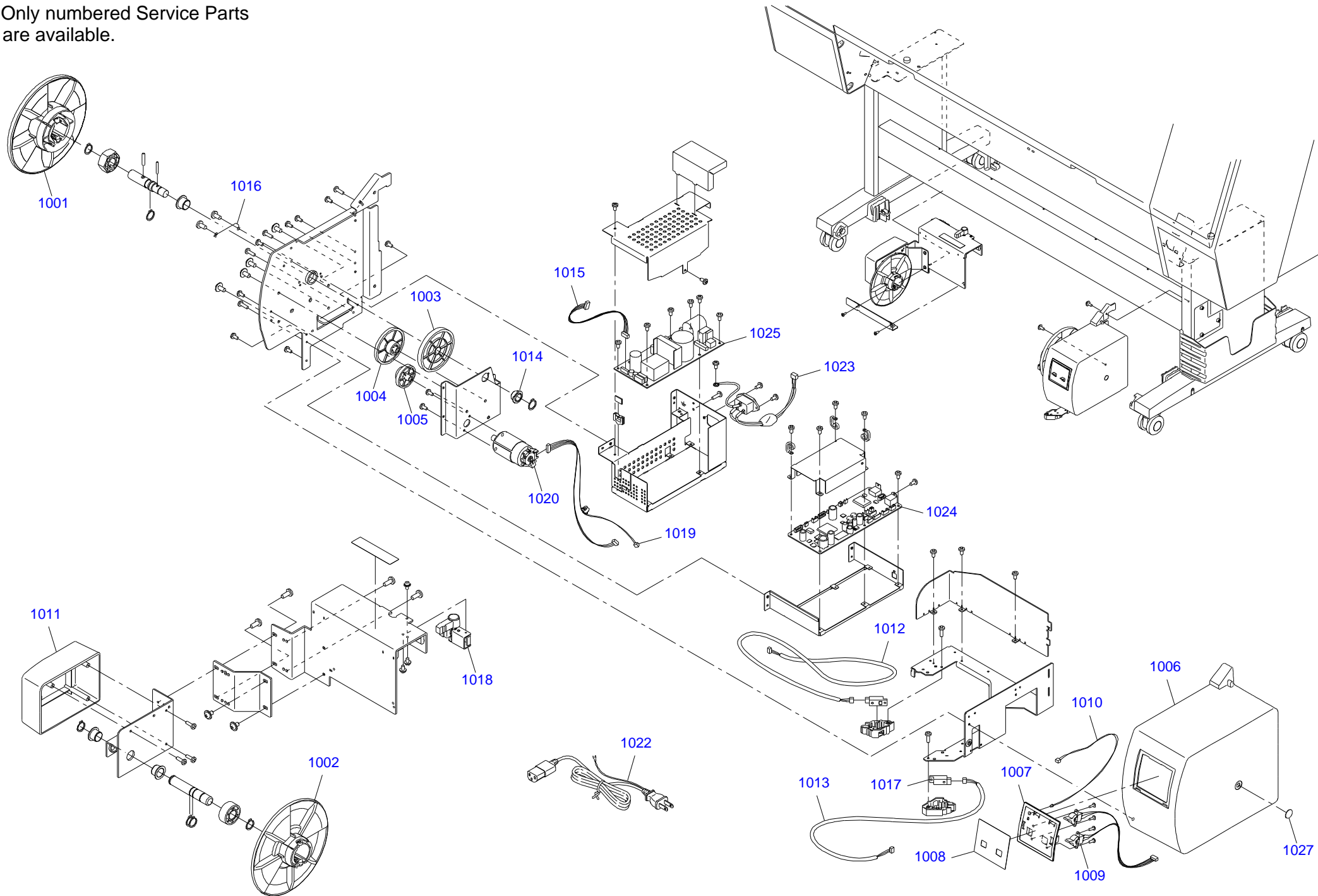
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



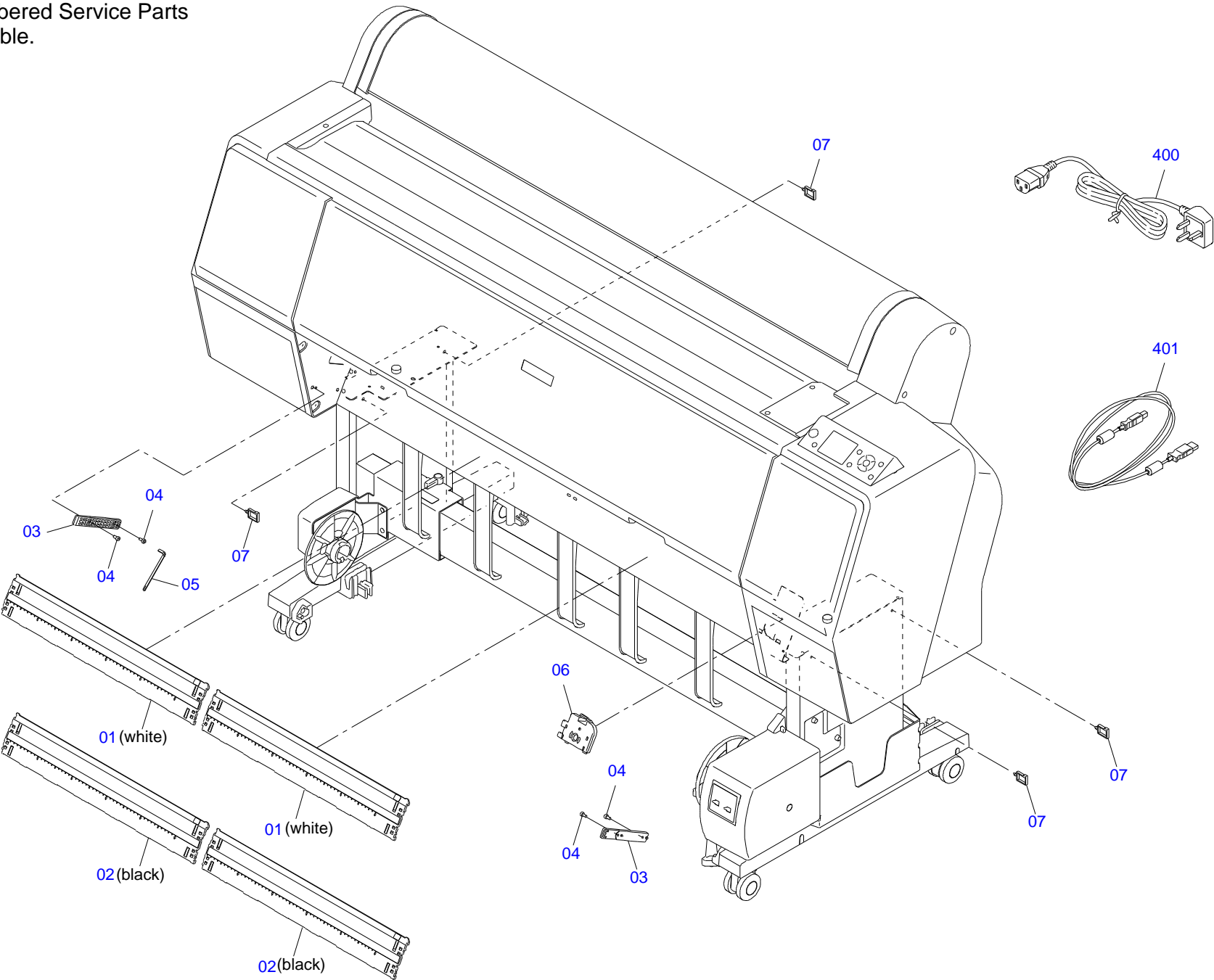
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



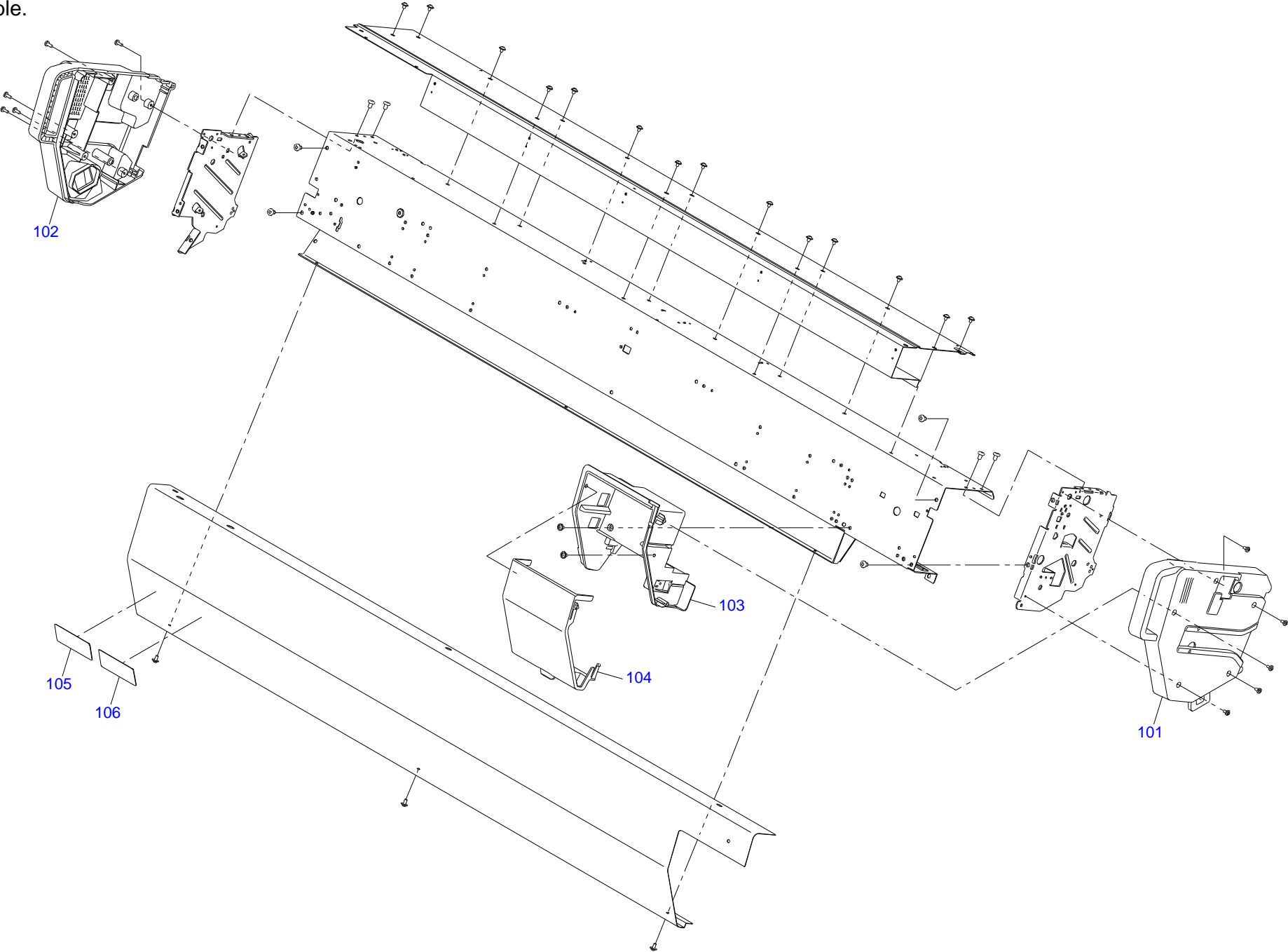
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.

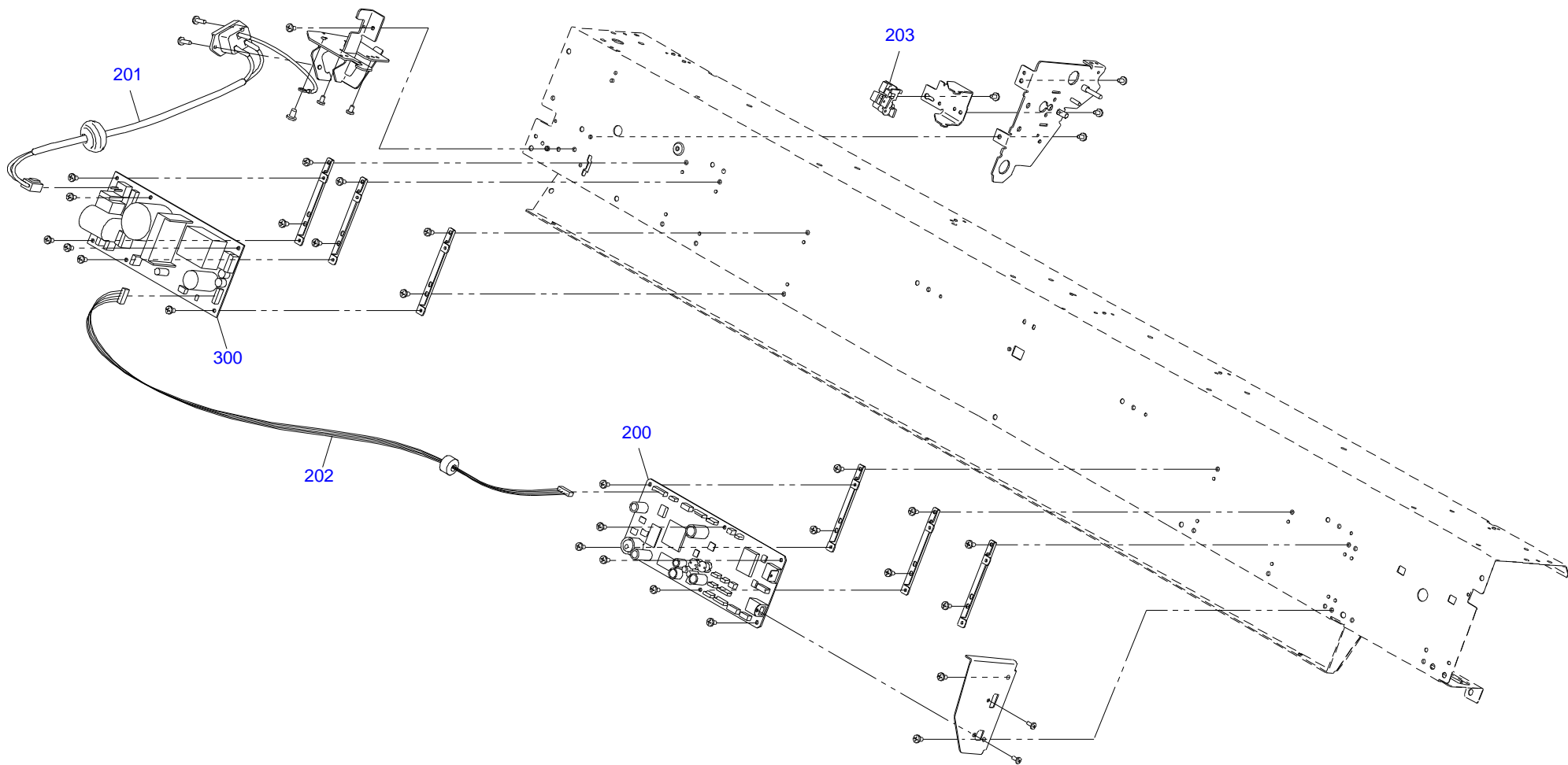


Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.

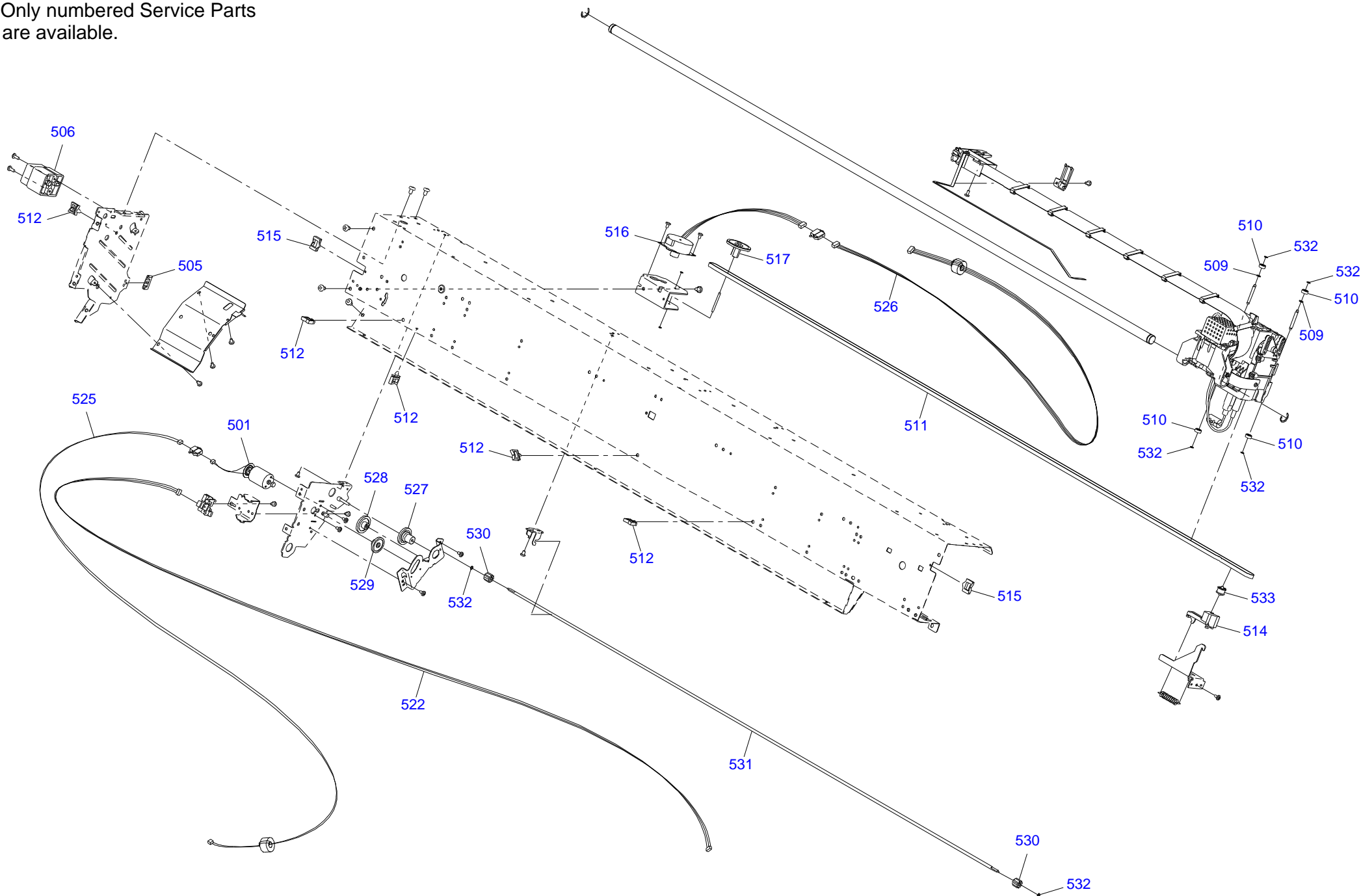




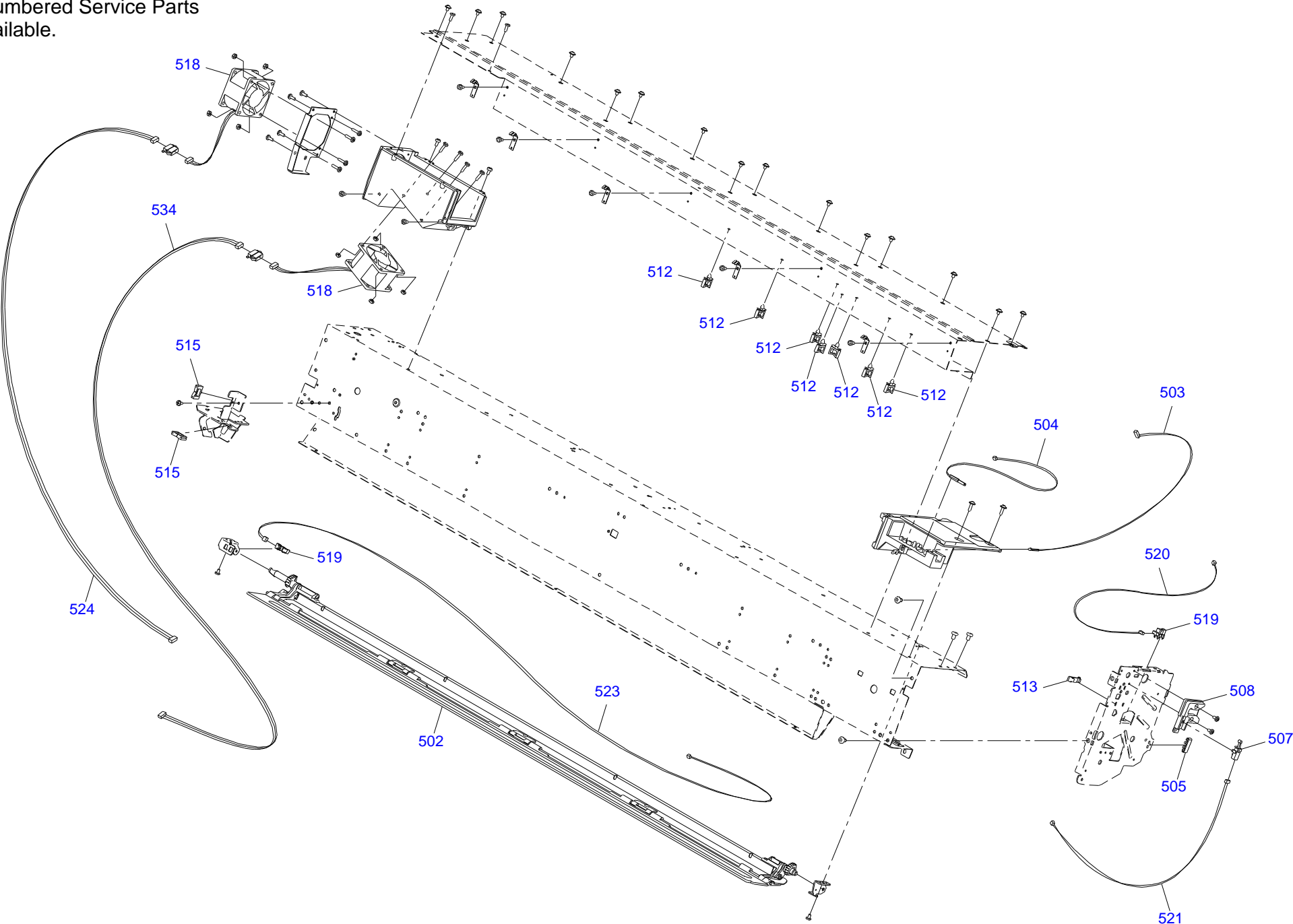
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



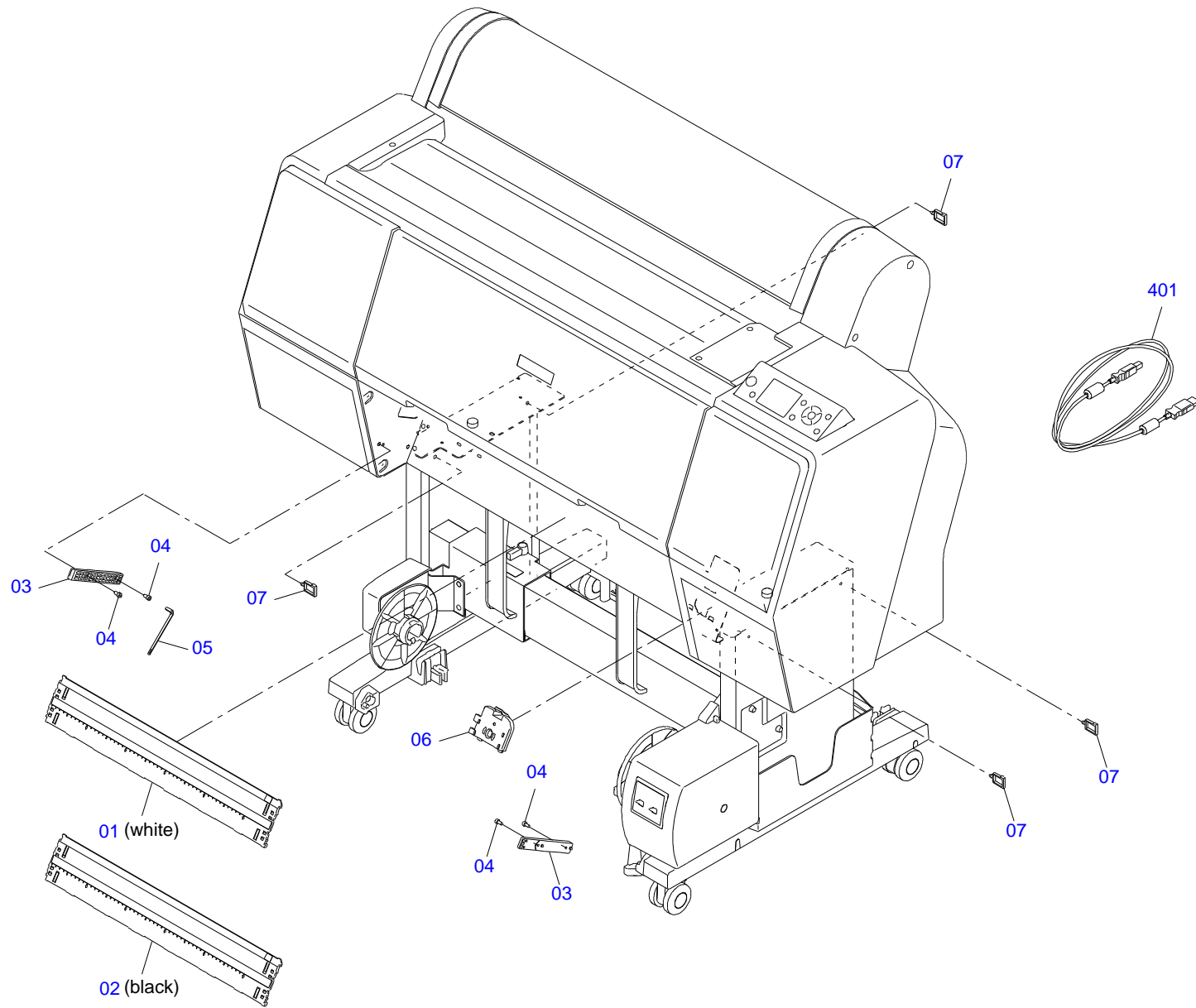
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



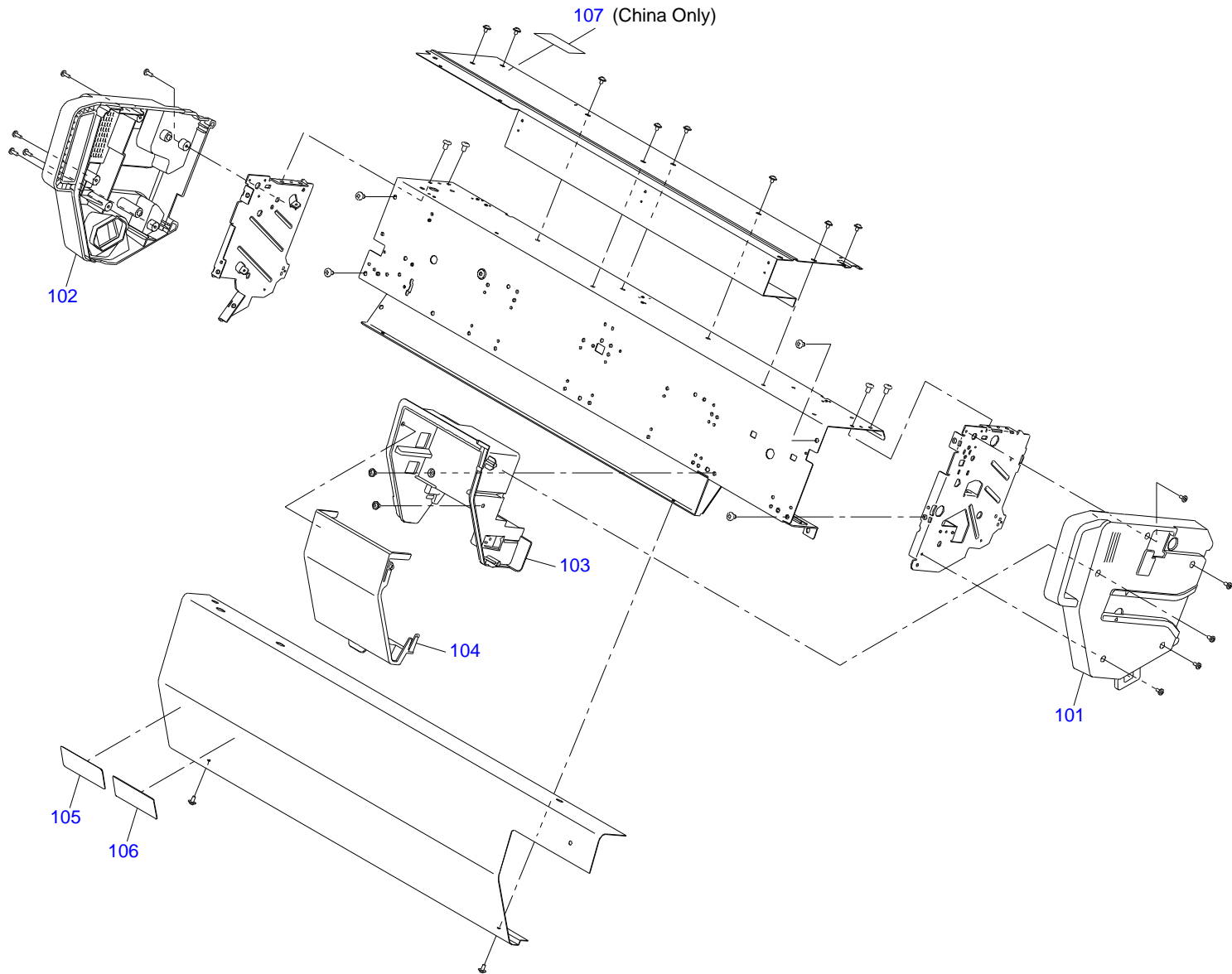
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



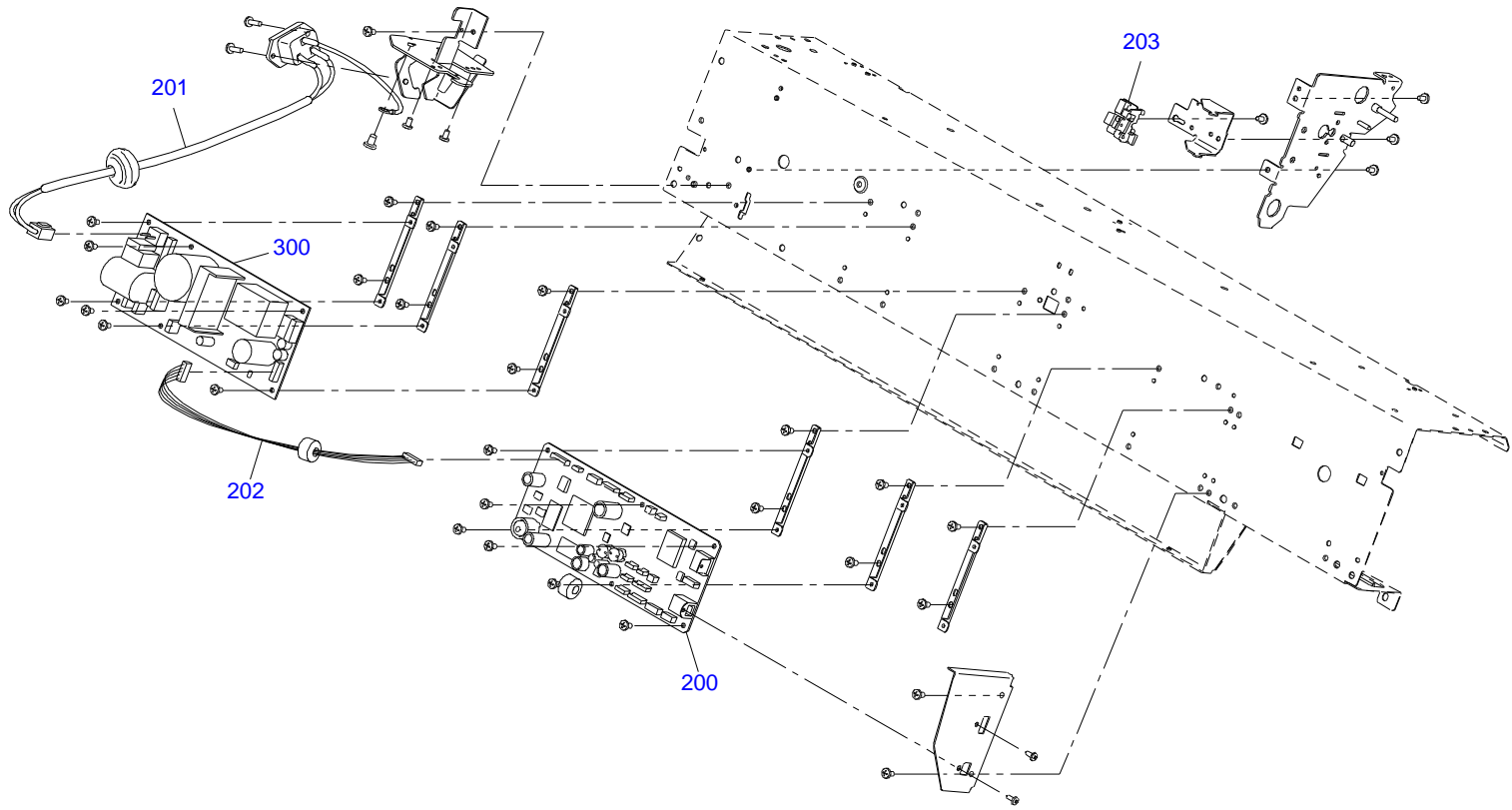
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



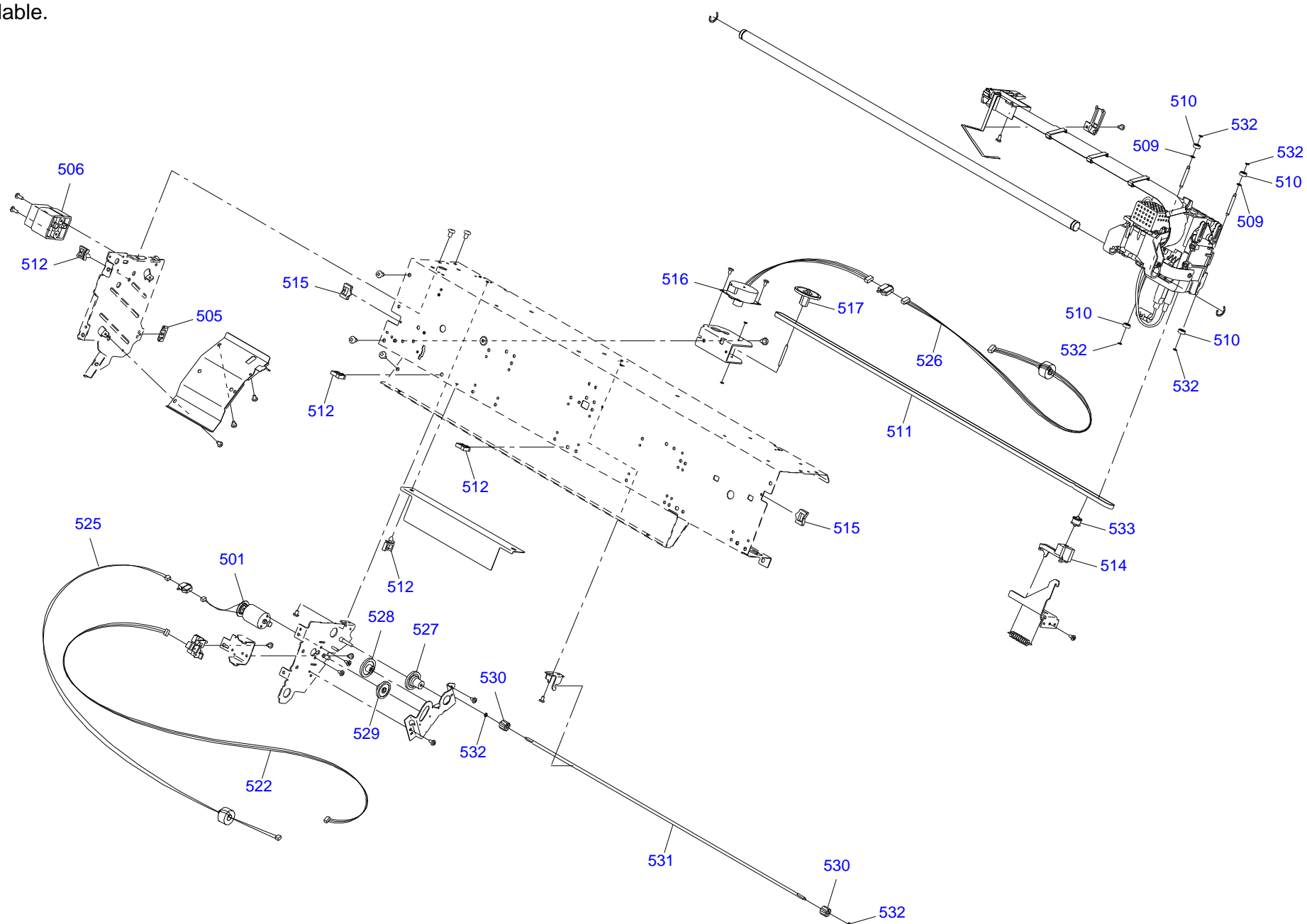
Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.



Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.





Only numbered Service Parts  
are available.

